Oracle Procurement Cloud
Implementing Procurement
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Overview</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementing Procurement: Overview</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchase and Activation of Oracle Cloud Application Services</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Getting Started with a Procurement Rapid Implementation</strong></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Started with Your Procurement Rapid Implementation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation: Overview</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement: Overview</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getting Started with Supplier Portal Configuration: Overview</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Self Service Procurement</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3 Synchronization of Users and Roles from LDAP</strong></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User and Role Synchronization: Explained</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4 Define Implementation Users</strong></td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Users</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5 Define Currencies and Currency Rates</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Currencies</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Conversion Rate Types</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Daily Rates</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Structures Business Process Model</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines for Configuring Global Enterprises</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model Your Enterprise Management Structure</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essbase Character and Word Limitations</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Initial Configuration with the Enterprise Structures Configurator</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Reference Data Sharing</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise: Manage Enterprise HCM Information</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise: Manage Locations</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Geographies</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity HCM Information</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity Tax Profile</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Entities: Define Legal Reporting Units</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Value Sets and Value Set Values</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Accounting Calendars</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Primary or Secondary Ledgers</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Specify Ledger Options</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Reporting Currencies</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units: Manage Business Units</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units: Assign Business Unit Business Function</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units: Manage Service Provider Relationships</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units: Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units: Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Workforce Structures: Manage Locations</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Workforce Structures: Manage Divisions</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Workforce Structures: Manage Departments</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Workforce Structures: FAQs for Manage Job Families</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Workforce Structures: Manage Job</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Facilities: Manage Facility Shifts, Workday Patterns, and Schedules</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Facilities: Manage Inventory Organizations</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Facilities: Manage Item Organizations</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7 Define Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting

Defining the Funds Reservation Point for Purchasing Documents: Explained
Defining Funds Override Rules for a Control Budget: Explained

8 Define Security for Procurement

Overview of Security
Access for Workflow Administrators

9 Define Approval Management for Procurement

Overview of Approval Management
Workflow Email Notification Setup
Configurable Email Notifications
Manage Requisition and Purchasing Document Approvals
Manage Supplier Registration Approvals
Manage Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals
Task Life Cycle Setup
Electronic Signature

10 Define Help Configuration

Overview of Setting Up Help
Set Help Options
FAQs for Assign Help Text Administration Duty
Manage Help Security Groups
Help File Management
Embedded Help Management

11 Define Application Toolkit Configuration

Configuring the Application Toolkit
Map Reports to Work Area
Set Watchlist Options
Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values
12 Maintain Common Reference Objects 301

- Reference Objects: Overview 301
- Why can't I edit setup data? 301
- How can I set general preferences for all users? 301
- Define Application Taxonomy 302
- Define Reference Data Sharing 303
- Define ISO Reference Data 307
- Manage Audit Policies 310
- Manage Oracle Social Network Objects 312
- Manage Applications Core Common Reference Objects 314

13 Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions 319

- Overview of Managing Job Definitions and Job Sets 319
- Manage List of Values Sources 319
- Managing Job Definitions 320
- Job Sets 325

14 Define Applications Core Configuration 331

- Overview of Applications Core Configuration 331
- Import Flexfields, Lookups, or Profile Values Using Web Services 331
- Define Lookups 336
- Manage Messages 346
- Define Document Sequences 351
- Define Trees 354
- Define Profile Options 366
- Define Flexfields 372
- Define Attachments 425
## Define Collaboration Messaging 429

- Overview of Collaboration Messaging 429
- Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration 431
- Set Up Outbound Message Processing and Delivery Methods 431
- Set Up a Business Process 432
- Process Inbound Collaboration Messages 432
- Process Outbound Collaboration Messages 433
- Reprocessing Undelivered Messages: Procedure 434
- Manage Collaboration Messages 434
- Set up a User-Defined External Message Type 448
- Collaboration Messaging in Procurement 450
- Manage Message Transformation Rules 454
- Export or Import Collaboration Messaging Configuration Setup Data: Explained 456
- FAQs for Define Collaboration Messaging 458

## Other Common Setup and Maintenance Tasks 461

- Home Page Setup 461
- FAQs for Home Page Setup 464
- Global Header 464
- Contextual Addresses 465
- Privacy Statement 466

## Define Common Procurement Configuration 469

- Define Basic Catalogs 469
- Define Supplier Configuration 484
- Define Transaction Accounting for Procurement 492
- Define Transaction Taxes 501
- Manage Payment Terms 542
- Manage Units of Measure 545
- Define Corporate Procurement Cards 548
- Define Common Payables and Procurement Options 549
- Manage Procurement Document Numbering 551
- Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy 552
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Define Purchasing Configuration</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Define Common Purchasing Configuration</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Define Procurement Configuration Options</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure Requisitioning Business Function</td>
<td>574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Define Procurement Agents</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Buyer Managed Transportation Setup</td>
<td>579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Define Self Service Procurement Configuration</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Information Template Descriptive Flexfields</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Catalog Category Hierarchy</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assign Returned Requisition Lines to the Previous Buyer</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How You Assign All Requisition Lines to the Same Buyer</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure Structured One-Time Delivery Addresses</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure Expense Requisition Fulfillment for Agreement-Based Catalog Items from Internal Sources</td>
<td>588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Define Supplier Portal Configuration</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Supplier User Roles</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure Supplier Registration</td>
<td>594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How can I restart approval process for a registration request that is pending approval?</td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Updating Suppliers</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Updating Supplier Profile Entities: Explained</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purging Supplier Interface Records: Explained</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure Taxpayer ID Sharing Across Suppliers: Explained</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supplier Import</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create Suppliers with the Import Suppliers Process</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Using Supplier Import to Create a New Supplier from an Existing Party: Explained</td>
<td>608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify Supplier News Content</td>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Define Sourcing Configuration</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Negotiation Styles</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Attribute Lists</td>
<td>614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Cost Factors</td>
<td>616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Cost Factor Lists</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manage Negotiation Templates</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abstracts</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Define Supplier Qualification Management

- Define Questions, Qualification Areas, and Qualification Models  
  - Using Rule Sets

## Define Procurement Contracts Configuration

- Define Contract Terms Library Configuration
- Contract Terms Library Clauses
- How Contract Terms Templates Work
- How Contract Expert Rules Work

## External Integration

- Web Services
- Files for Import and Export
- External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud

## Importing and Exporting Setup Data

- Exporting and Importing Setup Data: Overview
- Offering Based Export and Import: Explained
- Implementation Project Based Export and Import: Explained
- Configuration Packages: Explained
- Moving Common Reference Objects

## Supply Chain Management Integration

- Set Up Manufacturing
- Set Up Back-to-Back Order Fulfillment
- Set up Drop Shipment Order Fulfillment
- Set Up Configured Item Order Fulfillment
- Externally and Internally Managed Requisitions: Explained
- Purchase Request Web Service in Procurement
- Set Up Internal Material Transfer
Preface

This preface introduces information sources that can help you use the application.

Using Oracle Applications

Using Applications Help

Use help icons ? to access help in the application. If you don’t see any help icons on your page, click your user image or name in the global header and select Show Help Icons. Not all pages have help icons. You can also access Oracle Applications Help.

Watch: This video tutorial shows you how to find help and use help features.

You can also read Using Applications Help.

Additional Resources

- **Community**: Use Oracle Cloud Customer Connect to get information from experts at Oracle, the partner community, and other users.
- **Guides and Videos**: Go to the Oracle Help Center to find guides and videos.
- **Training**: Take courses on Oracle Cloud from Oracle University.

Conventions

The following table explains the text conventions used in this guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>boldface</strong></td>
<td>Boldface type indicates user interface elements, navigation paths, or values you enter or select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monospace</strong></td>
<td>Monospace type indicates file, folder, and directory names, code examples, commands, and URLs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>Greater than symbol separates elements in a navigation path.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle’s commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website.

Videos included in this guide are provided as a media alternative for text-based help topics also available in this guide.
Contacting Oracle

Access to Oracle Support
Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit My Oracle Support or visit Accessible Oracle Support if you are hearing impaired.

Comments and Suggestions
Please give us feedback about Oracle Applications Help and guides! You can send an e-mail to: oracle_fusion_applications_help_ww_grp@oracle.com.
1 **Overview**

Implementing Procurement: Overview

To start an implementation of Oracle Procurement Cloud, you must be assigned the Application Implementation Consultant role (ORA_ASM_APPLICATION_IMPLEMENTATION_CONSULTANT_JOB), and you must opt into the Procurement offering, plus any other offerings that are applicable to your business requirements. Refer to the Oracle Applications Cloud: Using Functional Setup Manager guide to manage the opt-in and setup of your offerings.

Procurement Offering

Use the Procurement offering to manage all aspects of the procurement process, such as creating requisitions and purchase orders, sourcing goods and services, and qualifying suppliers.

The following table lists some of the primary functional areas of the Procurement offering. For the full list of functional areas and features in the offering, use the Associated Features report that you review when you plan the implementation of your offering.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional Area</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchasing Categories</td>
<td>Configure catalogs and category hierarchies, and assign items to the catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppliers</td>
<td>Manage options for suppliers and their data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement Foundation</td>
<td>Define components that are common across procurement processes, including payment terms, carriers, hazard classes, and freight terms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchasing Foundation</td>
<td>Configure key setup options related to your purchasing process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self Service Procurement</td>
<td>Determine how you will manage procurement catalog content and align requisition entry to your organization’s business strategy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier Portal</td>
<td>Configure procurement supplier entry and supplier roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Manage procurement negotiation styles, templates, and rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier Qualification</td>
<td>Define supplier qualification criteria and rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement Contracts</td>
<td>Review and update settings that control how you create and manage enterprise contracts with suppliers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- Oracle Applications Cloud Using Functional Setup Manager
• Planning Your Implementation: Procedure

Purchase and Activation of Oracle Cloud Application Services

Purchase and activate Oracle Cloud Application Services from the Oracle Cloud web site, https://cloud.oracle.com. The whole process involves:

• Requesting and activating trial subscriptions.
• Purchasing and activating your services.
• Verifying that the services are activated, monitoring the services, and performing other administrative tasks.

Purchasing and activating any Oracle Cloud service is described in the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide. Many administrative tasks are covered in the Oracle Cloud: Managing and Monitoring Oracle Cloud guide. All of the following references in this section point to one of these guides.

⚠️ Note: Not everything in these guides is relevant to Oracle Cloud Application Services, for example details about Oracle Java Cloud Service and Oracle Database Cloud Service.

Terminology and User Roles

• Before you proceed, you should understand terms that are used in documentation about Oracle Cloud. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.
  See: Oracle Cloud Terminology

• You should also be familiar with roles for users of the Oracle Cloud web site or of the actual service. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.
  See: Oracle Cloud User Roles and Privileges

Requesting and Activating Trial Subscriptions

• Oracle Cloud Application Services are available through free trial subscriptions. After you request trial subscriptions, you activate, monitor, and manage the services for use before purchase. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.
  See: Overview of Subscribing to an Oracle Cloud Service Trial

Purchasing and Activating Services

• Your buyer or an Oracle sales representative orders a cloud service and specifies information about the account administrator during the ordering process. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.
  See: Buy an Oracle Cloud Subscription

• The account administrator receives an e-mail with a link to activate the service. As part of activation, the account administrator provides information about the administrator who performs the functions of both the service
administrator and the identity domain administrator. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.

See: Activate Your Order from Your Welcome Email

Next Steps

- The administrator who was identified during the activation process:
  - Verifies that the service is activated. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Getting Started with Oracle Cloud guide.
    See: Verifying That Your Services Are Ready
  - Manages and monitors the service. Refer to the Oracle Cloud: Managing and Monitoring Oracle Cloud guide.
    See: My Account Administration
    See: Performing Service-Specific Tasks
  - Optionally create initial administrator and implementation users before enterprise structures setup.
    - Alternatively, the administrator sets up enterprise structures and then creates service users, including functional implementors.
  - Functional implementors perform configuration and setup steps.
  - Developers can add features to extend the application.
2 Getting Started with a Procurement Rapid Implementation

Get Started with Your Procurement Rapid Implementation

Use the procurement rapid implementation task list to implement the Procurement offering if your organization has simple setup requirements. The task list reduces the number of tasks to those that are required or commonly used.

You can use the procurement rapid implementation task list for many types of procurement offering configurations. For example, to implement a Procure to Pay process, or for standalone implementations of Oracle Fusion Sourcing or Oracle Fusion Supplier Qualification.

Information covered in this topic includes:

- Creating a procurement rapid implementation task list
- Using the tasks in the rapid implementation task list

To create a procurement rapid implementation task list:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, click the Tasks tab and select Manage Implementation Projects.
2. On the Implementation Projects page, in the Search Results section, click the Create icon.
3. On the Create Implementation Project page, enter the basic information for the project, and then click Next.
4. On the Create Implementation Project: Select Offerings to Implement page, do not select an offering. Click Save and Open Project.
5. On the Implement Project page, in the Task Lists and Tasks section, click the Select and Add icon.
6. In the Select and Add: Task Lists and Tasks dialog box, search for and apply the Define Procurement Configuration for Rapid Implementation task list. Then click Done.
8. Review the included task lists and tasks.
9. Remove task lists from the project for any optional modules or features not in your implementation. You can also remove or add individual tasks to meet the specific requirements of your implementation.

This table lists and describes the main rapid implementation task lists and tasks for setting up enterprise structures and common procurement configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task List or Task Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation</td>
<td>Two versions of this task list are provided. One is for rapid implementations where the Purchasing optional module is included. The other is for implementations when Purchasing is excluded. Select the one which applies for your implementation, and remove the version which does not apply. In the version including Purchasing, you can use spreadsheet upload utilities for business units, legal entities, chart of accounts, banking structures, and more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Common Procurement Configuration for Rapid Implementation</td>
<td>Use this task list for all rapid implementations. It includes setup tasks used across all the Oracle Fusion Procurement applications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use this task list to perform the following tasks, and more:

- Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement
- Define Supplier Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Basic Catalogs for Procurement Rapid Implementation

Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement

Use this task to run an automated process that performs several enterprise structure setup tasks.

Define Procurement Security Configuration for Rapid Implementation

Use this task list for all rapid implementations. Use it to define application users, assign them roles, and define procurement agents.

Use the following task lists to configure the applicable optional modules for your rapid implementation:

- Define Purchasing Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Self-Service Procurement Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Supplier Portal Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Sourcing Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Supplier Qualification Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Procurement Contract Terms Configuration for Rapid Implementation
- Define Invoicing and Payments Configuration for Rapid Implementation

**Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation: Overview**

When you perform a procurement rapid implementation, there are two task lists to select from for configuring enterprise structures. The two versions vary by either including or excluding purchasing-related tasks. Use the version that is most suitable for your implementation, depending on whether you are including or excluding the Purchasing optional module.

**Task List: Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation, including Purchasing**

Select this task list when your organization is implementing the Purchasing optional module. Use it to complete tasks for configuring legal and financial reporting structures to support procurement processes. The task list includes spreadsheet upload tasks to help define these enterprise structure configurations.

This table lists the spreadsheet upload tasks you can use to define enterprise structures in your rapid implementation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheet</td>
<td>Chart of accounts, accounting calendar, ledgers and ledger configuration. Legal addresses, legal entity and legal entity registrations, assigning legal entities to ledgers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Task List: Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation, excluding Purchasing

Select this task list when your organization is not implementing the Purchasing optional module. For example, when you are performing standalone implementations of Oracle Fusion Sourcing or Oracle Fusion Supplier Qualification. Such implementations may not require you to configure financial reporting structures, but still require you to define legal entities with tasks such as:

- Manage Legal Addresses
- Manage Legal Entities
- Manage Legal Entity Registrations

Find the two versions of the Define Enterprise Structure for Procurement Rapid Implementation task lists in the Setup and Maintenance work area. They are under the Define Procurement Configuration for Rapid Implementation task list. To create a procurement rapid implementation task list, see the topic: Getting Started with Your Procurement Rapid Implementation: Procedure.

Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement: Overview

When you perform a procurement rapid implementation, you have the option to use the Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement task. Use it for implementations of small and medium-sized organizations, to create a centralized procurement system for indirect, expense-type purchasing.

Task: Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement

To perform this setup task you run an automated program, the Enterprise Scheduler Service (ESS) scheduled process Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement.

To submit the process, first enter two input parameters: Centralized Procurement Business Unit Name, and Currency.

When you submit the process, the following enterprise structure setup tasks are configured automatically, based on existing enterprise structures set up for the organization:

- Creates a new business unit with the procurement business function, and configures it as a service provider for all other business units in the organization.
- Configures each business unit with the requisitioning business function.
• Creates an item organization, which is the master inventory organization.
• Creates one inventory organization for each of the other business units.
• Configures the inventory organization parameters and receiving parameters for each inventory organization created.
• Creates a workday shift, pattern and schedule.
• For the procurement business unit, creates a common content zone and catalog. Provides users in all requisitioning business units access to all agreements and master items while creating requisitions.
• Creates most commonly used units of measure and their standard conversions.

Find the Configure Basic Enterprise Structure for Procurement task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. The task is under the Define Common Procurement Configuration Rapid Implementation task list. To create a procurement rapid implementation task list, see the topic: Getting Started with Your Procurement Rapid Implementation: Procedure.

Getting Started with Supplier Portal Configuration: Overview

The rapid implementation approach for setting up your Supplier Portal configuration uses only the required and most frequently accessed tasks in the Define Supplier Portal Configuration task list.

You can use the complete set of tasks included in the Define Supplier Portal Configuration task list for ongoing maintenance and to add to your rapid implementation project.

Tasks

The following tasks are associated with defining Supplier Portal configuration using the rapid implementation approach:

1. *Manage Supplier User Roles
2. *Manage Supplier User Role Usages
3. *Configure Supplier Registration

* Required task

Note: Refer to the Oracle Fusion Applications Procurement Implementation Guide for additional details on tasks in the Define Supplier Portal Configuration task list.

Overview of Self Service Procurement

The rapid implementation approach for setting up your Oracle Fusion Procurement configuration uses only the required and most frequently used tasks in the Define Self Service Procurement Configuration task list.

Tasks

These application maintenance tasks are recommended for rapid implementation:

1. *Define Catalog Hierarchy
2. *Create a Local Catalog
3. Create an Information Catalog
4. Define Supplier Content Map Set
5. Create a Content Zone

* Required task
3 Synchronization of Users and Roles from LDAP

User and Role Synchronization: Explained

User accounts for users of Oracle Fusion Applications are maintained in your Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory. The LDAP directory also holds information about roles provisioned to users.

During implementation, any existing information about users and their roles must be copied from the LDAP directory to the Oracle Fusion Applications tables. To copy this information, you use the task Run User and Roles Synchronization Process. This task calls the Retrieve Latest LDAP Changes process. You can perform the task Run User and Roles Synchronization Process from either an implementation project or the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Once the Oracle Fusion Applications tables are initialized with this information, it’s maintained automatically.
4 Define Implementation Users

Manage Users

Overview of Implementation Users

Implementation users perform the setup tasks in Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Cloud and Oracle Supply Chain Management (SCM) Cloud implementation projects. This topic introduces the tasks in the Define Implementation Users task list. You can find more information about implementation users and tasks they perform in the product specific implementation and security guides for your offering.

Create Implementation Users

You must have at least one implementation user. To ensure segregation of critical duties, multiple implementation users are recommended. For example, one implementation user typically performs functional setup tasks and another performs security setup tasks. When you create implementation users, you also assign predefined job roles to them directly. The job roles vary with the tasks that the implementation users perform.

The cloud service administrator creates implementation users.

Related Topics

- Implementation Users
5 Define Currencies and Currency Rates

Manage Currencies

Considerations for Defining Currencies

When creating or editing currencies, consider these points relevant to entering the currency code, date range, or symbol for the currency.

Currency Codes
You can’t change a currency code after you enable the currency, even if you later disable that currency.

Date Ranges
You can enter transactions denominated in the currency only for the dates within the specified range. If you don’t enter a start date, then the currency is valid immediately. If you don’t enter an end date, then the currency is valid indefinitely.

Symbols
Some applications support displaying currency symbols. You may enter the symbol associated with a currency so that it appears along with the amount.

Euro Currency Derivation

Use the Derivation Type, Derivation Factor, and Derivation Effective Date fields to define the relationship between the official currency (Euro) of the European Monetary Union (EMU) and the national currencies of EMU member states. For each EMU currency, you define its Euro-to-EMU fixed conversion rate and the effective starting date. If you have to use a different currency for Euro, you can disable the predefined currency and create a new one.

Derivation Type
The Euro currency derivation type is used only for the Euro, and the Euro derived derivation type identifies national currencies of EMU member states. All other currencies don’t have derivation types.

Derivation Factor
The derivation factor is the fixed conversion rate by which you multiply one Euro to derive the equivalent EMU currency amount. The Euro currency itself must not have a derivation factor.

Derivation Effective Date
The derivation effective date is the date on which the relationship between the EMU currency and the Euro begins.
FAQs for Manage Currencies

When do I create or enable currencies?
Create or enable any currency for displaying monetary amounts, assigning currency to ledgers, entering transactions, recording balances, or for any reporting purpose. All currencies listed in the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 4217 standard are supported.
The default currency is set to United States Dollar (USD).

What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?
Precision refers to the number of digits placed after the decimal point used in regular currency transactions. For example, USD would have 2 as the precision value for transactional amounts, such as $1.00.
Extended precision is the number of digits placed after the decimal point and must be greater than or equal to the precision value. For calculations requiring greater precision, you can enter an extended precision value such as 3 or 4. That would result in the currency appearing as $1.279 or $1.2793.
Minimum accountable unit is the smallest denomination for the currency. For example, for USD that would be .01 for a cent.
In Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Currencies task to set these values for a currency.

What's a statistical unit currency type?
The statistical unit currency type denotes the Statistical (STAT) currency used to record financial statistics in the financial reports, allocation formulas, and other calculations.

Manage Conversion Rate Types

Guidelines for Creating Conversion Rate Types
Maintain different conversion rates between currencies for the same period using conversion rate types. The following conversion rate types are predefined:

- Spot
- Corporate
- User
- Fixed

You can use different rate types for different business needs. During journal entry, the conversion rate is provided automatically based on the selected conversion rate type and currency, unless the rate type is User. For User rate types, you must enter a conversion rate. You can define additional rate types as needed. Set your most frequently used rate type as the default. Conversion rate types can't be deleted.

Assign conversion rate types to automatically populate the associated rate for your period average and period end rates for the ledger. For example, you can assign the conversion rate type of Spot to populate period average rates, and the
conversion rate type of **Corporate** to populate period end rates. Period average and period end rates are used in translation of account balances.

Conversion rate types are used to automatically assign a rate when you perform the following accounting functions:

- Convert foreign currency journal amounts to ledger currency equivalents.
- Convert journal amounts from source ledgers to reporting currencies or secondary ledgers.
- Run revaluation or translation processes.

When creating conversion rates, decide whether to:

- Enforce inverse relationships
- Select pivot currencies
- Select contra currencies
- Enable cross rates and allow cross-rate overrides
- Maintain cross-rate rules

### Enforce Inverse Relationships

The **Enforce Inverse Relationship** option indicates whether to enforce the automatic calculation of inverse conversion rates when defining daily rates. The following table describes the impact of selecting or not selecting the option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selected</td>
<td>When you enter a daily rate to convert currency A to currency B, the inverse rate of currency B to currency A is automatically calculated and entered in the adjacent column. If either rate is changed, the application automatically recalculates the other rate. You can update the application calculated inverse rate, but once you do, the related rate is updated. The option enforces the inverse relationship is maintained but doesn’t prevent you from updating the rates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not Selected</td>
<td>The inverse rate is calculated, but you can change the rate and update the daily rates table without the corresponding rate being updated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Select Pivot Currencies

Select a pivot currency that is commonly used in your currency conversions. A pivot currency is the central currency that interacts with contra currencies. For example, you set up a daily rate between the US dollar (USD) and the Euro currency (EUR) and another between the USD and the Canadian dollar (CAD). USD is the pivot currency in creating a rate between EUR and CAD. EUR and CAD are the contra currencies. Select the pivot currency from the list of values which contains those currencies that are enabled, effective, and not a statistical (STAT) currency. The description of the pivot currency is populated automatically based on the currency definition.

If you want the application to create cross rates against a base currency, define the base currency as the pivot currency. Selected pivot currencies can be changed in the Rate Types page.

### Select Contra Currencies

Select currencies available on the list of values as contra currencies. The available currencies are those currencies which are enabled, effective, not STAT currency, and not the pivot currency selected earlier. The description of the contra currency is populated automatically based on the currency definition. Add or delete contra currencies in the Contra Currencies region of the Rate Types page.
Implementing Procurement

Chapter 5

Define Currencies and Currency Rates

Enable Cross Rates and Allow Cross Rate Overrides

Check the Enable Cross Rates check box to calculate conversion rates based on defined currency rate relationships. General Ledger calculates cross rates based on your defined cross rate rules. Associate your cross rate rules with a conversion rate type, pivot currency, and contra currencies. Cross rates facilitate the creation of daily rates by automatically creating the rates between contra currencies based on their relationship to a pivot currency. If the Enable Cross Rates option is deselected after entering contra currencies, the application stops calculating cross rates going forward for that particular rate type. All the earlier calculated cross rates for that rate type remain in the database unless you manually delete them.

For example, if you have daily rates defined for the pivot currency, USD to the contra currency, EUR, and USD to another contra currency, CAD, the application automatically creates the rates between EUR to CAD and CAD to EUR. You don’t have to manually define the EUR to CAD and CAD to EUR rates.

Select the Allow Cross Rates Override check box to permit your users to override application generated cross rates. If you accept the default of not selected, the application generated cross rates cannot be overridden.

Maintain Cross Rate Rules

Define or update your cross rate rules at any time by adding or removing contra currency assignments. Add a contra currency to a cross rate rule and run the Daily Rates Import and Calculation process to generate the new rates. If you remove a cross rate rule or a contra currency from a rule, any cross rates generated previously for that contra currency remain unless you manually delete them. Changes to the rule aren’t retroactive and don’t affect previously stored cross rates. The Cross Rate process generates as many rates as possible and skips currencies where one component of the set is missing.

> Note: With a defined web service that extracts daily currency conversion rates from external services, for example Reuters, currency conversion rates are automatically updated for the daily rates and all cross currency relationships.

Related Topics

- What’s the difference between calendar and fiscal period naming

Examples of Using Conversion Rate Types in a Journal

The four predefined conversion rate types are:

- Spot
- Corporate
- User
- Fixed

Scenario

You are the general ledger accountant for Vision US Inc. You are entering a journal entry to capture three transactions that were transacted in three different foreign currencies.

- Canadian Dollar CAD: A stable currency
- Mexican Peso MXP: A fluctuating currency
- Hong Kong Dollar HKD: An infrequently used currency
You enter two journal lines with accounts and amounts for each foreign currency transaction. Based on your company procedures, you select the rate type to populate the rate for Corporate and Spot rate types from your daily rates table. You manually enter the current rate for the User rate type.

The following table lists the currency, the rate type that you select, and the reasons for the rate type selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selected Currency</th>
<th>Selected Rate Type</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Corporate</td>
<td>Entered a periodic type of transaction. Your company has established a daily rate to use for the entire month across divisions for all transactions in Canadian dollars, a stable currency that fluctuates only slightly over the month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MXP</td>
<td>Spot</td>
<td>Entered a periodic type of transaction. Your company enters daily rates each day for the Mexican peso because the currency is unstable and fluctuates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HKD</td>
<td>User</td>
<td>Entered a one time transaction. Your company does not maintain daily rates for Hong Kong dollars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Your company does not currently use the Fixed rate type. From January 1, 1999, the conversion rate of the French franc FRF against the Euro EUR was a fixed rate of 1 EUR to 6.55957 FRF. Your French operations were started in 2007, so you maintain all your French business records in the Euro.

FAQs for Manage Conversion Rate Types

What's the difference between spot, corporate, user, and fixed rate types?

Spot, corporate, user, and fixed conversion rate types differ based on fluctuations of the entered foreign currency and your company procedures for maintaining daily rates.

- **Spot**: For currencies with fluctuating conversion rates, or when exact currency conversion is needed.
- **Corporate**: For setting a standard rate across your organization for a stable currency.
- **User**: For infrequent entries where daily rates for the entered foreign currency aren’t set up.
- **Fixed**: For rates where the conversion is constant between two currencies.

If you have infrequent foreign currency transactions, the User rate type can simplify currency maintenance. The User rate type can also provide an accurate conversion rate on the date of the transaction.

Manage Daily Rates
Enter Daily Rates Using the Daily Rates Spreadsheet

You are required to enter the daily rates for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for 5 days.

To load rates using the Create Daily Rates Spreadsheet, you must first install Oracle ADF Desktop Integration client software. Oracle ADF Desktop Integration is an Excel add-in that enables desktop integration with Microsoft Excel workbooks. You can download the installation files from the Tools work area by selecting Download Desktop Integration Installer.

Entering Daily Rates

1. From the General Accounting work area, select the Period Close link.
2. From the Tasks panel, click the Manage Currency Rates link.
   - Use the Currency Rates Manager page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.
3. Click the Daily Rates tab.
   - Use the Daily Rates tab to review and enter currency rates.
4. Click the Create in Spreadsheet button.
   - Use the Create Daily Rates spreadsheet to enter daily rates in a template that you can save and reuse.
5. Click in the From Currency field. Select the GBP - Pound Sterling list item.
6. Click in the To Currency field. Select the USD - US Dollar list item.
7. Click in the Conversion Rate field. Select the Spot list item.
8. Click in the From Conversion Date field. Enter a valid value: 10/2/2017.
9. Click in the To Conversion Date field. Enter a valid value: 10/6/2017.
10. Click in the Conversion Rate field. Enter a valid value: 1.6.
11. Click Submit and click OK twice.
12. Review the Record Status column to verify that all rows were inserted successfully.
13. Save the template to use to enter daily rates frequently. You can save the spreadsheet to a local drive or a shared network drive.
14. Optionally, edit the rates from the Daily Rates user interface or resubmit the spreadsheet.

Related Topics

- Guidelines for Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks

Update Currency Rates

You are required to change today’s daily rates that were already entered. The rates you are changing are for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for your company InFusion America.

Currency conversion rates were entered by an automatic load to the Daily Rates table. They can also be entered through a spreadsheet.

Updating Currency Rates

1. Navigate to the Period Close work area.
   - Use the Period Close work area to link to close processes and currency process.
2. Click the Manage Currency Rates link.

   Use the Currency Rates Manager page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.

3. Click the Daily Rates tab.

   Use the Daily Rates tab to review and enter currency rates.

4. Click the From Currency list. Select the GBP - Pound Sterling list item.

5. Click the To Currency list. Select the USD - US Dollar list item.

6. Enter the dates for the daily rates that you are changing. Enter today's date.

7. Click the Rate Type list. Select the Spot list item.

8. Click the Search button.

9. Click in the Rate field. Enter the new rate of 1.7 in the Rate field.

10. Click in the Inverse Rate field. Enter the new inverse rate of 0.58822 in the Inverse Rate field.

11. Click the Save button.

Related Topics

• Guidelines for Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks
6 Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

Overview

Oracle Fusion Applications have been designed to ensure your enterprise can be modeled to meet legal and management objectives. The decisions about your implementation of Oracle Fusion Applications are affected by your:

- Industry
- Business unit requirements for autonomy
- Business and accounting policies
- Business functions performed by business units and optionally, centralized in shared service centers
- Locations of facilities

Every enterprise has three fundamental structures that describe its operations and provide a basis for reporting.

- Legal
- Managerial
- Functional

In Oracle Fusion, these structures are implemented using the chart of accounts and organization hierarchies. Many alternative hierarchies can be implemented and used for reporting. You are likely to have one primary structure that organizes your business into:

- Divisions
- Business Units
- Departments

Align these structures with your strategic objectives.
This figure illustrates a grid with Business Axis, representing the enterprise division, Legal Axis representing the companies, and the Functional Axis representing the business functions.

Legal Structure

The figure illustrates a typical group of legal entities, operating various business and functional organizations. Your ability to buy and sell, own, and employ comes from your charter in the legal system. A corporation is:

- A distinct legal entity from its owners and managers.
Owned by its shareholders, who may be individuals or other corporations.

Many other kinds of legal entities exist, such as sole proprietorships, partnerships, and government agencies.

A legally recognized entity can own and trade assets and employ people in the jurisdiction in which the entity is registered. When granted these privileges, legal entities are also assigned responsibilities to:

- Account for themselves to the public through statutory and external reporting.
- Comply with legislation and regulations.
- Pay income and transaction taxes.
- Process value added tax (VAT) collection on behalf of the taxing authority.

Many large enterprises isolate risk and optimize taxes by incorporating subsidiaries. They create legal entities to facilitate legal compliance, segregate operations, optimize taxes, complete contractual relationships, and isolate risk. Enterprises use legal entities to establish their enterprise’s identity within the laws of each country in which their enterprise operates.

The figure illustrates:

- A separate card represents a series of registered companies.
- Each company, including the public holding company, InFusion America, must be registered in the countries where they do business.
- Each company contributes to various divisions created for purposes of management reporting. These are shown as vertical columns on each card.

For example, a group might have a separate company for each business in the United States (US), but have its United Kingdom (UK) legal entity represent all businesses in that country.

The divisions are linked across the cards so that a business can appear on some or all of the cards. For example, the air quality monitoring systems business might be operated by the US, UK, and France companies. The list of business divisions is on the Business Axis.

Each company’s card is also horizontally striped by functional groups, such as the sales team and the finance team. This functional list is called the Functional Axis. The overall image suggests that information might, at a minimum, be tracked by company, business, division, and function in a group environment. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the legal structure is implemented using legal entities.

Management Structure

Successfully managing multiple businesses requires that you segregate them by their strategic objectives, and measure their results. Although related to your legal structure, the business organizational hierarchies do not have to be reflected directly in the legal structure of the enterprise. The management structure can include divisions, subdivisions, lines of business, strategic business units, profit, and cost centers. In the figure, the management structure is shown on the Business Axis. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the management structure is implemented using divisions and business units as well as being reflected in the chart of accounts.

Functional Structure

Straddling the legal and business organizations is a functional organization structured around people and their competencies. For example, sales, manufacturing, and service teams are functional organizations. This functional structure is represented by the Functional Axis in the figure. You reflect the efforts and expenses of your functional organizations directly on the income
Organizations must manage and report revenues, cost of sales, and functional expenses such as research and development and selling, general, and administrative expenses. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the functional structure is implemented using departments and organizations, including sales, marketing, project, cost, and inventory organizations.

Enterprise Structures Business Process Model

In Oracle Fusion Applications, the Enterprise Performance and Planning Business Process Model illustrates the major implementation tasks that you perform to create your enterprise structures. This process includes:

- Set Up Enterprise Structures business process, which consists of implementation activities that span many product families.
- Information Technology, a second Business Process Model which contains the Set Up Information Technology Management business process.
- Define Reference Data Sharing, which is one of the activities in this business process and is important in the implementation of the enterprise structures. This activity creates the mechanism to share reference data sets across multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses, reducing the administrative burden and decreasing the time to implement.
The following figure and tablet describe the Business Process Model structures and activities.

The table describes each BPM activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BPM Activities</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise</td>
<td>Define the enterprise to get the name of the deploying enterprise and the location of the headquarters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Enterprise Structures</td>
<td>Define enterprise structures to represent an organization with one or more legal entities. Define organizations to represent each area of business within the enterprise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

### BPM Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BPM Activities</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities</td>
<td>Define information for governing bodies that operate within a jurisdiction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Legal Entities</td>
<td>Define legal entities and legal reporting units for business activities handled by the Oracle Fusion Applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Business Units</td>
<td>Define business units of an enterprise to perform one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Financial Reporting Structures</td>
<td>Define financial reporting structures, including organization structures, charts of accounts, organizational hierarchies, calendars, currencies and rates, ledgers, and document sequences which are used in organizing the financial data of a company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Chart of Accounts</td>
<td>Define chart of accounts including hierarchies and values to enable tracking of financial transactions and reporting at legal entity, cost center, account, and other segment levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Ledgers</td>
<td>Define the primary accounting ledger and any secondary ledgers that provide an alternative accounting representation of the financial data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Accounting Configurations</td>
<td>Define the accounting configuration that serves as a framework for how financial records are maintained for an organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Facilities</td>
<td>Define your manufacturing and storage facilities as Inventory Organizations if Oracle Fusion tracks inventory balances there and Item Organizations if Oracle Fusion only tracks the items used in the facility but not the balances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define Reference Data Sharing</td>
<td>Define how reference data in the applications is partitioned and shared.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Some product-specific implementation activities are not listed here and depend on the applications you are implementing. For example, you can implement Define Enterprise Structures for Human Capital Management, Project Management, and Sales Management.

### Guidelines for Configuring Global Enterprises

Start your global enterprise structure configuration by discussing what your organization’s reporting needs are and how to represent those needs in the Oracle Fusion Applications. The following are some questions and points to consider as you design your global enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion.

- Enterprise Configuration
- Business Unit Management
- Security Structure
- Compliance Requirements
Enterprise Configuration

- What is the level of configuration needed to achieve the reporting and accounting requirements?
- What components of your enterprise do you need to report on separately?
- Which components can be represented by building a hierarchy of values to provide reporting at both detail and summary levels?
- Where are you on the spectrum of centralization versus decentralization?

Business Unit Management

- What reporting do I need by business unit?
- How can you set up your departments or business unit accounts to achieve departmental hierarchies that report accurately on your lines of business?
- What reporting do you need to support the managers of your business units, and the executives who measure them?
- How often are business unit results aggregated?
- What level of reporting detail is required across business units?

Security Structure

- What level of security and access is allowed?
- Are business unit managers and the people that report to them secured to transactions within their own business unit?
- Are the transactions for their business unit largely performed by a corporate department or shared service center?

Compliance Requirements

- How do you comply with your corporate external reporting requirements and local statutory reporting requirements?
- Do you tend to prefer a corporate first or an autonomous local approach?
- Where are you on a spectrum of centralization, very centralized or decentralized?

Model Your Enterprise Management Structure

This example uses a fictitious global company to demonstrate the analysis that can occur during the enterprise structure configuration planning process.

Scenario

Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion
General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers. You are chairing a committee to discuss creation of a model for your global enterprise structure including both your US and UK operations.

InFusion Corporation

InFusion Corporation has 400 plus employees and revenue of 120 million US dollars. Your product line includes all the components to build and maintain air quality monitoring applications for homes and businesses. You have two distribution centers and three warehouses that share a common item master in the US and UK. Your financial services organization provides funding to your customers for the initial costs of these applications.

Analysis

The following are elements you must consider in creating your model for your global enterprise structure.

- Your company is required to report using US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) standards and UK Statements of Standard Accounting Practice and Financial Reporting Standards. How many ledgers do you want to achieve proper statutory reporting?
- Your managers need reports that show profit and loss (revenue and expenses) for their lines of business. Do you use business units and balancing segments to represent your divisions and businesses? Do you secure data by two segments in your chart of accounts which represents each department and legal entity? Or do you use one segment that represents both to produce useful, but confidential management reports?
- Your corporate management requires reports showing total organizational performance with drill-down capability to the supporting details. Do you need multiple balancing segment hierarchies to achieve proper rollup of balances for reporting requirements?
- Your company has all administrative, account payables, procurement, and Human Resources functions performed at their corporate headquarters. Do you need one or more business units in which to perform all these functions? How is your shared service center configured?

Global Enterprise Structure Model

The following figure and table summarize the model that your committee has designed and uses numeric values to provide a sample representation of your structure. The model includes the following recommendations:

- Creation of three separate ledgers representing your separate legal entities:
  - InFusion America Inc.
  - InFusion Financial Services Inc.
  - InFusion UK Services Ltd.
- Consolidation of results for application components, installations, and maintenance product lines across the enterprise
- All UK general and administrative costs processed at the UK headquarters
- US Systems’ general and administrative costs processed at US Corporate headquarters
• US Financial Services maintains its own payables and receivables departments
In this chart, the green globe stands for required and gold globe stands for optional setup. The following statements expand on the data in the chart.

- The enterprise is required because it serves as an umbrella for the entire implementation. All organizations are created within an enterprise.
- Legal entities are also required. They can be optionally mapped to balancing segment values or represented by ledgers. Mapping balancing segment values to legal entities is required if you plan to use the intercompany functionality. The InFusion Corporation is a legal entity but is not discussed in this example.
- At least one ledger is required in an implementation in which you record your accounting transactions.
- Business units are also required because financial transactions are processed in business units.
- A shared service center is optional, but if used, must be a business unit.
- Divisions are optional and can be represented with a hierarchy of cost centers or by a second balancing segment value.
- Departments are required because they track your employees.
- Optionally, add an item master organization and inventory organizations if you are tracking your inventory transactions in Oracle Fusion Applications.
Note: Some Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management implementations do not require recording accounting transactions and therefore, do not require a ledger.

Essbase Character and Word Limitations

The following is a comprehensive list of character and word limitations that apply to Essbase. All of the limitations apply to all of the Oracle General Ledger configurations summarized in the table. The following table shows how the General Ledger configuration maps to Essbase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Ledger Configuration</th>
<th>Maps to Essbase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chart of Account Name</td>
<td>Cube Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart of Account Segment Name</td>
<td>Dimension Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart of Accounts Segment Value</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart of Accounts Segment Value Description</td>
<td>Alias for Member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree and Tree Version Name</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Ledger Name</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Ledger Name</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Currency</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledger Set Name</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Calendar Period Names</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Accounting Period Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scenario Name Defined in Predefined Value Set Called Accounting Scenario</td>
<td>Dimension Member Name in Scenario Dimension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even if case sensitivity is enabled in an aggregate storage outline for which duplicate member names is enabled, do not use matching dimension names with only case differences. For example, do not:

- Name two dimensions Product and product.
- Use quotation marks or brackets.
- Use tabs in dimension, member, or alias names.
- Use accent characters.
- Use the characters for dimension or member names.
Restricted Characters

The following table lists the characters that are restricted and can’t be used in dimension, member, or alias names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>ampersand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>at sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>backslash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{</td>
<td>brace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>,</td>
<td>comma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>dash, hyphen, or minus sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>equal sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>less than sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(</td>
<td>parentheses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>)</td>
<td>period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>plus sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'</td>
<td>single quotation mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_</td>
<td>underscore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the accounting calendar period names, you can use a hyphen or an underscore in the middle of an accounting calendar period name. For example: Jan-15 or Adj_Dec-15 can be used successfully.

Other Restrictions

- Don’t place spaces at the beginning or end of names. Essbase ignores such spaces.
Don’t use the following types of words as dimension or member names:

- Calculation script commands, operators, and keywords.
- Report writer commands.
- Function names and function arguments.
- Names of other dimensions and members (unless the member is shared).
- Generation names, level names, and aliases in the database.

The following table lists additional words that should not be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List 1</th>
<th>List 2</th>
<th>List 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>ASSIGN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVERAGE</td>
<td>CALC</td>
<td>CALCMBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPYFORWARD</td>
<td>CROSSDIM</td>
<td>CURMBRNAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>DIMNAME</td>
<td>DIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYNAMIC</td>
<td>EMPTYPARM</td>
<td>EQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQOP</td>
<td>EXCEPT</td>
<td>EXP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPERROR</td>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>FUNCTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>GENRANGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROUP</td>
<td>GT</td>
<td>ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDERROR</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVELRANGE</td>
<td>LOOPBLOCK</td>
<td>LOOPPARMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT</td>
<td>MBR</td>
<td>MBRNAME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBRONLY</td>
<td>MINUS</td>
<td>MISSING, #MISSING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL</td>
<td>MULOP</td>
<td>NE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NON</td>
<td>NONINPUT</td>
<td>NOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>PAREN</td>
<td>PARENPARM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERCENT</td>
<td>PLUS</td>
<td>RELOP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table lists additional words that should not be used.
Define Initial Configuration with the Enterprise Structures Configurator

Establishing Enterprise Structures Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Explained

The Enterprise Structures Configurator is an interview-based tool that guides you through the process of setting up a basic enterprise structure. By answering questions about your enterprise, the tool creates a structure of divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets that reflects your enterprise structure. After you create your enterprise structure, you also follow a guided process to determine whether to use positions, and whether to set up additional attributes for jobs and positions. After you define your enterprise structure and your job and position structures, you can review them, make any necessary changes, and then load the final configuration.
This figure illustrates the process to configure your enterprise using the Enterprise Structures Configurator.

To be able to use the Enterprise Structures Configurator, you must select the Enterprise Structures Guided Flow feature for your offerings on the Configure Offerings page in the Setup and Maintenance work area. If you don’t select this feature, then you must set up your enterprise structure using individual tasks provided elsewhere in the offerings, and you can’t create multiple configurations to compare different scenarios.

**Establish Enterprise Structures**

To define your enterprise structures, use the guided flow within the Establish Enterprise Structures task to enter basic information about your enterprise, such as the primary industry. You then create divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets. The Establish Enterprise Structures task enables you to create multiple enterprise configurations so that you can compare different scenarios. Until you load a configuration, you can continue to create and edit multiple configurations until you arrive at one that best suits your enterprise.

**Establish Job and Position Structures**

You also use a guided process to determine whether you want to use jobs only, or jobs and positions. The primary industry that you select in the Establish Enterprise Structures task provides the application with enough information to make an
initial recommendation. You can either accept the recommendation, or you can answer additional questions about how you manage people in your enterprise, and then make a selection. After you select whether to use jobs or positions, you are prompted to set up a descriptive flexfield structure for jobs, and for positions if applicable. Descriptive flexfields enable you to get more information when you create jobs and positions.

### Review Configuration
You can view a result of the interview process prior to loading the configuration. The review results, show the divisions, legal entities, business units, reference data sets, and the management reporting structure that the application will create when you load the configuration.

### Load Configuration
You can load only one configuration. When you load a configuration, the application creates the divisions, legal entities, business units, and so on. After you load the configuration, you then use individual tasks to edit, add, and delete enterprise structures.

### Rolling Back an Enterprise Structure Configuration: Explained
The Enterprise Structures Configurator (ESC) provides the ability to roll back an enterprise configuration in the following circumstances:

#### Roll Back a Configuration Manually
You can manually roll back an enterprise configuration after loading it, for example, because you decide you do not want to use it. Clicking the Roll Back Configuration button on the Manage Enterprise Configuration page rolls back any enterprise structures that were created as a part of loading the configuration.

#### Roll Back a Configuration Automatically
If an error occurs during the process of loading the configuration, then the application automatically rolls back any enterprise structures that were created before the error was encountered.

### Design an Enterprise Configuration
This example illustrates how to set up an enterprise based on a global company operating mainly in the US and the UK with a single primary industry.

#### Scenario
InFusion Corporation is a multinational enterprise in the high technology industry with product lines that include all the components that are required to build and maintain air quality monitoring systems for homes and businesses. Its primary locations are in the US and the UK, but it has smaller outlets in France, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates (UAE).

#### Enterprise Details
In the US, InFusion employs 400 people and has company revenue of 120 million US dollars. Outside the US, InFusion employs 200 people and has revenue of 60 million US dollars.
Analysis

InFusion requires three divisions.

- The US division covers the US locations.
- The Europe division covers UK and France.
- Saudi Arabia and the UAE are covered by the Middle East division.

InFusion requires legal entities with legal employers, payroll statutory units, tax reporting units, and legislative data groups for the US, UK, France, Saudi Arabia, and UAE, to employ and pay its workers in those countries.

InFusion requires a number of departments across the enterprise for each area of business, such as sales and marketing, and a number of cost centers to track and report on the costs of those departments.

InFusion has general managers responsible for business units within each country. Those business units may share reference data. Some reference data can be defined within a reference data set that multiple business units may subscribe to. Business units are also required for financial purposes. Financial transactions are always processed within a business unit.

Resulting Enterprise Configuration

Based on this analysis, InFusion requires an enterprise with multiple divisions, ledgers, legal employers, payroll statutory units, tax reporting units, legislative data groups, departments, cost centers, and business units.
This figure illustrates the enterprise configuration that results from the analysis of InFusion Corporation.

### Divisions

Managing multiple businesses requires that you segregate them by their strategic objectives and measure their results.
Responsibility to reach objectives can be delegated along the management structure. Although related to your legal structure, the business organizational hierarchies do not reflect directly the legal structure of the enterprise. The management entities and structure can include:

- Divisions and subdivisions
- Lines of business
- Other strategic business units
- Their own revenue and cost centers

These organizations can be included in many alternative hierarchies and used for reporting, as long as they have representation in the chart of accounts.

**Divisions**

A division refers to a business-oriented subdivision within an enterprise, in which each division organizes itself differently to deliver products and services or address different markets. A division can operate in one or more countries, and can be many companies or parts of different companies that are represented by business units.

A division is a profit center or grouping of profit and cost centers, where the division manager is responsible for achieving business goals including profits. A division can be responsible for a share of the company’s existing product lines or for a separate business. Managers of divisions may also have return on investment goals requiring tracking of the assets and liabilities of the division. The division manager generally reports to a corporate executive.

By definition a division can be represented in the chart of accounts. Companies can use product lines, brands, or geographies as their divisions: their choice represents the primary organizing principle of the enterprise.

Historically, divisions were implemented as a node in a hierarchy of segment values. For example, Oracle E-Business Suite has only one balancing segment, and often the division and legal entity are combined into a single segment where each value stands for both division and legal entity.

**Use of Divisions in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM)**

Divisions are used in HCM to define the management organization hierarchy, using the generic organization hierarchy. This hierarchy can be used to create organization-based security profiles.

**Overview**

A legal entity is a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation.

Legal entities have the following rights and responsibilities to:

- Own property
- Trade
- Repay debt
- Account for themselves to regulators, taxation authorities, and owners according to rules specified in the relevant legislation

Their rights and responsibilities may be enforced through the judicial system. Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, expenses and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.
A legal entity has responsibility for elements of your enterprise for the following reasons:

- Facilitating local compliance
- Minimizing the enterprise’s tax liability
- Preparing for acquisitions or disposals of parts of the enterprise
- Isolating one area of the business from risks in another area. For example, your enterprise develops property and also leases properties. You could operate the property development business as a separate legal entity to limit risk to your leasing business.

The Role of Your Legal Entities

In configuring your enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion Applications, the contracting party on any transaction is always the legal entity. Individual legal entities:

- Own the assets of the enterprise
- Record sales and pay taxes on those sales
- Make purchases and incur expenses
- Perform other transactions

Legal entities must comply with the regulations of jurisdictions, in which they register. Europe now allows for companies to register in one member country and do business in all member countries, and the US allows for companies to register in one state and do business in all states. To support local reporting requirements, legal reporting units are created and registered. You are required to publish specific and periodic disclosures of your legal entities’ operations based on different jurisdictions’ requirements. Certain annual or more frequent accounting reports are referred to as statutory or external reporting. These reports must be filed with specified national and regulatory authorities. For example, in the United States (US), your publicly owned entities (corporations) are required to file quarterly and annual reports, as well as other periodic reports, with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which enforces statutory reporting requirements for public corporations.

Individual entities privately held or held by public companies do not have to file separately. In other countries, your individual entities do have to file in their own name, as well as at the public group level. Disclosure requirements are diverse. For example, your local entities may have to file locally to comply with local regulations in a local currency, as well as being included in your enterprise's reporting requirements in different currency.

A legal entity can represent all or part of your enterprise’s management framework. For example, if you operate in a large country such as the United Kingdom or Germany, you might incorporate each division in the country as a separate legal entity. In a smaller country, for example Austria, you might use a single legal entity to host all of your business operations across divisions.

Creating Legal Entities in the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Points to Consider

Use the Enterprise Structures Configurator, to create legal entities for your enterprise automatically, based on the countries in which divisions of your business operate, or you can upload a list of legal entities from a spreadsheet.

Automatically Creating Legal Entities

If you are not certain of the number of legal entities that you need, you can create them automatically. To use this option, you first identify all of the countries in which your enterprise operates. The application opens the Map Divisions by Country page, which contains a matrix of the countries that you identified, your enterprise, and the divisions that you created. You select the check boxes where your enterprise and divisions intersect with the countries to identify the legal entities that you want...
the application to create. The enterprise is included for situations where your enterprise operates in a country, acts on behalf of several divisions within the enterprise, and is a legal employer in a country. If you select the enterprise for a country, the application creates a country holding company.

The application automatically creates the legal entities that you select, and identifies them as payroll statutory units and legal employers. For each country that you indicated that your enterprise operates in, and for each country that you created a location for, the application also automatically creates a legislative data group.

Any legal entities that you create automatically cannot be deleted from the Create Legal Entities page within the Enterprise Structures Configurator. You must return to the Map Divisions by Country page and deselect the legal entities that you no longer want.

Example: Creating Legal Entities Automatically

InFusion Corporation is using the ESC to set up its enterprise structure. The corporation has identified two divisions, one for Lighting, and one for Security. The Lighting division operates in Japan and the US, and the Security division operates in the UK and India.

This figure illustrates InFusion Corporation’s enterprise structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Enterprise</th>
<th>InFusion Lighting</th>
<th>InFusion Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Based on the selections made in the preceding table, the ESC creates the following four legal entities:

- InFusion Lighting Japan LE
- InFusion Lighting US LE
- InFusion Security UK LE
- InFusion Security India LE

Creating Legal Entities Using a Spreadsheet

If you have a list of legal entities already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet. To use this option, you first download a spreadsheet template, then add your legal entity information to the spreadsheet, and then upload directly to your enterprise configuration. You can export and import the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

Related Topics

- Guidelines for Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks

Model Legal Entities

Oracle Fusion Applications support the modeling of your legal entities. If you make purchases from or sell to other legal entities, define these other legal entities in your customer and supplier registers. These registers are part of the Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture.

When your legal entities are trading with each other, represent them as legal entities and as customers and suppliers in your customer and supplier registers. Use legal entity relationships to determine which transactions are intercompany and require intercompany accounting. Your legal entities can be identified as legal employers and therefore, are available for use in Human Capital Management (HCM) applications.

Several decisions you should consider when you create legal entities.

- The importance of using legal entity on transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to business units
- Legal entity and its relationship to divisions
- Legal entity and its relationship to ledgers
- Legal entity and its relationship to balancing segments
- Legal entity and its relationship to consolidation rules
- Legal entity and its relationship to intercompany transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to worker assignments and legal employer
- Legal entity and payroll reporting
- Legal reporting units

The Importance of Using Legal Entities on Transactions

All of the assets of the enterprise are owned by individual legal entities. Oracle Fusion Financials allow your users to enter legal entities on transactions that represent a movement in value or obligation.
For example, a sales order creates an obligation on the legal entity that books the order and promises to deliver the goods on the acknowledged date. The creation also creates an obligation on the purchaser to receive and pay for those goods. Contract law in most countries contains statutes that state damages can be sought for both:

- Actual losses, putting the injured party in the same state as if they had not entered into the contract.
- What is called loss of bargain, or the profit that would have made on a transaction.

In another example, if you revalued your inventory in a warehouse to account for raw material price increases, the revaluation and revaluation reserves must be reflected in your legal entity’s accounts. In Oracle Fusion Applications, your inventory within an inventory organization is managed by a single business unit and belongs to one legal entity.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Business Units**

A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Frequently, a business unit is part of a single legal entity. In most cases, the legal entity is explicit on your transactions. For example, a payables invoice has an explicit legal entity field. Your accounts payables department can process supplier invoices on behalf of one or many business units.

In some cases, your legal entity is inferred from your business unit that is processing the transaction. For example, Business Unit ACM UK has a default legal entity of InFusion UK Ltd. When a purchase order is placed in ACM UK, the legal entity InFusion UK Ltd is legally obligated to the supplier. Oracle Fusion Procurement, Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management, and Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications rely on deriving the legal entity information from the business unit.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Divisions**

The division is an area of management responsibility that can correspond to a collection of legal entities. If wanted, you can aggregate the results for your divisions by legal entity or by combining parts of other legal entities. Define date-effective hierarchies for your cost center or legal entity segment in your chart of accounts to facilitate the aggregation and reporting by division. Divisions and legal entities are independent concepts.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Ledgers**

One of your major responsibilities is to file financial statements for your legal entities. Map legal entities to specific ledgers using the Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Within a ledger, you can optionally map a legal entity to one or more balancing segment values.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Balancing Segments**

Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports up to three balancing segments. Best practices recommend one segment represents your legal entity to ease your requirement to account for your operations to regulatory agencies, tax authorities, and investors. Accounting for your operations means you must produce a balanced trial balance sheet by legal entity. If you account for many legal entities in a single ledger, you must:

1. Identify the legal entities within the ledger.
2. Balance transactions that cross legal entity boundaries through intercompany transactions.
3. Decide which balancing segments correspond to each legal entity and assign them in Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Once you assign one balancing segment value in a ledger, then all your balancing segment values must be assigned. This recommended best practice facilitates reporting on assets, liabilities, and income by legal entity.

Represent your legal entities by at least one balancing segment value. You may represent it by two or three balancing segment values if more granular reporting is required. For example, if your legal entity operates in multiple jurisdictions in Europe, you might define balancing segment values and map them to legal reporting units. You can represent a legal entity with more than one balancing segment value. Do not use a single balancing segment value to represent more than one legal entity.

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, there are three balancing segments. You can use separate balancing segments to represent your divisions or strategic business units to enable management reporting at the balance sheet level for each. This solution is
used to empower your business unit and divisional managers to track and assume responsibility for their asset utilization or return on investment. Using multiple balancing segments is also useful when you know at the time of implementation that you are disposing of a part of a legal entity and want to isolate the assets and liabilities for that entity.

Implementing multiple balancing segments requires every journal entry that is not balanced by division or business unit, to generate balancing lines. You cannot change to multiple balancing segments after you begin using the ledger because your historical data is not balanced by the new balancing segments. Restating historical data must be done at that point.

If your enterprise regularly spins off businesses or holds managers accountable for utilization of assets, identify the business with a balancing segment value. If you account for each legal entity in a separate ledger, no requirement exists to identify the legal entity with a balancing segment value.

While transactions that cross balancing segments don’t necessarily cross legal entity boundaries, all transactions that cross legal entity boundaries must cross balancing segments. If you make an acquisition or are preparing to dispose of a portion of your enterprise, you may want to account for that part of the enterprise in its own balancing segment even if the portion is not a separate legal entity. If you do not map legal entities sharing the same ledger to balancing segments, you cannot distinguish them using intercompany functionality or track individual equity.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Consolidation Rules**

In Oracle Fusion Applications you can map legal entities to balancing segments and then define consolidation rules using your balancing segments. You are creating a relationship between the definition of your legal entities and their role in your consolidation.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Intercompany Transactions**

Use Oracle Fusion Intercompany feature to create intercompany entries automatically across your balancing segments. Intercompany processing updates legal ownership within the enterprise’s groups of legal entities. Invoices or journals are created as needed. To limit the number of trading pairs for your enterprise, set up intercompany organizations and assign then to your authorized legal entities. Define processing options and intercompany accounts to use when creating intercompany transactions and to assist in consolidation elimination entries. These accounts are derived and automatically entered on your intercompany transactions based on legal entities assigned to your intercompany organizations.

Intracompany trading, in which legal ownership isn’t changed but other organizational responsibilities are, is also supported. For example, you can track assets and liabilities that move between your departments within your legal entities by creating departmental level intercompany organizations.

**Tip:** In the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications, you can model intercompany relationships using business units, from which legal entities are derived.

**Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Worker Assignments and Legal Employer**

Legal entities that employ people are called legal employers in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. You must enter legal employers on worker assignments in Oracle Fusion HCM.

**Legal Entity and Payroll Reporting**

Your legal entities are required to pay payroll tax and social insurance such as social security on your payroll. In Oracle Fusion Applications, you can register payroll statutory units to pay and report on payroll tax and social insurance for your legal entities. As the legal employer, you might be required to pay payroll tax, not only at the national level, but also at the local level. You meet this obligation by establishing your legal entity as a place of work within the jurisdiction of a local authority. Set up legal reporting units to represent the part of your enterprise with a specific legal reporting obligation. You can also mark these legal reporting units as tax reporting units, if the legal entity must pay taxes as a result of establishing a place of business within the jurisdiction.
Business Units

A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. Roll business units up into divisions if you structure your chart of accounts with this type of hierarchy.

In Oracle Fusion Applications you do the following:

- Assign your business units to one primary ledger. For example, if a business unit is processing payables invoices, then it must post to a particular ledger. This assignment is required for your business units with business functions that produce financial transactions.
- Use a business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you run your export business separately from your domestic sales business, then secure the export business data to prevent access by the domestic sales employees. To accomplish this security, set up the export business and domestic sales business as two separate business units.

The Oracle Fusion Applications business unit model provides the following advantages:

- Enables flexible implementation
- Provides consistent entity that controls and reports on transactions
- Shares sets of reference data across applications

Business units process transactions using reference data sets that reflect your business rules and policies and can differ from country to country. With Oracle Fusion Application functionality, you can share reference data, such as payment terms and transaction types, across business units, or you can have each business unit manage its own set depending on the level at which you want to enforce common policies.

In summary, use business units for:

- Management reporting
- Transaction processing
- Transactional data security
- Reference data sharing and definition

Brief Overview of Business Unit Security

A number of Oracle Fusion Applications use business units to implement data security. You assign roles like Accounts Payable Manager to users to permit them to perform specific functions, and you assign business units for each role to users to give them access to data in those business units. For example, users who have been assigned a Payables role for a particular business unit, can perform the function of payables invoicing on the data in that business unit. Roles can be assigned to users manually using the Security Console, or automatically using provisioning rules. Business Units can be assigned to users using the Manage Data Access for Users task found in Setup and Maintenance.
Considerations for Creating Business Units in the Enterprise Structures Configurator

Business units are used within Oracle Fusion applications for management reporting, processing of transactions, and security of transactional data. Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator, you create business units for your enterprise either automatically or manually.

Automatically Creating Business Units

To create business units automatically, you must specify the level at which to create business units. Business units within your enterprise may be represented at one of two levels:

- Business function level, such as Sales, Consulting, Product Development, and so on.
- A more detailed level, where a business unit exists for each combination of countries in which you operate and the functions in those countries.

You can automatically create business units at the following levels:

- Country
- Country and Division
- Country and business function
- Division
- Division and legal entity
- Division and business function
- Business function
- Legal entity
- Business function and legal entity

Select the option that best meets your business requirements, but consider the following:

- If you use Oracle Fusion Financials, the legal entity option is recommended because of the manner in which financial transactions are processed.
- The business unit level that you select determines how the application automatically creates reference data sets.

After you select a business unit level, the application generates a list of business units, and you select the ones you want the application to create. If you select a level that has two components, such as country and division, then the application displays a table listing both components. You select the check boxes at the intersections of the two components.

The business units listed by the application are suggestions only, and are meant to simplify the process to create business units. You aren’t required to select all of the business units suggested. When you navigate to the next page in the ESC guided flow, the Manage Business Units page, you can't delete any of the business units created automatically. You must return to the Create Business Units page and deselect any business units that you no longer want.

Example: Selecting Business Unit Levels

InFusion Corporation is using the Enterprise Structures Configurator to set up its enterprise structure. InFusion has identified two divisions, one for Lighting, and one for Security. They operate in four countries: US, UK, Japan, and India, and they have created a legal entity for each of the countries. The sales and marketing functions are based in both India and Japan, while the US and the UK have only the sales function.
This figure illustrates InFusion Corporation's enterprise structure.

The following table lists the options for business unit levels and the resulting business units that the application suggests for InFusion Corporation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Unit Level</th>
<th>Suggested Business Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Country                              | • US  
• UK  
• Japan  
• India |
| Country and Division                 | • InFusion Lighting: Japan  
• InFusion Lighting: US  
• Infusion Security: UK  
• Infusion Security: India |
| Country and business function        | • Sales: Japan  
• Marketing: Japan  
• Sales: US  
• Sales: UK  
• Marketing: India  
• Sales: India |
| Division                             | • InFusion Lighting  
• InFusion Security |
| Division and Legal Entity            | • InFusion Lighting: Japan  
• InFusion Lighting: US  
• Infusion Security: UK |
Implementing Procurement

Chapter 6

Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Unit Level</th>
<th>Suggested Business Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Infusion Security: India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division and Business Function</td>
<td>• InFusion Lighting, Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• InFusion Lighting, Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• InFusion Security, Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• InFusion Security, Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Function</td>
<td>• Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal Entity</td>
<td>• Legal Entity: Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity: US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity: UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal Entity and Business Function</td>
<td>• Legal Entity: Japan, Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity: Japan, Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity: US, Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity: UK, Sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity India, Marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legal Entity India, Sales</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Manually Creating Business Units

If none of the levels for creating business units meets your business needs, you can create business units manually, and you create them on the Manage Business Units page. If you create business units manually, then no reference data sets are created automatically. You must create them manually as well.

### Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

### Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and
loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.

- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
  - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.
  - Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.

- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction’s business unit.

**Note:** Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set. Also update the data set going forward as you create new reference data items.

How Business Units Work with Reference Data Sets

Reference data sharing enables you to group set-enabled reference data such as jobs or grades to share the data across different parts of the organization. Sets also enable you to filter reference data at the transaction level so that only data assigned to certain sets is available to be selected. To filter reference data, Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM) applications use the business unit on the transaction. To set up reference data sharing in Oracle Fusion HCM, you create business units and sets, and then assign the sets to the business units.

Common Set Versus Specific Sets

Some reference data in your organization may be considered global, and should therefore be made available for use within the entire enterprise. You can assign this type of data to the Common Set, which is a predefined set. Regardless of the
business unit on a transaction, reference data assigned to the Common Set is always available, in addition to the reference
data assigned to the set that corresponds to the business unit on the transaction.

Other types of reference data can be specific to certain business units, so you can restrict the use of the data to those
business units. In this case, you can create sets specifically for this type of data, and assign the sets to the business units.

**Business Unit Set Assignment**

When you assign reference data sets to business units, you assign a default reference data set to use for all reference data
types for that business unit. You can override the set assignment for one or more data types.

**Example: Assigning Sets to Business Units**

InFusion Corporation has two divisions: Lighting and Security, and the divisions each have two locations. Each location has
one or more business functions.

The following figure illustrates the structure of InFusion Corporation.

When deciding how to create business units, InFusion decides to create them using the country and business function level. Therefore, they created the following business units:

- Sales_Japan
- Marketing_Japan
- Sales_US
- Sales_UK
- Marketing_India
- Sales_India

Because locations, departments, and grades are specific to each business unit, InFusion does not want to share these types
of reference data across business units. They create a reference data set for each business unit so that data of those types
can be set up separately. Because the jobs in the Sales business function are the same across many locations, InFusion decides to create one additional set called Jobs. They override the set assignment for the Jobs reference data group and assign it to the Jobs set. Based on these requirements, they create the following sets:

- Sales_Japan_Set
- Mktg_Japan_Set
- Sales_US_Set
- Sales_UK_Set
- Mktg_India_Set
- Sales_India_Set
- Grades_Set

The following table describes the default set assignment and the set assignment overrides for each business unit in InFusion:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Unit</th>
<th>Default Set Assignment</th>
<th>Set Assignment Overrides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales_Japan</td>
<td>Sales_Japan_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>Jobs set for jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing_Japan</td>
<td>Mktg_Japan_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales_US</td>
<td>Sales_US_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>Jobs set for jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales_UK</td>
<td>Sales_UK_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>Jobs set for jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing_India</td>
<td>Mktg_India_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales_India</td>
<td>Sales_India_Set for grades, departments, and locations</td>
<td>Jobs set for jobs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When setting up grades, departments, and locations for the business units, InFusion assigns the data to the default set for each business unit. When setting up jobs, they assign the Jobs set and assign the Common Set to any jobs that may be used throughout the entire organization.

When using grades, departments, and locations at the transaction level, users can select data from the set that corresponds to the business unit they enter on the transaction, and any data assigned to the Common Set. For example, for transactions for the Marketing_Japan business unit, grades, locations, and departments from the Mktg_Japan_Set is available to select, as well as from the Common Set.

When using jobs at the transaction level, users can select jobs from the Jobs set and from the Common Set when they enter a sales business unit on the transaction. For example, when a manager hires an employee for the Sales_India business unit, the list of jobs is filtered to show jobs from the Jobs and Common sets.

The following figure illustrates what sets of jobs can be accessed when a manager creates an assignment for a worker.
Creating Reference Data Sets in the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Explained

If you created business units automatically, then the Enterprise Structures Configurator automatically creates reference data sets for you. The Enterprise Structures Configurator creates one reference data set for each business unit. You can add additional sets, but you cannot delete any of the sets that were created automatically.

A standard set called the Enterprise set is predefined.

Common Set
The Common set is a predefined set that enables you to share reference data across business units. When you select set-enabled data at the transaction level, the list of values includes data in the:

- Common set
- Set associated with the data type for the business unit on the transaction

For example, when you create an assignment, the list of values for grades includes grade in the:

- Common set
- Set that is assigned to grades for the business unit in which you creating the assignment

Considerations for Using Jobs and Positions
Jobs and positions represent roles that enable you to distinguish between tasks and the individuals who perform those tasks.

Note the following:

- The key to using jobs or positions depends on how each is used.
- Positions offer a well-defined space independent of the person performing the job.
• Jobs are a space defined by the person.
• A job can be defined globally in the Common Set, whereas a position is defined within one business unit.
• You can update the job and department of a position at any time. For example, if you hire someone into a new role and want to transfer the position to another department.

During implementation, one of the earliest decisions is whether to use jobs or a combination of jobs and positions. The determinants for this decision are:

• The primary industry of your enterprise
• How you manage your people

Primary Industry of Your Enterprise
The following table outlines information about Primary industries and how they set up their workforce.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Industry</th>
<th>Workforce Setup</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mining</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utilities</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail Trade</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation and Warehousing</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Services</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Transportation</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture, Forestry, Fishing, and Hunting</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wholesale Trade</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finance and Insurance</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional, Scientific, and Technical Services</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management of Companies and Enterprises</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Management of People

Consider the following scenarios how industries manage their employee turnover:

- **Scenario 1**: Replace employees by rehiring to the same role.
- **Scenario 2**: Replace headcount but the manager uses the headcount in a different job.
- **Scenario 3**: Rehire employees to the same position, but the manager requests reallocation of budget to a different post.

The following table displays suggestions of what the industry should use, either jobs or positions, in these three scenarios:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Industry</th>
<th>Scenario 1</th>
<th>Scenario 2</th>
<th>Scenario 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Project (An industry that supports project-based forms of organization in which teams of specialists from both inside and outside the company report to project managers.)</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled (An industry that is highly structured in which all aspects of work and remuneration are well organized and regulated.)</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
<td>Positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Positions</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
<td>Jobs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Topics

- How Grades and Grade Rates Work with Jobs, Positions, Assignments, Compensation, and Payroll
Examples of Positions

Positions are typically used by industries that use detailed approval rules, which perform detailed budgeting and maintain headcounts, or have high turnover rates.

Retail Industry

ABC Corporation has high turnovers. It loses approximately 5% of its cashiers monthly. The job of the cashier includes three positions: front line cashier, service desk cashier, and layaway cashier. Each job is cross-trained to take over another cashier’s position. When one cashier leaves from any of the positions, another existing cashier from the front line, service desk or layaway can assist where needed. But to ensure short lines and customer satisfaction, ABC Corporation must replace each cashier lost to turnover. Since turnover is high in retail it’s better for this industry to use positions.

Note the following:

- An automatic vacancy is created when an employee terminates employment.
- The position exists even when there are no holders. Having the position continue to exist is important if the person who leaves the company is a manager or supervisor with direct reports.
- All direct reports continue reporting to the position even if the position is empty.
- You don’t have to reassign these employees to another manager or supervisor. The replacement manager is assigned to the existing position.

Also, an added advantage to using Positions is when you hire somebody new, many of the attributes are inherited from the position. This speeds up the hiring process.
This figure illustrates the retail position setup.

Health Care Industry

Health care is an industry that must regulate employment, roles, and compensation according to strict policies and procedures. Fixed roles tend to endure over time, surviving multiple incumbents. Industries that manage roles rather than individuals, where roles continue to exist after individuals leave, typically model the workforce using positions.

The hospital has a structured headcount and detailed budgeting. For example, a specific number of surgeons, nurses, and interns of various types are needed. These positions must be filled in order for the hospital to run smoothly. Use jobs and positions when you apply detailed headcount rules.
This figure illustrates the hospital position setup.

Examples of Jobs

Jobs are typically used without positions by service industries where flexibility and organizational change are key features.

Software Industry

For example, XYZ Corporation has a director over the departments for developers, quality assurance, and technical writers.

- Recently, three developers have resigned from the company.
- The director decides to redirect the headcount to other areas.
- Instead of hiring all three back into development, one person is hired to each department, quality assurance, and technical writing.

In software industries, the organization is fluid. Using jobs gives an enterprise the flexibility to determine where to use headcount, because the job only exists through the person performing it. In this example, when the three developers leave XYZ Corporation, their jobs no longer exist, therefore the corporation has the flexibility to move the headcount to other areas.
This figure illustrates the software industry job setup.

**Job and Position Structures**

Job and position structures identify the descriptive flexfield structure that enables you to specify additional attributes that you want to capture when you define jobs and positions. Job and position attributes provide further detail to make jobs and positions more specific. You also use attributes to define the structure of your jobs and positions. You can specify attributes at the enterprise level for jobs and positions, at the business unit level for positions, and at the reference data set level for jobs. Job and position structures are optional.

**Enterprise-Level Job Attributes**

When you define a job, you enter a value for the name of the job. To make job names more specific, set up attributes to identify additional details about the job, such as the nature of the work that is performed or the relative skill level required. If these attributes apply to all jobs within your enterprise, set up enterprise-level job attributes. Standard capabilities mean that you can use the different segments of the name to identify common jobs or job holders for analysis or compensation, or for grouping records in reports, for example, to find all jobs of a specific job type. You should not use attributes with values that change regularly, for example, salary ranges or expense approval levels that change every year.
This figure illustrates how job type and job level provide further details for the HR Application Specialist job.

Enterprise-Level Position Attributes

Position attributes at the enterprise level are similar to those for jobs. Each position that you define identifies a specific role in the enterprise, which you can manage independently of the person in the position. A position belongs to one specific department or organization. The name of each position must be unique. To simplify the process of managing unique names for positions, set up enterprise-level attributes to identify separate components of the position name. For example, you can set up an attribute for position title and one for position number. When defining the attributes that make up the structure of a position name, consider whether any of your attributes are part of the definition of a common job type. Using job types for a position can help you manage common information that applies to many different positions. For example you can define a job type of Manager. Level 1 and use this for comparison of positions across departments or lines or business, or for setting common job requirements. You can then define multiple manager type positions in your HR department, each of which has responsibility for a different management function or group.
This figure illustrates how title and position number provide further details for the manager position.

**Position Attributes**

Position Name
- Manager

Title
- Assistant Store Manager

Position Number
- 10050

**Business Unit-Level Attributes for Positions**

If you have information that you want to capture for positions that is specific to each business unit, then you can define attributes at the business unit level for positions. When you create positions, these attributes appear in addition to any enterprise-level attributes. For example, you may want to identify the sales region for all positions in the sales business unit. You can set up a text attribute called Sales Region and use it to enter the necessary information when creating positions for the sales business unit.

**Reference Data Set-Level Attributes for Jobs**

If you have information for jobs that applies to specific reference data sets, set up attributes for jobs at the reference data set level. When you create jobs, these attributes appear in addition to any enterprise-level attributes. For example, you may want to identify all information technology (IT) jobs within a specific set. You can set up a text attribute called Function and use it to enter IT in jobs that you create that perform an IT function within a specific set.

**FAQs for Define Initial Configuration**

**What happens if I don't use the Enterprise Structures Configurator to set up my enterprise structures?**

The Enterprise Structures Configurator is an interview-based tool that guides you through setting up divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets. If you do not use the Enterprise Structures Configurator, then you must set up your enterprise structure using the individual tasks that correspond to each enterprise component. In addition, you can't set up multiple configurations and compare different scenarios. Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator is the recommended process for setting up your enterprise structures.
What's an ultimate holding company?
The legal entity that represents the top level in your organization hierarchy, as defined by the legal name entered for the enterprise. This designation is used only to create an organization tree, with these levels:

- Ultimate holding company as the top level
- Divisions and country holding companies as the second level
- Legal employers as the third level

What's the default reference data set?
The reference data set that is assigned to a business unit for all reference data groups, such as grades, locations, departments, and jobs. You can override the default reference data set for any reference data group.

What happens if I override the set assignment?
For the selected business unit, you can override the default reference data set for one or more reference data groups. For example, assume you have three reference data groups: Vision 1 SET, Vision 2 SET, and Vision 3 SET, where Vision SET 1 is the default set for business unit United Kingdom Vision 1 BU. You can override the default so that:

- Grades are assigned to Vision 2 SET.
- Departments are assigned to Vision 3 SET.
- Jobs are assigned to the default set, Vision 3 SET.

Define Reference Data Sharing

About Reference Data Sharing

Reference data sharing facilitates sharing of configuration data such as jobs and payment terms, across organizational divisions or business units. You define reference data sets and determine how common data is shared or partitioned across business entities to avoid duplication and reduce maintenance effort. Depending on the requirement (specific or common), each business unit can maintain its data at a central location, using a set of values either specific to it or shared by other business units.

A common reference data set is available as the default set, which can be assigned to several business units sharing the same reference data. For commonly used data such as currencies, you can use the common reference data set and assign it to multiple business units in various countries that use the same currency. In cases where the default set can't be assigned to an entity, you can create specific sets. The data set visible on the transactional page depends on the sharing method used to share reference data.

For example, XYZ Corporation uses the same grades throughout the entire organization. Instead of different business units setting up and using the same grades, XYZ Corporation decides to create a set called Grades, which contains the grades. All business units in the organization have the Grades set so that the grades can be shared and used.

Note: For specific information about configuring reference data sharing for a particular object or product, refer to the relevant product documentation.
Reference Data Sets

Reference data sets are logical groups of reference data that various transactional entities can use depending on the business context. You can get started using either the common reference data set or the enterprise set depending on your implementation requirement. You can also create and maintain additional reference data sets, while continuing to use the common reference data set.

Consider the following scenario. Your enterprise can decide that only some aspects of corporate policy should affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This enables your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. Then, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. As a result, each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods and one central reference data set for payment terms assigned to all business units.

Partitioning

Partitioning reference data and creating data sets provide you the flexibility to handle the reference data to fulfill your business requirements. You can share modular information and data processing options among business units with ease. You can create separate sets and subsets for each business unit. Alternatively, you can create common sets or subsets to enable sharing reference data between several business units, without duplicating the reference data.

The following figure illustrates the reference data sharing method. The user can access the data assigned to a specific set in a particular business unit, as well as access the data assigned to the common set.
Related Topics

- Defining Default Reference Data Sets: Points to Consider

Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.

- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
  - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.
○ Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.

- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction's business unit.

**Note:** Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set. Also update the data set going forward as you create new reference data items.

Assignment of Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects

You can assign the reference data sets to reference objects using the Manage Reference Data Set Assignments page. For multiple assignments, you can classify different types of reference data sets into groups and assign them to the reference entity objects. The assignment takes into consideration the determinant type, determinant, and reference group, if any.

**Determinant Types**

The partitioned reference data is shared using a business context setting called the determinant type. A determinant type is the point of reference used in the data assignment process. The following table lists the determinant types used in the reference data assignment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determinant Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asset Book</td>
<td>Information about the acquisition, depreciation, and retirement of an asset that belongs to a ledger or a business unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td>The departments or organizations within an enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Organization</td>
<td>The organization used for cost accounting and reporting on various inventory and cost centers within an enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Unit</td>
<td>A logical organization within an enterprise that is responsible for enforcing consistent project management practices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Data Set</td>
<td>References to other shared reference data sets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Determinant**

The determinant (also called determinant value) is a value that corresponds to the selected determinant type. The determinant is one of the criteria for selecting the appropriate reference data set.

**Reference Groups**

A transactional entity may have multiple reference entities (generally considered to be setup data). However, all reference entities are treated alike because of similarity in implementing business policies and legal rules. Such reference entities in your application are grouped into logical units called reference groups. For example, all tables and views that define Sales Order Type details might be a part of the same reference group. Reference groups are predefined in the reference groups table.
Items and Supplier Site Reference Data Sharing

Some products, such as items and supplier sites, required special logic for reference data sharing and have implemented their own domain-specific ways for sharing data.

**Items**

If you share your items across warehouses or manufacturing facilities, you can access them through a common item master. Configure one or multiple item masters for your enterprise, based your enterprise structure. A single item master is recommended because it provides simpler and more efficient maintenance. However, in rare cases, it may be beneficial to keep multiple item masters. For example, if you acquire another enterprise and want to continue to operate your lines of business separately, maintaining a second item master might be the best decision.

**Suppliers Sites**

You can approve particular suppliers to supply specified commodities and authorize your business units to buy from those suppliers when the need arises. For example, you might be a household cleaning products manufacturer and need dyes, plastics, and perfumes to make your products. You purchase from a central supplier 70% of your perfume supplies with an additional supplier, in reserve, from whom you purchase the remaining 30%. At the same time, each of your business units purchases plastics and dyes from the same supplier, but from different local supplier sites to save transportation costs.

To implement business unit-specific supplier sites, Oracle Fusion Procurement supports a method for defining suppliers sites as owned and managed by the business unit responsible for negotiating the supplier terms. Your other business units that have a service provider relationship defined with your procurement business unit subscribe to the supplier sites using the supplier site assignments feature. In addition, Procurement allows sharing of the following procurement data objects across business units:

- Supplier qualification data, such as approved supplier lists
- Catalog content, such as agreements, smart forms, public shopping lists, and content zones
- Procurement configuration data

**FAQs for Define Reference Data Sharing**

**What reference data objects can be shared across business units?**

The following table contains the reference data objects for the Oracle Fusion Applications that can be shared across business units and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Reference Data Object</th>
<th>Method of Sharing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trading Community Model</td>
<td>Customer Account Relationship</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trading Community Model</td>
<td>Customer Account Site</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trading Community Model</td>
<td>Salesperson</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Name</td>
<td>Reference Data Object</td>
<td>Method of Sharing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opportunity Management</td>
<td>Sales Method Group</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Management</td>
<td>Assessment Templates</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Contracts</td>
<td>Contract Types</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>Sales Method</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Components</td>
<td>Activity Templates</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payables</td>
<td>Payment Terms</td>
<td>Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Accounting Rules</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Aging Buckets</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Auto Cash Rules</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Collectors</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Lockbox</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Memo Lines</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Payment Terms</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Remit To Address</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Revenue Contingencies</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivables</td>
<td>Transaction Source</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, with common values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What reference data objects can be shared across asset books?
The following list contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Assets that can be shared across asset books and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Reference Data Object</th>
<th>Method of Sharing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assets</td>
<td>Bonus Rules</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oracle Procurement Cloud
Implementing Procurement

Chapter 6
Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement
### Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

#### What reference data objects can be shared across cost organizations?
The following table contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Cost Management that can be shared across cost organizations and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Reference Data Object</th>
<th>Method of Sharing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cost Management</td>
<td>Cost Structure</td>
<td>Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### What reference data objects can be shared across project units?
The following table contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Project Foundation that can be shared across project units and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Reference Data Object</th>
<th>Method of Sharing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Project Foundation</td>
<td>Project Definition</td>
<td>Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Foundation</td>
<td>Project Transaction Types</td>
<td>Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define Enterprise: Manage Enterprise HCM Information

Define Enterprises

An enterprise is a collection of legal entities sharing common control and management.

Enterprise Defined

When implementing Oracle Fusion Applications you operate within the context of an enterprise that has already been created in the application for you. This is either a predefined enterprise or an enterprise that has been created in the application by a system administrator. An enterprise organization captures the name of the deploying enterprise and the location of the headquarters. In Oracle Fusion Applications, an organization classified as an enterprise is defined before defining any other organizations in the HCM Common Organization Model. All other organizations are defined as belonging to an enterprise.

Enterprise Information for Non-HCM Users

The Manage Enterprise HCM Information task includes default settings for your enterprise such as the employment model, worker number generation, and so on. If you are not implementing Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM), then the only action you may need to perform using this task is to change the enterprise name, if necessary. The other settings are HCM-specific and are not relevant outside of Oracle Fusion HCM.

Define Enterprise: Manage Locations

Locations

A location identifies physical addresses of a workforce structure, such as a department or a job. You create and manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

You can also create locations to enter the addresses of external organizations that you want to maintain, such as employment agencies, tax authorities, and insurance or benefits carriers.

The locations that you create exist as separate structures that you can use for reporting purposes, and in rules that determine employee eligibility for various types of compensation and benefits. You enter information about a location only once. Subsequently, when you set up other workforce structures you select the location from a list.

Location Sets

When you create a location, you must associate it with a set. Only those users who have access to the set’s business unit can access the location set and other associated workforce structure sets, such as those that contain departments and jobs.

Note the following:

- You can also associate the location to the common set so that users across your enterprise can access the location irrespective of their business unit.
When users search for locations, they can see the locations that they have access to along with the locations in the common set.

The following figure shows how locations sets restrict access to users.

Uploading Locations Using a Spreadsheet

If you have a list of locations already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet.

To use this option:

- Download a spreadsheet template
- Add your location information to the spreadsheet
- Upload directly to your enterprise configuration

You can upload the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

**Related Topics**

- Uploading Workforce Structures Using a Spreadsheet: Explained
FAQs for Manage Locations

Why can't I see my location in the search results?
You can search for approved locations only. Also, if you created a location in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Model, then you can't access that location from Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources. For use in Oracle Fusion HCM, you must recreate the location from the Manage Locations page.

What happens if I select a geographic hierarchy node when I create or edit a location?
The calendar events that you created for the geographic node start to apply for the location and may impact the availability of worker assignments at that location. You manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.
The geographical hierarchy nodes available for selection on the Locations page display from a predefined geographic hierarchy.

Related Topics
• How an Employee's Schedule Is Determined

What happens if I select an inventory organization when I am creating or editing a location?
The location is available for selection in purchase documents of that inventory organization in Oracle Fusion Inventory Management. If you don't select an inventory organization, then the location is available in purchase documents across all inventory organizations.

What happens if I inactivate a location?
Starting from the effective date that you entered, you can no longer associate the location with other workforce structures, assignments, or applications. If the location is already in use, it will continue to be available to the components that currently use it.

How can I associate a location with an inventory organization?
From the Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources, go to the Manage Locations page. Use the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.
To appear on the Create or Edit Location pages, your inventory organization must be effective on today's date and must exist in the location set that you selected.

Define Geographies

How You Setup Address Cleansing
Address cleansing validates, corrects, and standardizes address information that you enter in the application. Address cleansing, unlike geography validation, validates both the geography attributes and the address line attributes.
To use the address cleansing functionality, you need to have license for the customer data quality application, because the feature is delivered using data quality integration.

You can specify the real-time address cleansing level for each country by choosing either of these options:

- **None**: Specifies no real time address cleansing.
- **Optional**: Provides option to cleanse addresses.

Once you have enabled address cleansing for a country, a **Verify Address** icon appears at address entry points in the application. Click the icon to perform address cleansing and receive a corrected, standardized address. If the application does not find a matching address, then an alert message is displayed.

How Geography Structure, Hierarchy, and Validation Fit Together

There are three components that are dependent on each other when defining a country: geography structure, geography hierarchy, and geography validation. Every country has to have the geography structure defined first before the hierarchy can be defined, and the geography hierarchy has to be defined before the validation can be defined.

**Geography Structure**

Firstly, you need to create a geography structure for each country to define which geography types are part of the country structure, and how the geography types are hierarchically related within the country structure. For example, you can create geography types called State, City, and Postal Code. Then you can rank the State geography type as the highest level within the country, the City as the second level, and the Postal Code as the lowest level within the country structure. Geography structure can be defined using the **Manage Geographies** task, or can be imported using tasks in the **Define Geographies** activity.

**Geography Hierarchy**

Once the geography structure is defined, the geographies for each geography type can be added to the hierarchy. For example, in the hierarchy of United States you can create a geography called California using a State geography type.

As part of managing the geography hierarchy you can view, create, edit, and delete the geographies for each geography type in the country structure. You can also add a primary and alternate name and code for each geography. A geography hierarchy can be created using the **Manage Geographies** task, or can be imported using tasks in the **Define Geographies** activity.

**Geography Validation**

After defining the geography hierarchy, you need to specify the geography validations for the country. You can choose which address style format you would like to use for the country, and for each selected address style format you can map geography types to address attributes. You can also select which geography types to include in geography or tax validation, and which geography types will display in a list of values during address entry in other user interfaces. The geography validation level for the country, such as error or warning, can also be selected.

**Geography Structures**

This topic describes geography structures and the tasks you can perform using geography structures.

A geography structure is a hierarchical grouping of geography types for a country. The following table describes the geography structure for the United States.
You can use the geography structure to relate geography types for a country and define geography types for a country.

**Relate Geography Types for a Country**

You can determine how a country's geographies are hierarchically related by creating the hierarchy of the geography types in the geography structure. When you define a country's structure, the geography type Country is implicitly at the highest level of the geography structure with level as 1. The subsequent geography types that you add after country are numbered in sequence.

You must add a geography type as a level in the country structure before you can define a geography for that geography type in a country. For example, before defining the state of California, the State geography type must be added to the United States country structure. To quickly create country structure, you can copy a structure from another country and modify the geography types for the country.

**Define Geography Types for a Country**

You can use any of the master reference geography types to create your geography structure. If required, you can create a geography type, before adding it to the country structure. Each geography type is added at a lower level to the current lowest level.

> **Note:** You cannot delete geography types that have associated geography data. You can only delete the lowest level geography type of the country structure.

You can use a geography type that you create within the country structure for other country structures as well.

**Geography Hierarchy**

This topic describes geography hierarchy and various aspects of geography hierarchy.

Geography hierarchy is a data model that creates conceptual parent-child relationships between geographies. At the highest level of the geography hierarchy is country, which is the parent, and the hierarchy contains several child geographies. The following table shows sample parent-child relationships in a geography.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>California</th>
<th>Parent of San Mateo county</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>San Mateo County</td>
<td>Parent of Redwood City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redwood City</td>
<td>Parent of 94065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94065</td>
<td>Child</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When you enter just 94065, the application determines that the postal code is in California and the corresponding city is Redwood City.

The application uses geography hierarchy information to facilitate business processes that rely on geography information, such as, tax calculation, order sourcing rules, and sales territory definition. The geography hierarchy information is centrally located and shared among other application offerings.

The geography hierarchy includes:

- Geography: Geography is a physical space with boundaries that is a defined instance of a geography type, such as country, state, province or city. For example, San Jose is a geography of the City geography type.
- Geography type: Geography types are divisional grouping of user defined geographies, for example, Continent, Country Regions, and Tax Regions.
- Geography usage: Geography usage indicates how a geography type or geography is used in the application.
- Master reference geography hierarchy: The geography hierarchy data is considered the single source of reference for all geography related data such as geography types and geographies.
- User defined zones: User defined zones are a collection of geographical data, created from master reference data for a specific purpose. For example, while the territory zones are collections of master reference geographies ordered with a hierarchy, the tax and shipping zones are without a hierarchical grouping.

**Geography Validation**

Geography validation determines the geography mapping and validation for a country's address styles, as well as the overall geography validation control for a country.

The No Styles Format address style format is the default address style format for a country. By defining the mapping and validation for this format you will ensure that validations can be performed for any address in the country. After the No Styles Format is defined you can set up additional mapping for specific address styles.

For each address style format, you can define the following:

- Map to attribute
- Enable list of values
- Tax validation
- Geography validation
- Geography validation control

**Attribute Mapping**

For every address style format, you can map each geography type to an address attribute. For example, you can map the State geography type to the State address attribute for the United States, or map the State geography type to the County address attribute for the United Kingdom. The geography types that appear are based on how the country structure
is defined. The list of address attributes that appear are based on address formats delivered with the application, or your customer defined address formats.

Note: You only need to map geography types that you want to use for geography or tax validation purposes.

Enable List of Values
Once a geography type is mapped to an attribute, then you can specify whether the geography type will appear in a list of values during address entry in user interfaces. It is very important to review carefully if you want to enable a list of values. You should only enable a list of values if you have sufficient geography data imported or created for that geography. If the setup for master geography data is incomplete, then the geography data is either not imported or created. As a result, the list of values for the address attribute does not list any geography data.

Once you have enabled a list of values for an address attribute, you can only select the geography data available for the geography type. This means that if a specific geography value is not available in the geography hierarchy, you can’t create an address with a different geography value.

Tax Validation
You can also specify whether a geography type will be included in tax validation. For example, for the United States North America address style format you specify that County, State, and City are used for tax validation. This will mean that when a transaction involves an address with the North America address style, the address must have the correct county, state, and city combination based on the geography hierarchy data, to be considered valid for tax calculation.

Geography Validation
You must set up geography validation for those geography elements that you plan to use in your sales territories. Setting up validation also helps users fill in missing address information, and validate addresses during entry. For example, you can have users select states or other address elements from lists to ensure accuracy during entry, and you can have the application fill in missing values. For example, when the user enters a Postal Code, the application can retrieve the city and state.

You can specify whether a geography type will be included in geography validation. For example, when the user enters a United States address using the North America address style format, the address must have the correct country, state, and postal code combination based on geography hierarchy data to be considered geographically valid.

If an address element is mapped to a geography type, but not selected for geography validation usage, then during address entry suggested values will be provided for the address element, but the address element will not be validated.

You need to verify that the default mapping between Geography Type and Map to Attribute is valid in the Geography Mapping and Validation region and update it if required when you define geography validation. Oracle recommends that you use the following valid mapping for the countries that GBG | Loqate supports:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Country Code</th>
<th>Geography Type</th>
<th>Map to Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andorra</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Country, Parroquia, Settlement, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, State, City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angola</td>
<td>AO</td>
<td>Country, Provincia, Municipio, Comuna, Localidad</td>
<td>Country, Province, County, City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• Department&lt;br&gt;• Municipality&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>AU</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>AT</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Bundensland&lt;br&gt;• Bezirk&lt;br&gt;• Gemeinde&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>BE</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Gewest&lt;br&gt;• Provincie&lt;br&gt;• Gemeente&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Additional address attribute 1&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosnia and Herzegovina</td>
<td>BA</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Kanton&lt;br&gt;• Opcine&lt;br&gt;• Nasalje&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>BR</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Oblast&lt;br&gt;• Obshina&lt;br&gt;• Settlement&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Additional address attribute 1&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayman Islands</td>
<td>KY</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Island&lt;br&gt;• District</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>CL</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Region&lt;br&gt;• Provincia&lt;br&gt;• Kommune&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Additional address attribute 1&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>CN</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Town&lt;br&gt;• Village&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Additional address attribute 2&lt;br&gt;• Additional address attribute 3&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croatia</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Zupanije&lt;br&gt;• Grad&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td>CU</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Provincia&lt;br&gt;• Municipio&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>CY</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Periochi&lt;br&gt;• Dimos&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Kraj&lt;br&gt;• Okres&lt;br&gt;• Obec&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>DK</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Amt&lt;br&gt;• Settlement&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>DO</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Provincia&lt;br&gt;• Municipio&lt;br&gt;• Town&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td>EC</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• Canton&lt;br&gt;• City</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>EE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Maakond</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Vald</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>FI</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Laani</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kunta</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>FR</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>DE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Bundesland</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kreis</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Gemeinde</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>GB</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• County</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Township</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>GR</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Periferia</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Nomi</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Dimotica</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guadalupe</td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>HU</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Megye</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Jaras</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Telepules</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>IS</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Jaras</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Telepules</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>ID</td>
<td>State, District, City, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, Province, Regency, City, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Country, Province, Post County, Post Town, Locality</td>
<td>Country, Additional address attribute 1, State, City, Additional address attribute 2, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isles of Man</td>
<td>IM</td>
<td>Country, Locality, Settlement, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, City, Additional address attribute 2, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Country, District, SubDistrict, City, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, State, County, City, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Country, Regione, Provincia, Comune, Postal code</td>
<td>Country, Additional address attribute 1, Province, City, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>JM</td>
<td>Country, Parish, Settlement</td>
<td>Country, State, City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Country, Prefecture, City, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, State, City, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>JO</td>
<td>Country, Muhafazat, Liwa, Tajma, Postal Code</td>
<td>Country, State, County, City, Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>KE</td>
<td>Country, County</td>
<td>Country, State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>LV</td>
<td>• Division</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Rajons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Pilseta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td>LI</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Wahlkreis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Gemeinde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>LT</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• State</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• County</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Municipality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Ward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>LU</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Canton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>MY</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• State</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Subdistrict</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>MT</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Local Council</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinique</td>
<td>MQ</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>MX</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• State</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Municipality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Locality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

82
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Country Code</th>
<th>Geography Type</th>
<th>Map to Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Town</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Fylke</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kommune</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oman</td>
<td>OM</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Muhaفزah</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>PE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Provincia</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Distrito</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Wojewodztwo</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Powiat</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Gmina</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>PT</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Distrito</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Conceelho</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerto Rico</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commonwealth</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Municipio</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Barrio</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>QA</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Municipality</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Zone</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reunion Island</td>
<td>RE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Country Code</th>
<th>Geography Type</th>
<th>Map to Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td>RO</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Regiune</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Judet</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comuna</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>RU</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Federal_District</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kray</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Oblast</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Marino</td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comune</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovakia</td>
<td>SK</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kraj</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Okres</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Obec</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenia</td>
<td>SI</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Regija</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Upravna Enota</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Obcina</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Province</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Local Municipality</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Municipalitiy</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>KR</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Jibang</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Siti</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Dosi</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Ma Eul</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Name</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Map to Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Commune</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>LK</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Province</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Divisional_Secretariat</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swaziland</td>
<td>SZ</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• District</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inkhundla</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Town</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Lan</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Settlement</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>CH</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kanton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Bezirk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Gemeinde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>TW</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• County</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Town</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Additional address attribute 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Region</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Changwat</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Amphoe</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>TR</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Sehir</td>
<td>• Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Ilce</td>
<td>• County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kasaba</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
<td>AE</td>
<td>• Country</td>
<td>• Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Emirate</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
<td>• City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Name</th>
<th>Country Code</th>
<th>Geography Type</th>
<th>Map to Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>US</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>UY</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Departamento&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• County&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vatican City</td>
<td>VA</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Municipal&lt;br&gt;• Settlement&lt;br&gt;• Postal Code</td>
<td>• Country&lt;br&gt;• Province&lt;br&gt;• City&lt;br&gt;• Postal code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For either the tax or geography validation, do not skip more than one consecutive level unless you are certain that the selected geography types can uniquely identify geographies. For example, the United States country structure is: State, County, City, and Postal Code, and you want to select just State and Postal Code for geography or tax validation. However, for the combination of California and 94065, the city can be either Redwood Shores or Redwood City. In this case, you should also select at least the City geography type for geography or tax validation.

### Geography Validation Control

You can select the geography validation level for a country. Validation will check if the entered address maps to the geography hierarchy data available for the country, and the geography validation control determines whether you can save an address that did not pass validation during address entry. For example, if the validation level is **Error**, then an address cannot be saved if the values do not match the geography hierarchy data.

These are the geography validation levels you can choose:

- **Error** - only completely valid addresses can be saved, with all mandatory address elements entered.
- **No Validation** - all addresses can be saved including incomplete and invalid addresses.

Regardless of the result of validation, the validation process will try to map any address attribute to a geography of the country, and store any mapping it could establish based on the available data. This is called **Geography Name Referencing** and it is executed as part of validation. The result of this referencing is used in several business processes in the application to map an address to a specific geography or zone.

The Geography Dimension value in territories is derived from sell-to addresses of sales accounts. To use geography dimensions in territories, you must validate the geography elements in the addresses, such as state, city, and postal code. You can validate the address by enabling geography validation for each country using the Manage Geographies task. Perform the following in the Manage Geographies task:

- Enable at least one level in the geography hierarchy for geography validation.
- Enable geography validation for all geography levels that you intend to use for territory definition for each country.
- If needed, enable a list of values containing specific geography elements. This will help users search and select appropriate geography values during addresses entry and eliminate all possibilities of wrong address entry.
You can set geography validation control to Error in the Manage Geography Validation page. This ensures that users can only use valid geography elements in addresses.

**Note:** If you have already created addresses before setting up geography validation for a country, you must enable geography validation and then execute the Run Maintain Geography Name Referencing task for that country. This validates all your geography elements.

### How You Import Geographies

A geography, such as Tokyo or Peru, describes a boundary on the surface of the earth. You can create new geographies by importing data through interface tables. There are two options for populating the interface tables: using the tool of your preference to load the data or using file-based data import. If you plan to provide the data details in a source file, use the file-based import feature. If you will populate the interface table directly, run the geography loader process to import the data. Having a good understanding of the import entity, interface table, and destination table will help you prepare your import data.

**Note:** You must use File-Based data Import in a cloud implementation because you cannot populate the interface tables directly in a cloud implementation.

Consider the following when importing geographies:

- Oracle-licensed geography reference data
- File-based import option
- Geography loader process option
- Import object entity, interface table, and destination tables

### Oracle-Licensed Geography Reference Data

Oracle Applications Cloud includes third-party master geography data for multiple countries that can be imported. You can import Oracle-licensed data from GBG | Loqate, for those countries where the data is available, such as the U.S. You can import geography data using the **Manage Geographies** task. Search for the country, and select **Import Geography Data** from the **Actions** menu. If the licensed data is not available or already set up for a particular country, then the **Import Geography Data** action is disabled.

### File-Based Import Option

The file-based import process reads the data included in your XML or text file, populates the interface tables, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

To access the File-Based Data Import functionality, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:

- Offering: Customer Data Management
- Functional Area: Enterprise Profile
- Task: Manage Import Activities

For more information, see the Importing Geographies chapter in the Oracle Engagement Cloud Understanding File-Based Data Import and Export guide.
Geography Loader Process Option
Populate the interface table with your import data, then to schedule the import of data from the interface table to the destination table, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Offering: Customer Data Management
- Functional Area: Enterprise Profile
- Task: Run Geography Loader

Import Object Entity, Interface Table, and Destination Tables
The geography import object consists of one entity and interface table that forms the geography. If you are using file-based import, you can map your source file data to import entity attributes that correspond to the interface table columns. The import activity process populates the interface table based on the mapping and your source file. If using the geography loader scheduled process, populate the interface table directly using your preferred tool.

If you need the unique IDs of existing application data for your import data, then, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following to export the information:

- Offering: Customer Data Management
- Functional Area: Trading Community Foundation
- Task: Schedule Export Processes

The following table lists the object entity, the interface table, the destination tables, and the resulting application object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File-Based Import Entities</th>
<th>Interface Tables</th>
<th>Destination Tables</th>
<th>Application Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ImpGeography</td>
<td>HZ_IMP_GEOGRAPHIES_T</td>
<td>HZ_GEOGRAPHIES</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HZ_GEOGRAPHY_IDIFIERS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HZ_GEOGRAPHY_TYPES_B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HZ_HIERARCHY_NODES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
- Overview of Implementing Customer Data Management

Overview of Country Structure Import
This topic explains how to prepare and import country structure data from an external data source using the File-Based Data Import feature. A country structure is a hierarchical grouping of geography types for a country. For example, the geography structure for the United States has the geography type of State as the topmost level, followed by the County, then the City, and finally the Postal Code.

You can use the country structure to set up the following:

- The relationships between geographies within a country
- The types of geographies that you can define for a country
Consider the following questions when importing your data:

- How does your legacy system or source system represent the geography data compared to how the application represents the same data?
- Do you have to configure values in the application to map to your data values?
- Do you have to configure the application to capture additional attributes that are critical to the way you do business?
- What import features are available for importing your business object?
- How do you verify your imported data?

**Compare Business Object Structures**

You must understand how your country structure data corresponds with the data in the application so that you can map your legacy data to the data that the application requires. First, you must understand how the application represents the structure of the data for a country structure.

You must import a separate country structure import object for each country. Each of these import objects must contain the geography types that are used in the country’s structure, organized in a hierarchy using geography level numbers. For example, if you’re importing the country structure of Australia, the country structure could be the following: 1: Country, 2: State, 3: County, 4: Town, 5: ZIP.

**Import Objects for the Country Structure**

To facilitate importing country structures, the application incorporates the structure of the country structure into import objects. The import object for country structures is GeoStructureLevel.

**Compare Business Object Data**

Each import object is a collection of attributes that helps to map your data to the application data and to support one-to-many relationships between the structural components that make up the country structure.

You must understand the attribute details of the import objects so that you can prepare your import data. You can use reference guide files that contain attribute descriptions, values that populate attributes by default when you don’t provide values, and validation information for each attribute. The validation information includes the navigation path to the task where you can define values in the application. For example, if you have values in your data that correlate to a choice list in the application, then the validation information for that attribute provides the task name in the Setup and Maintenance work area where you can define your values.

**Configurable Attributes**

If you need to configure the application object to import your legacy or source data, you must use the Application Composer to design your object model extensions and to generate the required artifacts to register your extensions and make them available for importing. The corresponding import object is updated with the configurable attributes, which can then be mapped to your source file data. You can use the same source file to import both configurable attributes and the standard import object attributes.

**Import Country Structures**

For the country structure business object, you must use the File-Based Data Import feature. You prepare XML or text source data files in a form that is suitable for a file-based import. The file-based import process reads the data in your source file, populates the interface tables according to your mapping, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

The Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list includes the tasks that are required to configure the import objects, to create source-file mappings, and to schedule the import activities. You submit file-based import activities for each import object. When you’re creating a new country structure, you import the Country Structure object. You must
be assigned the Master Data Management Administrator job role to access and submit the import activities for country structures.

**Verifying Your Imported Data**
You can view the list of import activities from the Manage Import Activities page. You can verify your imported data by clicking the Status column for your import activity.

**Related Topics**
- How File-Based Data Import Works
- About File-Based Import Documentation

**How Country Structure Import Objects Work Together**
This topic describes the Country Structure import object. You use the Country Structure import object when you submit a file-based import activity to import your country structure information. This topic introduces the following:

- Target objects for the Country Structure import object
- Target import object attributes
- Reference guide files for target import object attributes

**Country Structure Target Import Objects**
The Country Structure import object contains one target import object. The target import object organizes the individual attributes of the different aspects of the geography structure. When updating an existing country structure, you must provide the parent reference information of the existing country structure. This reference information connects the imported geography structure to the existing one. Use the ImpGeoStructureLevel target import object to create and update country structure information.

**Target Import Object Attributes**
You must compare the attributes that you want to import with the target object attributes that are available and with their valid values. To evaluate your source data and Oracle Engagement Cloud attributes for mapping and validation, you use a reference file. See the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Engagement Cloud guide available on the Oracle Engagement Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/en/cloud/saas/index.html). In the File-Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. A reference guide file includes attribute descriptions, default values, and validations performed by the import process. Review the validation for each attribute to determine whether there are functional prerequisites or prerequisite setup tasks that are required.

To import your source file data, you define a mapping between your source file data and the combination of the target object and target object attribute. You can predefined and manage import mappings. Do one of the following.

1. Navigate to the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:
   - Offering: Sales
   - Functional Area: Data Import and Export
   - Task: Manage File Import Mappings
2. Define the mapping when you define the import activity. Navigate to the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:
   - Offering: Sales
   - Functional Area: Data Import and Export
   - Task: Manage File Import Activities

Note: If any of the attributes you want to import does not have an equivalent target object attribute, then review the Application Composer extensibility features for country structures.

Reference Files for Target Import Object Attributes
To access reference files for this object’s target import objects, see the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Engagement Cloud guide available on the Oracle Engagement Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/en/cloud/saas/index.html). In the File-Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects.

For detailed information on importing geographies using file-based import, refer to Document No. 1481758.1, Importing Master Reference Geography Data, on the Oracle Support site.

The following table lists the reference file for the ImpGeoStructureLevel target import object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Import Object</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Reference File Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ImpGeoStructureLevel</td>
<td>Information that specifies a country’s geography structure.</td>
<td>HZ_IMP_GEO_STRUCTURE_LEVELS_Reference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
- How File-Based Data Import Works
- About File-Based Import Documentation
- How You Import Country Structures

Overview of Geography Import
This topic explains how to prepare and import geography data from an external data source using the File-Based Data Import feature. A geography is any region with a boundary around it, regardless of its size. It might be a state, a country, a city, a county, or a ward. You must create or import geographies before you can associate them with company-specific zones and addresses.

Note: The application ships with third-party master geography data for multiple countries that can be imported. You can import Oracle-licensed data from GBG | Loqate, for those countries where the data is available, such as the U.S. You can import geography data using the Manage Geographies task. Search for the country, and select Import Geography Data from the Actions menu. If the licensed data is not available for a particular country, then the Import Geography Data action is disabled. For more information, see Replacing Existing Master Geography Data with Revised Oracle-Licensed Geography Data: Procedure. If GBG | Loqate geography data is not available for a country, then use the information in this chapter to import it using File-Based Data Import.
Consider the following questions when importing your data:

- How does your legacy system or source system represent the geography data compared to how Oracle applications represent the same data?
- Do you have to configure values in the application to map to your data values?
- What import features are available for importing your business object?
- How do you verify your imported data?

**Compare Business Object Structures**

You must understand how your geography data corresponds with the data in the application so that you can map your legacy data to the data that the application requires. First, you must understand how the application represents the structure of the data for a geography.

You must import a separate country structure import object for each country. Each of these import objects must contain the geography types that are used in the country’s structure, organized in a hierarchy using geography level numbers. For example, if you are importing the country structure of Australia, the country structure could be the following: 1: Country, 2: State, 3: County, 4: Town, 5: ZIP.

**Import Objects for the Geography**

To facilitate importing geographies, the application incorporates the structure of the geography into import objects. The import object for the geography is ImpGeography.

**Compare Business Object Data**

Each import object is a collection of attributes that helps to map your data to the application data and to support one-to-many relationships between the structural components that make up the geography.

You must understand the attribute details of the import objects so that you can prepare your import data. You can use reference guide files that contain attribute descriptions, values that populate attributes by default when you do not provide values, and validation information for each import object attribute. The validation information includes the navigation path to the task where you can define values in the application. For example, if you have values in your data that correlate to a choice list in the application, then the validation information for that attribute provides the task name in the Setup and Maintenance work area where you can define your values.

You can use the keyword importing geographies to search for related topics in Help.

**Configurable Attributes**

The application doesn’t support configurable attributes for geographies. You can import only data for geography object that already exist by default in the application.

**Import Geographies**

For the geography business object, you must use the File-Based Data Import feature. You prepare XML or text source data files in a form that is suitable for a file-based import. The file-based import process reads the data in your source file, populates the interface tables according to your mapping, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

The Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list includes the tasks that are required to configure the import objects, to create source-file mappings, and to schedule the import activities. You submit file-based import activities for each import object. When you’re creating a new geography, you import the Geography object. You must be assigned the Master Data Management Administrator job role to access and submit the import activities for geographies.

When importing geography information, you must provide the parent reference information for all parent levels for the entity.
Verify Your Imported Data
Oracle applications provide File-Based Import activity reports, which you can use to verify imported data. Users with the Master Data Management Administrator job role can also navigate to the Manage Geographies work area to view the imported geographies.

**Related Topics**
- How File-Based Data Import Works
- About File-Based Import Documentation

How Geography Import Objects Work Together
This topic describes the Geography import object. You use the Geography import object to import geography information.

This topic introduces the following:
- Target objects for the Geography import object
- Target import object attributes
- Reference guide files for target import object attributes

**Geography Target Import Objects**
You can use the Geography import object to import geography hierarchy information to create or update the geography data of a country. To map the source data in your import file to the target attributes in the application, you must understand how the target objects are related and what attributes are included in each target object.

The target import objects in the Geography import object contain information about the geography hierarchy. When updating an existing geography, you must provide the parent reference information of the existing geography, which connects the geography to the country of which it is a part.

Use the ImpGeography target import object to create and update geography information.

> **Note:** Before you import geography data for a country, you must define the country’s geography structure.

**Target Import Object Attributes**
You must compare the attributes that you want to import with the target object attributes that are available and with their valid values. To evaluate your source data and Oracle Engagement Cloud attributes for mapping and validation, you use a reference file. See the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Engagement Cloud guide available on the Oracle Engagement Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/en/cloud/saas/index.html). In the File-Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. A reference guide file includes attribute descriptions, default values, and validations performed by the import process. Review the validation for each attribute to determine whether there are functional prerequisites or prerequisite setup tasks that are required.

To import your source file data, you define a mapping between your source file data and the combination of the target object and target object attribute. You can predefine and manage import mappings. Do one of the following.

1. Navigate to the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:
   - Offering: Sales
2. Define the mapping when you define the import activity. Navigate to the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:
   - Offering: Sales
   - Functional Area: Data Import and Export
   - Task: Manage File Import Activities

   **Note:** If any of the attributes you want to import do not have an equivalent target object attribute, then review the Application Composer extensibility features for geography.

### Reference Files for Target Import Object Attributes

To access the reference guide files for the geography’s target import objects, see the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Engagement Cloud guide available on the Oracle Engagement Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). In the File-Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. For detailed information on importing geographies using file-based import, refer to Document No. 1481758.1, Importing Master Reference Geography Data, on the Oracle Support site.

The following table lists the reference file for the ImpGeography target import object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Import Object</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute Reference File Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ImpGeography</td>
<td>Contains information that captures a country’s geography hierarchy details, such as geography type, geography code, and so on.</td>
<td>HZ_IMP_GEOGRAPHIES_T_Reference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Topics
- How File-Based Data Import Works
- About File-Based Import Documentation

### Example of Importing Geographies

This example demonstrates how to import data using the File-Based Data Import tool. In this example, you have a source file containing geography data that you want to import into the application to make the geography data available for real time address validation and tax purposes.

The following table summarizes the key decisions that you must make in this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What type of object are you importing?</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What file type are you using for your source data?</td>
<td>Text file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Decisions to Consider | In This Example
--- | ---
Where are you uploading your source data file from? | Your desktop
What data type is your source data file? | Comma separated
Which fields are you importing into the application? | All, except for the RecordTypeCode field
When do you want to process the import? | Immediately

Summary of the Tasks
You perform the following steps to create an import activity and activate the import:

1. Determining what information is in the source file.
2. Creating and scheduling the import activity.
3. Monitoring the import results.

Before You Start

1. Ensure that the combination of the Source ID and Parent Source ID values is unique for each row of data within a single import. However, your source data files don’t need to have the same Source ID and Parent Source ID values as your previously imported geography data. If the geography structure levels and the parents for each geography value are the same, then the changed IDs will not affect the import.
2. Ensure that all the parents of a child geography are included in your data file so that the child geography can be added. For example, if you originally imported US, CA, and San Francisco, and now you want to import the city of San Jose in CA, then your data file must include US, CA, and San Jose.
3. Check that your source data file has the correct values for the geography data that you have already loaded. For example, if your initial import included the value US for country and CA as state, and in a subsequent import you have California as a state, then your geography import creates two state records (CA and California) in the application data, with the US as the country parent.

Determine What Information Is in the Source File

1. The source geography data files must include a unique Source ID value for each row of data and Parent Source ID value for the parent of that row of data. The Source or Parent Source IDs should not be longer than 18 characters.
2. You can structure your geography source data, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geography Level</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Source ID</th>
<th>Parent Source ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 (Country)</td>
<td>US</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (State)</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (County)</td>
<td>Alameda</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (City)</td>
<td>Pleasanton</td>
<td>1111</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (City)</td>
<td>Dublin</td>
<td>1112</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Create and Schedule the Import Activity

You can create an import activity, enter the import details, and schedule the import. An import activity includes selecting the source file or file location, mapping the source file to the database, and scheduling the import.

1. Navigate to the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:
   - Offering: Sales
   - Functional Area: Data Import and Export
   - Task: Manage File Import Activities

2. In the Manage Import Activities page, click Create.

3. In the Create Import Activity: Map Fields page, map each field from your source file to the target object and attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Master Reference Geographies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Type</td>
<td>Text File</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Selection</td>
<td>Specific file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upload From</td>
<td>Desktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>Choose relevant file from desktop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Type</td>
<td>Comma separated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* Ensure that the file type that you select in the Create Import Activity: Set Up page matches the file type of the source data file.

4. Click Next.

5. In the Create Import Activity: Map Fields page, map each field from your source file to the database object and attribute, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Header</th>
<th>Example Value</th>
<th>Ignore</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary Geography Name</td>
<td>Primary Geography Name</td>
<td></td>
<td>Imp Geography</td>
<td>Primary Geography Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>US</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Imp Geography</td>
<td>Country Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record Type Code</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Imp Geography</td>
<td>Record Type Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source ID</td>
<td>10265</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Imp Geography</td>
<td>Source ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you don't want to import a column in the text file, then you can select **Ignore**.

> **Note:** If you can't map the fields from your source file to the relevant target object, then see the import object spreadsheets.

6. Click **Next**.

7. In the Create Import Activity: Create Schedule page, select **Immediate** in the Schedule field so that the import will start as soon as you activate it.

Instead of immediately importing the data, you can choose a date and time to start the import. You can also specify whether the import will be repeated and the frequency of the repeated import.

8. Click **Next**.

**Monitor the Import Results**

You can monitor the processing of the import activity and view the completion reports for both successful records and errors.

1. In the Create Import Activity: Review and Activate page, verify your import details in the Import Details, File Details, Import Options, and Schedule sections. Update the import details if required by navigating to the previous screens using the **Back** link.

2. Confirm your import details, and click **Activate** to submit the import.

After the import activity has finished, the Status field value changes to Completed.

**How You Import and Export Territory Geography Zones**

Territory geography zones are geographical boundaries that you can set up to replicate your organization's regions, such as a Pacific Northwest sales region. You can set up territory geography zones in one application instance, and then after the territory geography zones are defined you can export the territory zones and import them into another application instance.

To define your territory geography zones and then import your territory zones into another application instance, you must complete the following steps:

1. Import the master reference geography data into the application.
2. Define your territory geography zones using the Manage Territory Geographies task.
3. Export the territory geography zones.
4. Import the territory geography zones into another application instance.

**Import the Master Reference Geography Data**

Firstly, you must import the master reference geography data. Master reference geography data includes geography elements, such as country, state, and city, and is required for any geographical information that you store in the application, such as address information used in customer and sales records. For more information, see the topic Geography Hierarchy: Explained. Master reference geography data can be imported into the application using the Manage File Import Activities task in Setup and Maintenance.
Define Your Territory Geography Zones
After the master reference geography data has been imported, you can then create your territory geography zones in the application using the Manage Territory Geographies task in Setup and Maintenance. For more information, see the topic Managing Territory Geographies: Worked Example.

Export the Territory Geography Zones
After you have completed importing the master reference geography data and defining your territory geography zone tasks, you can create a configuration package to export the territory zone data. For more information, refer to the Exporting Setup Data demo listed in the related topics section.

Import the Territory Geography Zones
After you have downloaded your configuration package for your territory geography zone setup, you can import the territory zones into another application instance.

Note: Ensure that you import your master reference geography data into the new application instance before you import the configuration package.

Related Topics
- Managing Territory Geographies: Worked Example

Manage Geography Structures, Hierarchies, and Validation
This example shows how to configure the geography structure, hierarchy, and validation for a country geography, using the United Kingdom country geography as an illustration.

The following table summarizes the key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copy an existing country structure?</td>
<td>No, create a new country structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is the structure of the geography types?</td>
<td>Create geography types with the following ranking structure:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Post Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is the geography hierarchy?</td>
<td>Create the following hierarchy:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Country of United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. County of Berkshire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Post Town of Reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which address style format will you use when mapping geography validations?</td>
<td>The default address style format, called the No Styles Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you using Oracle Fusion Tax for tax purposes?</td>
<td>No, do not select Tax Validation for the geography types.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define the Geography Structure
Add the County and Post Town geography types to the United Kingdom geography structure.

1. On the Manage Geographies page, enter GB in the Code field. Click Search.
2. On the Manage Geographies page, click Structure Defined.
3. On the Manage Geography Structure page, click the Create button next to the Copy Country Structure From field.
4. In the Geography Structure section, select the County list item in the Add Geography Type field.
5. Click Add.
6. Select the Post Town list item in the Add Geography Type field.
7. Click Add.

Define the Geography Hierarchy
To create the geography hierarchy for United Kingdom, add the geographies for the County and Post Town geography types using the geography hierarchy user interfaces. You can also use the Manage File Import Activities task to import geography hierarchies using a .csv or xml file.

1. On the Manage Geographies page, enter GB in the Code field. Click Search.
2. On the Manage Geographies page, click Hierarchy Defined.
3. In the Geography Hierarchy section, click United Kingdom to highlight the table row, and click Create.
4. In the Create County page, Primary and Alternate Names section, enter Berkshire in the Name field.
5. Click Save and Close.
6. In the Geography Hierarchy section, click Berkshire to highlight the table row, and click Create.
7. In the Create Post Town page, Primary and Alternate Names section, enter Reading in the Name field.
8. Click Save and Close.

Define the Geography Validations
To specify the geography validations for the geography types you added to United Kingdom, define the geography mapping and validation for the United Kingdom default address style format. Then, map the geography types to attributes, enable the geography types for Lists of Values and Geography Validation, and set the geography validation level.

1. On the Manage Geographies page, click Validation Defined.
2. In the Address Style section, click No Styles Format to highlight the table row.
3. For the County geography type, click the County list item in the Map to Attribute field.
4. Select the Enable List of Values and Geography Validation options.
5. For the Post Town geography type, click the City list item in the Map to Attribute field.
6. Select the Geography Validation option.
7. In the Geography Validation Control section, select Error in the Geography Validation Level for Country list.
8. Click Save and Close.

FAQs for Define Geographies

When do I define address cleansing?
When address data entered into the application needs to conform to a particular format, in order to achieve consistency in the representation of addresses. For example, making sure that the incoming data is stored following the correct postal address format.
Why can't I update a geography structure by copying an existing country structure?
You can only update a geography structure by adding existing geography types, or by creating new geography types and then adding them to the geography structure. You can only copy an existing country structure when you are defining a new country structure.

Why can't I delete a level of the country geography structure?
If a geography exists for a country geography structure level then you can’t delete the level. For example, if a state geography has been created for the United States country geography structure, then the State level cannot be deleted in the country geography structure.

Can I add any geography to the geography hierarchy?
Yes. However, the geography type for the geography that you want to add must be already added to the country geography structure.

Can I edit a specific geography in the geography hierarchy?
Yes. In the Manage Geography Hierarchy page you can edit details such as the geography’s date range, primary and alternate names and codes, and parent geographies.

How can I add a geography that is at a lower level to any geography in a geography hierarchy?
Select the geography that you want to create a geography at lower level, and then click the **Create** icon. This will allow you to create a geography for a geography type that is one level lower to the geography type you selected. The structure of the country’s geography types are defined in the Manage Geography Structure page.

Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities

Overview
You are required to register your legal entities with legal authorities in the jurisdictions where you conduct business. Register your legal entities as required by local business requirements or other relevant laws. For example, register your legal entities for tax reporting to report sales taxes or value added taxes.

Define jurisdictions and related legal authorities to support multiple legal entity registrations, which are used by Oracle Fusion Tax and Oracle Fusion Payroll. When you create a legal entity, the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator automatically creates one legal reporting unit for that legal entity with a registration.

Jurisdictions
Jurisdiction is a physical territory such as a group of countries, country, state, county, or parish where a particular piece of legislation applies. French Labor Law, Singapore Transactions Tax Law, and US Income Tax Laws are examples of particular legislation that apply to legal entities operating in different countries’ jurisdictions. Judicial authority may be exercised within a jurisdiction.

Types of jurisdictions are:
- Identifying Jurisdiction
• Income Tax Jurisdiction
• Transaction Tax Jurisdiction

Identifying Jurisdiction
For each legal entity, select an identifying jurisdiction. An identifying jurisdiction is your first jurisdiction you must register with to be allowed to do business in a country. If there is more than one jurisdiction that a legal entity must register with to commence business, select one as the identifying jurisdiction. Typically the identifying jurisdiction is the one you use to uniquely identify your legal entity.

Income tax jurisdictions and transaction tax jurisdictions do not represent the same jurisdiction. Although in some countries, the two jurisdictions are defined at the same geopolitical level, such as a country, and share the same legal authority, they are two distinct jurisdictions.

Income Tax Jurisdiction
Create income tax jurisdictions to properly report and remit income taxes to the legal authority. Income tax jurisdictions by law impose taxes on your financial income generated by all your entities within their jurisdiction. Income tax is a key source of funding that the government uses to fund its activities and serve the public.

Transaction Tax Jurisdiction
Create transaction tax jurisdictions through Oracle Fusion Tax in a separate business flow, because of the specific needs and complexities of various taxes. Tax jurisdictions and their respective rates are provided by suppliers and require periodic maintenance. Use transaction tax jurisdiction for legal reporting of sales and value added taxes.

Legal Authorities
A legal authority is a government or legal body that is charged with powers to make laws, levy and collect fees and taxes, and remit financial appropriations for a given jurisdiction.

For example, the Internal Revenue Service is the authority for enforcing income tax laws in United States. In some countries, such as India and Brazil, you are required to print legal authority information on your tax reports. Legal authorities are defined in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. Tax authorities are a subset of legal authorities and are defined using the same setup flow.

Legal authorities are not mandatory in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM), but are recommended and are generally referenced on statutory reports.

Creating Legal Jurisdictions, Addresses and Authorities: Examples
Define legal jurisdictions and related legal authorities to support multiple legal entity registrations, which are used by Oracle Fusion Tax and Oracle Fusion Payroll.

Legal Jurisdictions
Create a legal jurisdiction by following these steps:

1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Jurisdictions > Go to Task.
2. Select Create.
3. Enter a unique Name, United States Income Tax.
4. Select a Territory, United States.
5. Select a **Legislative Category**, Income tax.
6. Select **Identifying**, Yes. Identifying indicates the first jurisdiction a legal entity must register with to do business in a country.
7. Enter a **Start Date** if desired. You can also add an **End Date** to indicate a date that the jurisdiction may no longer be used.
8. Select a **Legal Entity Registration Code**, EIN or TIN.
9. Select a **Legal Reporting Unit Registration Code**, Legal Reporting Unit Registration Number.
10. Optionally enter one or more **Legal Functions**.
11. **Save and Close**.

### Legal Addresses for Legal Entities and Reporting Units

Create a legal address for legal entities and reporting units by following these steps:

1. **Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Address > Go to Task.**
2. Select **Create**.
3. Select **Country**.
4. Enter **Address Line 1**, Oracle Parkway.
5. Optionally enter **Address Line 2**, and **Address Line 3**.
6. Enter or Select the postal code, 94065.
7. Select **Geography** 94065 and **Parent Geography** Redwood Shores, San Mateo, CA.
9. **OK**.
10. **Save and Close**.

### Legal Authorities

Create a legal authority by following these steps:

1. **Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Authorities > Go to Task.**
2. Enter the **Name**, California Franchise Tax Board.
3. Enter the **Tax Authority Type**, Reporting.
4. Select **Create**.
5. The **Site Number** is automatically assigned.
6. Optionally enter a **Mail Stop**.
7. Select **Country**, United States
8. Enter **Address Line 1**, 121 Spear Street, Suite 400.
9. Optionally enter **Address Line 2**, and **Address Line 3**.
10. Enter or Select the postal code, 94105.
11. Select **Geography** 94105 and **Parent Geography** San Francisco, San Francisco, CA.
12. **OK**.
14. Optionally click the **One-Time Address** check box.
15. The **From Date** displays today’s date. Update if necessary.
16. Optionally enter a **To Date** to indicate the last day the address can be used.

**Note:** You can optionally enter **Address Purpose** details.

17. Select **Add Row**.
18. Select **Purpose**.
19. The **Purpose from Date** will default to today's date.
20. Optionally enter a **Purpose to Date**.
21. **OK**.
22. **Save and Close**.

### Creating Legal Entities, Registrations, and Reporting Units: Examples

Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.

**Legal Entity**

Create a legal entity by following these steps:

1. **Navigator** > **Setup and Maintenance** > **Manage Legal Entity** > **Go to Task**.
2. Accept the default **Country**, United States.
3. Enter **Name**, InFusion USA West.
4. Enter **Legal Entity Identifier**, US0033.
5. Optionally enter **Start Date**. When the start date is blank the legal entity is effective from the creation date.
6. Optionally enter an **End Date**.
7. Optionally, if your legal entity should be registered to report payroll tax and social insurance, select the **Payroll statutory unit** check box.
8. Optionally, if your legal entity has employees, select the **Legal employer** check box.
9. Optionally, if this legal entity is not a payroll statutory unit, select an existing payroll statutory unit to report payroll tax and social instance on behalf of this legal entity.
10. Enter the **Registration Information**
12. Search for and select a **Legal Address**, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood Shores, CA 94065.
    The legal address must have been entered previously using the **Manage Legal Address** task.
13. **OK**.
14. Optionally enter a **Place of Registration**.
15. Enter the **EIN or TIN**.
16. Enter the **Legal Reporting Unit Registration Number**.
17. **Save and Close**.
18. **Navigator** > **Setup and Maintenance** > **Define Legal Entries** > **Manage Legal Entity** > **Select** to set scope.
19. Select the **Manage Legal Entity**.
20. In the **Legal Entity** list, select **Select and Add**.
21. Click **Apply and Go to Task**.
22. Select your legal entity.
23. **Save and Close**.
    This sets the scope for your task list to the selected legal entity.
24. **Save and Close**.

**Legal Entity Registrations**

A legal entity registration with the same name as that of the legal entity is created by default. To verify this, locate the **Manage Legal Entity Registrations** task and then select **Go to Task**. To create another registration for the legal entity follow these steps:

1. **Navigator** > **Setup and Maintenance** > **Manage Legal Entity Registrations**: Verify that the **Legal Entity** scope value is set correctly.
2. Go to Task.
3. Select Create.
4. Enter Jurisdiction.
5. Enter Registered Address.
6. Enter Registered Name.
7. Optionally enter Alternate Name, Registration Number, Place of Registration, Issuing Legal Authority, and Issuing Legal Authority Address, Start Date, and End Date.
8. Save and Close.

Legal Reporting Unit

When a legal entity is created, a legal reporting unit with the same name as that of the entity is also automatically created. To create more legal reporting units or modify the settings follow these steps:

1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Define Legal Reporting Unit. > Manage Legal Reporting Unit. Verify that the Legal Entity scope value is set correctly.
2. Go to Task
3. Select Create.
4. Enter Territory, United States.
5. Enter Name.
6. Optionally enter a Start Date.
7. Enter Registration Information.
8. Search for and select Jurisdiction.
9. Enter Main Legal Reporting Unit information.
10. Select the value Yes or No for the Main Legal Reporting Unit. Set value to yes only if you are creating a new main (primary) legal reporting unit.
11. Enter the Main Effective Start Date, 1/1/11.
12. Save and Close.

Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity

Overview

A legal entity is a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation.

Legal entities have the following rights and responsibilities to:

- Own property
- Trade
- Repay debt
- Account for themselves to regulators, taxation authorities, and owners according to rules specified in the relevant legislation

Their rights and responsibilities may be enforced through the judicial system. Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, expenses and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.

A legal entity has responsibility for elements of your enterprise for the following reasons:

- Facilitating local compliance
- Minimizing the enterprise’s tax liability
• Preparing for acquisitions or disposals of parts of the enterprise
• Isolating one area of the business from risks in another area. For example, your enterprise develops property and also leases properties. You could operate the property development business as a separate legal entity to limit risk to your leasing business.

The Role of Your Legal Entities
In configuring your enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion Applications, the contracting party on any transaction is always the legal entity. Individual legal entities:

• Own the assets of the enterprise
• Record sales and pay taxes on those sales
• Make purchases and incur expenses
• Perform other transactions

Legal entities must comply with the regulations of jurisdictions, in which they register. Europe now allows for companies to register in one member country and do business in all member countries, and the US allows for companies to register in one state and do business in all states. To support local reporting requirements, legal reporting units are created and registered.

You are required to publish specific and periodic disclosures of your legal entities’ operations based on different jurisdictions’ requirements. Certain annual or more frequent accounting reports are referred to as statutory or external reporting. These reports must be filed with specified national and regulatory authorities. For example, in the United States (US), your publicly owned entities (corporations) are required to file quarterly and annual reports, as well as other periodic reports, with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which enforces statutory reporting requirements for public corporations.

Individual entities privately held or held by public companies do not have to file separately. In other countries, your individual entities do have to file in their own name, as well as at the public group level. Disclosure requirements are diverse. For example, your local entities may have to file locally to comply with local regulations in a local currency, as well as being included in your enterprise’s reporting requirements in different currency.

A legal entity can represent all or part of your enterprise’s management framework. For example, if you operate in a large country such as the United Kingdom or Germany, you might incorporate each division in the country as a separate legal entity. In a smaller country, for example Austria, you might use a single legal entity to host all of your business operations across divisions.

Model Legal Entities
Oracle Fusion Applications support the modeling of your legal entities. If you make purchases from or sell to other legal entities, define these other legal entities in your customer and supplier registers. These registers are part of the Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture.

When your legal entities are trading with each other, represent them as legal entities and as customers and suppliers in your customer and supplier registers. Use legal entity relationships to determine which transactions are intercompany and require intercompany accounting. Your legal entities can be identified as legal employers and therefore, are available for use in Human Capital Management (HCM) applications.

Several decisions you should consider when you create legal entities.

• The importance of using legal entity on transactions
• Legal entity and its relationship to business units
• Legal entity and its relationship to divisions
Legal entity and its relationship to ledgers
Legal entity and its relationship to balancing segments
Legal entity and its relationship to consolidation rules
Legal entity and its relationship to intercompany transactions
Legal entity and its relationship to worker assignments and legal employer
Legal entity and payroll reporting
Legal reporting units

The Importance of Using Legal Entities on Transactions
All of the assets of the enterprise are owned by individual legal entities. Oracle Fusion Financials allow your users to enter legal entities on transactions that represent a movement in value or obligation.

For example, a sales order creates an obligation on the legal entity that books the order and promises to deliver the goods on the acknowledged date. The creation also creates an obligation on the purchaser to receive and pay for those goods. Contract law in most countries contains statutes that state damages can be sought for both:

- Actual losses, putting the injured party in the same state as if they had not entered into the contract.
- What is called loss of bargain, or the profit that would have made on a transaction.

In another example, if you revalued your inventory in a warehouse to account for raw material price increases, the revaluation and revaluation reserves must be reflected in your legal entity’s accounts. In Oracle Fusion Applications, your inventory within an inventory organization is managed by a single business unit and belongs to one legal entity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Business Units
A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Frequently, a business unit is part of a single legal entity. In most cases, the legal entity is explicit on your transactions. For example, a payables invoice has an explicit legal entity field. Your accounts payables department can process supplier invoices on behalf of one or many business units.

In some cases, your legal entity is inferred from your business unit that is processing the transaction. For example, Business Unit ACM UK has a default legal entity of InFusion UK Ltd. When a purchase order is placed in ACM UK, the legal entity InFusion UK Ltd is legally obligated to the supplier. Oracle Fusion Procurement, Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management, and Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications rely on deriving the legal entity information from the business unit.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Divisions
The division is an area of management responsibility that can correspond to a collection of legal entities. If wanted, you can aggregate the results for your divisions by legal entity or by combining parts of other legal entities. Define date-effective hierarchies for your cost center or legal entity segment in your chart of accounts to facilitate the aggregation and reporting by division. Divisions and legal entities are independent concepts.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Ledgers
One of your major responsibilities is to file financial statements for your legal entities. Map legal entities to specific ledgers using the Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Within a ledger, you can optionally map a legal entity to one or more balancing segment values.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Balancing Segments
Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports up to three balancing segments. Best practices recommend one segment represents your legal entity to ease your requirement to account for your operations to regulatory agencies, tax authorities, and investors. Accounting for your operations means you must produce a balanced trial balance sheet by legal entity. If you account for many legal entities in a single ledger, you must:

1. Identify the legal entities within the ledger.
2. Balance transactions that cross legal entity boundaries through intercompany transactions.

3. Decide which balancing segments correspond to each legal entity and assign them in Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Once you assign one balancing segment value in a ledger, then all your balancing segment values must be assigned. This recommended best practice facilitates reporting on assets, liabilities, and income by legal entity.

Represent your legal entities by at least one balancing segment value. You may represent it by two or three balancing segment values if more granular reporting is required. For example, if your legal entity operates in multiple jurisdictions in Europe, you might define balancing segment values and map them to legal reporting units. You can represent a legal entity with more than one balancing segment value. Do not use a single balancing segment value to represent more than one legal entity.

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, there are three balancing segments. You can use separate balancing segments to represent your divisions or strategic business units to enable management reporting at the balance sheet level for each. This solution is used to empower your business unit and divisional managers to track and assume responsibility for their asset utilization or return on investment. Using multiple balancing segments is also useful when you know at the time of implementation that you are disposing of a part of a legal entity and want to isolate the assets and liabilities for that entity.

Implementing multiple balancing segments requires every journal entry that is not balanced by division or business unit, to generate balancing lines. You cannot change to multiple balancing segments after you begin using the ledger because your historical data is not balanced by the new balancing segments. Restating historical data must be done at that point.

If your enterprise regularly spins off businesses or holds managers accountable for utilization of assets, identify the business with a balancing segment value. If you account for each legal entity in a separate ledger, no requirement exists to identify the legal entity with a balancing segment value.

While transactions that cross balancing segments don’t necessarily cross legal entity boundaries, all transactions that cross legal entity boundaries must cross balancing segments. If you make an acquisition or are preparing to dispose of a portion of your enterprise, you may want to account for that part of the enterprise in its own balancing segment even if the portion is not a separate legal entity. If you do not map legal entities sharing the same ledger to balancing segments, you cannot distinguish them using intercompany functionality or track individual equity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Consolidation Rules
In Oracle Fusion Applications you can map legal entities to balancing segments and then define consolidation rules using your balancing segments. You are creating a relationship between the definition of your legal entities and their role in your consolidation.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Intercompany Transactions
Use Oracle Fusion Intercompany feature to create intercompany entries automatically across your balancing segments. Intercompany processing updates legal ownership within the enterprise’s groups of legal entities. Invoices or journals are created as needed. To limit the number of trading pairs for your enterprise, set up intercompany organizations and assign then to your authorized legal entities. Define processing options and intercompany accounts to use when creating intercompany transactions and to assist in consolidation elimination entries. These accounts are derived and automatically entered on your intercompany transactions based on legal entities assigned to your intercompany organizations.

Intracompany trading, in which legal ownership isn’t changed but other organizational responsibilities are, is also supported. For example, you can track assets and liabilities that move between your departments within your legal entities by creating departmental level intercompany organizations.

Tip: In the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications, you can model intercompany relationships using business units, from which legal entities are derived.
Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Worker Assignments and Legal Employer

Legal entities that employ people are called legal employers in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. You must enter legal employers on worker assignments in Oracle Fusion HCM.

Legal Entity and Payroll Reporting

Your legal entities are required to pay payroll tax and social insurance such as social security on your payroll. In Oracle Fusion Applications, you can register payroll statutory units to pay and report on payroll tax and social insurance for your legal entities. As the legal employer, you might be required to pay payroll tax, not only at the national level, but also at the local level. You meet this obligation by establishing your legal entity as a place of work within the jurisdiction of a local authority. Set up legal reporting units to represent the part of your enterprise with a specific legal reporting obligation. You can also mark these legal reporting units as tax reporting units, if the legal entity must pay taxes as a result of establishing a place of business within the jurisdiction.

Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity HCM Information

Examples of HCM Organization Models

These examples illustrate different models for human capital management (HCM) organizations that include a legislative data group (LDG). This example includes LDGs, which aren’t an organization classification, to show how to partition payroll data by associating them with a payroll statutory unit.

Simple Configuration

This example illustrates a simple configuration that does not include any tax reporting units.

Note the following:

- The legal employer and payroll statutory units are the same, sharing the same boundaries.
- Reporting can only be done at a single level. Countries such as Saudi Arabia and the United Arab Emirates (UAE) might use this type of model, as these countries report at the legal entity level.
This figure illustrates a simple configuration where the enterprise has only one legal entity, which is both a payroll statutory unit and a legal employer.

**Multiple Legal Employers and Tax Reporting Units**

This example illustrates a more complex configuration. In this enterprise, you define one legal entity, InFusion US as a payroll statutory unit with two separate legal entities, which are also legal employers. This model shows multiple legal employers that are associated with a single payroll statutory unit. Tax reporting units are always associated with a specific legal employer (or employers) through the payroll statutory unit.

The implication is that payroll statutory reporting boundaries vary from human resources (HR) management, and you can categorize the balances separately by one of the following:

- Payroll statutory unit
- Legal employer
- Tax reporting unit

This configuration is based on tax filing requirements, as some tax-related payments and reports are associated with a higher level than employers. An example of a country that might use this model is the US.
This figure illustrates an enterprise that has one payroll statutory unit and multiple legal employers and tax reporting units.

**One Payroll Statutory Unit and Two Tax Reporting Units**

This model makes no distinction between a legal employer and a payroll statutory unit. You define tax reporting units as subsidiaries to the legal entity.

In this enterprise, legal entity is the highest level of aggregation for payroll calculations and reporting. Statutory reporting boundaries are the same for both payroll and HR management. An example of a country that might use this model is France.
This figure illustrates an example of an organization with one legal entity. The legal entity is both a legal employer and a payroll statutory unit and that has two tax reporting units.

One Payroll Statutory Unit with Several Tax Reporting Units

In this model, the enterprise has one legal entity. Legal employers and tax reporting units are independent from each other within a payroll statutory unit, because there is no relationship from a legal perspective. Therefore, you can run reporting on both entities independently.

Using this model, you wouldn’t typically:

- Report on tax reporting unit balances within a legal employer
- Categorize balances by either or both organizations, as required

An example of a country that might use this model is India.
This figure illustrates an enterprise with one legal entity that is a payroll statutory unit and a legal employer. The tax reporting units are independent from the legal employer.

**Multiple Payroll Statutory Units with Several Tax Reporting Units**

In this model, the enterprise has two legal entities. The legal employers and tax reporting units are independent from each other within a payroll statutory unit, because there is no relationship from a legal perspective. Therefore, you can run reporting on both entities independently.

Using this model, you wouldn't typically:

- Report on tax reporting unit balances within a legal employer
- Categorize balances by either or both organizations, as required
An example of a country that might use this model is the United Kingdom (UK).

This figure illustrates an enterprise with two legal entities, and legal employers and tax reporting units are independent from each other.

**Related Topics**
- Legislative Data Groups
How Legal Employers Work with Payroll Statutory Units and Tax Reporting Units

When you set up legal entities, you can identify them as legal employers and payroll statutory units, which makes them available for use in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM). Depending on how your organization is structured, you may have only one legal entity that is also a payroll statutory unit and a legal employer, or you may have multiple legal entities, payroll statutory units, and legal employers.

Legal Employers and Payroll Statutory Unit

Payroll statutory units enable you to group legal employers so that you can perform statutory calculations at a higher level, such as for court orders or for United Kingdom (UK) statutory sick pay. In some cases, a legal employer is also a payroll statutory unit. However, your organization may have several legal employers in one payroll statutory unit. A legal employer can belong to only one payroll statutory unit.

Payroll Statutory Units and Tax Reporting Units

Payroll statutory units and tax reporting units have a parent-child relationship, with the payroll statutory unit being the parent.

Tax Reporting Units and Legal Employers

Tax reporting units are indirectly associated with a legal employer through the payroll statutory unit. One or more tax reporting units can be used by a single legal employer, and a tax reporting unit can be used by one or more legal employers. For example, assume that a single tax reporting unit is linked to a payroll statutory unit. Assume also that two legal employers are associated with this payroll statutory unit. In this example, both legal employers are associated with the single tax reporting unit.

Use the Manage Legal Reporting Unit HCM Information task to designate an existing legal reporting unit as a tax reporting unit. If you create a new legal reporting unit that belongs to a legal employer (that is not also a payroll statutory unit), you select a parent payroll statutory unit and then, when you run the Manage Legal Reporting Unit HCM Information task, you designate it as a tax reporting unit and select the legal employer.

Related Topics

- What's a tax reporting unit

FAQs for Manage Legal Entity HCM Information

What's a legal employer?

A legal employer is a legal entity that employs workers. You define a legal entity as a legal employer in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator.

The legal employer is captured at the work relationship level, and all assignments within that relationship are automatically with that legal employer. Legal employer information for worker assignments is also used for reporting purposes.

What's a payroll statutory unit?

Payroll statutory units are legal entities that are responsible for paying workers, including the payment of payroll tax and social insurance. A payroll statutory unit can pay and report on payroll tax and social insurance on behalf of one or many legal
entities, depending on the structure of your enterprise. For example, if you are a multinational, multiple company enterprise, then you register a payroll statutory unit in each country where you employ and pay people. You can optionally register a consolidated payroll statutory unit to pay and report on workers across multiple legal employers within the same country. You associate a legislative data group with a payroll statutory unit to provide the correct payroll information for workers.

Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity Tax Profile

Party Tax Profiles

A tax profile is the body of information that relates to a party’s transaction tax activities. A tax profile can include main and default information, tax registration, tax exemptions, party fiscal classifications, tax reporting codes, configuration options, and service subscriptions.

Set up tax profiles for the following parties involved in your transactions:

- First parties
- Third parties
- Tax authorities

First Parties

Set up tax profiles for your first-party legal entities, legal reporting units, and business units.

First-party legal entities identify your organization to the relevant legal authorities, for example, a national or international headquarters. Legal entities let you model your external relationships to legal authorities more accurately. The relationships between first-party legal entities and the relevant tax authorities normally control the setup of the transaction taxes required by your business. In most circumstances, the tax setup is used and maintained based on the configuration of the legal entity. Enter the default information, party fiscal classifications, tax reporting codes, and configuration options for your legal entities. You can also specify if you’re using the tax services of an external service provider for tax calculation.

First-party legal reporting units identify each office, service center, warehouse, and any other location within the organization with a tax requirement. A legal reporting unit tax profile is automatically created for the headquarter legal entity. Set up additional legal reporting unit tax profiles for those needed for tax purposes. For legal reporting units, enter the default information, tax registrations, party fiscal classifications, and tax reporting codes. Also, define tax reporting details for your VAT and global tax reporting needs for tax registrations of tax regimes that allow this setup.

Business units organize your company data according to your internal accounting, financial monitoring, and reporting requirements. To help you manage the tax needs of your business units, you can use the business unit tax profile in either of two ways:

- Indicate that business unit tax setup is used and maintained based on the configuration of the associated legal entity at transaction time. The tax setup of the associated legal entity setup is either specific to the legal entity or shared across legal entities using the Global Configuration Owner setup.
- Indicate that tax setup is used and maintained by a specific business unit. Create configuration options for the business unit to indicate that the subscribed tax content is used for the transactions created for the business unit.

For business units that maintain their own setup, enter the default information, tax reporting codes, configuration options, and service providers as required.
Third Parties

Set up third-party tax profiles for parties with the usage of customer, supplier, and their sites. Enter the default information, tax registrations, party fiscal classifications, and reporting codes required for your third parties or third-party sites. You can set up tax exemptions for your customers and customer sites.

Banks are also considered third parties. When a bank is created, the tax registration number specified on the bank record is added to the party tax profile record in Oracle Fusion Tax. You can’t modify the party tax profile for a bank as it’s view only. You can only modify the bank record.

Note: You don’t need to set up party tax profiles for third parties. Taxes are still calculated on transactions for third parties that don’t have tax profiles.

Tax Authorities

Set up a tax authority party tax profile using the Legal Authorities setup task. The tax authority party tax profile identifies a tax authority party as a collecting authority or a reporting authority or both. A collecting tax authority manages the administration of tax remittances. A reporting tax authority receives and processes all company transaction tax reports.

The collecting and reporting tax authorities appear in the corresponding list of values on all applicable Oracle Fusion Tax pages. All tax authorities are available in the list of values as an issuing tax authority.

Related Topics
- Considerations for Specifying Third-Party Tax Profile Options
- When does a party tax profile get created for a third party

Specifying First-Party Tax Profile Options: Points to Consider

Set up first-party tax profiles for all legal entities, legal reporting units, and business units in your organization that have a transaction tax requirements. How you set up your first parties can impact the tax calculation on your transactions.

The first-party tax profile consists of:
- Defaults and controls: Applicable to legal entities and legal reporting units. Business units that use their own tax setup don’t have defaults and controls.
- Tax registrations: Applicable to legal reporting units.
- Party fiscal classifications: Applicable to legal entities and legal reporting units.
- Tax reporting codes: Applicable to legal entities, legal reporting units, and business units who don’t use the tax setup of the legal entity.
- Configuration options: Applicable to legal entities and business units who don’t use the tax setup of the legal entity.
- Service subscriptions: Applicable to legal entities and business units who don’t use the tax setup of the legal entity.
Defaults and Controls
The following table describes the defaults and controls available at the first-party tax profile level:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rounding Level</td>
<td>Perform rounding operations on the:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Header: Applies rounding to calculated tax amounts once for each tax rate per invoice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Line: Applies rounding to the calculated tax amount on each invoice line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding Rule</td>
<td>The rule that defines how the rounding must be performed on a value involved in a taxable transaction. For example, up to the next highest value, down to the next lowest value, or nearest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If you defined a rounding precedence hierarchy in the configuration owner tax option settings for the combination of configuration owner and event class, Oracle Fusion Tax considers the rounding details in the applicable tax profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Invoice Values as Tax Inclusive</td>
<td>This first party intends to send or receive invoices with invoice line amount inclusive of the tax amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This option overrides the tax inclusive handling setting at the tax level, but not at the tax rate level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tax Registrations
Set up a separate tax registration to represent each distinct registration requirement for a first-party legal reporting unit. Oracle Fusion Tax uses tax registrations in tax determination and tax reporting. If your first party has more than one tax registration in the same tax regime, then the application considers the tax registration in the order: tax jurisdiction; tax; tax regime.

You must enable the Use tax reporting configuration option on the first-party tax regime to allow entry of global tax reporting configuration details during tax registration setup for legal reporting units for these tax regimes.

Party Fiscal Classifications
If applicable, associate first-party fiscal classification codes with this party. The party fiscal classification codes you enter become part of tax determination for invoices associated with this party. Specify start and end dates to control when these fiscal classifications are applicable for this party and transaction.

For legal entities, you can view the associated legal classifications that were assigned to the tax regime defined for this first party. The legal classifications are used in the tax determination process, similar to the party fiscal classifications.

Tax Reporting Codes
Set up tax reporting types to capture additional tax information on transactions for your tax reports for your first parties. Depending on the tax reporting type code, you either enter or select a tax reporting code for this party. Specify start and end dates to control when these tax reporting codes are applicable.
Configuration Options
The legal entities and business units in your organization are each subject to specific sets of tax regulations as designated by the tax authorities where you do business. Use configuration options to associate legal entities and business units with their applicable tax regimes. You can set up tax configuration options when you create a tax regime or when you create a party tax profile. Both setup flows display and maintain the same party and tax regime definitions.

Service Subscriptions
You can use a service subscription to reference a specific transaction tax offering or offerings provided by an external tax partner. The transaction tax offering provided by an external tax partner can be related to content, calculation services, or both. Oracle Fusion Tax supports the use of transaction tax offerings provided by external tax partners for transaction tax calculation processing. Depending on the specific depth and scope of an individual tax partner’s offerings, you can use either Oracle Fusion Tax or a Partner Tax Application to perform the transaction tax calculation.

Related Topics
- Tax Registrations
- Configuration Options
- Guidelines for Setting Tax Reporting Configuration Controls for VAT
- Party Information

FAQs for Manage Legal Entity Tax Profile

When does a party tax profile get created for a legal entity?
The legal entity party tax profile is automatically created when a legal entity record is created.

When a legal entity is created through a back-end process, a legal entity party tax profile is created, when you:

- Save a tax regime to which the legal tax entity subscribes.
- Save the configuration owner tax option that are defined for the legal entity.

You can also create a party tax profile for a legal entity manually. Use the Create Legal Entity Tax Profile page or edit the tax profile that was automatically generated with the relevant tax information.

Define Legal Entities: Define Legal Reporting Units

Plan Legal Reporting Units
Each of your legal entities has at least one legal reporting unit. Some legal reporting units can also be referred to as establishments. You can define either domestic or foreign establishments. Define legal reporting units by physical location, such as sales offices. For example, set up legal reporting units to represent your company and its offices for tax reporting.

Planning Legal Reporting Units
Plan and define your legal reporting units at both the local and national levels if you operate within the administrative boundaries of a jurisdiction that is more granular than country. For example, your legal entity establishes operations in a
country that requires reporting of employment and sales taxes locally as well as nationally. Therefore, you need more than one legally registered location to meet this legal entity’s reporting requirements in each area. Additionally, legal entities in Europe operate across national boundaries, and require you to set up legal reporting units for the purposes of local registration in each country. There can be multiple registrations associated with a legal reporting unit. However, only one identifying registration can be defined by the legal authority used for the legal entity or legal reporting unit and associated with the legal reporting unit.

Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances

Chart of Accounts

The chart of accounts is the underlying structure for organizing financial information and reporting. An entity records transactions with a set of codes representing balances by type, expenses by function, and other divisional or organizational codes that are important to its business.

A well-designed chart of accounts provides the following benefits:

- Effectively manages an organization’s financial business.
- Supports the audit and control of financial transactions.
- Provides flexibility for management reporting and analysis.
- Anticipates growth and maintenance needs as organizational changes occur.
- Facilitates an efficient data processing flow.
- Enables delegation of responsibility for cost control, profit attainment, and asset utilization.
- Measures performance against corporate objectives by your managers.

⚠️ Caution: Once you begin using your chart of accounts, making changes to its fundamental attributes is neither recommended nor supported. This includes your chart of account segments, including the segment labels as well as other characteristics of those segments.

The chart of accounts facilitates aggregating data from different operations, from within an operation, and from different business flows, thus enabling the organization to report using consistent definitions to their stakeholders in compliance with legislative and corporate reporting standards and aiding in management decisions.

Best practices include starting the design from external and management reporting requirements and making decisions about data storage in the general ledger, including thick versus thin general ledger concepts.

Thick Versus Thin General Ledger

Thick versus thin general ledger is standard terminology used to describe the amount of data populated and analysis performed in your general ledger. Thick and thin are the poles; most implementations are somewhere in between. Here are some variations to consider:

- A general ledger used in conjunction with an enterprise profitability management product, which has data standardized from each operation, is a thin general ledger. Use this variation if your solution is project-based, and
Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management is implemented. More detailed reporting can be obtained from the Projects system. In the thin general ledger, business units, divisions, and individual departments are not represented in the chart of accounts.

- A thick general ledger:
  - Has segments representing all aspects.
  - Captures every detail of your business.
  - Runs frequent posting.
  - Defines many values in each segment.

A thick general ledger is designed to serve as a repository of management data for a certain level of management. For example, a general ledger designed to provide management data to supervise operations, such as daily sales, without invoice details.

- A primary and secondary ledger, with one thick general ledger and the other a thin general ledger, provides dual representation to meet reporting requirements.

**Thin General Ledger**

With a thin general ledger, you use the general ledger for internal control, statutory reporting, and tracking of asset ownership. You minimize the data stored in your general ledger. A thin general ledger has many of the following characteristics:

- Minimal chart of accounts
  - Short list of cost centers
  - Short list of natural accounts
    - Short list of cost accounts
    - Summary level asset and liability accounts
  - Low number of optional segments
- Infrequent posting schedule

A thin general ledger:

- Has natural accounts at a statutory reporting level, for example, payroll expense, rent, property taxes, and utilities.
- Has cost centers at the functional expense level, such as Research and Development or Selling, General, and Administrative, rather than at department or analytic levels.
- Omits business unit, division, and product detail.

One example of an industry that frequently uses a thin general ledger is retail. In a retail organization, the general ledger tracks overall sales numbers by region. A retail point of sales product tracks sales and inventory by store, product, supplier, markup, and other retail sales measures.

**Thick General Ledger**

With a thick general ledger, you use the general ledger as a detailed, analytic tool, performing analytic functions directly in the general ledger. Data is broken down by many reporting labels, and populated frequently from the subledgers.

You maximize the data stored in the general ledger. A thick general ledger has many of the following characteristics:

- Maximum use of the chart of accounts
  - Long list of natural accounts

---

**ORACLE**
Long list of cost centers
  - Long list of costing accounts
  - Detailed asset and liability accounts
  - Frequent posting schedule

A thick general ledger had details for cost of goods sold and inventory balances and track property plant and equipment at a granular level. Cost centers represent functional expenses, but also roll up to departmental or other expense analysis levels. Using product and location codes in optional segments can provide reporting by line of business. Posting daily, at the individual transaction level, can maximize the data stored in the general ledger.

One example of an industry that frequently uses a thick general ledger is electronic manufacturers. Detail on the revenue line is tagged by sales channel. Product is structured differently to provide detail on the cost of goods sold line, including your bill of materials costs. The general ledger is used to compare and contrast both revenue and cost of goods sold for margin analysis.

Other Considerations

Consider implementing a thick ledger if there are business requirements to do any of the following:
  - Track entered currency balances at the level of an operational dimension or segment of your chart of accounts, such as by department or cost center
  - Generate financial allocations at the level of an operational dimension or segment
  - Report using multiple layered and versions of hierarchies of the operational dimension or segment from your general ledger

Consider implementing a thin ledger in addition to a thick ledger, if there are additional requirements for:
  - Minimal disclosure to the authorities in addition to the requirements previously listed. For example, in some European countries, fiscal authorities examine ledgers at the detailed account level.
  - Fiscal only adjustments, allocations, and revaluations, which don’t impact the thick general ledger.

The important consideration in determining if a thick ledger is the primary or secondary ledger is your reporting needs. Other considerations include how the values for an operational dimension or segment are derived and the amount of resources used in reconciling your different ledgers. If values for an operational dimension or segment are entered by the user, then a thick primary ledger is the better choice.

However, if values for the operational segment are automatically derived from attributes on transactions in your subledger accounting rules, then use a thick secondary ledger. This decision affects the amount of:
  - Storage and maintenance needed for both the general ledger and subledger accounting entries
  - System resources required to perform additional posting

In summary, you have:
  - Minimum demand on storage, maintenance, and system resources with the use of a thin ledger
  - Greater demand on storage, maintenance, and system resources with the use of a thick ledger
  - Greatest demand on storage, maintenance and system resources with the use of both thick and thin ledgers

Note: Generally speaking, there is a trade-off between the volume of journals and balances created and maintained versus system resource demands. Actual performance depends on a wide range of factors including hardware and network considerations, transaction volume, and data retention policies.
Summary
The factors you should consider in your decision to use a thick or thin general ledger for your organization, are your:

- Downstream EPM system and its capabilities
- Business intelligence system and its capabilities
- Subledger systems and their capabilities and characteristics, including heterogeneity
- General ledger reporting systems and their capabilities
- Maintenance required for the thick or thin distributions and record keeping
- Maintenance required to update value sets for the chart of accounts segments
- Preferences of the product that serves as a source of truth
- Level at which to report profitability including gross margin analysis
- Industry and business complexity

Chart of Accounts Components
The important elements in a basic chart of accounts in Oracle Fusion Applications included a structure that defines the account values, segments and their labels, and rules (security and validation). Account combinations link the values in the segments together and provide the accounting mechanism to capture financial transactions.

This figure illustrates the main components in the chart of account structure and the way they fit together. The chart of accounts consists of segments which have value sets attached to them to determine the values from each used in creating account combinations. Segments also have segment labels attached to them to point to the correct segment to use in
general ledger processing, such as intercompany balancing or retained earning summarization. Segments are secured by security rules and accounts are secured by cross validation rules.

Chart of Accounts
The chart of accounts defines the number and attributes of various segments, including:

- Order of segments
- Width of segments
- Prompts
• Segment labels, such as balancing, natural account, and cost center.

The chart of accounts further defines:

• Combination of value sets associated with each segment
• Type of segment
• Default values for the segments
• Additional conditions designating the source of the values using database tables
• Required and displayed properties for the segments

Segments
A chart of accounts segment is a component of the account combination. Each segment has a value set attached to it to provide formatting and validation of the set of values used with that segment. The combination of segments creates the account combination used for recording and reporting financial transactions. Examples of segments that may be found in a chart of accounts are company, cost center, department, division, region, account, product, program, and location.

Value Sets and Values
The value sets define the attributes and values associated with a segment of the chart of accounts. You can think of a value set as a container for your values. You can set up your flexfield so that it automatically validates the segment values that you enter against a table of valid values. If you enter an invalid segment value, a list of valid values appears automatically so that you can select a valid value. You can assign a single value set to more than one segment, and you can share value sets across different flexfields.

⚠️ Caution: You must use Independent validation only for the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets. Other validations prevent you from using the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration. Dependent values sets are not supported.

Segment Labels
Segment labels identify certain segments in your chart of accounts and assign special functionality to those segments. Segment labels were referred to as flexfield qualifiers in Oracle E-Business Suite. Here are the segment labels that are available to use with the chart of accounts.

• **Balancing**: Ensures that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values to use in trial balance reporting. The three balancing segment labels are: primary, second, and third balancing. The primary balancing segment label is required.

• **Cost Center**: Facilitates grouping of natural accounts by functional cost types, accommodating tracking of specific business expenses across natural accounts. As cost centers combine expenses and headcount data into costs, they are useful for detailed analysis and reporting. Cost centers are optional, but required if you are accounting for depreciation, additions, and other transactions in Oracle Fusion Assets, and for storing expense approval limits in Oracle Fusion Expense Management. If you are implementing Oracle Fusion Procurement, you can use cost centers for business intelligence reporting and to route transactions for approval.

• **Natural Account**: Determines the account type (asset, liability, expense, revenue, or equity) and other information specific to the segment value. The natural account segment label is required.

• **Intercompany**: Optionally, assigns the segment to be used in intercompany balancing functionality.

📝 Note: All segments have a segment qualifier that enables posting for each value. The predefined setting is Yes to post.
Account Combinations

An account combination is a completed code of segment values that uniquely identifies an account in the chart of accounts, for example 01-2900-500-123, might represent InFusion America (company)-Monitor Sales (division)-Revenue (account)-Air Filters (product).

Rules

The chart of accounts uses two different types of rules to control functionality.

- **Security rules**: Prohibit certain users from accessing specific segment values. For example, you can create a security rule that grants a user access only to his or her department.
- **Cross-validation rules**: Control the account combinations that can be created during data entry. For example, you may decide that sales cost centers 600 to 699 should enter amounts only to product sales accounts 4000 to 4999.

Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheets

Represent your enterprise structures in your chart of accounts, ledger, legal entities, and business unit configuration to track and report on financial objectives and meet reporting requirements. These components provide the underlying structure for organizing financial information and reporting.

The chart of accounts within the ledger facilitates:

- Aggregating data from different operations, from within an operation, and from different business flows
- Consistent definitions to your stakeholders in compliance with legislative and corporate reporting standards and aids in management decisions

Rapid implementation is a way to configure a financial enterprise and financial reporting structures quickly using sheets in a workbook that upload lists of:

- Companies (legal entities)
- Ledgers by country
- Business units
- Chart of accounts and segment values
- Segment value hierarchies
- Financial sequences
- Required subledger accounts

Once the sheets have been uploaded, the application creates:

- Chart of accounts structure and instance
- Segment value hierarchies
- Key accounts such as retained earnings
- Required subledger accounts
- Accounting calendar
- Primary ledger for each country represented on the legal entities sheet
- Legal entities and their locations
- Business units
- Document and journal sequencing
- Set of Financial Reporting reports
- Three account groups

⚠️ **Caution:** Once you begin using your chart of accounts, calendar, and ledger, making changes to their fundamental attributes is neither recommended nor supported. This includes your chart of account segments, including the segment labels as well as other characteristics of those segments, and your calendar structure or pattern.

The following figure illustrates the flow of the enterprise structure setup.

Legal entities (companies) incur transactions that are identified by business units with business functions. Transactions that are recorded in subledgers are transferred to the ledger. A ledger is characterized by a calendar, a currency, and a chart
of accounts. A chart of accounts consists of segments, some of which are assigned segment labels, such as cost center, natural account, and primary balancing segment. Legal entities can be assigned primary balancing segment values.

Additional information for some of the common setup objects depicted in the figure follows:

- **Legal Entity**: Identifies a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation, which has the right to own property and the responsibility to account for itself.

- **Business Units**: Performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Usually a business unit has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. When created through the spreadsheet, all available business functions are automatically enabled for the business unit.
• **Ledger**: Maintains records and is a required component in your configuration. The rapid implementation process:
  - Creates primary ledgers by combining the chart of accounts, calendar, and currency as well as other required options defined in the rapid implementation workbook.
  - Assigns the standard accrual subledger accounting method to the primary ledger. The subledger accounting method is used to group subledger journal entry rule sets together to define a consistent accounting treatment.
  - Creates a General Ledger balances cube for each ledger with a unique chart of accounts and calendar combination. Each segment is created as a dimension in the balances cube along with the standard cube dimensions.

• **Subledger**: Captures detailed transactional information, such as supplier invoices, customer payments, and asset acquisitions. Uses subledger accounting to transfer transactional balances to the ledger where they are posted.

• **Chart of Accounts**: Configures accounts that consist of components called segments. Accounts are used to record balances and organize financial information and reporting.

• **Segment**: Identifies one of the components of a chart of accounts, which when combined with other segments, creates an account combination for recording transactions and journal entries. A segment is associated with a value set, which provides the set of values for that segment, along with the formatting and validation for those values.

• **Segment Label**: Identifies certain segments in a chart of accounts and assigns special functionality to those segments.
  - **Balancing Segment**: Ensures that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values for financial processes and reports. The three balancing segment labels are: Primary Balancing Segment, Second Balancing Segment, and Third Balancing Segment.
  - **Natural Account**: Determines the account type (asset, liability, expense, revenue, or equity) and specific categorization of the financial activity. Facilitates General Ledger processes, such as closing of the income statement accounts to retained earnings at the beginning of a new fiscal year.
  - **Cost Center**: Facilitates grouping of natural accounts by functional cost types, accommodating tracking of specific business expenses across natural accounts.

With the rapid implementation workbook you can also:

- Create more than one hierarchy for any of your chart of accounts segments during initial setup. You can also create additional hierarchies and hierarchy versions, as well as update existing hierarchy versions, after the initial setup is done by uploading the rapid implementation spreadsheet data.

- Create sequences for each legal entity or ledger based on the predefined country defaults. Document sequences are created for: Payables invoices, Payments, Receivables invoices, Receivables credit memos, Receivables adjustment activities. Reporting and accounting journal sequences are created for subledger journals and General Ledger journals.

**How Charts of Accounts, Ledgers, Legal Entities, and Business Units Are Created Using Spreadsheets**

The rapid implementation process for setting up the enterprise structure includes the following steps:

1. Downloading the Rapid Implementation for General Ledger workbook.
2. Entering data into the sheets.
3. Verifying the entered data and resolving any errors.
4. Uploading the chart of accounts file.
5. After successful upload of the chart of accounts file, uploading the general ledger, legal entity, and business unit file with the rest of the configuration.

The rapid implementation enterprise structure configuration is meant to be used as a one-time initialization. To the extent that you want to make certain allowed modifications to the configuration, you generally have to make those changes directly in the applications. After initial upload of the ledger, legal entity, and business unit file, the fundamental accounting configuration framework is only created once and is permanently set. This framework includes the ledger and its assigned chart of accounts, calendar and currency assignment, and the associated definitions of those components.

Workbook Overview

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, create an implementation project that includes the Define Financials Configuration for Rapid Implementation task list. Download the workbook using the Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheet task.

The workbook includes the following sheets:

- Instructions
- Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger
- Business Units
- Companies and Legal Entities
- Natural Accounts
- Financial Sequences

New sheets for entering segment values and hierarchies for additional segments of your chart of accounts can be created automatically. After you enter the segments on the Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger sheet, click Add Segment Sheets or Generate Additional Hierarchy.

Note: The rapid implementation process creates a standard ledger. You can convert a standard ledger to an average daily balance ledger before the first period is opened by selecting the Enable average balances check box on the Specify Ledger Options page.

Instructions

Review the Instructions sheet for important information about how to use the workbook and submit the accounting configuration. The sheet includes data preparation requirements, setup object concepts, and best practices and recommendations. Instructions on how to create additional hierarchies or additional hierarchy versions are also included.

Use the sample completed workbook to familiarize yourself with how to enter data, preview the sample report, and generate the required upload files.
The following figure shows the section of the Instructions sheet called Rapid Implementation Template with Sample Data. This section includes the sample completed workbook, which you can download.

**Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger**

Enter the data to create your chart of accounts, calendar, and ledger.

⚠️ **Caution:** Once you begin using your chart of accounts, calendar, and ledger, making changes to their fundamental attributes is neither recommended nor supported. This includes your chart of account segments, including the segment labels as well as other characteristics of those segments, and your calendar structure or pattern.

The following figure shows an example of the Chart of Accounts, Calendar and Ledger sheet with sample values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment</th>
<th>Segment Label</th>
<th>Short Prompt</th>
<th>Display Width</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Primary Balancing Segment</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liability</td>
<td>Second Balancing Segment</td>
<td>LIAB</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Natural Account Segment</td>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CostCenter</td>
<td>Cost Center Segment</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Prod</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercompany</td>
<td>Intercompany Segment</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An explanation of each field on the sheet follows.

- **Name:** Enter the name of your primary ledger.

  A primary ledger is created for each unique country that’s entered in the Companies and Legal Entities sheet. A country code is appended to the name that you specify. For example, one legal entity is based in the United States
and another in Canada. If you enter the ledger name of InFusion Ledger, two primary ledgers are automatically created, InFusion Ledger US and InFusion Ledger CA. All of the primary ledgers that are created use the same chart of accounts, account hierarchies, and accounting calendar. Legal entities and their primary balancing segment values are assigned to the primary ledger of their respective countries. If the addresses provided for the legal entities on the Companies and Legal Entities sheet are all in the same country, then only one primary ledger is created.

- **Currency**: If you’re not entering legal entities and only a single ledger should be created by the rapid implementation configuration, enter the ledger currency in which you want to maintain accounting for in that ledger. If you’re entering legal entities, leave this field blank. The currency is automatically supplied based on the country.

- **Period Frequency**: Select from among the list of available frequencies for the ledger calendar.

  ▶ Caution: For the accounting calendar created using the Rapid Implementation Enterprise Structure solution, the choices of patterns are limited to the period frequency and adjusting periods options that are available for selection in the spreadsheet. It is not possible to make alterations to the pattern or specified fiscal year start date once the calendar has already been created. The accounting periods of the calendar are automatically named using a preset format. If you want to change these period names, you have a limited window of time to make those changes. Use the Manage Accounting Calendar page in the application to make the changes before the accounting calendar is being used actively, such as when one of its accounting periods has been set to a status of Open.

- **Adjusting Periods**: Select the number of periods used to segregate closing, auditing, or other adjustments in the General Ledger. The entries are tracked in the adjusting period and not in your monthly activity.

- **Fiscal Year Start Date**: Enter the start date of the accounting calendar. The date can’t be changed after the submission of the configuration.

  ▶ Caution: If you plan to run translations, enter a fiscal year start date for the entire accounting year that’s before the first period for which you intend to run translations. You can’t run translation in the first defined period of an accounting calendar. For example, if your fiscal year starts on January 1, and you want to start translations for the period of Mar-17, then you should select a fiscal year start date of January 1, 2016. Also when determining the fiscal year start date, you might want to consider whether you plan to load history.

- **Segment**: Enter the names for your segments. The value sets are created from the segments.

- **Segment Label**: Select segment labels to assign special functionality to segments.

  Segment labels specifying the segment’s purpose, such as balancing, cost center and natural account, can only be assigned once to a chart of accounts segment. The **Primary Balancing Segment** and **Natural Account Segment** labels must be assigned, while the other segment labels are optional. Segments that are assigned these two particular labels cannot be assigned any other label. However, segments that are assigned the other remaining labels can also be assigned additional labels, provided they’re not **Primary Balancing Segment** or **Natural Account Segment**.

  The **Intercompany Segment** label assignment is optional. If assigned, that segment reuses the value set that’s created for the segment with the **Primary Balancing Segment** label. Using the same value set ensures that the values for both segments remain synchronized.

  ➤ **Note**: For the posting process to apply intercompany balancing, you must select the **Enable intercompany accounting** option on the Specify Ledger Options page.
Caution: If you plan to implement segment value security rules for the segment that’s assigned the Primary Balancing Segment label, then don’t assign the Intercompany Segment label to a segment on this sheet. Segment value security rules are assigned at the value set level. Sharing the value set between the two segments causes security conflicts because segment value enforcement is simultaneously applied in the same way to both segments. For example, you define a segment value security rule for the Company segment where a user can only access company 01. Since the value set is shared, that user also can’t transact with other companies in an intercompany transaction. Instead, follow these steps:

a. Include the intercompany segment in the sheet, but don’t assign it the Intercompany Segment label.
b. Click the Add Segment Sheets button to add a sheet for the intercompany value set.
c. Create the values for your intended intercompany segment on the new sheet. Assign the same values to the intercompany segment as you have for the primary balancing segment and maintain this consistency going forward.
d. Complete the Upload Chart of Accounts task. Before starting the Upload Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units task, in the Offerings work area, go to the following:
   • Offering: Financials
   • Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   • Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures
e. Assign the Intercompany Segment label to the intercompany segment of the chart of accounts on the Edit Key Flexfield Segment page.
f. Redeploy the key flexfield.

Short Prompt: Enter a short name for the segment, which is used on applications pages.
Display Width: Enter the segment size. Select the size carefully and leave room for growth. For example, if you have 89 cost centers, enter 3 for the display length to allow for more than 100 cost centers in the future.
Add Segment Sheets: Select this button to create sheets for additional segments. Sheets are provided only for the Company and Natural Accounts segments.

From the new segment sheet, you can click the Generate Additional Hierarchy button to create more than one hierarchy for any chart of account segment. A worksheet is then automatically created and populated with the data already entered for that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup, or after the initial setup is done.

Caution: You can’t change the chart of accounts, accounting calendar, or currency for your ledgers after the setup is created.

Business Units
Enter the name of your business units and related default legal entities.
The following figure shows an example of the Business Units sheet with sample values for the Name and Default Legal Entity Name fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Default Legal Entity Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USA Business Unit1</td>
<td>VCC Infusion Cupertino Cherries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA Business Unit2</td>
<td>VSCC Infusion San Carlos Chocolates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada Business Unit1</td>
<td>Infusion Core Canada Ltd.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Business units are created with the names that you enter. You can enter more than one business unit per ledger. Based on the default legal entity specified for the business unit in the Business Units sheet, the business unit is assigned the primary ledger to which its default legal entity is assigned.

Companies and Legal Entities

Enter parent and child values for your Company segment, which is the segment that’s assigned the Primary Balancing Segment label on the Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger sheet. You can create up to nine levels of parent values to roll up your companies to meet corporate and local reporting requirements.

Enter your legal entities for the child values with the address, registration number, and reporting unit registration number. The registration number identifies legal entities registered for your company and recognized by law for which you want to record and perform transactions. The reporting unit registration number identifies the lowest level component of a legal structure that requires registrations.
The following figure shows part of the Companies and Legal Entities sheet with sample values. The sheet includes columns for different levels of parent values, the child value, and company description. The Legal Entity columns include name, identifier, country, address information, and registration numbers.

To create additional hierarchies for the company segment for reporting or other purposes, click the Generate Additional Hierarchy button. A worksheet is automatically created and populated with the data already entered for that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup, or after the initial setup is done.

When a new hierarchy sheet is created, the name for that sheet is derived by adding a counter to the sheet name. For example, when you click Generate Additional Hierarchy on the Companies and Legal Entities sheet, the new sheet is named Companies and Legal Entities 1. When you click Generate Additional Hierarchy again, another sheet is generated with the name Companies and Legal Entities 2.

**Note:** Adding legal entity information isn’t supported on a new hierarchy sheet for the Company segment.

**Natural Accounts**

Enter account hierarchies, account values, and specify account types.
The following figure shows part of the Natural Accounts sheet with sample parent and child values, descriptions, and account type.

- **Parent**: Enter parent account values to define hierarchies. Hierarchies are used for chart of accounts mappings, revaluations, data access sets, cross-validation rules, and segment value security rules. The balances cube and account hierarchies are also used for financial reporting, Smart View queries, and allocations.

- **Child**: Enter child account values to define the postable accounts.

- **Description**: Enter descriptions for the segment values.

- **Account Type**: You must assign an account type to each account value. Account types are used in year-end close processes and to correctly categorize account balances for reporting. Select from among general account types and expanded account types. The general account types are: **Asset**, **Liability**, **Owner's Equity**, **Revenue**, **Expense**. Expanded account types provide specialized functionality and are used to:
  
  - Identify the intended usage of your natural account values to facilitate automation and enable completion of other required setup objects. For example, assign the **Asset - Intercompany Receivable** and **Liability - Intercompany Payable** expanded account types. The Rapid Implementation process then automatically creates a chart of accounts level intercompany balancing rule, which is a required setup for the application to perform intercompany balancing.
  
  - Automatically generate fully defined initial Financial Reporting reports and Account Groups based on your enterprise structure.

Examples of expanded account types include:

- **Asset - Accounts Receivable**: For Receivables receipt methods
- **Liability - Accounts Payable**: For Payables common options
- **Owner's Equity - Retained Earnings**: For General Ledger ledger options
- **Revenue - Top Revenues Parent Account**: For sample reports and account groups
- **Expense - Top Operating Expenses Parent Account**: For sample reports and account groups

You must assign the **Revenue - Top Revenues Parent Account** and **Expense - Top Operating Expenses Parent Account** account types to the parent accounts that are your highest level and comprehensive revenue and operating expenses accounts. You can optionally assign the account type of **Expense - Top Cost of Sales Parent Account**, if it’s applicable for your scenario.

The Generate Financial Reports and Account Groups process, which is automatically submitted when the accounting configuration is created in the application, generates a set of Financial Reporting reports and account
groups according to the accounting configuration defined in the workbook. The top parent accounts are used as the basis for deriving the accounts referenced in the reports and in the Account Groups.

The immediate descendants of the top parent accounts are used to define the rows on the reports. Depending on whether both the top operating expense and top cost of sales accounts are tagged, different variations of the income statements are generated. If the optional top cost of sales account is provided, the Financial Reporting reports that are income statements also include a gross margin section.

⚠️ **Caution:** Assign account types carefully. If you assign an incorrect account type to a natural account segment value, accounting entries are recorded incorrectly and financial statements are inaccurate. Misclassified accounts are also potentially handled incorrectly at year end, with actual balances either getting zeroed out to retained earnings, or accumulating into the next year.

- **Financial Category:** Select a value to identify groups of accounts for reporting with Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence. Accounts that are tagged with expanded account types are automatically assigned a financial category. You can override the default category or leave it out.

- **Generate Additional Hierarchy:** To create additional hierarchies for the natural account segment for reporting or for other purposes, click the Generate Additional Hierarchy button. A worksheet is automatically created and populated with the data already entered for that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup or after the initial setup is done.

**Financial Sequences**

Enable document or journal sequences to assign unique numbers to transactions to meet legal requirements.

The following figure shows the Financial Sequences sheet with sample values for the Restart and Initial Value columns.

![Sequences Table](image)

Document sequences are created for these transactions: Payables invoices, Payments, Receivables invoices, Receivables credit memos, Receivables adjustment activities. Reporting and accounting journal sequences are created for Subledger journals and General Ledger journals.

For each transaction, you can provide values for the following fields:

- **Restart:** Set when to restart the numbering: Annually, Monthly, Never.
- **Initial Value:** Specify the beginning number in the sequence.
How The Worksheets Are Processed

After you complete the worksheets, proceed with validation, sample report preview, and file upload.

1. On the Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger sheet, click the **Step 1: Validate** button.

   The validation checks the worksheets for missing or inappropriate setups. Errors are marked as actionable items in a validation report sheet that’s dynamically generated. You can review the anomalies and make the corrections as indicated. The **Field** column on the validation report notes the issue. Click the text link to navigate to the appropriate field in the sheet that must be updated. When the validation is successful, a message appears with the option of previewing a sample of the reports that are automatically generated as part of the enterprise configuration.

   The following figure shows the message that appears after a successful validation.

   ![Validation Successful. No Errors found. Do you want to preview the Sample Report?](image)

   If you select to preview the sample report, a new sheet is automatically created called Preview Report. The preview incorporates elements of the setup that you provided. The rows on the report are derived based on the top parent revenue and expense account values that you tagged on the Natural Accounts sheet. The preview also reflects the reporting hierarchy for your natural accounts.

   The following figure shows an example of the sample Financial Reporting report.
You can use the preview to validate whether the hierarchy setup aligns to your reporting needs. If the natural account hierarchy requires adjustments, this is your chance to make those corrections before actually creating the account hierarchies in the application. You can modify your enterprise structure setup, validate the spreadsheet, and preview the revised sample reports for as many times as you need. The account hierarchies are created when you finally submit the accounting configuration in the rapid implementation spreadsheet.

2. Click **Step 2: Generate Chart of Accounts File**. The process generates a data file called ChartOfAccounts.xml with the entered chart of accounts and hierarchies setup data. Save the file to a network or local drive.

3. Click **Step 3: Generate Ledger, LE, and BU File**. The process generates a data file called FinancialsCommonEntities.xml with the entered ledger, legal entities, and business unit setup data. Save the file to a network or local drive.

4. From your implementation project, go to the **Upload Chart of Accounts** task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.

5. Accept the default selection of the **Upload Enterprise Structure** option.

6. Click **Browse** and select the first file that you saved called ChartOfAccounts.xml.

7. Click **Submit**.

8. Verify that the process completed without errors or warnings.

9. From your implementation project, go to the **Upload Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units** task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.

10. Accept the default selection of the **Upload Enterprise Structure** option.

11. Click **Browse** and select the second file that you saved called FinancialsCommonEntities.xml.
12. Click **Submit**.
13. Verify that the process completed without errors or warnings.

An individual set of the following Financial Reporting reports is generated for each ledger that’s defined within the rapid implementation accounting configuration. If multiple primary ledgers are created as part of your configuration, a set of Financial Reporting reports is generated for each ledger.

- Income Statement
- Consolidated Income Statement
- Rolling Quarterly Income Statement
- Rolling Monthly Income Statement
- Trial Balances by Ledger Currency
- Trial Balances by Entered Currency

The process also generates three account groups. These include two for the infolets, Revenues and Expenses, and one for the Close Monitor called Close Monitor Summary Income Statement. A set of these three account groups is generated for the balances cube, to be shared among all the ledgers that are part of that balances cube.

### Additional Hierarchies After Initial Setup

To create additional hierarchies and hierarchy versions, or to update existing hierarchy versions after the initial setup:

1. Click the **Generate Additional Hierarchy** button on the applicable segment sheet. A new worksheet is automatically created and populated with the data already entered for that segment. Change the data as required.
2. Click the **Generate File for This Hierarchy Only** button. This generates a .zip file for the particular hierarchy.
3. From your implementation project, go to the **Upload Chart of Accounts** task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.
4. Select the **Upload Hierarchy** option.
5. Select from among the following options and provide values for the required parameters:
   - **Create hierarchy**: Select to create another account hierarchy. Specify the value set, tree code, and start date.
   - **Create version**: Select to render a new version of an existing account hierarchy. Specify a value set, tree code, tree version, and start date.
   - **Update existing version**: Select to edit an existing version of an account hierarchy. Specify a value set, tree code, and tree version.
6. Click **Choose File** and select the .zip file that you saved earlier.
7. Click **Submit**.

**Related Topics**

- Overview of Trees
- How Financial Reporting Reports and Account Groups Are Generated
- Creating an Implementation Project: Procedure

### Example of One Chart of Accounts Structure with Many Instances

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, for which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created.
Scenario

Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers. You are chairing a committee to discuss creation of a model for your global financial reporting structure including your charts of accounts for both your US and UK operations.

InFusion Corporation

InFusion Corporation has 400 plus employees and revenue of 120 million US dollars. Your product line includes all the components to build and maintain air quality monitoring systems for homes and businesses.

Analysis

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, for which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created.

Chart of Accounts Model

The chart of accounts structure provides the general outline of the chart of accounts and determines the number of segments, the type, the length, and the label (qualifier) of each segment. This forms the foundation of the chart of accounts definition object.

For each chart of accounts structure, it is possible to associate one or more chart of accounts structure instances. Chart of accounts structure instances for the same structure share a common configuration with the same segments, in the same order, and the same characteristics. Using one chart of accounts structure with multiple instances simplifies your accounting and reporting.

At the chart of accounts structure instance level, each segment is associated with a value set that conforms to the characteristic of that segment. For example, you assign a value set with the same segment type and length to each segment. You are using hierarchies with your chart of accounts segments. Each structure instance segment is assigned a tree code to indicate the source of the hierarchy information for the associated value set. The same value set can be used multiple times within the same or across different chart of accounts instances within the same structure or in different structures. This functionality reduces your segment value creation and maintenance across your charts of accounts.

The collective assignment of value sets to each of the segments forms one chart of accounts instance. At the chart of accounts structure instance level, you can select to enable dynamic insertion. Dynamic insertion allows the creation of account combinations automatically the first time your users enter that new account combination. The alternative is to create them manually. By deciding to enable dynamic insertion, you save data entry time and prevent delays caused by the manual creation of new account combinations. Well-defined cross-validation rules help prevent the creation of inappropriate account combinations.

Perform deployment after a new chart of accounts structure and structure instances are defined or any of their modifiable attributes are updated. Deployment validates and regenerates the necessary objects to enable your charts of accounts and chart of accounts structure instances. By unifying and standardizing your organization’s chart of accounts, you are positioned to take full advantage of future functionality in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

In summary, you are recommending to your company to unify the organization’s chart of accounts in a single chart of accounts structure based on chart of accounts commonalities across ledgers. You have also decided to use the chart of accounts structure instance construct to serve different accounting and reporting requirements by using value sets specific to each of your entities.
Create a Chart of Accounts Structure and Instance

In Oracle General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, for which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created. A chart of accounts structure defines the key attributes for your chart of accounts. These attributes include the number of segments, the segment sequences, the segment names, segment prompts, segment labels, for example natural account and primary balancing, and default value sets.

The chart of accounts instance is exposed in user interfaces and processes. By default, a chart of accounts instance inherits all of the attributes of the chart of accounts structure, meaning that all instances of the same structure share a common shape and have the same segments in the same order. However, at the chart of accounts instance level, you can override the default value set assignments for your segments and assign a unique account hierarchy that determines the parent and child relationships between the value set values. At the chart of accounts instance level, you can determine whether to generate new account combinations dynamically instead of creating them manually.

Chart of Accounts Structure

You are creating a chart of accounts structure as you set up a chart of accounts for your enterprise, InFusion America, Inc. Follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   - Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures
2. Select the General Ledger module and click Search.
3. Click Manage Structures.
4. On the Manage Key Flexfield Structures page, select the General Ledger row and click the Create icon.
5. On the Create Key Flexfield Structure page, enter the unique structure code INFUSION_AM_COA_STRUCTURE and name InFusion America COA Structure. Provide an optional description of InFusion America Inc. chart of accounts structure.
6. Select a delimiter to visually separate the segment values.
7. Click Save.
8. To create a segment, click the Create icon to open the Create Key Flexfield Segment page.
   a. Complete the fields, as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Segment Code</td>
<td>INFUSION_AM_CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>InFusion America Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>InFusion America Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Number</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Prompt</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chart of Account Instance

You are creating a chart of accounts instance as you set up your chart of accounts for your enterprise, InFusion America, Inc. Follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   - Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Structure Instances

2. On the Manage Chart of Accounts Structure Instances page, select the General Ledger module and click Search.
3. Select the General Ledger row and click Manage Structure Instances.
4. On the Manage Key Flexfield Structure Instances page, click the Create icon.
5. On the Create Key Flexfield Structure Instance page, enter the unique structure instance code `INFUSION_AM_COA_INSTANCE` and name InFusion America COA Instance. Provide an optional description, InFusion America Inc. chart of accounts structure instance.
6. Select the Dynamic combination creation allowed option to indicate that you want to dynamically generate account combinations.
7. Associate your instance with the structure InFusion America Structure.

   **Note:** By default, an instance inherits the key attributes of the associated structure. Some attributes, such as the value set assigned to each the segment, can be modified.

8. Click Save.
9. To modify an instance segment, select the segment row and click Edit.
10. Select the Required, Displayed, and BI enabled options.

Here is a table summarizing the fields and values for the segment:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Width</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Name</td>
<td>Segment1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value Set Code</td>
<td>INFUSION_AM_COMPANY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Select a segment label, **Primary Balancing Segment**, to indicate its purpose within your chart of accounts.

**Note:** Two segment labels are required: primary balancing segment and natural account segment. These labels are not used with each other or with other labels in a specific segment.

c. Click **Save and Close**.
d. Click **Done**.
e. Define additional segments following the same steps.
Note: Select the Required and Displayed options for all segments including those intended for future use. The recommended best practice is to define one segment for future use and set a default value. This ensures room for expansion in your chart of accounts and that the extra segment is populated in account combinations. Select the BI enabled option to use key flexfield segments in Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence. The business intelligence option is only valid when enabled on segments with segment labels. The second step is to populate the BI Object Name field for each of the segment labels on the Manage Segment Label page, which you open from the Manage Key Flexfields page.

11. Click OK.
12. Click Save and Close.
13. Define additional instances following the same process.

Note: Alternatively, proceed directly with creating your value set values by selecting the corresponding Value Set Code in the Segment Instances table.

14. Click Done.
15. Click Deploy Flexfield.
16. Click OK.

Related Topics
- Considerations for Enabling Key Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Overview of Balancing Segments

Balancing segments ensure that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values. You can secure access to your primary balancing segment values only with data access sets. The General Ledger application automatically calculates and creates balancing lines as required in journal entries.

The three balancing segment labels are:
- Primary
- Second
- Third

Note: The primary balancing segment label is required.

By enabling multiple balancing segments for your chart of accounts, you can produce financial statements for each unique combination of segment values across one, two, or three qualified balancing segments. This ability provides you greater insights into your operations as it affords you visibility along the critical fiscal dimensions you use to plan, monitor, and measure your financial performance.

The following explains processes that use balancing segments.
- Intercompany balancing: Adds lines to unbalanced journals using intercompany rules.
- Opening first period of the accounting year: Calculates retained earnings amounts at the level of granularity that totals revenue and expense account balances for multiple balancing segment value combinations. This applies to standard and average balances.
• Importing journals: Adds lines using the suspense account on unbalanced journals.
• Posting journals: Adds additional lines to unbalanced journals for the following enabled account types:
  o Suspense
  o Rounding
  o Net income
  o Retained earnings
    o Cumulative translation adjustments from replication of revaluation journals to reporting currencies and for multiple reporting currency account type specific conversion
• Posting prior period journals: Calculates any income statement impact and posts to the appropriate retained earnings account.
• Translating balances: Supports multiple balancing segments for the following accounts:
  o Retained earnings: Calculated translated retained earnings are post to the retained earnings accounts by balancing segment. Retained earnings accounts represent the summing of the translated revenue and expense accounts across multiple balancing segment values.
  o Cumulative translation adjustment: Amounts posted by balancing segment to these accounts represents currency fluctuation differences between ranges of accounts which use different rate types. For example, period end rates are used for asset and liability accounts and historical rates for equity accounts.
• Revaluing Balances: Supports multiple balancing segments when calculating gain or loss accounts.
• Creating Opening Balances: Initializes reporting currency balances by converting from the total primary currency. Any difference in the reporting currency amounts is offset by populating retained earnings accounts.
• Closing year end: Supports multiple balancing segments when calculating the income statement offset and closing account in the closing journals.

Considerations for Multiple Balancing Segments

Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports tracking financial results at a finer level of granularity than a single balancing segment. In addition to the required primary balancing segment for the chart of accounts, which is typically associated with the company dimension of a business organization, two additional segments of the chart of accounts can be optionally qualified as the second and third balancing segments respectively. Possible chart of accounts segments that can be tagged as these additional balancing segments include cost center or department, additional aspects of a business commonly used in measuring financial results.

Several points must be consider when using multiple balancing segments:

• Journal entry processing
• Implementation timing
• Change options
• Migration adjustments

Journal Entry Processing

Multiple balancing segments ensure that account balances come from journal entries where the debits equal the credits. The financial reports are properly generated for each unique instance of account value combinations across the balancing segments. Consider this option carefully as it provides more granular reporting but requires more processing resources.
Implementation Timing

When using optional second and third balancing segments, remember that these chart of accounts segment labels are set from the beginning of time. Ensure that balances are immediately maintained in accordance with the necessary balancing actions to produce consistent financial reporting for the wanted business dimensions. Multiple balancing segment ledgers that are not maintained from the beginning of time, require extensive manual balance adjustments to catch up and realign the balances.

**Note:** Do not set a segment already qualified as a natural account or intercompany segment as any of the three balancing segments. Validations are not performed when segment labels are assigned, so verify that all are assigned correctly before using your chart of accounts.

Change Options

Once a segment has been enabled and designated as a balancing segment, you must not change the segment. Do not disable the segment or remove the segment labels. These settings must be consistently maintained throughout the life of the chart of accounts to control the accuracy and integrity of the financial data.

Migration Adjustments

For charts of accounts migrated from Oracle E-Business Suite to Oracle Fusion General Ledger that uses a second and third balance segments, steps must be taken to ensure the proper transition. The required adjustments are extensive.

For ledgers associated with a migrated chart of accounts, the balances must be adjusted manually. The manual adjustment is to ensure that the second and third balancing segments are consistent as though these segment labels have been in place since the beginning of entries for these ledgers. Recomputing and updating of the following processes is required to reflect the correct balancing for each account using the second and third balancing segments.

- Intercompany balancing
- Suspense posting
- Rounding imbalance adjustments on posting
- Entered currency balancing
- Revaluation gains or losses
- Retained earnings calculations at the opening of each new fiscal year
- Cumulative translation adjustments during translation

**Note:** All previously translated balances must also be purged. New translations must be run to properly account for translated retained earnings and cumulative translation adjustments with the correct level of balancing.

Related Topics

- How can I change segments in an existing chart of accounts structure

Example of Using Multiple Balancing Segments

This simple example illustrates balancing along two balancing segments for a simple chart of accounts with three segments.
Scenario

Your company has a chart of accounts with two balancing segments and three segments, qualified as follows:

- Company: Primary balancing segment
- Cost Center: Second balancing segment
- Account: Natural account segment

The following table shows a journal that was entered to transfer advertising and phone expense from company 1, cost center A to company 2, cost center B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Company 1-Cost Center A-Advertising Expense Account</td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Company 2-Cost Center B-Advertising Expense Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Company 1-Cost Center A-Phone Expense Account</td>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Company 2-Cost Center B-Phone Expense Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The posting process creates journal lines to balance the entry across the primary and second balancing segments, company and cost center. The following table shows all of the journal lines, including balancing lines 5 through 8, which were automatically created.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Company 1-Cost Center A-Advertising Expense Account</td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Company 2-Cost Center B-Advertising Expense Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Company 1-Cost Center A-Phone Expense Account</td>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Company 2-Cost Center B-Phone Expense Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Company 1-Cost Center A-Balancing Account</td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Company 2-Cost Center B-Balancing Account</td>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FAQs for Manage Charts of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances

How can I use future accounting segments?
To plan for future growth in the business organization that requires additional segments in the chart of accounts. Extra segments can be added to the chart of accounts structure during your original implementation. All segments of the chart of accounts are required and have to be enabled. The unused segments can be assigned value sets that have a single value in the chart of accounts structure instance. The value is set as a default for that segment so that the extra segments are automatically populated when an account account combination is used.

Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Value Sets and Value Set Values

Value Sets for Charts of Accounts
A value set is a collection of account values that are associated with a segment of a chart of accounts structure instance. When creating values sets, consider the following critical choices:

- Module Designation
- Validation Type
- Format Assignments
- Security Rules
- Value Definition

Module Designation
The module designation is used to tag value sets and sets the value sets apart during upgrades and other processes. When creating value sets for a chart of accounts, the module can be specified as General Ledger to distinctly identify its intended use in an accounting flexfield, basically a chart of accounts.

Validation Type
Assign one of the following validation types to chart of accounts value sets:

- Independent: The values are independently selected when filling out the segments in an account combination.
- Table: The values are stored in an external table to facilitate maintenance and sharing of reference data.
Format Assignments

Value sets for chart of accounts must use the **Value Data Type** of **Character**. The **Value Subtype** is set to **Text**. These two settings support values that are both numbers and characters, which are typical in natural account segment values. Set the maximum length of the value set to correspond to the length of the chart of accounts segment to which it is assigned. Best practices recommend restricting values to **Upper Case Only** or **Numeric** values that are zero filled by default.

Security Rules

If flexfield data security rules are to be applied to the chart of accounts segment associated with the value set, the **Enable Security** option for the assigned value set must be selected. In addition, assign a data security resource name to enable creation of a data security object automatically for the value set. The data security object is used in the definition of flexfield data security rules.

Value Definition

Once these basic characteristics are defined for the value set, values can be added to the set on the Manage Values page.

1. Enter the value and description. Set the value to conform to the value set length and type.
2. Indicate whether the value is enabled and specify the start and end dates.
3. Assign the following attributes: **Summary**, **Allow Posting**, **Allow Budgeting**.
4. If the value set is used with a natural account segment, you must set the **Account Type** attribute. Select one of the following options: **Asset**, **Liability**, **Owner’s Equity**, **Revenue**, or **Expense**.

   **Caution:** Assign account types carefully. If you assign an incorrect account type to a natural account segment value, accounting entries are recorded incorrectly and financial statements are inaccurate. Misclassified accounts are also potentially handled incorrectly at year end, with actual balances either getting zeroed out to retained earnings, or accumulating into the next year.

5. Other attributes that you can set are **Third-Party Control Account**, **Reconcile**, and **Financial Category**, which is used with Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence reporting.

   The **Third-Party Control Account** attribute enables you to maintain detailed balances by third party for an account combination. Valid third-party information must be associated with the journal line if the account is a third-party control account. General Ledger prevents manual journal entries from posting to third-party control accounts. This ensures that journal lines that post to control accounts such as the supplier liability account and the customer receivables account, are associated with valid third-party information in the respective subledgers.

   You can select one of the following options:

   - **Customer Control Account**: Customer information is required when such accounts are used in subledger transactions or subledger journals.
   - **Supplier Control Account**: Supplier information is required when such accounts are used in subledger transactions or subledger journals.
   - **Third-Party Control Account**: Third-party information is required when such accounts are used in subledger transactions or subledger journals.
   - **Restrict GL Manual Journals**: Third-party information isn’t required when such accounts are used in subledger transactions or subledger journals.
   - **No**: Not a control account.
General Ledger prevents manual journal entries to all of the accounts whose Third-Party Control Account attribute is set to a value other than No.

Tip: Best practice is to define value set values after the value set has been assigned to a chart of accounts structure instance. Otherwise, you can’t define the mandatory value attributes, such as the summary indicator, the posting allowed indicator, and the account type for natural account segments. The attributes must be added after the value set is assigned to a chart of accounts structure instance.

Create a Value Set for Your Chart of Accounts

Create your value sets before creating your chart of accounts. A value set can be shared by different charts of accounts or across different segments of the same chart of accounts.

Scenario

You are creating a company value set to be used in your chart of accounts for your enterprise, Vision Corporation. Follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   - Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Value Sets
2. Click the Create icon in the Search Results section.
3. On the Create Value Set page, enter a unique value set code, Vision Corporation, and an optional description, Company values for Vision Corporation.
4. Select General Ledger from the list in the Module field.
5. Select Independent as the validation type.

Note: You must use independent validation only for Accounting Key Flexfield value sets. Other validations prevent you from using the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration. Dependent value sets aren’t supported.

6. Select Character for the validation data type.
7. Click Save and Close.

Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Configure Chart of Account Segments for Business Intelligence

To map the Oracle General Ledger accounting flexfield in the Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence (BI) Repository file (RPD) for Oracle Fusion Financials, populate values in the Manage Key Flexfields user interface. These values enable the chart of accounts segments for Oracle Fusion Transactional BI. The values also provide the mapping with BI Object names that are used as dimensions for each of the chart of accounts segments.
Follow these steps to select the **BI enabled** option for all chart of account segments that you intend to map in the RPD.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   - Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures

2. Enter GL# in the **Key Flexfield Code** field.
3. Click **Search**.
4. Click **Manage Structure Instances**.
5. Click **Search**.
6. Click the specific chart of accounts and click the **Edit** icon.
7. Click the specific segment and click the **Edit** icon.
8. Select the **BI enabled** option.
9. Click **Save**. This should be done for all segments in every chart of accounts structure instance that you intend to be mapped in the RPD.
10. Click **Save and Close**.
11. Click **Done**.

Follow these steps to specify a BI object name for each segment label. This name is the logical table name in the RPD that is used as the dimension for the corresponding segment.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Financial Reporting Structures
   - Task: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures

2. Enter GL# in the **Key Flexfield Code** field.
3. Click **Search**.
4. Select the Actions menu and click **Manage Segment Labels**.
5. Populate the **BI Object Name** field for all of the segment labels that must be mapped in the RPD. Complete the fields, as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment Label Code</th>
<th>BI Object Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FA_COST_CTR</td>
<td>Dim - Cost Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GL_BALANCING</td>
<td>Dim - Balancing Segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GL_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>Dim - Natural Account Segment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click **Save**.

**Note:** For all the nonqualified segment labels, populate the **BI Object Name** with one of the following values:

- Dim - GL Segment1
- Dim - GL Segment2
- Dim - GL Segment3
• Dim - GL Segment4
• Dim - GL Segment5
• Dim - GL Segment6
• Dim - GL Segment7
• Dim - GL Segment8
• Dim - GL Segment9
• Dim - GL Segment10

Deploy the flexfield using the **Deploy Flexfield** button on the **Manage Key Flexfields** page. For more information about using both key and descriptive flexfields in Oracle Fusion Transactional BI, refer to the Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator’s Guide.

**Related Topics**
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

---

**Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Accounting Calendars**

**Accounting Calendar Options**

Define an accounting calendar to create your accounting year and the periods it contains. Specify common calendar options that the application uses to automatically generate a calendar with its periods. Specifying all the options makes defining a correct calendar easier and more intuitive with fewer errors.

⚠️ **Caution:** The choices you make when specifying the following options are critical, because it is difficult to change your accounting calendar after a period status is set to open or future enterable.

- Budgetary control only
- Start Date
- Period Frequency
- Adjusting Period Frequency
- Period Name Format

🔍 **Note:** To help create and maintain accounting calendars, the common calendar types of monthly, weekly, 4-4-5, 4-5-4, 5-4-4, 4-week, quarterly, and yearly, are automatically generated. By using the period frequency option, you no longer have to go through the tedious task of defining each period manually.

**Budgetary Control Only Check Box**

Select the check box for Budgetary control only to use the calendar for budgetary control only. Budgetary Control refers to the group of system options and the validation process of determining which transactions are subject to validation against budgets and budget consumption to prevent overspending.
Start Date
If you plan to run translation, specify a calendar start date that is a full year before the start date of the year of the first translation period for your ledger. Translation cannot be run in the first period of a calendar. Consider how many years of history you are going to load from your previous application and back up the start date for those years plus one more. You cannot add previous years once the first calendar period has been opened.

Period Frequency
Use the period frequency to set the interval for each subsequent period to occur, for example, monthly, quarterly, or yearly. If you select the period frequency of Other, by default, the application generates the period names, year, and quarter number. You specify the start and end dates. You must manually enter the period information. For example, select the period frequency of Other and enter 52 as the number of periods when you want to define a weekly calendar. For manually entered calendars, when you click the Add Year button, the application creates a blank year. Then, you must manually enter the periods for the new year. The online validation helps prevent erroneous entries.

If the year has been defined and validated, use the Add Year button to add the next year quickly. Accept or change the new rows as required. For example, with the Other frequency type calendar, dates may differ from what the application generates.

Note: A calendar can have only one period frequency and period type. Therefore, if you have an existing calendar with more than one period type associated with it, during the upgrade from Oracle E-Business Suite, separate calendars are created based on each calendar name and period type combination.

Adjusting Period Frequency
Use the adjusting period frequency to control when the application creates adjusting periods. For example, some of the frequencies you select add one adjusting period at year end, two at year end, or one at the end of each quarter. The default is None which adds no adjusting periods. If you select the frequency of Other, the Number of Adjusting Periods field is displayed. Enter the number of adjusting periods you want, and then manually define them.

Period Name Format Region
In the Period Name Format section, enter the following fields:

- **User-Defined Prefix**: An optional feature that allows you to enter your own prefix. For example, define a weekly calendar and then enter a prefix of Week, - as the separator, and the period name format of Period numberYY fiscal year. The application creates the names of Week1-11, Week2-11, through Week52-11.
- **Format**: A predefined list of values filtered on the selected separator, only displaying the options that match the selected separator.
- **Year**: The year displayed in the period names is based on the selected period name format and the dates the period covers or if the period crosses years, on the year of the start date of the period.
  - For example, April 10, 2016 to May 9, 2016 has the period name of Apr-16 and December 10, 2016 to January 9, 2017 has the name of Dec-16.
  - If period frequency is Other, then the period format section is hidden. The application generates a temporary period name for calendars with period frequency of Other, using a fixed format of Period numberYY. You can override this format with your own period names.

Note: For an accounting calendar that is associated with a ledger, changing period names or adding a year updates the accounting period dimension in the balances cubes.
How Accounting Calendars Are Validated

Calendar validation is automatic and prevents serious problems when you begin using a calendar. Once you set a calendar period status to open or future enterable, you can't edit the period.

Settings That Affect Calendar Validation

Calendar validation runs automatically after you save the calendar.

How a Calendar Is Validated

The following table lists the validation checks that are performed when an accounting calendar is saved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validation</th>
<th>Data Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unique period number</td>
<td>2 assigned for two periods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unique period name</td>
<td>Jan-17 entered twice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period number beyond the maximum number of periods per year</td>
<td>13 for a 12 period calendar with no adjusting periods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entered period name contains spaces</td>
<td>Jan 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single or double quotes in the period name</td>
<td>Jan ’17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonadjusting periods with overlapping dates</td>
<td>01-Jan-2017 to 31-Jan-2017 and 30-Jan-2017 to 28-Feb-2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period date gaps</td>
<td>01-Jan-2017 to 28-Jan-2017 and 31-Jan-2017 to 28-Feb-2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missing period numbers</td>
<td>Periods 1 through 6 are defined for a calendar with 12 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period number gaps</td>
<td>1, 3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter number gaps</td>
<td>1, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarters not in sequential order by period</td>
<td>1, 3, 2, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period start or end dates more than one year before or after the fiscal year</td>
<td>July 1, 2015 in a 2017 calendar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FAQs for Manage Accounting Calendars

How can I identify errors in my accounting calendar?
Oracle Fusion General Ledger identifies erroneous entries online as you enter a new calendar or change data on an existing calendar. The application also automatically validates the data when you save the calendar.

What's the difference between calendar and fiscal period naming?
The period naming format determines the year that is appended to the prefix for each period in the calendar. For the example, your accounting year has a set of twelve accounting period with:

- Start date of September 1, 2014.
- End date is August 31, 2015.
- Period’s date range following the natural calendar month date range.

Calendar period naming format: Select the calendar period format to append the period’s start date’s year to the prefix. For the period covering September 1, 2014 to December 31, 2014, then 2014 or just 14, depending on the period format selected, is appended to each period’s name. For the remaining periods covering January 1, 2015 to August 31, 2015, then 2015 or 15, is appended to each period’s name.

Fiscal period naming format: Select the fiscal period format to always append the period’s year assignment to the prefix. If the accounting periods in the set of twelve are all assigned the year of 2015, then 2015 or just 15, depending on the period format selected, is appended to the period name of all 12 periods.

When do I update an existing calendar?
Update an existing calendar before the new periods are needed as future periods, based on the future period setting in your accounting configuration. If a complete year has been defined and validated, use the Add Year button to add the next year quickly. Accept or change the new rows as required. For example, with the Other frequency type calendar, dates may differ from what the application generates.

What happens if I upgrade my calendar from Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12?
The migration script assigns a period frequency that most closely matches your Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12 calendar. When you use the Oracle Fusion applications Add Year functionality for the first time, you have an opportunity to review and change the period frequency. The Calendar Options page opens only for calendars upgraded from Release 12 to allow one time modification.

Make your changes to the period frequency, adjusting period frequency, and period name format, including the prefix and separator, as needed. Changes cannot conflict with the existing upgraded calendar definition. Update the calendar name and description in the calendar header, as needed, for all calendars. Period details for a new year are generated automatically based on the latest calendar options. You can also manually update the calendar. The modified calendar options affect future years only.

Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Primary or Secondary Ledgers
Accounting Configuration Offerings: Overview

Use the Setup and Maintenance work area in Oracle Applications to manage the configuration of legal entities, ledgers, and reporting currencies. To create a legal entity or ledger, first create an implementation project. This implementation project can be populated by either adding a financials-related offering or one or more task lists.

Note: Setup tasks that are not related to the ledger or legal entity setup tasks are opened from either an implementation project or directly from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

The financial applications have two predefined implementations:

- The Oracle Accounting Hub Cloud offering is used to add the General Ledger and Subledger Accounting application features to an existing Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) source system to enhance reporting and analysis.
- The Financials offering includes the General Ledger and Subledger Accounting application features and one or more subledger financial applications.

When adding an offering to an implementation project, update the tasks displayed by adding additional tasks.

Related Topics
- What’s a functional area

Ledgers and Subledgers

Oracle Fusion Applications reflect the traditional segregation between the general ledger and associated subledgers. Detailed transactional information is captured in the subledgers and periodically imported and posted in summary or detail to the ledger.

A ledger determines the currency, chart of accounts, accounting calendar, ledger processing options, and accounting method for its associated subledgers. Each accounting setup requires a primary ledger and optionally, one or more secondary ledgers and reporting currencies. Reporting currencies are associated with either a primary or secondary ledger.

The number of ledgers and subledgers is unlimited and determined by your business structure and reporting requirements.

Single Ledger

If your subsidiaries all share the same ledger with the parent company or they share the same chart of accounts and calendar, and all reside on the same applications instance, you can consolidate financial results in Oracle Fusion General Ledger in a single ledger. Use Oracle Fusion Financial Reporting functionality to produce individual entity reports by balancing segments. General Ledger has three balancing segments that can be combined to provide detailed reporting for each legal entity and then rolled up to provide consolidated financial statements.

Multiple Ledgers

Accounting operations using multiple ledgers can include single or multiple applications instances. You need multiple ledgers if one of the following is true:

- You have companies that require different account structures to record information about transactions and balances. For example, one company may require a six-segment account, while another needs only a three-segment account structure.
- You have companies that use different accounting calendars. For example, although companies may share fiscal year calendars, your retail operations require a weekly calendar, and a monthly calendar is required for your corporate headquarters.
• You have companies that require different functional currencies. Consider the business activities and reporting requirements of each company. If you must present financial statements in another country and currency, consider the accounting principles to which you must adhere.

Subledgers
Oracle Fusion Subledgers capture detailed transactional information, such as supplier invoices, customer payments, and asset acquisitions. Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting is an open and flexible application that defines the accounting rules, generates detailed journal entries for these subledger transactions, and posts these entries to the general ledger with flexible summarization options to provide a clear audit trail.

Primary Ledgers, Secondary Ledgers, and Reporting Currencies
Companies account for themselves in primary ledgers, and, if necessary, secondary ledgers and reporting currencies. Transactions from your subledgers are posted to your primary ledgers and possibly, secondary ledgers or reporting currencies based on balance, subledger, or journal level settings. Local and corporate compliance can be achieved through an optional secondary ledger. Provide an alternate accounting method, or in some cases, a different chart of accounts. Your subsidiary’s primary and secondary ledgers can both be maintained in your local currency. You can convert your local currency to your parent’s ledger currency to report your consolidated financial results using reporting currencies or translation.

Primary Ledgers
A primary ledger:
• Is the main record-keeping ledger.
• Records transactional balances by using a chart of accounts with a consistent calendar and currency, and accounting rules implemented in an accounting method.
• Is closely associated with the subledger transactions and provides context and accounting for them.

To determine the number of primary ledgers, your enterprise structure analysis must begin with your financial, legal, and management reporting requirements. For example, if your company has separate subsidiaries in several countries worldwide, enable reporting for each country’s legal authorities by creating multiple primary ledgers that represent each country with the local currency, chart of accounts, calendar, and accounting method. Use reporting currencies linked to your country-specific primary ledgers to report to your parent company from your foreign subsidiaries. Other considerations that affect the number of primary ledgers required are:
• Corporate year end
• Ownership percentages
• Local government regulations and taxation
• Secondary ledgers

Secondary Ledgers
A secondary ledger:
• Is an optional ledger linked to a primary ledger for the purpose of tracking alternative accounting.
• Can differ from its primary ledger by using a different accounting method, chart of accounts, accounting calendar, currency, or processing options.
Chapter 6

Define Enterprise Structures for Procurement

When you set up a secondary ledger using the Manage Secondary Ledger task, you select a data conversion level. The data conversion level determines what level of information is copied to the secondary ledger. You can select one of the following levels: **Balance, Journal, Subledger, or Adjustment Only**.

- **Balance**: When you run the Transfer Balances to Secondary Ledger process, balances are transferred from the primary ledger to the secondary ledger.

- **Journal**: When you post journals in the primary ledger, the posting process copies the journals to the secondary ledger for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Map Primary to Secondary Ledger page.

  In the Journal Conversion Rules section, you can do one of the following:

  - Accept the default setting of **Yes** for the journal source and category combination of **Other**, and then specify the source and category combinations to exclude from the conversion.
  - Set the journal source and category combination of **Other** to **No**, and then specify the source and category combinations to include in the conversion.

- **Subledger**: When you run the Create Accounting process in the primary ledger, the process creates subledger journals for both the primary and secondary ledgers. When you run the Post Journals process in the primary ledger for journals that are created through methods other than the Create Accounting process, the posting process copies the primary ledger journals to the secondary ledger. For any journals that you don't want copied by posting, you can change the settings in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Map Primary to Secondary Ledger page. To prevent duplication, posting doesn't copy any journal that originated from subledgers, regardless of the settings in the Journal Conversion Rules section.

  **Caution**: You don’t have to specify journal conversion rules for your subledgers because journal conversion rules are applicable only to postings from Oracle Fusion General Ledger. The Create Accounting process automatically produces accounting for both the primary and the secondary ledger, regardless of the journal conversion rule settings.

- **Adjustment Only**: This level is an incomplete accounting representation that holds only adjustments. The adjustments can be entered as manual journals in General Ledger. This type of secondary ledger must share the same chart of accounts, accounting calendar, period type, and currency as the associated primary ledger.

  **Tip**: To obtain a complete secondary accounting representation that includes both transactional data and adjustments, use ledger sets to combine the ledgers when running reports.

**Example**

Your primary ledger uses US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) and you maintain a secondary ledger for International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) accounting requirements. You first decide to use the subledger conversion level for the IFRS secondary ledger. However, since most of the accounting between US GAAP and IFRS is identical, the adjustment only level is the better solution for the secondary ledger. The subledger level requires duplication of most subledger and general ledger journal entries and general ledger balances. The adjustment only level transfers only the adjustment journal entries and balances necessary to convert your US GAAP accounting to the IFRS accounting. Thus, requiring less processing resources.

  **Tip**: To avoid difficult reconciliations, use the same currency for primary and secondary ledgers. Use reporting currencies or translations to generate the different currency views to comply with internal reporting needs and consolidations.
Reporting Currencies

Reporting currencies maintain and report accounting transactions in additional currencies. Consider the following before deciding to use reporting currencies.

- Each primary and secondary ledger is defined with a ledger currency that is used to record your business transactions and accounting data for that ledger.
- Best practices recommend that you maintain the ledger in the currency in which the majority of its transactions are denominated. For example, create, record, and close a transaction in the same currency to save processing and reconciliation time.
- Compliance, such as paying local transaction taxes, is also easier using a local currency.
- Many countries require that your accounting records be kept in their national currency.

If you maintain and report accounting records in different currencies, you do this by defining one or more reporting currencies for the ledger. When you set up a reporting currency using the Manage Reporting Currency task, you select a currency conversion level. The currency conversion level determines what level of information is copied to the reporting currency.

You can select one of the following levels: **Balance, Journal, Subledger**.

- **Balance**: When you run the Translate General Ledger Account Balances process, balances are transferred from the specified ledger to the reporting currency and converted.
- **Journal**: When you post journals, the posting process copies the journals to the reporting currency for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Create or Edit Reporting Currency pages.

  In the Journal Conversion Rules section, you can do one of the following:

  - Accept the default setting of **Yes** for the journal source and category combination of **Other**, and then specify the source and category combinations to exclude from the conversion.
  - Set the journal source and category combination of **Other** to **No**, and then specify the source and category combinations to include in the conversion.

- **Subledger**: When you run the Create Accounting process in the primary ledger, the process creates subledger journals for both the primary ledger and the reporting currency. When you run the Post Journals process in the primary ledger for journals that are created through methods other than the Create Accounting process, the posting process copies the primary ledger journals to the reporting currency. For any journals that you don’t want copied by posting, you can change the settings in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Edit Reporting Currency page. To prevent duplication, posting doesn’t copy any journal that originated from subledgers, regardless of the settings in the Journal Conversion Rules section.

  **Caution**: You don’t have to specify journal conversion rules for your subledgers because journal conversion rules are applicable only to postings from Oracle Fusion General Ledger. The Create Accounting process automatically produces accounting for both the primary ledger and the reporting currency, regardless of the journal conversion rule settings.

  **Note**: A full accounting representation of your primary ledger is maintained in any subledger level reporting currency. Secondary ledgers cannot use subledger level reporting currencies.
Do not use journal or subledger level reporting currencies if your organization translates your financial statements to your parent company’s currency for consolidation purposes infrequently. Standard translation functionality meets this need. Consider using journal or subledger level reporting currencies when any of the following conditions exist.

- You operate in a country whose unstable currency makes it unsuitable for managing your business. As a consequence, you manage your business in a more stable currency while retaining the ability to report in the unstable local currency.
- You operate in a country that is part of the European Economic and Monetary Union (EMU), and you select to account and report in both the European Union currency and your National Currency Unit.

**Note:** The second option is rare since most companies have moved beyond the initial conversion to the EMU currency. However, future decisions could add other countries to the EMU, and then, this option would again be used during the conversion stage.

**Related Topics**

- What’s the difference between mapping with segment rules and mapping with account rules
- When do account rules override segment rules in a chart of accounts mapping

Ledgers, Legal Entities, Balancing Segments, and Business Units

The process of designing an enterprise structure, including the accounting configuration, is the starting point for an implementation. This process often includes determining financial, legal, and management reporting requirements, setting up primary and secondary ledgers, making currency choices, and examining consolidation considerations.

Primary ledgers are connected to reporting currencies and secondary ledgers to provide complete reporting options. You map the chart of accounts for the primary ledger to the chart of accounts for the secondary ledger. Legal entities are assigned to ledgers, both primary and secondary, and balancing segments are assigned to legal entities. Business units must be connected to both a primary ledger and a default legal entity. Business units can record transactions across legal entities.
The following figure provides an example of an enterprise structure with primary ledgers, secondary ledgers, a reporting currency, legal entities, business units, and balancing segments, and shows their relationships to one another.

**Primary Ledgers**

A primary ledger is the main record-keeping ledger. Create a primary ledger by combining a chart of accounts, accounting calendar, ledger currency, and accounting method. To determine the number of primary ledgers, your enterprise structure analysis must begin with determining financial, legal, and management reporting requirements. For example, if your company has separate subsidiaries in several countries worldwide, create multiple primary ledgers representing each country with the local currency, chart of accounts, calendar, and accounting method to enable reporting to each country's legal authorities.

If your company just has sales in different countries, with all results being managed by the corporate headquarters, create one primary ledger with multiple balancing segment values to represent each legal entity. Use secondary ledgers or reporting currencies to meet your local reporting requirements, as needed. Limiting the number of primary ledgers simplifies reporting because consolidation is not required. Other consideration such as corporate year end, ownership considerations, and local government regulations, also affect the number of primary ledgers required.
Secondary Ledgers
A secondary ledger is an optional ledger linked to a primary ledger. A secondary ledger can differ from its related primary ledger in chart of accounts, accounting calendar, currency, accounting method, or ledger processing options. Reporting requirements, for example, that require a different accounting representation to comply with international or country-specific regulations, create the need for a secondary ledger.

If the primary and secondary ledgers use different:

- Charts of accounts, a chart of accounts mapping is required to instruct the application on how to propagate journals from the source chart of accounts to the target chart of accounts.
- Accounting calendars, the accounting date, and the general ledger date mapping table are used to determine the corresponding nonadjusting period in the secondary ledger. The date mapping table also provides the correlation between dates and nonadjusting periods for each accounting calendar.
- Ledger currencies, currency conversion rules are required to instruct the application on how to convert the transactions, journals, or balances from the source representation to the secondary ledger.

**Note:** Journal conversion rules, based on the journal source and category, are required to provide instructions on how to propagate journals and types of journals from the source ledger to the secondary ledger.

Reporting Currencies
Reporting currencies are the currency you use for financial, legal, and management reporting. If your reporting currency is not the same as your ledger currency, you can use the foreign currency translation process or reporting currencies functionality to convert your ledger account balances in your reporting currency. Currency conversion rules are required to instruct the application on how to convert the transactions, journals, or balances from the source representation to the reporting currency.

Legal Entities
Legal entities are discrete business units characterized by the legal environment in which they operate. The legal environment dictates how the legal entity should perform its financial, legal, and management reporting. Legal entities generally have the right to own property and the obligation to comply with labor laws for their country. They also have the responsibility to account for themselves and present financial statements and reports to company regulators, taxation authorities, and other stakeholders according to rules specified in the relevant legislation and applicable accounting standards. During setup, legal entities are assigned to the accounting configuration, which includes all ledgers, primary and secondary.

Balancing Segments
You assign primary balancing segment values to all legal entities before assigning values to the ledger. Then, assign specific primary balancing segment values to the primary and secondary ledgers to represent nonlegal entity related transactions such as adjustments. You can assign any primary balancing segment value that has not already been assigned to a legal entity. You are allowed to assign the same primary balancing segment values to more than one ledger. The assignment of primary balancing segment values to legal entities and ledgers is performed within the context of a single accounting setup. The Balancing Segment Value Assignments report is available to show all primary balancing segment values assigned to legal entities and ledgers across accounting setups to ensure the completeness and accuracy of their assignments. This report allows you to quickly identify these errors and view any unassigned values.

Business Units
A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. When a business function produces financial transactions, a business unit must be assigned a primary ledger, and a default legal entity. Each business unit can post transactions to a single primary ledger, but it can process transactions for
many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. You define business units as separate task generally done after the accounting setups steps.

The business unit model:

- Allows for flexible implementation
- Provides a consistent entity for controlling and reporting on transactions
- Enables sharing of sets of reference data across applications

For example, if your company requires business unit managers to be responsible for managing all aspects of their part of the business, then consider using two balancing segments, company and business unit to enable the production of business unit level balance sheets and income statements.

Transactions are exclusive to business units. In other words, you can use business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you have an export business that you run differently from your domestic business, use business units to secure members of the export business from seeing the transactions of the domestic business.

Create a Primary Ledger

Create a primary ledger as your main record-keeping ledger. A primary ledger records transactional balances by using a chart of accounts with a calendar, currency, and accounting rules implemented in an accounting method. The primary ledger is closely associated with the subledger transactions and provides context and accounting for them.

Scenario

You have been assigned the task of creating a primary ledger for your company Vision Corporation.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: General Ledger
   - Task: Manage Primary Ledger
2. Click the Create icon.
3. Complete the fields, as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Vision Corporation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Vision Corporation primary ledger for recording transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart of Accounts</td>
<td>Vision Corporation Chart of Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Calendar</td>
<td>Standard Monthly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency</td>
<td>USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Method</td>
<td>Standard Accrual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Click **Save and Close**.

恸\*Note: You can't change the chart of accounts, accounting calendar, or currency for your ledger after you save the ledger.

**Related Topics**
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

### Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Specify Ledger Options

#### Specify Ledger Options

This example demonstrates specifying the ledger options for a primary ledger. Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers.

After defining your InFusion America Primary Ledger, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
- **Offering: Financials**
- **Functional Area: General Ledger**
- **Task: Specify Ledger Options**, with the ledger scope set

恸\*Note: Both primary and secondary ledgers are created in the same way and use the same user interface to enable their specific ledger options.

#### Reviewing General Options

1. Accept the default name and description for the selected ledger.
2. Review the currency and chart of accounts for the specified ledger, which are automatically provided.

#### Setting Accounting Calendar Options

1. Review the accounting calendar that defaults from your ledger.
2. Select **Jan-2017** as the first open period for your ledger.
   - Select a period after the first defined period in the ledger calendar to enable running translation. You can't run translation in the first defined period of a ledger calendar. In this example, your calendar began with Jan-2016.
3. Enter **3** in the **Number of Future Enterable Periods** field.
   - Any value between 0 and 999 periods can be specified to permit entering journals, but not posting them in future periods. Minimize the number of open and future periods to prevent entries in the wrong period.

#### Selecting Subledger Accounting Options

1. Accept the default accounting method from your ledger.
2. Select **US American English** as your journal language.
Completing the Period Close Options

1. Enter your retained earnings account: 101-00-31330000-0000-0000-0000-0000.
   
   This account is required. General Ledger moves the revenue and expense account balances to this account at the
   end of the accounting year.

2. Enter your cumulative translation adjustment account: 101-00-31350000-0000-0000-0000-0000.
   
   The Cumulative Translation Adjustment (CTA) account is required for ledgers running translation.

3. Don’t enter a value for the Default Period End Rate Type or Default Period Average Rate Type fields.
   
   The values entered here are used as the default for balance level reporting currency processing. InFusion America
   Primary Ledger is using the subledger level reporting currency processing.

Specifying Journal Processing Options

1. Complete the fields, as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Suspense</td>
<td>General Ledger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Suspense Account</td>
<td>101-00-98199999-0000-0000-0000-0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding Account</td>
<td>101-10-98189999-0000-0000-0000-0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entered Currency Balancing Account</td>
<td>101-10-98179999-0000-0000-0000-0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balancing Threshold Percent</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Enable the following entry and import options:
   
   o Enable journal approval: Enable the journal approval functionality.
   
   o Notify when prior period journal is entered: Notify the user when a prior period date is selected on a journal
     entry.
   
   o Allow mixed and statistical journals: Enter both monetary and statistical amounts on the same line in a journal
     entry.
   
   o Validate reference date: Require a reference date in an open or future enterable period.
   
   o Separate journals by accounting date during journal import: Create individual journal entries for each
     accounting date.

3. Select InFusion America Accrual Set from the list of values in the Journal Reversal Criteria Set field and click the
   Run AutoReverse after open period option to reverse accrual journal entries automatically when a new period is
   opened.

4. Click the Enable intercompany accounting option to enable automatic balancing for primary, second, and third
   balancing segments on intercompany journals and transactions.
   
   To complete the intercompany accounting functionality, you must define intercompany rules.
Note:
- This example describes setting options for a standard ledger. You can convert a standard ledger to an average daily balance ledger before the first period is opened by selecting the **Enable average balances** check box on the Specify Ledger Options page.
- You can also convert an average daily balance ledger to a standard ledger before submitting the Review and Submit Accounting Configuration task, provided the average daily balance ledger was not created through the rapid implementation process.

**Related Topics**
- How Single Currency Journals Are Balanced
- How MultiCurrency Journals Are Balanced

### FAQs for Specify Ledger Options

#### What happens if I change the cumulative translation adjustment account?
Changing the cumulative translation adjustment (CTA) account is a very significant revision to your accounting configuration and should be avoided if possible. To prevent data corruption, your CTA can only be changed if you delete translated balances.

**Related Topics**
- How Translated Balances Are Deleted

#### What happens if I change the retained earnings account?
Changing the retained earnings account is a very significant revision to your accounting configuration and should be avoided if possible. To prevent data corruption, your retained earnings account can only be changed if you first perform the following set of steps:

1. To reverse what was closed out to the incorrect retained earnings account, enter and post journals to bring the ending balances for your income statement accounts to zero at the end of each accounting year. Use a temporary account, such as a suspense account, for the offsetting amount.
2. Update the retained earnings account.
3. Reverse the journal entries used to bring the income statement accounts’ ending account balances to zero to reinstate each accounting year’s profit and loss, and now close these out to the new retained earnings’s account in the following accounting year.

  **Note:** The recommended reversal method for the journals is **Change Sign**.

4. If you have translated balances for the ledger, follow the process of deleting translated balances for a change in the retained earnings account.

**Related Topics**
- How Translated Balances Are Deleted
Assign Legal Entities and Balancing Segments

Optionally, assign legal entities and balancing segments to your accounting configuration.

Assign Legal Entities

Assign one or more legal entities to your accounting configuration by following these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: General Ledger
   - Task: Assign Legal Entities, with the ledger scope set
2. Click the Select and Add icon.
3. Enter your legal entity information.
4. Click Apply.
5. Click Done.
6. Click Save and Close.

Assign Balancing Segments to Legal Entities

Assign balancing segment values to your legal entities by following these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: General Ledger
   - Task: Assign Balancing Segment Values to Legal Entities, with the ledger scope set
2. Click the Create icon.
3. Select the balancing segment value. Optionally, add a start date.
4. Click Save and Close to close the Assign Company Values window.
5. Click Save and Close.

Assign Balancing Segments to Ledgers

Assign balancing segment values directly to your ledger by following these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: General Ledger
   - Task: Assign Balancing Segment Value to Ledger, with the ledger scope set
2. Select the balancing segment value.
3. Optionally enter a start date.
4. Click Save and Close.

Note: The balancing segment values that are assigned to the ledger represent nonlegal entity transactions, such as adjustments. If you use legal entities, you must assign balancing segment values to all legal entities before assigning values to the ledger. The only available balancing segment values that can be assigned to ledgers are those not assigned to legal entities.
Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Reporting Currencies

How Balances for Reporting Currencies Are Calculated

Reporting currency balances, set at the journal or subledger level, are updated when General Ledger journals are posted and converted to your reporting currencies. This process includes:

- General Ledger manual journals, periodic journals, and allocations.
- At the subledger level, journals from Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting.
- Other journals imported from sources other than your Oracle Fusion subledgers.

When you post a journal in a ledger that has one or more reporting currencies defined, the posting process:

- Creates journals converted to each of your reporting currencies.
- Includes them in the same batch as the original journal with a status of Posted.

Settings That Affect Reporting Currency Balances

Reporting currencies share a majority of the ledger options with their source ledger. For example, the reporting currency uses the same suspense account and retained earnings accounts as its source ledger. However, there are certain options that must be set specifically for reporting currencies, such as the currency conversion level. The currency conversion levels are Balance, Journal, and Subledger.

> Note: Secondary ledgers can’t use subledger level reporting currencies.

Multiple dependencies exist between a reporting currency and its source ledger. Therefore, complete your period opening tasks, daily journal or subledger level reporting currencies accounting tasks, and period closing tasks in the correct order. The following table describes some of the tasks for each task type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Period Opening</td>
<td>Open the accounting period in both your ledger and reporting currencies before you create or import journals for the period. Converted journals are only generated in your reporting currency if the period is open or future enterable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Enter daily conversion rates to convert journals to each of the reporting currencies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Period Closing     | • Finish entering all regular and adjusting journals for the period in your ledger.  
                        • Post all unposted journals in your ledger if not already done in the previous step.  
                        • Post all unposted journals in your reporting currencies if not already done in the previous step.  
                        • Run revaluation in both your ledger and reporting currencies. Post the resulting revaluation batches in each ledger. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• As needed, translate balances in your ledger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Generate needed reports from both your ledger and reporting currencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Close your accounting period in both your ledger and reporting currencies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How Reporting Currencies Are Calculated

If you use reporting currencies at the journal or subledger level, journals are posted in your reporting currency when you:

- Create accounting.
- Post journal entries.
- Translate balances.

General Ledger and Subledger Accounting automatically generate journals in your reporting currencies where the entered currency amounts are converted to the reporting currency amounts. Other factors used in the calculation of reporting currency balances are listed:

- Manual Journals: Enter a manual journal batch in your reporting currency at the journal or subledger level by using the Create Journals page. Select the journal or subledger level reporting currency from the ledger's list of values. Continue in the same manner as entering any other manual journal.
- Conversion Rounding: Use the reporting currency functionality to round converted and accounted amounts using the same rounding rules used throughout your Oracle Fusion Applications. The reporting currency functionality considers several factors that are a part of the currencies predefined in your applications, including:
  - Currency Precision: Number of digits after the decimal point used in currency transactions.
  - Minimum Accountable Unit: Smallest denomination used in the currency. This might not correspond to the precision.
- Converted Journals: Generate and post automatically journals in your reporting currencies when you post the original journals in the source ledger for the following types of journals:
  - Manual journals
  - Periodic and allocation journals
  - Unposted journals from non-Oracle subledger applications
  - Unposted journals from any Oracle Fusion subledger that does not support reporting currency transfer and import
  - Optionally, revaluation journals
- Unconverted Journals: Rely on the subledger accounting functionality to convert and transfer Oracle Fusion subledger journals, for both the original journal and the reporting currency journal, to the General Ledger for import and posting. The reporting currency conversion for these journals is not performed by the General Ledger.
- Approving Journals: Use the journal approval feature to process reporting currency journals through your organization's approval hierarchy. You can enable journal approval functionality separately in your source ledger and reporting currencies.
- Document Numbers: Accept the default document numbers assigned by the General Ledger application to your journal when you enter a journal in your ledger. The converted journal in the reporting currency is assigned the same document number. However, if you enter a journal in the reporting currency, the document number assigned to the journal is determined by the reporting currency.
- Sequential Numbering: Enable sequential numbering to maintain the same numbering in your reporting currency and source ledger for journals, other than those journals for Oracle Fusion subledgers. Do not create separate sequences
for your reporting currencies. If you do, the sequence defined for the reporting currencies is used. The sequences can cause the document numbers not to be synchronized between the ledger and reporting currencies.

**Note:** General Ledger enters a document number automatically when you save your journal if:
- The Sequential Numbering profile option is set to *Always Used* or *Partially Used*.
- Automatic document numbering sequence is defined.
If you use manual numbering, you can enter a unique document number.

- Revaluation: Run periodically revaluation in your ledger and reporting currencies as necessary to satisfy the accounting regulations of the country in which your organization operates.
- Account Inquiries: Perform inquiries in the reporting currency. You can:
  - Drill down to the journal detail for the reporting currency balance.
  - Drill down to see the source ledger currency journal amounts from any automatically converted journal that was created when the original journal posted.

**Note:** Be careful when changing amounts in a reporting currency, since the changes are not reflected in your source ledger. Making journal entry changes to a reporting currency makes it more difficult to reconcile your reporting currency to your source ledger. In general, enter or change your journals in your source ledger, and then allow posting to update the reporting currency.

**Note:** If you use journal or subledger level reporting currencies, statistical journals are generated for your reporting currencies, but the journals are not converted.

### Define Business Units: Manage Business Units

#### Business Units

A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. Roll business units up into divisions if you structure your chart of accounts with this type of hierarchy.

In Oracle Fusion Applications you do the following:

- Assign your business units to one primary ledger. For example, if a business unit is processing payables invoices, then it must post to a particular ledger. This assignment is required for your business units with business functions that produce financial transactions.
- Use a business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you run your export business separately from your domestic sales business, then secure the export business data to prevent access by the domestic sales employees. To accomplish this security, set up the export business and domestic sales business as two separate business units.

The Oracle Fusion Applications business unit model provides the following advantages:

- Enables flexible implementation
• Provides consistent entity that controls and reports on transactions
• Shares sets of reference data across applications

Business units process transactions using reference data sets that reflect your business rules and policies and can differ from country to country. With Oracle Fusion Application functionality, you can share reference data, such as payment terms and transaction types, across business units, or you can have each business unit manage its own set depending on the level at which you want to enforce common policies.

In summary, use business units for:
• Management reporting
• Transaction processing
• Transactional data security
• Reference data sharing and definition

**Brief Overview of Business Unit Security**
A number of Oracle Fusion Applications use business units to implement data security. You assign roles like Accounts Payable Manager to users to permit them to perform specific functions, and you assign business units for each role to users to give them access to data in those business units. For example, users who have been assigned a Payables role for a particular business unit, can perform the function of payables invoicing on the data in that business unit. Roles can be assigned to users manually using the Security Console, or automatically using provisioning rules. Business Units can be assigned to users using the Manage Data Access for Users task found in Setup and Maintenance.

**Define Business Units: Assign Business Unit Business Function**

**Business Functions**
A business unit can perform many business functions in Oracle Fusion Applications.

**Business Functions**
A business function represents a business process, or an activity that can be performed by people working within a business unit and describes how a business unit is used. The following business functions exist in Oracle Fusion applications:

• Billing and revenue management
• Collections management
• Customer contract management
• Customer payments
• Expense management
• Incentive compensation
• Marketing
• Materials management
• Order fulfillment orchestration
• Payables invoicing
• Payables payments
• Procurement
• Procurement contract management
• Project accounting
• Receiving
• Requisitioning
• Sales

Although there is no relationship implemented in Oracle Fusion Applications, a business function logically indicates a presence of a department in the business unit with people performing tasks associated with these business functions. A business unit can have many departments performing various business functions. Optionally, you can define a hierarchy of divisions, business units, and departments as a tree over HCM organization units to represent your enterprise structure.

**Note:** This hierarchy definition is not required in the setup of your applications, but is a recommended best practice.

Your enterprise procedures can require a manager of a business unit to have responsibility for their profit and loss statement. In such cases, any segment that allows the identification of associated revenue and costs can be used as a profit center identification. The segment can be qualified as the **Cost Center Segment**.

However, there are cases where a business unit is performing only general and administrative functions, in which case your manager's financial goals are limited to cost containment or recovering of service costs. For example, if a shared service center at the corporate office provides services for more commercially-oriented business units, it does not show a profit and therefore, only tracks its costs.

In other cases, where your managers have a responsibility for the assets of the business unit, a balance sheet can be produced. The recommended best practice to produce a balance sheet is to setup the business unit as a balancing segment in the chart of accounts. The business unit balancing segment can roll up to divisions or other entities to represent your enterprise structure.

When a business function produces financial transactions, a business unit must be assigned to a primary ledger, and a default legal entity. Each business unit can post transactions to a single primary ledger, but it can process transactions for many legal entities.

The following business functions generate financial transactions and will require a primary ledger and a default legal entity:

• Billing and revenue management
• Collections management
• Customer payments
• Expense management
• Materials management
• Payables invoicing
• Project accounting
• Receiving
• Requisitioning

**Business Unit Hierarchy: Example**

For example, your InFusion America Company provides:

• Air quality monitoring systems through your division InFusion Air Systems
• Customer financing through your division InFusion Financial Services

The InFusion Air Systems division further segments your business into the System Components and Installation Services subdivisions. Your subdivisions are divided by business units:

• System Components by products: Air Compressors and Air Transmission
• Installation Services by services: Electrical and Mechanical

The following figure shows an example of a business unit hierarchy.

Oracle Fusion applications facilitates independent balance sheet rollups for legal and management reporting by offering up to three balancing segments. Hierarchies created using a second or third balancing segment can provide the divisional results. For example, it is possible to define second or third balancing segment values to correspond to business units, and arrange them in a hierarchy where the higher nodes correspond to divisions and subdivisions, as in the InFusion US Division example.

Define Business Units: Manage Service Provider Relationships

Shared Service Centers

Oracle Fusion Applications enables defining relationships between business units to outline which business unit provides services to the other business units.
Service Provider Model

The service provider model centralizes the following business functions:

- **Procurement**
  - Services business units that enable the Requisitioning business function.
  - Processes requisitions and negotiates supplier terms for client business units.

- **Payables Payment**
  - Services business units that enable the Payables Invoicing business function.
  - Processes payments for client business units.

- **Customer Payments**
  - Services business units that enable the Billing and Revenue Management business function.
  - Processes payments for the transactions of client business units assigned the Billing and Revenue Management business function.

This functionality is used to frame service level agreements and drive security. The service provider relationships provides you with a clear record of how your business operations are centralized. For other centralized processing, business unit security is used (known in Oracle E-Business Suite as Multi-Org Access Control). This means that users who work in a shared service center have the ability to get access and process transactions for many business units.

Shared Service Centers

Oracle Fusion Applications supports shared service centers in two ways. First, with business unit security, which allows your shared service centers personnel to process transactions for other business units called clients.

Second, the service provider model expands on this capability to allow a business unit and its personnel in a shared service center to work on transactions of the client business units. It is possible to view the clients of a service provider business unit, and to view service providers of a client business unit.

Your shared service centers provide services to your client business units that can be part of other legal entities. In such cases, your cross charges and recoveries are in the form of receivables invoices, and not merely allocations within your general ledger, thereby providing internal controls and preventing inappropriate processing.

For example, in traditional local operations, an invoice of one business unit cannot be paid by a payment from another business unit. In contrast, in your shared service center environment, processes allowing one business unit to perform services for others, such as paying an invoice, are allowed and completed with the appropriate intercompany accounting. Shared service centers provide your users with access to the data of different business units and can comply with different local requirements.

Security

The setup of business units provides you with a powerful security construct by creating relationships between the functions your users can perform and the data they can process. This security model is appropriate in a business environment where local business units are solely responsible for managing all aspects of the finance and administration functions.

In Oracle Fusion applications, the business functions your business unit performs are evident in the user interface for setting up business units. To accommodate shared services, use business unit security to expand the relationship between functions and data. A user can have access to many business units. This is the core of your shared service architecture.
For example, you take orders in many businesses. Your orders are segregated by business unit. However, all of these orders are managed from a shared service order desk in an outsourcing environment by your users who have access to multiple business units.

Benefits
In summary, large, medium, and small enterprises benefit from implementing share service centers. Examples of functional areas where shared service centers are generally implemented include procurement, disbursement, collections, order management, and human resources. The advantages of deploying these shared service centers are the following:

- Reduce and consolidate the number of control points and variations in processes, mitigating the risk of error.
- Increase corporate compliance to local and international requirements, providing more efficient reporting.
- Implement standard business practices, ensuring consistency across the entire enterprise and conformity to corporate objectives.
- Establish global processes and accessibility to data, improving managerial reporting and analysis.
- Provide quick and efficient incorporation of new business units, decreasing start-up costs.
- Establish the correct balance of centralized and decentralized functions, improving decision making.
- Automate self-service processes, reducing administrative costs.
- Permit business units to concentrate on their core competencies, improving overall corporate profits.

Service Provider Models
In Oracle Fusion applications, the service provider model defines relationships between business units for a specific business function, identifying one business in the relationship as a service provider of the business function, and the other business unit as its client.

Procurement Example
The Oracle Fusion Procurement product family has taken advantage of the service provider model by defining outsourcing of the procurement business function. Define your business units with requisitioning and payables invoicing business functions as clients of your business unit with the procurement business function. Your business unit responsible for the procurement business function takes care of supplier negotiations, supplier site maintenance, and purchase order processing on behalf of your client business units. Subscribe your client business units to the supplier sites maintained by the service providers, using a new procurement feature for supplier site assignment.
In the InFusion example, business unit four (BU4) serves as a service provider to the other three business units (BU1, BU2, and BU3.) BU4 provides the corporate administration, procurement, and human resources (HR) business functions, thus providing cost savings and other benefits to the entire InFusion enterprise.

![Diagram of InFusion Corporation structure]

**Define Business Units: Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties**

**Customer Contracts Business Unit Setup**

Using the *Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties* task, available by navigating to Setup and Maintenance work area and searching on the task name, you can specify a wide variety of business function settings for customer contracts in a specific business unit. The selections you make for these business functions impact how Oracle Enterprise Contracts behaves during contract authoring.

Using the *Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties* task, manage these business function properties:

- Enable related accounts
- Set currency conversion details
Note: You must select a default currency in the customer or supplier business function properties page, if not populated automatically from the ledger assigned to the business unit in the assign business function setup task.

- Manage project billing options
- Set up clause numbering
- Set up the Contract Terms Library

The setup options available for the Contract Terms Library are applicable to both customer and supplier contracts, and are described in the business unit setup topic for the Contract Terms Library. That topic is available as a related link to this topic.

Enabling Related Customer Accounts

Contract authors can specify bill-to, ship-to, and other accounts for the parties in a contract. Enable the related customer accounts option if you want accounts previously specified as related to the contract party to be available for selection.

Managing Currency Conversion Options

If your organization plans to transact project-related business in multiple currencies, then select the multicurrency option. This allows a contract author to override a contract’s currency, which is derived from the ledger currency of the business unit. It also enables the contract author to specify currency conversion attributes to use when converting from the bill transaction currency to the contract currency and from the invoice currency to the ledger currency.

In the Bill Transaction Currency to Contract Currency region, enter currency conversion details that will normally be used, by all contracts owned by this business unit, to convert transaction amounts in the bill transaction currency to the contract currency. Newly created contracts contain the default currency conversion values, but you can override the values on any contract, if needed.

In the Invoice Currency to Ledger Currency region:

- Enter invoice transaction conversion details if the invoice and ledger currencies can be different.
- Enter revenue transaction conversion details if the revenue and ledger currencies can be different for as-incurred and rate-based revenue.

Managing Project Billing Options

The options available for selection in the Project Billing region control the behavior of project invoicing and revenue recognition for contracts with project-based work. Project billing can act differently for external contracts (customer billing) or intercompany and interproject contracts (internal billing).

Set these options, which apply to all contracts:

- Select the Transfer Revenue to General Ledger option if you want to create revenue accounting events and entries, and transfer revenue journals to the general ledger. If this option is not selected, then revenue can still be generated, but will not be transferred to the general ledger.
- Indicate if a reason is required for credit memos that are applied to invoices.
There are two sets of the following options, one for customer billing and a second for internal billing:

- Select an invoice numbering method, either Manual or Automatic. The invoice numbering method is the method that Oracle Fusion Receivables uses to number its invoices, upon release of draft invoices from Project Billing.
  - If the invoice numbering method is Manual, then select an invoice number type, which sets the type of Receivables invoice numbers that are allowed. Valid values are Alphanumeric and Numeric.
  - If the invoice numbering method is Automatic, then enter the next invoice number to use when generating Receivables invoice numbers.
- Select the Receivables batch source to use when transferring invoices to Receivables.

Set this option only for customer billing:

- Indicate if you want contract authors to manually enter the Receivables transaction type on the customer contracts they create.

Managing Clause Numbering

You can choose to number clauses manually or automatically.

If you choose the automatic numbering method, you must select a determinant level for the numbering. You must then select the appropriate clause sequence category from document sequences that you set up for this numbering level.

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties or the Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties tasks. These tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area as part of the Enterprise Contracts offering in the Enterprise Contracts Base functional area.

For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.
- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.
- Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.

Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

1. Specify a global business unit
   You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the Global Business Unit option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved content from that global business unit. If the Global Business Unit option is not available for the business unit you are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.
2. Enable automatic adoption
   If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the Autoadopt Global Clauses.
option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.

3. Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption

You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit. The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator’s Terms Library work area.

4. Adopt global clauses for new business unit

If you are creating a new local business unit and have to adopt existing global clauses, run the Adopt Global Clauses for a New Business Unit process. Refer to the Enterprise Scheduler processes topic for more information.

Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the Clause Numbering field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.

You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the Display Clause Number in Clause Title option.

Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the Enable Contract Expert option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.

Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

- The printed contract terms
  Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the Clause Layout Template field.
- The contract deviations report
  The RTF file you select as the Deviations Layout Template determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.

Related Topics

- How Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library
- How Contract Expert Works
- Contract Printing and Layout Templates
Define Business Units: Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties

Supplier Contracts Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a variety of business function settings for supplier contracts in a specific business unit using the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** task, available by selecting Setup and Maintenance from the Navigator and searching on the task name.

The selections you make for these business functions impact how the Contract Terms Library behaves during supplier contract authoring.

> **Note:** The customer must select a default currency in the customer or supplier business function properties page, if not automatically populated from the ledger assigned to the business unit in the assign business function setup task.

Managing Contract Terms Library Setup Options

The setup options available for the Contract Terms Library are applicable to both customer and supplier contracts, and are described in the business unit setup topic for the Contract Terms Library. That topic is available as a related link to this topic.

Setting up Supplier Ship-to Organization, Ship-to Location and Bill-to Location

To setup ship-to organization, create Inventory Organization by using the following steps:

1. Navigate to **Setup and Maintenance**.
2. Click Search in the Tasks side panel and type **Manage Inventory Organizations**. Then, select it from the options listed.
3. Click **Create** in the results table.
4. Enter **Name** and **Organization**, and select **Management Business Unit** and **Legal Entity** information from the Drop Down list. Then, click **Next**.
5. In the General tab, select **Schedule** and **Item Master Organization** information. Click **Save and Close**.

To setup ship-to and bill-to location, create Inventory Organization Location by using the following steps:

1. Search for **Manage Inventory Organization Locations** in the Tasks side panel.
2. Click **Manage Inventory Organization Locations** on the Search page.
3. Click **Create** in the results table.
4. Enter mandatory fields and select **Inventory Organization** in the Drop Down list.
5. Click **Submit**.

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area as part of the Enterprise Contracts offering in the Enterprise Contracts Base functional area.
For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.
- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.
- Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.

### Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

1. **Specify a global business unit**
   
   You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the **Global Business Unit** option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved content from that global business unit. If the **Global Business Unit** option is not available for the business unit you are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.

2. **Enable automatic adoption**
   
   If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the **Autoadopt Global Clauses** option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.

3. **Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption**
   
   You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit. The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator’s Terms Library work area.

4. **Adopt global clauses for new business unit**
   
   If you are creating a new local business unit and have to adopt existing global clauses, run the Adopt Global Clauses for a New Business Unit process. Refer to the Enterprise Scheduler processes topic for more information.

### Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the **Clause Numbering** field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.

You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the **Display Clause Number in Clause Title** option.

### Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the **Enable Contract Expert** option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.
Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

- The printed contract terms
  - Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the **Clause Layout Template** field.
- The contract deviations report
  - The RTF file you select as the **Deviations Layout Template** determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.

**Related Topics**

- How Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library
- How Contract Expert Works
- Contract Printing and Layout Templates

Define Workforce Structures: Manage Locations

Locations

A location identifies physical addresses of a workforce structure, such as a department or a job. You create and manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

You can also create locations to enter the addresses of external organizations that you want to maintain, such as employment agencies, tax authorities, and insurance or benefits carriers.

The locations that you create exist as separate structures that you can use for reporting purposes, and in rules that determine employee eligibility for various types of compensation and benefits. You enter information about a location only once. Subsequently, when you set up other workforce structures you select the location from a list.

Location Sets

When you create a location, you must associate it with a set. Only those users who have access to the set’s business unit can access the location set and other associated workforce structure sets, such as those that contain departments and jobs.

Note the following:

- You can also associate the location to the common set so that users across your enterprise can access the location irrespective of their business unit.
- When users search for locations, they can see the locations that they have access to along with the locations in the common set.
The following figure shows how locations sets restrict access to users.

Uploading Locations Using a Spreadsheet
If you have a list of locations already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet.

To use this option:
- Download a spreadsheet template
- Add your location information to the spreadsheet
- Upload directly to your enterprise configuration

You can upload the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

Related Topics
- Uploading Workforce Structures Using a Spreadsheet: Explained

Define Workforce Structures: FAQs for Manage Locations

Why can't I see my location in the search results?
You can search for approved locations only. Also, if you created a location in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Model, then you can’t access that location from Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources. For use in Oracle Fusion HCM, you must recreate the location from the Manage Locations page.
How can I associate a location with an inventory organization?
From the Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources, go to the Manage Locations page. Use the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.
To appear on the Create or Edit Location pages, your inventory organization must be effective on today’s date and must exist in the location set that you selected.

What happens if I select an inventory organization when I am creating or editing a location?
The location is available for selection in purchase documents of that inventory organization in Oracle Fusion Inventory Management. If you don’t select an inventory organization, then the location is available in purchase documents across all inventory organizations.

What happens if I select a geographic hierarchy node when I create or edit a location?
The calendar events that you created for the geographic node start to apply for the location and may impact the availability of worker assignments at that location. You manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.
The geographical hierarchy nodes available for selection on the Locations page display from a predefined geographic hierarchy.

Related Topics
• How an Employee's Schedule Is Determined

What happens if I inactivate a location?
Starting from the effective date that you entered, you can no longer associate the location with other workforce structures, assignments, or applications. If the location is already in use, it will continue to be available to the components that currently use it.

Define Workforce Structures: Manage Divisions

Divisions
Managing multiple businesses requires that you segregate them by their strategic objectives and measure their results.
Responsibility to reach objectives can be delegated along the management structure. Although related to your legal structure, the business organizational hierarchies do not reflect directly the legal structure of the enterprise. The management entities and structure can include:
• Divisions and subdivisions
• Lines of business
• Other strategic business units
• Their own revenue and cost centers

These organizations can be included in many alternative hierarchies and used for reporting, as long as they have representation in the chart of accounts.
Divisions
A division refers to a business-oriented subdivision within an enterprise, in which each division organizes itself differently to deliver products and services or address different markets. A division can operate in one or more countries, and can be many companies or parts of different companies that are represented by business units.

A division is a profit center or grouping of profit and cost centers, where the division manager is responsible for achieving business goals including profits. A division can be responsible for a share of the company’s existing product lines or for a separate business. Managers of divisions may also have return on investment goals requiring tracking of the assets and liabilities of the division. The division manager generally reports to a corporate executive.

By definition a division can be represented in the chart of accounts. Companies can use product lines, brands, or geographies as their divisions: their choice represents the primary organizing principle of the enterprise.

Historically, divisions were implemented as a node in a hierarchy of segment values. For example, Oracle E-Business Suite has only one balancing segment, and often the division and legal entity are combined into a single segment where each value stands for both division and legal entity.

Use of Divisions in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM)
Divisions are used in HCM to define the management organization hierarchy, using the generic organization hierarchy. This hierarchy can be used to create organization-based security profiles.

Example of Adding a New Division After Acquiring a Company
This example describes how you can restructure your enterprise after acquiring a new division.

Scenario
You are part of a senior management team at InFusion Corporation. InFusion is a global company with organizations in the following countries:

- United States (US)
- United Kingdom (UK)
- France
- China
- Saudi Arabia
- United Arab Emirates (UAE)

The company’s main area of business is in the high tech industry, and it recently acquired a new company. You must analyze the company’s current enterprise structure and determine the new organizations to create in the new company.

Details of the Acquired Company
The acquired company is a Financial Services business based in Germany. The Financial Services business differs significantly from the high tech business. Therefore, you want to keep the Financial Services company as a separate business with all the costs and reporting managed by the Financial Services division.

Analysis
The following table summarizes the key decisions that you must consider when determining what new organizations to set up and how to structure the enterprise.
Decision to Consider | In This Example
--- | ---
Create location? | The Financial Services company and its departments are based in Frankfurt. Therefore, you only have to create one location.

Create separate division? | Yes. Although the new division will exist in the current enterprise structure, you want to keep the Financial Services company as a separate line of business. By creating a separate division, you can manage the costs and reporting separately from the InFusion Corporation. Additionally you don’t have to modify any organizations in the enterprise setup.

Create business unit? | Yes. The Financial Services business requires you to create several jobs that don’t exist in your high tech business. You can segregate the jobs that are specific to financial services in a new business unit.

How many departments? | The Financial Services company currently has departments for sales, accounting, and marketing. As you have no plans to downsize or change the company, you can create three departments to retain the structure.

How many cost centers? | Although you can have multiple cost centers to track the department costs, you decide to create one cost center for each department.

How many legal entities? | Define a legal entity for each registered company or some other entity recognized by law. Using the legal entity, you can:
- Record assets
- Record liabilities
- Record income
- Pay transaction taxes
- Perform intercompany trading

In this case, you only need one legal entity.

You must define the legal entity as a legal employer and payroll statutory unit. As the new division operates only from Germany, you can configure the legal entity to suit Germany’s legal and statutory requirements.

**Note:** You can identify the legal entity as a payroll statutory unit. When you do so, the application transfers the legal reporting unit associated with the legal entity to Oracle Fusion HCM as a tax reporting unit.

Create legislative data group? | Yes. Because you currently don’t employ or pay people in Germany, you must create one legislative data group to run payroll for the workers in Germany.

Resulting InFusion Enterprise Structure

Based on the analysis, you must create the following:

- One new division
- One new location
- Three new departments
- Three new cost centers
- One new legal entity
- One new legislative data group

The following figure illustrates the structure of InFusion Corporation after adding the new division and the other organizations.

Define Workforce Structures: Manage Departments

Cost Centers and Departments

The two important components to be considered in designing your enterprise structure are cost centers and departments.
A cost center represents the smallest segment of an organization for which you collect and report costs. A department is an organization with one or more operational objectives or responsibilities that exist independently of its manager and has one or more workers assigned to it.

**Cost Centers**

A cost center represents the destination or function of an expense rather than the nature of the expense which is represented by the natural account. For example, a sales cost center indicates that the expense goes to the sales department.

A cost center is generally attached to a single legal entity. To identify the cost centers within a chart of accounts structure use one of these two methods:

- Assign a cost center value in the value set for each cost center. For example, assign cost center values of PL04 and G3J1 to your manufacturing teams in the US and India. These unique cost center values allow easy aggregation of cost centers in hierarchies (trees) even if the cost centers are in different ledgers. However, this approach requires defining more cost center values.

- Assign a balancing segment value with a standardized cost center value to create a combination of segment values to represent the cost center. For example, assign the balancing segment values of 001 and 013 with cost center PL04 to represent your manufacturing teams in the US and India. This creates 001-PL04 and 013-PL04 as the cost center reporting values. The cost center value of PL04 has a consistent meaning. This method requires fewer cost center values to be defined. However, it prevents construction of cost center hierarchies using trees where only cost center values are used to report results for a single legal entity. You must specify a balancing segment value in combination with the cost center values to report on a single legal entity.

**Departments**

A department is an organization with one or more operational objectives or responsibilities that exist independently of its manager. For example, although the manager may change, the objectives do not change. Departments have one or more workers assigned to them.

A manager of a department is typically responsible for:

- Controlling costs within their budget
- Tracking assets used by their department
- Managing employees, their assignments, and compensation

The manager of a sales department may also be responsible for meeting the revenue targets.

The financial performance of departments is generally tracked through one or more cost centers. In Oracle Fusion Applications, departments are defined and classified as Department organizations. Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM) assigns workers to departments, and tracks the headcount at the departmental level.

The granularity of cost centers and their relationship to departments varies across implementations. Cost center and department configuration may be unrelated, identical, or consist of many cost centers tracking the costs of one department.

**Department Classifications**

A department can be classified as a project organization, sales and marketing organization, or cost organization.

Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM) uses trees to model organization hierarchies. It provides predefined tree structures for department and other organizational hierarchies that can include organizations with any classification.
Project Organization
Classify departments as a project owning organization to enable associating them with projects or tasks. The project association is one of the key drivers for project access security.

In addition, you must classify departments as project expenditure organizations to enable associating them to project expenditure items. Both project owning organizations and project expenditure organizations can be used by Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting to derive accounts for posting Oracle Fusion Projects accounting entries to Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

Sales and Marketing Organization
In sales applications, you can define sales and marketing organizations. Sales organization hierarchies are used to report and forecast sales results. Salespeople are defined as resources assigned to these organizations.

In some enterprises, the HCM departments and hierarchies correspond to sales organizations and hierarchies. Examining the decision on how to model sales hierarchies in relationship to department hierarchies when implementing Customer Relationship Management to eliminate any possible redundancy in the definition of the organizations is important.

The following figure illustrates a management hierarchy, in which the System Components Division tracks its expenses in two cost centers, Air Compressors and Air Transmission. At the department level, two organizations with a classification of Department are defined, the Marketing Department and Sales Department. These two departments can be also identified as a Resource Organizations, which enable assigning resources, such as salespeople, and other sales specific information to them. Each department is represented in the chart of accounts by more than one cost center, enabling granular as well as hierarchical reporting.
Cost Organization
Oracle Fusion Costing uses a cost organization to represent a single physical inventory facility or group of inventory storage centers, for example, inventory organizations. This cost organization can roll up to a manager with responsibility for the cost center in the financial reports.

A cost organization can represent a costing department. Consider this relationship when determining the setup of departments in HCM. No system dependencies are required for these two entities, cost organization and costing department, to be set up in the same way.

Define Workforce Structures: FAQs for Manage Job Families

What's the difference between a job set and a job family?

A job family is a group of jobs that have different but related functions, qualifications, and titles. They are beneficial for reporting. You can define competencies for job families by associating them with model profiles.

A job set is an organizational partition of jobs. For example, a job set can include global jobs for use in all business units, or jobs for a specific country or line of business. When you select a job for a position or an assignment, you can view the available jobs in your business unit set and the common set.

Related Topics
- What's a job set

Define Workforce Structures: Manage Job

Jobs

Jobs are typically used without positions by service industries where flexibility and organizational change are key features. As part of your initial implementation, you specify whether to use jobs and positions, or only jobs.

Basic Details

Basic details for a job include an effective start date, a job set, a name, and a code.

A job code must be unique within a set. Therefore, you can create a job with the code DEV01 in the US set and another job with the same code in the UK set. However, if you create a job with the code DEV01 in the Common set, then you can't create a job with the same code in any other set.

Benchmark Information

You can identify a job as being a benchmark job. A benchmark job represents other jobs in reports and salary surveys. You can also select the benchmark for jobs. Benchmark details are for informational purposes only.
Progression Information
A progression job is the next job in a career ladder. Progression jobs enable you to create a hierarchy of jobs and are used to provide the list of values for the Job field in the Promote Worker and Transfer Worker tasks.

The list of values includes the next three jobs in the progression job hierarchy. For example, assume that you create a job called Junior Developer and select Developer as the progression job. In the Developer job, you select Senior Developer as the progression job. When you promote a junior developer, the list of values for the new job will include Developer and Senior Developer. You can select one of these values, or select another one.

Jobs and Grades
You can assign grades that are valid for each job. If you’re using positions, then the grades that you specify for the job become the default grades for the position.

Evaluation Criteria
You can define evaluation criteria for a job, including the evaluation system, a date, and the unit of measure for the evaluation system. The Hay system is the predefined evaluation system that’s available. An additional value of Custom is included in the list of values for the Evaluation System field, but you must add your own criteria and values for this system.

Uploading Jobs Using a Spreadsheet
If you have a list of jobs already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet.

To use this option:
1. Download a spreadsheet template.
2. Add your job information to the spreadsheet.
3. Upload directly to your enterprise configuration.

You can upload the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

Related Topics
- Job and Position Lookups
- Guidelines for Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks
- Considerations for Enforcing Grades at Assignment Level

Examples of Jobs
Jobs are typically used without positions by service industries where flexibility and organizational change are key features.

Software Industry
For example, XYZ Corporation has a director over the departments for developers, quality assurance, and technical writers.

- Recently, three developers have resigned from the company.
- The director decides to redirect the headcount to other areas.
- Instead of hiring all three back into development, one person is hired to each department, quality assurance, and technical writing.
In software industries, the organization is fluid. Using jobs gives an enterprise the flexibility to determine where to use headcount, because the job only exists through the person performing it. In this example, when the three developers leave XYZ Corporation, their jobs no longer exist, therefore the corporation has the flexibility to move the headcount to other areas. This figure illustrates the software industry job setup.

### Define Facilities: Manage Facility Shifts, Workday Patterns, and Schedules

### Schedule Components: How They Fit Together

Schedules are comprised of workday patterns and exceptions. Workday patterns are comprised of shifts. You can also create exceptions, nonworking days, to the schedules.
Begin by creating shifts and then assigning those shifts to workday patterns. Next, create a schedule that is a collection of workday patterns and any exception dates.

**Shift**

A shift is a period of time, typically expressed in hours, and it can be defined by a start time and an end time, or a duration. A shift can be for a work period or an off period. You can create time, duration, and elapsed shifts.
Workday Pattern
A workday pattern is a collection of shifts for a specific number of days. You can create time, duration, and elapsed workday patterns.

Exception
An exception is a record of a date that overrides the availability of a resource to which a schedule has been assigned. For example, a resource is assigned a schedule that includes December 25 as a working day. An exception can be created for December 25 and applied to that schedule to override resource availability for that date. Exceptions can also be for a date time period such as 9 a.m. to 11 a.m. on December 25th.

Schedule
A schedule is defined by a start date, an end date, and a sequence of workday patterns to be followed between those dates. A schedule can also contain exception dates that override the availability of resources to which the schedule is assigned. Quarter types such as 4-4-5, 4-5-4 are supported.

Managing Shifts: Examples
A shift is a period of time, typically expressed in hours, that is used to build workday patterns. Workday patterns are used to build schedules. You should model only the dates you need because you can always extend the end date. This allows for smaller volumes of initial data and improved performance. There are multiple types of shifts you can create. The following scenarios illustrate each type.

Managing Time Shifts
Next month you are adding a second shift for your manufacturing operations. This new shift will start just after your regular first shift. You can create a time shift that starts at 4:00 p.m. and ends at 12:00 a.m. There are restrictions in updating existing shifts and patterns. Shifts and patterns cannot be updated if the change affects a schedule, that is they are associated to a schedule. If a shift is created but not assigned to a pattern (or assigned to a pattern but the pattern is not assigned to a schedule) it can be updated. If a pattern is created and not assigned to a schedule it can be updated.

Managing Time Shifts with Punch Details
Your division has decided that the employees in the office must clock in and out for lunch starting next week. All employees will take the same lunch hour. Add punch shift details to the existing shift so that employees punch in at 8:00 a.m.; they punch out for lunch from 11:30 a.m. to 12:30 p.m.; they punch back in at 12:30 p.m.; and they punch out for the day at 5:00 p.m.

Managing Time Shifts with Flexible Details
Jorge Sanchez is a contractor who is starting work in your department next week. His hours will be flexible, so you need to create a new time shift with flexible details that he can use to record his time. He will have a flexible start time from 7:00 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. and a flexible end time from 4:00 p.m. to 6:00 p.m. His core work hours will be from 9:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m.

Managing Duration Shifts
One of the divisions in your organization does not use fixed start and end times for its daily shifts; the division only records the total duration of the shift and indicates if resources are available or not during that time. All of the employees in the division are available for 24 hours straight, and then they are not available for the next 24 hours. You should create a duration shift that
indicates that resources are available for 24 hours, and create a second duration shift that indicates that resources are not available for 24 hours.

Managing Elapsed Shifts

The employees in the Human Resources department all work 8 hours a day, but the start and end times vary by employee. Some employees start at as early as 6:00 a.m., while others don’t start until 9:00 a.m. Create an elapsed shift with a duration of 8 hours, where all employees are assumed to be available for the number of hours in the shift at any time during the day.

Managing Workday Patterns: Examples

A workday pattern is a collection of shifts for a specific number of days. There are multiple types of workday patterns you can create. The following scenarios illustrate each type.

Managing Time Workday Patterns

Your department works a Monday through Friday workweek with 8 hour shifts each day. Time patterns always have time shifts. That is, the shift will have start time and end time. You can create a time workday pattern with a length of 7 days and details of an 8 hour time shift for days 1 through 5. Days 6 and 7 are considered nonworking days.

Managing Duration Workday Patterns

A new group of employees starts next month, and each employee will work a schedule where he or she is available for 10 hours, and then not available for the next 16 hours, and then available for 10 hours again, and so on. This pattern starts on midnight of the first day of the next month. Create a duration workday pattern with a 10-hour available duration shift, followed by a 16-hour not available duration shift. Do not specify the pattern length or start and end days, and the pattern will repeat for the length of the schedule to which it is associated.

Managing Elapsed Workday Patterns

In the summer, several divisions in your organization work only 4 hours on Fridays. They work extended hours on Wednesdays and Thursdays to cover the 4 hours they will not work on Fridays. Create an elapsed workday pattern with a length of 7 days. Days 1 and 2 will have an 8-hour shift assigned, while days 3 and 4 will have a 10-hour shift assigned. Finally, day 5 will have a 4-hour shift assigned. As in the time workday pattern, days 6 and 7 are considered nonworking days.

Define Facilities: Manage Inventory Organizations

Inventory Organizations: Explained

An inventory organization is a logical or physical entity in the enterprise that is used to store definitions of items or store and transact items.

You select the following usages in the inventory organization’s properties:

- Item management
- Item and inventory management
Item Management

Inventory organizations used for item management, which are the same as item organizations, store only definitions of items. Use inventory organizations for item management when the storage or movement of inventory does not need to be physically or financially tracked. For example, in a retail implementation you can create an inventory organization for item management to store the names of items that are listed by and sold through each retail outlet, while a different system tracks physical inventory and transactions. If it is necessary in the future, you can change an inventory organization’s usage from item management to item and inventory management in the inventory organization’s properties.

Item and Inventory Management

Inventory organizations used for item and inventory management store and transact items, in addition to item definitions. An inventory organization used for item and inventory management is associated with one business unit, one legal entity, and one primary ledger. Use inventory organizations for item and inventory management when the storage or movement of inventory needs to be physically and financially tracked. Inventory organizations used for item and inventory management can represent facilities such as manufacturing centers, warehouses, or distribution centers. You cannot change an inventory organization’s use from item and inventory management to item management.

Guidelines for Using Inventory Organization

In Oracle Fusion, storage facilities, warehouses, and distribution centers are implemented as inventory organizations.

Inventory organizations are:

- Managed by a business unit, with the materials management business function enabled.
- Mapped to a legal entity and a primary ledger.

Two types of inventory organizations exist.

- Manufacturing facilities
- Storage facilities

Storage and manufacturing facilities are related to other organizational entities through a business unit that stores, manufactures, and distributes goods through many factories, warehouses, and distribution centers. The material parameters are set for both the facilities, enabling movement of material in the organization. This business unit has the business function of Materials Management enabled. Oracle Fusion Applications permit many inventory organizations to be assigned to one business unit.

Distribution Center as an Inventory Organization

A distribution center can store inventory that is the responsibility of different business units. In this situation, assign an inventory organization to each business unit as a representation of the inventory in the distribution center. The multiple inventory organizations representing the inventory are defined with the same location to show that they are a part of the same distribution center.
In the following figure the two business units, Air Compressors and Air Transmission, share one distribution center in Atlanta. The two inventory organizations, Air Compressors and Air Transmission represent the inventory for each business unit in the Atlanta distribution center and are both assigned the Atlanta location.

**Legal Entities Own Inventory Organizations**

A legal entity owns the inventory located in a storage or manufacturing facility. This ownership is assigned through the relationship of the inventory organization representing the inventory and the legal entity assigned to the inventory organization. The legal entity assigned to the inventory organization shares the same primary ledger as the inventory organization’s business unit.

The inventory is tracked in the inventory organization owned by the legal entity of which the business unit is part. All transactions are accounted for in the primary ledger of the legal entity that owns the inventory.
This figure illustrates the inventory owned by InFusion Air Quality legal entity. The InFusion Air Quality legal entity is associated with the Air Compressors business unit, which is associated with the two Air Compressors inventory organizations. Therefore, InFusion Air Quality legal entity owns the entire inventory in both the Dallas and Atlanta locations.

The default legal entity assigned to the business unit must be the same as the legal entity assigned to the inventory organization.

Facility Schedules Are Associated with Inventory Organizations
A prerequisite to defining an inventory organization is to define a facility schedule. Oracle Fusion Applications permit you to associate an inventory organization with a schedule.

Facility schedules permit creating workday calendars for inventory organizations that are used in the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain Management product family. For example, use workday calendars in the scheduling of cycle counts and calculating transit time.

Inventory Organization Prerequisites: Points to Consider
You can create a new inventory organization, or select an existing organization to define as an inventory organization.

Before creating inventory organizations:
- Set up inventory organization dependencies
- Plan inventory organization parameters

Setting Up Inventory Organization Dependencies
When you create an inventory organization, you must associate it to dependencies, such as business units and legal entities. For this reason, create these dependencies before creating an inventory organization.

Planning Inventory Organization Parameters
Before creating an inventory organization, plan the inventory organization’s parameters

Consider the following when planning to configure an inventory organization’s parameters
- Which schedule to use
• Which inventory organization to serve as the item master organization
• Whether to configure locator control and if so, the level at which to enforce the locator control
• How you want to configure movement request settings such as pick slip batch size and replenishment movement request grouping

Consider the size of your operation, your usage of subinventories, and the type of labor or equipment required when considering whether you want to use organization- or subinventory-level replenishment movement request grouping.

• How you want to configure lot, serial, and packing unit generation settings

To make appropriate choices for these settings, you should be familiar with:

  o Your company's guidelines for creating lot names, serial numbers, and packing unit numbers
  o Whether your company requires you to assign the same lot number to multiple items in the same organization, or a specific lot number to only one item in the same organization
  o Whether your company requires you to place purchase order or shipping order material under lot control

• How you want to configure item sourcing details, such as the picking rule to use, and whether to specify the inventory organization as a logistics services organization

### Rounding the Reorder Quantity: How It Affects Min-Max Planning Reorder Calculations

When you specify to round reorder quantities, min-max planning reorders for item subinventories are automatically rounded up or down.

#### Settings That Affect Rounding the Reorder Quantity

Reorder quantities for an item subinventory are calculated based on:

  • The setting that you select for the **Round Order Quantity** parameter on the Manage Inventory Organization Parameters page, General tab, of the inventory organization containing the item subinventory
  • The value that you specify for the **Fixed Lot Multiple** text box on the Add Item to Subinventory window

#### How Rounding the Reorder Quantity Affects Min-Max Planning Reorder Quantity Calculations

If you enable rounding the reorder quantity for the inventory organization, and specify the fixed lot multiple for the item subinventory, the reorder quantity is rounded up. If you disable rounding the reorder quantity for the inventory organization, and specify the fixed lot multiple for the item subinventory, the reorder quantity is rounded down.

**Note:** To round reorder quantities, you must specify a fixed lot multiple.

#### Example: Rounding the Reorder Quantity

Assume that the reorder quantity is 24. If you enable rounding the reorder quantity and specify 10 for the fixed lot multiple, the reorder quantity is rounded up to 30. If you disable rounding the reorder quantity and keep the fixed lot multiple at 10, the reorder quantity is rounded down to 20.
Selecting Lot Number Uniqueness Control: Critical Choices

Select one of the following lot number uniqueness control options to apply to the items in your inventory organization:

- No uniqueness control
- Across items

No Uniqueness Control

You can assign the same lot number to multiple items in the same inventory organization and across inventory organizations. The following table provides an example of how lot numbers are generated when uniqueness control is not applied, both within and across inventory organizations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Within Inventory Organization</th>
<th>Across Inventory Organizations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100</td>
<td>Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN100</td>
<td>Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Across Items

You can only assign a unique lot number to a single item in one inventory organization. If the same item is also in a different inventory organization, you must assign that item a unique lot number. The following table provides an example of how lot numbers are generated when uniqueness control is applied across items, both within and across inventory organizations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Within Inventory Organization</th>
<th>Across Inventory Organizations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100</td>
<td>Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN200</td>
<td>Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FAQs for Manage Inventory Organizations

What happens if I select the Supplier item sourcing type for replenishment?
Items are replenished from an external supplier.

What happens if I create an inventory organization as a logistics services organization?
The inventory organization is not costed, and shipment lines from different logistics service provider customers cannot be packed in the same packing unit.
Define Facilities: Manage Item Organizations

Item Organizations

An item organization defines an item when inventory balances are not stored and inventory storage or inventory movement is not reflected in the Oracle Fusion Applications. For example, you would use an item organization in a retail scenario, if you need to know the items that are listed by and sold through each retail outlet even though inventory and transactions are recorded in another system. In sales applications, item organizations are used to define sales catalogs.

- **Note:**
  - Items belong to an item organization.
  - Item attributes that are associated with financial and accounting information are hidden from the item if it exists within the item organization.
  - Item organizations can be changed by administrators to an inventory organization by updating the necessary attributes. There is no difference in the way items are treated in these two types of organizations except that there cannot be any financial transactions in the downstream applications for items that are assigned to an item organization.

Item Master Organizations

An item master organization lists and describes items that are shared across several inventory organizations or item organizations.
The following example shows the choice between inventory organizations that track inventory transactions, stored in two warehouses, and item organizations that just track items, listed in two sales catalogs.

For the most efficient processing, you should:

- Have a single item master.
- Include an item and its definition of form, fit, and function only once in the item master.
- Separate the item master organization from organizations that store and transact items.

**Note:** Oracle Fusion permits multiple item masters, however, use this capability cautiously. If you acquire a company, there may be value in keeping the old item master for a transition period. If you manage your subsidiaries as separate businesses, there may be reduced value in a single item master.
7 Define Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting

Defining the Funds Reservation Point for Purchasing Documents: Explained

You can use budgetary controls to select the point in time at which funds are reserved for requisitions and purchase orders. Enable funds to be reserved at document submission or upon completion of approvals.

To set up the funds reservation point for requisitions and purchase orders, use the Manage Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting page. Find the page from the Setup and Maintenance work area, Financials offering, Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting functional area, Manage Budgetary Control task.

You define the funds reservation point for documents at the business unit level. In the Procure-to-Pay Business Functions section, you can set the reservation point for the Requisitioning and Procurement business functions. For a business function, set the reservation point to one of these options:

- Submission: Funds reservation is done at document submit.
- Approval: Funds reservation is done at the completion of document approval.

Defining Funds Override Rules for a Control Budget: Explained

You can use budgetary controls to define insufficient funds override rules and approvers for purchasing transactions in requisitions and purchase orders.

To set up funds override rules for a control budget, use the Manage Control Budgets page. Find the page in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Financials offering, Budgetary Control and Encumbrance Accounting functional area, Manage Control Budgets task. Use the page to define funds override rules for your organization's control budgets that apply to requisitions and purchase orders. When implementing a control budget, you must decide whether to allow insufficient funds override for purchasing transactions.

The following are key attributes to define when you set up a control budget to allow insufficient funds override:

- Allow overrides: Select this option to enable funds override for the control budget.
- Maximum Override Amount: Enter the maximum total override amount for the control budget.
  - You can also select options to notify the budget manager when overrides are taken, or when no overrides are available.
- User Assignments: Add a line to the table for each override approver, and enter their user name.
- Type: For the override type for the approver, select Insufficient Funds. For requisitions and purchase orders only the Insufficient Funds value is supported.
• **Amount:** Enter an override authorization amount for the approver. The amount is compared against the override amount required by each distribution, rather than for the whole purchasing document. The amount is used to select the override rule and approver used for a particular transaction.

• **Transaction Type:** Select the transaction types the approver has funds override authority for. For example: Requisition, or Purchase Order.

**Related Topics**

• How You Manage Funds Override Approval Rules for Requisitions and Purchase Orders
8 Define Security for Procurement

Overview of Security

Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning Cloud (Oracle ERP Cloud) and Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud (Oracle SCM Cloud) are secure as delivered; they limit access to one initial setup user. To enable application users to access application functions and data, you perform tasks in these task lists, as appropriate:

- Define Security for Financials
- Define Security for Procurement
- Define Users and Security for Product Management
- Define Security for Project Execution Management
- Manage Data Access for Users
- Define Security for Supply Chain Management

This topic introduces the tasks in these task lists. For more information on ERP and SCM security setup and task instructions, see these guides:


>Note: You can perform most tasks in these task lists both during implementation, and later as requirements emerge.

Manage Job Roles

The Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud security reference implementations provide many predefined job roles. You can perform the Manage Job Roles task to:

- Review the role hierarchy and other properties of a job or abstract role.
- Create custom job and abstract roles.
- View the roles assigned to a user.
- View the users who have a specific role.

A user with the IT Security Manager or Application Implementation Consultant job role performs the Manage Job Roles task.

Manage Duties

The Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud security reference implementations provide many predefined duty roles. You can perform the Manage Duties task to:

- Review the duties of a job or abstract role.
- Manage the duties of a custom job or abstract role.
• Create custom duty roles.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Duties task.

Define Data Security

You can manage Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud application data by performing tasks in these task lists:

• Define Data Security for Financials
• Define Data Security for Procurement
• Define Data Security for Product Management
• Define Data Security for Project Financial Management
• Define Data Security for Supply Chain Management

You can perform the tasks in these task lists to:

• Manage data access sets that secure ledgers.
• Manage Human Capital Management (HCM) security profiles that facilitate data role assignment for application users.
• Manage data security policies that determine grants of entitlement to a user or role on an object or attribute group.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the tasks in the Define Data Security task lists.

Manage Role Provisioning Rules

You create role mappings to control the provisioning of all types of roles to application users by performing this task. For example, you can create a role mapping to provision the Accounts Payable Specialist role automatically to users that meet criteria specific to accounts payable users.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Role Provisioning Rules task.

Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

You can determine which business objects in Oracle ERP Cloud are available for social collaboration by performing this task. For example, use this task to enable discussion among Oracle Social Network users about requisitions, purchase orders, invoices, payments, receipts, and other transactions.

A user with the IT Security Manager or Application Implementation Consultant job role performs the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task.

📝 Note: You can perform this task after you set up and configure Oracle Social Network. If you do not use Oracle Social Network, you can skip this task.
Access for Workflow Administrators

Predefined roles provide workflow administration access for specific product families. These roles are assigned by default to predefined job roles. Administrators with these roles can, for example, set up approval rules and manage submitted approval tasks for corresponding product families. One predefined role gives access for all families and isn’t assigned by default to any predefined job role.

Predefined Roles

This table lists the predefined roles for workflow administration access and the predefined job roles that they’re assigned to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product Family</th>
<th>Role Name</th>
<th>Role Code</th>
<th>Predefined Job Roles Assigned To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>BPM Workflow All Domains Administrator Role</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowAllDomainsAdmin</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financials</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Financials Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowFINAdmin</td>
<td>Financial Application Administrator (ORA_FUN_FINANCIAL_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher Education</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Higher Education Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowHEDAdmin</td>
<td>Higher Education Application Administrator (ORA_HEY_HIGHER_EDUCATION_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Capital Management</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Human Capital Management</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowHCMAdmin</td>
<td>Human Capital Management Application Administrator (ORA_HRC_HUMAN_CAPITAL_MANAGEMENT_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incentive Compensation</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Incentive Compensation Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowOICAdmin</td>
<td>Customer Relationship Management Application Administrator (ORA_ZCA_CUSTOMER_RELATIONSHIP_MANAGEMENT_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Incentive Compensation Application Administrator (ORA_CN_INCENTIVE_COMPENSATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Procurement Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowPRCAdmin</td>
<td>Procurement Application Administrator (ORA_PO_PROCUREMENT_APPLICATION_ADMIN_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Family</td>
<td>Role Name</td>
<td>Role Code</td>
<td>Predefined Job Roles Assigned To</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Portfolio Management</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Project Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowPRJAdmin</td>
<td>Project Application Administrator (ORA_ PJF_PROJECTS_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Customer Relationship Management Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowCRMAadmin</td>
<td>Corporate Marketing Manager (ORA_ MKT_CORPORATE_MARKETING_MANAGER_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Customer Relationship Management Application Administrator (ORA_ ZCA_CUSTOMER_RELATIONSHIP_MANAGEMENT_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marketing Analyst (ORA_ MKT_MARKETING_ANALYST_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marketing Manager (ORA_ MKT_MARKETING_MANAGER_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marketing Operations Manager (ORA_ MKT_MARKETING_OPERATIONS_MANAGER_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Marketing VP (ORA_ MKT_MARKETING_VP_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sales Lead Qualifier (ORA_ MKL_SALES_LEAD_QUALIFIER_JOB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain Management</td>
<td>BPM Workflow Supply Chain Administrator</td>
<td>BPMWorkflowSCMAadmin</td>
<td>Supply Chain Application Administrator (ORA_RCS_SUPPLY_CHAIN_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage of the Roles

If your administrators manage workflow for more than one product family, then you or your security administrator can add the appropriate family-specific roles to custom roles for those users. If your administrators manage workflow for all product families, then add BPM Workflow All Domains Administrator Role to a custom role for those users.

**Note:**
- Assign BPM Workflow All Domains Administrator Role only if your administrators truly need access for all product families. For multiple product families, but not all, assign instead the roles for the corresponding families.
- To-do tasks are visible to all administrators no matter which role they have for workflow administration access.
Related Topics

- Edit Job and Abstract Roles
- Role Copying or Editing
9 Define Approval Management for Procurement

Overview of Approval Management

Use approval management to define policies that apply to approval workflows. For example, to reflect your own corporate policies, you can specify levels of approval for transactions over a particular amount and determine how the approvals are routed.

Approval management:

- Controls workflows for business objects such as expense reports.
- Enables you to define complex, multistage task routing rules.
- Integrates with the setup in Human Capital Management (HCM) to derive approvers based on the supervisory hierarchy.

To define approval management:

- In the Offerings work area, enable the Approval Routing Administration feature at the offering level so that relevant setup tasks are available.
- In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following setup tasks in the Application Extensions or another functional area.
  - Manage Task Configurations
  - Manage Approval Groups

Task Configuration

Manage rule sets and rules that control approval flows.

- To configure a predefined approval policy, select the predefined rule set and click the Edit Task icon.
- To disable a predefined rule set, select the Ignore participant check box for that rule set.
- To edit the rules within a predefined rule set, you can insert, update, or delete while in edit mode.
- You can configure a specific rule to automatically approve a task without sending it to any approver.
  - Modify the routing for that rule so that it is sent to the initiator (which means the requestor is the approver).
  - Set the Auto Action Enabled option to True.
  - Enter APPROVE in the Auto Action field.

Approval Groups

Each approval group includes a set of users that you configure to act on tasks in a certain pattern. Tasks can be defined to get routed to an approval group instead of an individual user.

- You can nest approval groups within approval groups.
You have two options for defining the group:
  - Static: Select the specific users to include in the group.
  - Dynamic: Provide the logic to use to determine the users in the group.

Related Topics
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Workflow Email Notification Setup

Define the Due Date and Expiration Policies for Workflow Tasks

For workflow tasks that should be completed within a general time frame, you can set a due date, expiration policies, or both. The current assignee will get notified before the due date to take action. Even after the due date passes, the task doesn’t expire and the assignee, as well as any subsequent approvers, can still act on it. But if you set expiration policies, the task can expire based on your settings. Expired tasks are in a final state and no one can make any more updates to them. To set due dates and expiration policies, use the Manage Task Configurations or other approval setup task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Overall Process
To set the due date, expiration policies, or both:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions or another functional area
   - Task: Manage Task Configurations or another approval setup task
2. In BPM Worklist, on the Task Configuration tab, select the workflow task to configure and click the Edit task icon in the Tasks to be configured toolbar.
3. Open the Deadlines subtab and make your changes.
4. Click the Commit task icon in the Tasks to be configured toolbar when you’re ready to deploy your changes.
Specify a Due Date

On the Deadlines subtab, specify the time frame that all approvers should complete the task in. For example, if you enter 14 days for the Due Date fields, that means the task is due 14 days after it’s created.

Indicate How Tasks Expire

Follow these steps:

1. On the Deadlines subtab, expand the Expiration Settings section.
2. Indicate how the task would expire, based on what’s not done during a specified time frame.
   
   - Task Level: If all approvals aren't done.
   - Assignee Level: If the assignee doesn’t act on the task.
Define Policies with Assignee Level Expiration

To set expiration policies, including any escalations or renewals, with Assignee Level selected:

1. In the Expiration Settings section of the Deadlines subtab, specify a duration and optionally select the **Exclude Saturday and Sunday** check box. For example, if you enter 30 days and select the check box, then:
   - For sequential routing, the task expires if the last assignee doesn’t act on the task within 30 weekdays after the task is routed to that assignee. If the first assignee doesn’t act in 30 weekdays, the task is passed to the next assignee, who gets another 30 weekdays. And so on, until the last assignee.
   - For parallel routing, the task expires if the current assignees don’t act on the task within 30 weekdays after the task is assigned.

2. If you want tasks to get escalated or renewed after they expire, select the **Escalate** or **Renew** option. Otherwise, leave the **Expire only** option selected.

3. To escalate, indicate how many times the approval escalates up the management chain. For example, you enter 2 in the **Maximum Escalation Levels** field. When the task expires:
   - For sequential routing, the task is routed to the manager (User 2) of the last assignee (User 1).
   - For parallel routing, the task is routed to the managers (User 2) of all current assignees (User 1).

   When User 2 doesn’t act within 30 weekdays, then the task is escalated to the manager of User 2, who has another 30 weekdays before the task goes into a final Expired status.

4. To renew, indicate how many times the task can get renewed. For example, you enter 2 in the **Maximum Renewals** field. When the task expires:
   - For sequential routing, the last assignee gets another 30 weekdays.
   - For parallel routing, the current assignees get another 30 weekdays.

Define Policies for Task Level Expiration

To set expiration policies, including any escalations or renewals, with Task Level selected:

1. In the Expiration Settings section of the Deadlines subtab, specify a duration and optionally select the **Exclude Saturday and Sunday** check box. For example, if you enter 30 days and select the check box, then the task expires if not all approvals are done 30 weekdays after the task is routed to the first assignee. If there are three assignees and the first two take 25 weekdays to act, then the last assignee only gets 5 weekdays.

2. If you want tasks to get escalated or renewed after they expire, select the **Escalate** or **Renew** option. Otherwise, leave the **Expire only** option selected.

3. To escalate, indicate how many times the approval escalates up the management chain. For example, you enter 2 in the **Maximum Escalation Levels** field and select **Director** in the **Highest Approver Title** field. When the task expires, it’s routed to the manager (User 2) of the current assignee (User 1). When User 2 doesn’t act within 30 weekdays, then:
   - If User 2 is not a director, the task is escalated to the manager of User 2, who has another 30 weekdays before the task goes into a final Expired status.
   - If User 2 is a director, then the task goes into a final Expired status.

4. To renew, indicate how many times the task can get renewed. For example, you enter 2 in the **Maximum Renewals** field. When the task expires, all pending assignees get another collective 30 weekdays to act. If they don’t all act within that period, then the task is renewed for another 30 weekdays. If the task still isn’t complete in that time, then it goes into a final Expired status.
Disable or Enable Workflow Notifications

When workflow tasks are assigned to users, they get notifications through email and the Notifications icon in the global header. Depending on setup, notifications can be sent through other channels also, such as instant messaging. Workflow tasks are managed in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area and configured in the Setup and Maintenance work area using the Manage Task Configurations or other approval setup task. If you have the BPM Workflow System Admin Role (BPMWorkflowAdmin) role, you can disable or enable these notifications for all users. For example, you can disable notifications during testing, to avoid sending test notifications to users, and then enable notifications when ready.

When you disable workflow notifications:

- The setting applies only to email notifications that are sent as part of workflow tasks, not to all emails in general.
- Users can still find their workflow tasks in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area.

Setting Notification Mode

To disable or enable workflow notifications:

1. Click the Notifications icon on the global header.
2. Click More Details.
3. In BPM Worklist, click your user name and select Administration.
4. On the Application Preferences page that’s on the Administration tab, select a value from the Notification Mode list:
   - All: Email and any other configured notification channels are enabled. Workflow notifications are included in the global header. This is the default value.
   - None: All notifications are disabled, including email and new workflow notifications in the global header.
   - Email: Only email notifications are enabled. New workflow notifications won’t appear in the global header, and any other configured notification channels are disabled.

   **Note:** If you or another administrator has selected news feed as the default home page layout, then users also get notifications in the Things to Finish section on the home page, as well as the Notifications page. The same mode setting that applies to the notifications in the global header also applies to the Things to Finish section and the Notifications page.

5. Click Save.

Synchronize Notifications in the Global Header with Workflow Tasks

When workflow tasks are assigned to users, they get an email as well as a notification in the global header. They can also find all of their workflow tasks in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area. The notifications in the global header don’t immediately reflect changes to the task status due to actions taken through email, the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area, or BPM Worklist. Use the Synchronize Notifications in Global Header scheduled process to update the notifications with the latest task statuses, which are always reflected in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area.
Note: If you or another administrator has selected news feed as the default home page layout, then users also get notifications in the Things to Finish section on the home page, as well as the Notifications page. The scheduled process also applies to notifications in these UIs. For example, the Things to Finish section automatically reflects changes made in the global header, but not changes made through email until the scheduled process runs.

Scheduling the Process
In the Scheduled Processes work area, submit the Synchronize Notifications in Global Header process with a defined schedule. For example, schedule the process to run every two hours.

Effects of the Synchronization
After the scheduled process runs, notifications in the global header might move from the Pending Notifications list to the All Notifications list. For example:

1. A notification is pending a user’s approval.
2. The user approves the task using the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area. The task status changes, but the notification in the global header is still in the Pending Notifications list.
3. After synchronization, the notification moves to the All Notifications list because the user has changed the task status to Approved, and the notification is no longer pending action.
   
   If the news feed home page layout is selected, then after synchronization, the notification:
   
   ◦ Is removed from the list in the global header
   ◦ Is no longer a card in the Things to Finish section
   ◦ Moves from the Assigned to Me tab on the Notifications page to the All tab

The scheduled process doesn’t update the title of notifications in the global header. Similar to email subjects, the notification titles are static.

Related Topics
• Submit Scheduled Processes and Process Sets

Overview of Setting Up Workflow Email Notifications

When enabled, as they are by default, email notifications are sent to appropriate users as part of a workflow process. Each workflow task has default email setup, for example, to send emails to assignees whenever they’re assigned a task. You don’t need to do anything for the email notifications to work. To adjust the predefined setup, you generally use the Manage Task Configurations or other approval setup task in the Setup and Maintenance Work Area.

Access to Email Notifications Setup
You do most of the setup for email notifications in the Notifications subtab for the specific workflow task that you’re configuring. All setup on the Notifications subtab applies to email notifications. A few settings also apply to workflow notifications that appear in the global header or are sent through any other configured channels, such as instant messaging.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   o Functional Area: Application Extensions or another functional area
   o Task: Manage Task Configurations or another approval setup task
2. In BPM Worklist, on the Task Configuration tab, select the workflow task to configure and click the **Edit task** icon in the **Tasks to be configured** toolbar.

3. Open the Notifications subtab and make your changes.

4. Click the **Commit task** icon in the **Tasks to be configured** toolbar when you’re ready to deploy your changes.

The following figure shows the Task Configuration tab, with the first task in the Tasks to be configured pane selected, the Edit task icon clicked, and the Notifications subtab open. In this example, the Task Status column indicates that email notifications are sent whenever the selected task is assigned to anyone, and when the task is complete or results in error.

---

**What You Can Set Up**

You can, for example:

- Define when email notifications are sent, and to whom
- Add content to email headers
- Define what appears in the From field for the emails
- Set an address to send all email notifications to during testing

You can click the **Expand More** icon on the Notifications subtab to open the More section and see other setup options for email notifications. In general, leave the default settings in this section for every workflow task. Settings in this section include the following check boxes, which, if selected, would:

- **Make notification secure (exclude details)**: Exclude business transaction details in email notifications.
- **Hide End User Web URL in notifications**: Remove the default first line in the email body: Access this task in the Workspace Application or take direct action using the links in this email. This line includes a link that opens BPM Worklist. It is recommended to select this check box.

- **Make notification actionable**: Include links in email notifications that users can click to directly take action, for example to approve or reject.

- **Send task attachments with email notifications**: Include files attached to the task as attachments in the email notifications.

**Define When to Send Workflow Email Notifications**

By default, each workflow task is set up to send email notifications as part of the approval process. For any workflow task, you can change the setup to determine when email notifications are sent, and to whom.

**Setting Up Notification Scenarios**

To define the scenarios for sending email notifications:

1. Navigate to the Notifications subtab in BPM Worklist for the task you want to edit.
2. Click the Add Notification icon to enable additional notification scenarios, or edit existing rows directly.
   a. In the **Task Status** column, select when to send the email, for example when the task has expired. Aside from the actions or statuses available to end users, you can also select any of the following:
      - **Alerted**: Usually, an error condition that can be fixed. The task is assigned to the error assignee, or someone else if the task doesn’t have error assignees.
      - **Update**: Whenever the task is updated, for example by adding a comment or attachment, without affecting the approval status or routing.
      - **Update Outcome**: Whenever the outcome of the task is updated, for example approved or rejected.
      - **All other actions**: Any action that’s not already in the list of values.
   b. In the **Recipient** column, select whom to send the email to.
      - **Assignees**: The users or groups whom the task is currently assigned to.
      - **Initiator**: The user who created the task.
      - **Approvers**: The users who already approved the task as part of a sequential approval chain.
      - **Owner**: The task owner, who is responsible for the business process that the task is related to.
      - **Reviewer**: The user who can only add comments and attachments to a task.
3. To disable specific notification scenarios, select a row and click the **Delete Notification** icon.
4. Click the **Save** icon in the **Tasks to be configured** toolbar.
The following figure shows the table on the Notifications subtab with predefined scenarios for a workflow task. In this example, email notifications are sent to assignees whenever the task is assigned to them. The task initiator also gets a notification when the task is complete, and administrators are notified if the task results in error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Status</th>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>Notification Header</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assign</td>
<td>Assignees</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Initiator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Owner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Setting Up Email Reminders

To send email reminders in addition to the defined notification scenarios:

1. Select the **Enable Reminder** check box.
2. From the **Repeat** list, select the number of reminders to send, for example 2.
3. From the **Initiating Action** list, specify if the reminder is sent based on when the task is assigned to a user or when the task expires.
4. Define a frequency for the time between reminders, for example 3 days.
5. Click the **Save** icon in the **Tasks to be configured** toolbar.

The following figure shows the reminder setup with the given sample settings, along with After Assignment selected as the initiating action. For this example, an email reminder is sent three days after the user is assigned the task. One more reminder is sent three days after that, if the user still hasn’t acted on the assigned task.

Related Topics

- Actions and Statuses for Workflow Tasks
- Define People to Support Workflow Tasks
Add Header Content to Workflow Email Notifications

Each workflow task is configured with scenarios for sending email notifications as part of the approval process. For each notification scenario in the Notifications subtab, the Notification Header column determines what’s in the email header, a region that appears before the email body.

- By default, all predefined notification scenarios have emails with blank headers.
- Any notification scenarios you add in the Notifications subtab would have the following header value:
  \[ \text{concat(string('Task '), /task:task/task:title, string(' requires your attention.'))} \]. It is recommended to change that value to \text{null}.

For some workflow tasks, you can enable configurable email notifications based on report layouts to be used instead of the standard email notifications. The Notification Header setting doesn’t apply to those configurable email notifications.

Adding Company Name or Logo

If you do want to add, for example, your company name or logo to the email header:

1. Navigate to the Notifications subtab in BPM Worklist for the task you want to edit.
2. For the specific notification scenario on the Notifications subtab, click the icon in the Notification Header column.
3. In the Edit Notification Message dialog box, delete any existing content and enter the following in the Notification Message field.
   - For company name: Enter text in single quotes, for example ‘Oracle’. You can also use HTML formatting, for example \'<h2>Oracle</h2>'.
   - For company logo: Enter the URL to your logo, following this syntax: \'<img src="https://cloud.oracle.com/res/images/header/oracle-cloud-logo.png" width="230" height="69" alt="Oracle Logo">\'. Replace the URL and alternative text with your own.
4. Click the Save icon in the Tasks to be configured toolbar.

Set Up the From Field in Workflow Email Notifications

By default, the From field in workflow email notifications shows an email address without a sender name. You can’t change the email address, but you can specify the sender name. For example, if you indicate that Your Company is the text to display, then the From field shows: \text{Your Company <<your pod>.fa.sender@workflow.mail.<your data center>.cloud.oracle.com}}.

You can set up the sender name in application preferences for all workflow tasks, or have different setup for specific workflow tasks. If not specified at the task level, the sender name setting defaults from the preferences.
Setting Up for All Workflow Tasks

To define the sender name for all workflow tasks that have no other applicable setup:

1. Open the Administration tab. If you’re not in BPM Worklist:
   a. Click the Notifications icon in the global header.
   b. Click More Details.
   c. Click your user name and select Administration.

2. On the Application Preferences page that's on the Administration tab, select one of the Email "From:" Display Name options.
   - Select to specify the text to display. Enter your value or leave blank if you want nothing to appear in the From field.
   - Select Submitter to show the person who created the task.
   - Select Previous Approver to show the previous assignee in the approval chain. When the notification is sent to the first assignee in the approval chain, the From field shows the person who created the task.

3. Click Save.
Setting Up for a Specific Workflow Task
To specify the sender name for a specific workflow task:

1. Navigate to the Notifications subtab in BPM Worklist for the task you want to edit.
2. On the Notifications subtab, click the Expand More icon.
3. Select one of the Email "From:" Display Name options.
   - Select Not Applicable so that what appears in the From field depends on the application preferences that apply to all workflow tasks.
   - Select to specify the text to display. Enter your value in quotes, for example "Oracle", or leave blank if you want nothing to appear in the From field.
   - Select Previous Approver to show the previous assignee in the approval chain. When the notification is sent to the first assignee in the approval chain, the From field shows the person who created the task.
4. Click the Save icon in the Tasks to be configured toolbar.

Send Test Workflow Email Notifications to One Address
While you’re testing workflow setup, you can send all email notifications to a single address so that your users don’t receive any test emails. The test emails are still sent based on the notification scenarios defined for the particular workflow task.

Specifying the Email Address
To enter the email address to send test emails to:

1. Click the Notifications icon in the global header.
2. Click More Details.
3. Click your user name and select Administration.
4. On the Application Preferences page that's on the Administration tab, click the **Test Notification Email Address** icon.
5. In the dialog box, enter an email address in the **Test Notification Email Address** field.
6. Click **OK** and then **Save**.

After you’re done testing, go back and delete the email address that you entered.

### Configurable Email Notifications

#### Configure Procurement Workflow Notifications

As part of certain business flows with workflow tasks, the application automatically sends email or in-application notifications to your users, or to people your users do business with. For example, when a user submits a requisition, the approvers receive an email with the approval request. For some flows, configurable Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports determine the email and in-application notification content and format. For some workflow tasks, you can enable these configurable notifications to be used instead of the standard notifications.

Procurement business flows with configurable notifications include the following workflow tasks:

- Negotiation invitation
- Purchase order approval
- Purchase order change order approval
- Requisition approval
- Requisition reapproval (change to lines by requester, change to lines by buyer)
- Seller negotiation award decision
- Seller negotiation bid disqualification
- Seller negotiation change schedule
- Seller negotiation invitation
- External Supplier Registration Approval Decision

In addition to getting notifications in email, users can also view in-application notifications by:

- Clicking the **Notifications** icon in the global header and opening a notification.
- Going to the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area and opening a notification.
- Clicking the **In-App Notification** link at the end of an email notification.

#### Process Overview

The process to generate configurable email and in-application notifications is the same as generating other types of report output. The process involves various types of objects in the business intelligence catalog, including data models, subtemplates, style templates, and reports.
This figure shows how these objects work together to generate the output used for email and in-application notifications.

- **Data Source**: Stores the attributes and attribute values for business objects and transactions in the application.
- **Data Model**: Determines which attributes from data sources are available to be included in the notification and how that data is retrieved.
- **Subtemplate**: Provides common components, for example a branding logo and buttons, that can be reused in multiple reports.
- **Style Template**: Provides styles, such as the type of lines and fonts to use in tables, or the font type, size, and color to use for headings.
- **Report**: Contains a layout template that determines:
  - Which attributes appear in the notification, from the data model used for the report.
  - What the notification looks like, using components from the subtemplate and styles from the style template used for the report.
- **HTML**: Is the output generated from the report.
- **Email Notification**: Is sent to users as part of a business flow, with the HTML output embedded in the email body.
- **In-Application Notification**: Has the HTML output embedded in the application user interface.

Each workflow task with configurable notifications has a corresponding predefined report in the BI catalog. For example, the Requisition Approval Email Report contains the Requisition Approval Email Layout and uses the Requisition Approval Email Data Model. The generated output is included in emails that are sent to users for requisition approval.

**Notification Modifications**

After you enable configurable workflow notifications, the predefined reports and related objects in the BI catalog work by default. The report-based notifications provide the same information as the standard notifications, but in a format optimized for mobile devices. To modify the notifications, you can edit copies of the predefined reports, data models, and subtemplate.
(but not the style template). You proceed as you would to edit any report, data model, or subtemplate in the catalog, for example:

1. Find a predefined report for procurement in the BI catalog.
2. Use the Customize option to create a copy, or copy the report and paste it within the Custom folder.
3. Edit the copied report layout template.

**Note:** The configurable, report-based notifications are delivered in a format optimized for mobile devices. If your organization has approvers using mobile devices, minimize making modifications that increase the number of columns in tables, and test all such modifications thoroughly on applicable mobile devices before deploying the changes.

For more information about creating and editing reports, see the Oracle Procurement Cloud Creating and Administering Analytics and Reports guide, available on the Oracle Help Center. You should get familiar with BI Publisher in general before modifying configurable notifications. Aspects specific to configurable notifications include:

- You use only the Template Builder for Word add-in to edit the .rtf template in Microsoft Word, not the layout editor or other tools available for creating and editing report layout.
- You usually edit a copy of predefined layout templates, rather than create reports or layout templates.

**Security**

To modify reports and data models for workflow notifications, you must have the BI Administrator role.

**Setup**

Use the Offerings work area, Procurement offering to enable each of the applicable configurable notifications features that meet the needs of your organization. Features include:

- Configure Purchasing Document Notifications with Business Intelligence Publisher feature, found in the Purchasing functional area
- Configure Purchase Requisition Notifications with Business Intelligence Publisher feature, found in the Self Service Procurement functional area
- Configure Negotiation Invitation Notification with Business Intelligence Publisher, found in the Sourcing functional area

Also, download and install the Template Builder for Word add-in.

**Related Topics**

- Set Up for RTF and Excel Report Layout Templates
- Configurable Email Notifications: Implementation Considerations
- Overview of Workflow Tasks
- Oracle Business Intelligence Enterprise Components
Reports and Data Models Used for Procurement Notifications Based on Reports

You can configure Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports to send email and in-application notifications for some Oracle Procurement Cloud workflow tasks. Each business process area uses different Oracle BI Publisher reports and data models for configuring the email or in-application notifications.

**Reports and Associated Data Models**

This table shows the Oracle BI Publisher reports and associated data models that are available for configuring both email and in-application notifications for procurement business processes. The navigation to the business process folders is: Oracle BI Publisher > Catalog > Shared Folders > Procurement folder. Under this folder you can find the following business process folders having configurable notification reports and data models.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Process</th>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Data Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchasing</td>
<td>Purchase Order Notification Report</td>
<td>Purchase Order Notification Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self Service Procurement</td>
<td>Requisition Approval Email Report</td>
<td>Requisition Approval Email Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Negotiation Invitation Email Report</td>
<td>Sourcing Notifications Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Award Decision Notification Report</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Award Decision Notification Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Bid Disqualification Notification Report</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Bid Disqualification Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Change Schedule Notification Report</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Change Schedule Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Invitation Notification Report</td>
<td>Seller Negotiation Invitation Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourcing</td>
<td>Negotiation Award Decision Notification Report</td>
<td>Negotiation Award Decision Notification Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppliers</td>
<td>External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report</td>
<td>External Supplier Registration Approved Email Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppliers</td>
<td>External Supplier Registration Rejected FYI Email Report</td>
<td>External Supplier Registration Rejected Email Data Model</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For each of these listed business process areas, you can use the associated reports and data models to configure both email and in-application notifications.
Best Practices for Layouts in Workflow Notifications

Predefined workflow notifications based on report layout templates all follow a general format. When you edit a copy of these layout templates in Microsoft Word, follow the predefined layout as closely as possible for consistency. Also keep in mind shared components and mobile considerations.
General Structure
In general, the workflow notifications contain a set of components that are displayed in a certain order.
The callouts in this figure identify the email notification components listed in the following table.

The callouts in this figure identify the in-app notification components listed in the following table. In addition to describing each component, the table also indicates if the component appears in the email notification, in-app notification, or both.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Callout</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Notification Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Buttons with the primary actions to take on the task, such as <strong>Approve</strong> and <strong>Reject</strong>. These buttons aren't part of the configurable, report-based notification content.</td>
<td>In-app</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Notification header listing key attributes of the workflow task and the associated transaction.</td>
<td>Both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Buttons for the primary actions to take on the task, such as <strong>Approve</strong> and <strong>Reject</strong>.</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Notification body that usually includes transaction and line level details, displayed in tables or sets of attributes with corresponding values. The data model for the report restricts the total number of rows displayed in some of the tables. If the limit is exceeded, the table footer provides a link to the transaction details page, where users can view all the rows. To change this limit, you can edit a copy of the data model.</td>
<td>Both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Approval history, including any attachments that users in the history uploaded for the task. You can’t edit the approval history</td>
<td>Email (or both, in rare cases)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Component, which usually appears in the body of only email notifications. For in-app notifications, you can usually view the history by clicking the Actions button and selecting History.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Callout</th>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Notification Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Buttons for the primary actions again.</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>A link to the corresponding transaction page, and another link to the in-app notification.</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you modify notifications, try to keep to this general structure and don’t remove essential elements such as the action buttons. Likewise, don’t change the styles in your layout template. The predefined style template should still apply to your notification; don’t edit a copy of the style template and apply that to your notification.

To add components to your notification, for example another table, consider first downloading another style template from My Oracle Support. This template contains Quick Parts content that you can use in Word when you do more advanced work on layout templates. For example, from the Quick Parts gallery, you can select and add the table that is consistent in format with predefined tables already on your notification.

By default, the components that you add in the layout template appear in both email and in-app notifications, where available. You can add conditions to explicitly make a particular element, for example a field, appear only in one type of notification and not the other.

**Shared Components**

A predefined subtemplate in the business intelligence (BI) catalog applies to all predefined layout templates for workflow notifications. The subtemplate contains components that are shared among the notifications, for example:

- Branding logo, if you add one to the subtemplate, which would appear as the first component in the email body. The logo appears in email notifications only.
- Action buttons in email notifications.
- Links at the end of the email notification, one to the corresponding transaction page, and another to the in-app notification.

When you make a copy of a predefined layout template to edit, the copy automatically inherits the same predefined subtemplate. To edit these shared components, make a copy of the predefined subtemplate, edit the copied version, and apply it to your own layout templates.

**Mobile Considerations**

Because users can view the workflow notifications on mobile devices, always consider mobile first and keep the notifications as simple as possible. For example:

- Don’t put too much content horizontally, such as too many columns in tables.
- Keep all text, including attributes and column headings, as short as possible.
- Center align lists of attributes and their values, if they appear outside tables.

Make sure to test your email notifications on mobile devices.

**Related Topics**

- Subtemplates
Add a Branding Logo and Change Other Shared Components in Workflow Notifications

A predefined subtemplate contains common components for all workflow notifications based on predefined report layouts. For example, the subtemplate has a place for you to add a branding logo, which would appear at the beginning of email notifications. You can modify other shared components so that the same changes apply to your notifications. For example, for email notifications, you can also change the text on action buttons, or the text of the links that appear at the end of emails.

Note:
- You must edit a copy of the subtemplate in the Custom folder of the business intelligence (BI) catalog. Don’t directly update the predefined subtemplate.
- The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

Modifying Shared Components in the Subtemplate
To edit a copy of the predefined subtemplate that contains the shared components:

1. Click Navigator > Reports and Analytics.
2. Click the Browse Catalog icon.
3. In the BI catalog (the Folders pane), expand Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates.
4. For Workflow Notification Subtemplate, click More and select Customize.

If you’re not using the Customize option:

a. Click Copy in the toolbar with Workflow Notification Subtemplate selected.
b. In the BI catalog, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Common Content > Templates. Create a Templates folder in this location if it doesn’t exist.
c. Click Paste in the toolbar.
d. Click the Edit link for the copied subtemplate.

All reports using the predefined subtemplate are automatically redirected to point to your subtemplate in the Custom folder. This applies:

- To all reports, predefined or not
- No matter if you copy and paste the subtemplate or use the Customize option
- Only if your subtemplate has the same name and relative file path within Custom as the predefined subtemplate

5. In the Templates section, click the link in the Locale column.
6. Save the subtemplate .rtf file to your computer.
7. Open the .rtf file with Microsoft Word.

- To add a logo, insert your own image in the subtemplate.
- To change button or link text, edit the text accordingly. Make the same edits wherever that button or link text appears in the subtemplate.
Caution: To ensure that your layout templates reflect these changes without additional rework, don’t edit any other text in the subtemplate .rtf file.

8. Update Word options to ensure that existing links remain intact in the subtemplate.
   a. Click File > Options > Advanced.
   b. In the Word Options dialog box, click Web Options in the General section.
   c. In the Web Options dialog box, open the Files tab.
   d. Deselect the Update links on save check box.
9. Save your changes in Word.

Uploading the Modified Subtemplate

To upload your subtemplate to the BI catalog:

1. In the BI catalog, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Common Content > Templates.
2. Click Edit for Workflow Notification Subtemplate.
3. In the Templates section, click the Upload icon.
4. Select your modified .rtf subtemplate and a locale, and click OK to overwrite the original subtemplate.

Related Topics
• Subtemplates
• Using the Customize Option for Predefined Reports: Points to Consider
• Generate Sample Report Data

Use Quick Parts for Workflow Notifications

Use the Quick Parts feature in Microsoft Word to easily insert reusable pieces of formatted content. When you edit copies of predefined report layout templates for workflow notifications in Word, you can add predefined Quick Parts content to your .rtf file. For example, you can insert a table in a format that’s consistent with predefined notifications. The predefined Quick Parts content is available in a style template .dotx file on My Oracle Support.

Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

Prerequisites

To get the predefined Quick Parts content into your Quick Parts gallery:

2. Download the .dotx file and save it to your Microsoft Word template folder, for example C:\Users\<user name>\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Templates.

Also, to preview your layout template changes before uploading the .rtf file back to the business intelligence (BI) catalog:

• Generate sample report data from the data model for the report that you’re editing.
• Download a local copy of the subtemplate that applies to the layout template.
Adding Quick Parts Content to Workflow Notifications

To insert content from the Quick Parts gallery into a layout template:

1. In the BI catalog, find the predefined report with the layout template that you want to modify.
2. For the report, click More and select Customize.
   
   If you’re not using the Customize option:
   
   a. Copy the predefined report and paste it in an appropriate subfolder within the Custom folder.
   b. Click the Edit link for the copied report.
3. Click Edit for the layout template to insert Quick Parts content into, and save the .rtf file to your computer with a new file name.
4. Open the .rtf file with Microsoft Word.
5. Put your cursor where you want to insert new content.
6. From the Insert tab on the ribbon, click Quick Parts within the Text group, and select the component to insert.
7. Edit the inserted component as needed and add any other components.
8. Save your changes in Word.

Previewing the Layout Template Changes

To preview your edits before uploading your layout template to the BI catalog:

1. On the ribbon, open the BI Publisher tab and click Sample XML within the Load Data group to import sample data from the data model. Skip this step if you already loaded sample data.
2. At the beginning of the document, replace the path with the location of the downloaded subtemplate file on your computer. For example, change "<?import:xdoxsl:///Common Content/Templates/Workflow Notification Subtemplate.xsb?>" to "<?import:file:///C:/Template_Directory/FinFunWorkflowNotificationSub.rtf?>".
3. From the BI Publisher tab on the ribbon, click HTML in the Preview group.
4. If the preview reflects your changes as expected, then change the path back to the original location.
5. Save your changes in Word.

Uploading the Modified Layout Template

To upload your layout template to the BI catalog after previewing the changes:

1. Back in the BI catalog, click Edit for the report within the Custom folder, if that page isn’t still open.
2. Click the View a list link.
3. Click the Create icon on the table toolbar.
4. In the Upload or Generate Layout section, click Upload.
5. Upload your edited .rtf file with a unique layout name.
6. Back on the page for editing the report, click Delete for the layout template that you downloaded earlier.
7. Click the Save Report icon.

Related Topics

- Configurable Email Notifications: Implementation Considerations
- Using the Customize Option for Predefined Reports: Points to Consider
- Generate Sample Report Data
- Style Templates
Preview Changes to Layout Templates for Workflow Notifications

To modify workflow notifications, you edit a local copy of the .rtf report layout templates in Microsoft Word. Before uploading the .rtf files to the business intelligence (BI) catalog, you should preview the output with the changes you made. You can avoid uploading a broken report that displays an error in the notifications sent to users.

Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

Prerequisites

- Generate sample report data from the data model used for the report, and save the .xml file to your computer.
- Download a local copy of the subtemplate that applies to your own report layout template:
  a. In the BI catalog, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Common Content > Templates if you’re using a modified subtemplate, or Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates for the predefined subtemplate.
  b. Click Edit for Workflow Notification Subtemplate.
  c. In the Templates section, click the link in the Locale column.
  d. Save the subtemplate .rtf file to your computer.

Previewing Output

To generate sample output from a local layout template:

1. Open your .rtf report layout template in Microsoft Word and make your edits.
2. On the ribbon, open the BI Publisher tab and click Sample XML within the Load Data group.
3. Select the .xml file you downloaded to import sample data from the data model.
4. At the beginning of your .rtf document, replace the path with the location of the downloaded subtemplate file on your computer. For example, change `<?import:xdoxsl:///Common Content/Templates/Workflow Notification Subtemplate.xsb?>` to `<?import:file:///C:/Template_Directory/FinFunWorkflowNotificationSub.rtf?>`.
5. From the BI Publisher tab on the ribbon, click HTML in the Preview group.
6. If the preview reflects your changes as expected, then change the path back to the original location.
7. From the BI Publisher tab on the ribbon, click Validate Template in the Tools group.
8. Also in the Tools group, click Check Accessibility.
9. Save your changes in Word.

Related Topics

- Generate Sample Report Data

Set Up Content to Appear in Only Email or In-App Workflow Notifications

For workflow tasks that have configurable email and in-app notifications, the same .rtf report layout template is used for both types of notifications. When you edit a copy of predefined templates in Microsoft Word to modify the notifications, you can make content conditional. For example, you can add an attribute from the data models used for the report, and set the attribute to appear only in in-app notifications.
The logo, action buttons, and links at the end of email notifications are predefined to appear only in emails, based on the subtemplate. The approval history is usually predefined to also appear in the body of only email notifications. Any conditional setting you apply to these components in the .rtf template won’t override the predefined setup.

**Prerequisites**

Generate sample report data from the data model used for the report, and save the .xml file to your computer.

**Defining Conditional Regions**

To define a conditional region of content that appears only in email or in-app notifications:

1. Open your .rtf report layout template in Microsoft Word.
2. On the ribbon, open the BI Publisher tab and click **Sample XML** within the Load Data group.
3. Select the .xml file you downloaded to import sample data from the data model.
4. In your .rtf document, select the content you want to make conditional.
5. On the ribbon, click **Conditional Region** within the Insert group.
6. In the Conditional Region dialog box, on the Properties tab, select **BINDISONLINENOTIF** from the Data field list in the General section. The values in this list come from the sample data you imported from the data model.
7. Select **Date/Text** from the next list.
8. In the Condition 1 section, select **Equal to** from the Data field list.
9. In the corresponding text field, enter **true** for content to appear only in in-app notifications, or **false** for content to appear only in emails.
10. Make sure that form fields containing the conditional logic are inserted around your selected content. The beginning form field, c, should be immediately before the conditional content, and the closing form field, EC, should be immediately after. Move the form fields as needed.

---

**Tip:** To make sure you’re looking at the correct form fields, double-click the c form field to open the Conditional Region dialog box and see the BINDISONLINENOTIF setting.

11. Save your changes in Word.

**Entering Conditional Code**

If the data model for your report doesn’t have the **BINDISONLINENOTIF** attribute, then:

1. In your .rtf report layout template, put your cursor immediately before the content you want to make conditional.
2. Enter the following code, which functions the same as the c form field:
   - `<?if:BINDISONLINENOTIF='true'?>` for in-app only
   - `<?if:BINDISONLINENOTIF='false'?>` for email only
3. Put your cursor immediately after your conditional content.
4. Enter `<?end if?>`, which functions the same as the EC form field.
5. Save your changes in Word.

**Related Topics**

- Generate Sample Report Data
Configuring Purchase Order Email Approval Notifications Using Reports: Worked Example

This example shows how to configure workflow email notifications for the purchase order approval business process using an Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher report. You use Microsoft Word to edit the RTF template used for notifications. You can modify the BI Publisher template only if you have the BI Administrator role.

In this scenario you want purchase order approvers to see the notes to suppliers.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which report, data model and layout template do I update?</td>
<td>For updates to email notifications for purchase order approval:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Purchase Order Notification Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Purchase Order Notification Data Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Purchase Order Approval Layout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add prompts and headers to the layout template?</td>
<td>No, not for this example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add data model attributes to the layout template?</td>
<td>Yes, the Note to Supplier attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which language do I use for the RTF template?</td>
<td>English (United States).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary of the Tasks

Configure a purchase order email approval notification to add an attribute by:

1. Adding an attribute to the data model.
2. Exporting the data model XML file.
3. Downloading the report layout template.
4. Adding data model attributes to the template.
5. Uploading the modified report layout to the BI Publisher catalog.

Prerequisites

2. Download and install the Template Builder for Word to use Microsoft Word to edit the layout templates. To download, install, and set up Template Builder for Word, see Creating RTF Templates by Using BI Publisher 11g Template Builder for Word: http://www.oracle.com/webfolder/technetwork/tutorials/obe/fmw/bi/bip/tb4word/tbwordbip.htm.
3. To preview the configured templates, download a local copy of the subtemplate that applies to your own report layout template:
   a. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
   b. Click Catalog.
In the BI catalog, go to **Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates** for the predefined subtemplate.

- Click More for the Workflow Notification Subtemplate.
- Click the Download option.
- Save the subtemplate file to your computer.

### Adding an Attribute to the Data Model

In this task, you add the Notes to Suppliers attribute to the data model.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click **Catalog**.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand **Shared Folders > Procurement > Purchasing** and select **Data Models** to display the data models in the right pane.
4. Under Purchase Order Notification Data Model, click **More**, then click **Copy**.
5. In the Folders section, expand **Shared Folders Custom Procurement Purchasing**.
6. Click the **Paste Resource** icon.
7. Under Purchase Order Notification Data Model click **Edit**.
8. On the **PurchasingNotificationDM** page, in the Data Model section, select **PurchaseOrderDraftLineDataSet**.
9. On the Diagram tab, click the **Edit Selected Data Set** icon.
10. On the Edit Data Set dialog, under SQL Query, after the line for the Category ID, add a line and enter:

    ```sql
    Line.NOTE_TO_VENDOR AS NoteToSupplier.
    ```

11. Click **OK**.

### Exporting the Data Model XML File

In this task, you export the XML file that includes the data model attributes predefined for the notifications. Perform this task to enable previewing your modified template. This task is also required to add data model attributes to the template.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click **Catalog**.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand **Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Purchasing** to display the data models in the right pane.
4. Under Purchase Order Notification Data Model, click **Edit** to open the Diagram tab on the **PurchasingNotificationDM** page.

#### Note: To ensure that all data sets include requested elements with undefined values in the output XML data, do the following:

- In the Data Model section, select Properties.
- In the Properties section, select Include Empty Tags for Null Elements.
- In the Data Model section, select Data Sets.

#### Note: To add data model attributes to the template, perform steps 5 and 6. Otherwise, skip to step 7.

5. Click the Data tab.
6. Enter values for the following key attributes for an existing purchase order. Key attributes enable you to pull in all the purchase order attributes:

   - **Document Number**
7. Click **View** to see the sample data in the report, and all the available attributes. Verify the **Note to Supplier** attribute is in the list.

8. Click **Export**.

9. In the **Opening PurchasingNotificationDM** dialog box, select **Save File** and click **OK**.

10. Save the **PurchasingNotificationDM_.xml** file to a local drive.

## Downloading the Report Layout Template

In this task, you create a copy of the report layout template in the Custom folder, and download a copy of the template to your local drive to modify it.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator role to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.

2. Click **Catalog**.

3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand **Shared Folders > Procurement > Purchasing** to display the templates in the right pane.

4. Under **Purchase Order Notification Report**, click **More**, and then select **Customize**. A copy of the Purchase Order Notification Report is created automatically in the Custom folder.

5. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand **Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Purchasing**.

6. Under Purchase Order Notification Report, click **Edit**.

7. On the Purchase Order Notification Report page, next to Data Model, click the **Select Data Model** icon.

8. On the Select Data Model dialog, expand **Custom > Procurement > Purchasing**.

9. Select the **Purchase Order Notification Data Model**, and click **Open**.

10. Under **Purchase Order Approval Notification Layout**, click **Edit**.

11. On the **Opening PurchaseOrderApprovalNotificationLayout.rtf** dialog box, select **Save File** and click **OK** to save the document to your local drive. Save the template with the name **UpdatedPurchaseOrderApprovalNotificationLayout.rtf** to distinguish it from the original template.

## Adding Data Model Attributes to the Template

To modify the purchase order approval email notification, you edit a local copy of the RTF report layout template in Microsoft Word. In this task, you add the Note to Supplier data model attribute to the report template.

> **Note**: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

1. On your local drive, open the **UpdatedPurchaseOrderNotification.rtf** template in Microsoft Word, with the Template Builder installed.

2. Select the BI Publisher tab.

3. In the Load Data section, click **Sample XML**.

4. In the dialog box to select XML data that appears, browse to open the **PurchasingNotificationDM_.xml** file you saved in the Exporting the Data Model XML File task. Then click **Open**.

5. In the **Data loaded successfully** dialog box, click **OK**.

6. Scroll to the **TSRHLines** section of the notification.

7. Place the cursor after the **C UnitPriceEC** line and press the Enter key.

8. On the new line, enter **Note to Supplier:** and place the cursor at the end of the text you entered.

9. On the BI Publisher tab, in the Insert section, click the **123 Field** button.

10. On the Field dialog box, locate and select the **NoteToSupplier** attribute.

11. Click Insert.
12. Click Close to return to the UpdatedPurchaseOrderNotification.rtf template.
13. Save and close the document.
14. Before uploading the RTF files to the business intelligence (BI) catalog, you should preview the output with the changes you made. You can avoid uploading a broken report that displays an error in the emails sent to users.
15. Proceed to the task Uploading the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog.

**Uploading the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog**

You must perform this task to use the modified report layout for notifications.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server with the BI Administrator Role to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Purchasing.
5. On the Purchase Order Notification Report page, on the right side of the page, click Add New Layout to open the page with the Create Layout and Upload or Generate Layout sections.
6. In the Upload or Generate Layout section, click the Upload icon.
7. In the Upload Template File dialog box, in the Layout Name field, enter Updated Purchase Order Notification Report.
8. In the Template File field, browse for the modified UpdatedPurchaseOrderNotificationLayout.rtf template on your local drive, select the template, and click Open.
9. In the Upload Template File dialog box, from the Type list, select RTF Template.
10. From the Locale list, select English (United States).
11. Click Upload to open the Processing dialog box and return to the Purchase Order Notification Report page.
12. On the right side of the page, click View a list to open the Layout page.
13. In the row for the Updated Purchase Order Notification Report, select the Default Layout check box.
14. On the right side of the page, click the Save Report icon.

**Related Topics**

- Using the Customize Option for Predefined Reports: Points to Consider

**Configuring Sourcing Notifications Using Reports: Worked Example**

This example shows how to configure workflow email notifications for the Sourcing business process using Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports. You use Microsoft Word to edit the .rtf template used for notifications.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which template do I update?</td>
<td>Negotiation Invitation Email Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add prompts and headers to the layout template?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add data model attributes to the layout template?</td>
<td>BUYERCOMPANY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which language do I use for the RTF template?</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Decisions to Consider | This Example
--- | ---

Summary of the Tasks

Configure the Negotiation Invitation Email Report by:

1. Adding an Attribute to the Data Model.
2. Exporting the data model XML file.
3. Downloading the report layout template.
4. Editing email body information in the template.
5. Adding data model attributes to the template.
6. Uploading the modified report layout to the BI Publisher catalog.

Prerequisites

   The Template Builder for Microsoft is included in the BI Publisher.
2. To preview the configured templates, download a local copy of the subtemplate that applies to your own report layout template:
   a. In BI Publisher, click Catalog.
   b. In the BI catalog, go to Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates for the predefined subtemplate.
   c. Click More for the Workflow Notification Subtemplate and then click Copy.
   d. In the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Sourcing.
   e. Click the Paste Resource icon.
   f. Click More for the Workflow Notification Subtemplate and then click Download.
   g. Save the subtemplate to the local drive on your computer.

Adding an Attribute to the Data Model

In this task, you add attributes to a data model.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Procurement > Sourcing.
4. For Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click More, and then click Customize.
5. In the Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click the Sourcing Notifications Data Model.
6. On the Diagram tab, select the header to which you want to add an attribute and then click the Edit Selected Data Set icon.
7. Add the required attribute and click OK.

Exporting the Data Model XML File

In this task, you export the XML file that includes the data model attributes predefined for the notifications. Perform this task to enable previewing your modified template. This task is also required to add data model attributes to the template.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Sourcing.
4. For Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click Edit.
5. In the Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click the Sourcing Notifications Data Model to open the Diagram tab.
Note: To ensure that all data sets include requested elements with null values in the output XML data, do the following:
   - In the Data Model section, select Properties.
   - In the Properties section, select Include Empty Tags for Null Elements.
   - In the Data Model section, select Data Sets.

6. Click the Data tab.
7. Click View to see the sample data in the report, and all the available attributes.
8. Click Export and select Save File and then click OK.
9. Save the SourcingNotificationsDM_.xml file to a local drive.

Downloading the Report Layout Template
In this task, from the Custom folder you download a copy of the template to your local drive to modify it.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Sourcing.
4. Select Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click Edit.
5. For Negotiation Invitation Email Body Layout, click Edit.
6. In the NegotiationInvitationEMailBodyReport.rtf dialog box, select Save File and then click OK to save the file with the name UpdatedNegotiationInvitationEMailBodyLayout.rtf to distinguish it from the original template.

Editing Email Body Information in the Template
To modify email content, you edit a local copy of the .rtf report layout templates in Microsoft Word.

Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

1. Open the UpdatedNegotiationInvitationEMailBodyLayout.rtf template in Microsoft Word with the Template Builder installed, if not already open.
2. Scroll to the buyer name.
3. Place your cursor at the end of the BUYER_NAME and press enter.
4. Enter the attribute BUYERCOMPANY.
5. Save the document.

Adding Data Model Attributes to the Template
In this task, you add to the report template attributes that exist in the predefined data model.

Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

1. Open the UpdatedNegotiationInvitationEMailBodyLayout.rtf template in Microsoft Word with the Template Builder installed, if not already open.
2. Select the BI Publisher tab.
3. In the Load Data section, click Sample XML.
4. In the dialog box to select XML data that appears, browse to open the SourcingNotificationsDm_.xml file you saved in the Exporting the Data Model XML File task. Then click Open.
5. In the Data loaded successfully dialog box, click OK.
6. Add the required data model attributes.
7. Save and close the document.
8. Proceed to the task Uploading the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog.

Uploading the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog
You must perform this task to use the modified report layout for notifications.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Sourcing.
4. For the Negotiation Invitation Email Report, click Edit.
5. For Negotiation Invitation Email Body Layout, click Properties.
6. For Templates, click the Upload icon.
7. In the Template File field, browse for the modified UpdatedNegotiationInvitationEMailBodyLayout.rtf template on your local drive, select the template, and click Open.
8. In the Upload Template File dialog box, from the Template Type list, select RTF Template.
9. From the Locale list, select English.
10. Click OK to open the Processing dialog box and return to the Negotiation Invitation Email Report Data Model page.
11. Click Save.
12. On the right side of the page, click View a list to open the Layout page.
13. In the row for the UpdatedNegotiationInvitationEmailReport Template, select the Default Layout check box.
14. On the right side of the page, click the Save Report icon.

Related Topics
• Using the Customize Option for Predefined Reports: Points to Consider

Configure Supplier Registration Approval Decision Notifications Using Reports
In this example, you can configure workflow email notifications for the external suppliers’ registration business process using Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports and use Microsoft Word to edit the .rtf template used for notifications.

Important decisions required for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which template do I update?</td>
<td>External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add prompts and headers to the layout template?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do I want to add data model attributes to the layout template?</td>
<td>CORPORATE WEBSITE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which language do I use for the RTF template?</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tasks Summary
Configure the External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report:

1. Add an attribute to the Data Model.
2. Export the data model XML file.
3. Download the report layout template.
4. Edit email body information in the template.
5. Add data model attributes to the template.
6. Upload the modified report layout to the BI Publisher catalog.

Prerequisites
   The Template Builder for Microsoft is included in the BI Publisher.
2. To preview the configured templates, download a local copy of the subtemplate that applies to your own report layout template:
   a. In BI Publisher, click Catalog.
   b. In the BI catalog, go to Shared Folders > Common Content > Templates for the predefined subtemplate.
   c. Click More for the Workflow Notification Subtemplate and then click Copy.
   d. In the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Suppliers.
   e. Click the Paste Resource icon.
   f. Click More for the Workflow Notification Subtemplate and then click Download.
   g. Save the subtemplate to the local drive on your computer.

Add an Attribute to the Data Model
In this task, you add attributes to a data model.
1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Procurement > Suppliers.
4. For External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report, click More, and then click Customize.
5. In the External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report, click the External Supplier Registration Approved Email Data Model.
6. On the Diagram tab, select the header to which you want to add an attribute and then click the Edit Selected Data Set icon.
7. Add the required attribute and click OK.

Export the Data Model XML File
In this task, you export the XML file that includes the data model attributes predefined for the notifications. Do this task to enable previewing your modified template. This task is also required to add data model attributes to the template.
1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Suppliers.
4. For External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Report, click Edit.
5. In the External Supplier Registration Approved FYI Report, click the Supplier Registration Approved Email Data Model to open the Diagram tab.

**Note:** To ensure that all data sets include requested elements with null values in the output XML data, do the following:
- In the Data Model section, select Properties.
- In the Properties section, select Include Empty Tags for Null Elements.
- In the Data Model section, select Data Sets.
6. Click the Data tab.
7. Click View to see the sample data in the report, and all the available attributes.
8. Click Export and select Save File and then click OK.
9. Save the SupplierExtRegApprovedFYIDM.xml file to a local drive.

Download the Report Layout Template
In this task, from the Custom folder you download a copy of the template to your local drive to modify it.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Suppliers.
4. Select Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report, click Edit.
5. For Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Body Layout, click Edit.
6. In the ExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport.rtf dialog box, select Save File and then click OK to save the file with the name UpdatedExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport.rtf to distinguish it from the original template.

Edit Email Body Information in the Template
To modify email content, you edit a local copy of the .rtf report layout templates in Microsoft Word.

⚠️ Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

1. Open the UpdatedExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport.rtf template in Microsoft Word with the Template Builder installed, if not already open.
2. Scroll to the buyer name.
3. Place your cursor at the end of the CORPORATE_WEBSITE and press enter.
4. Enter the attribute CORPORATE WEBSITE.
5. Save the document.

Add Data Model Attributes to the Template
In this task, you add to the report template attributes that exist in the predefined data model.

⚠️ Note: The exact steps can vary depending on your version of Microsoft Word.

1. Open the UpdatedExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport.rtf template in Microsoft Word with the Template Builder installed, if not already open.
2. Select the BI Publisher tab.
3. In the Load Data section, click Sample XML.
4. In the dialog box to select XML data that appears, browse to open the SupplierExtRegApprovedFYIDM.xml file you saved in the Exporting the Data Model XML File task. Then click Open.
5. In the Data loaded successfully dialog box, click OK.
6. Add the required data model attributes.
7. Save and close the document.
8. Proceed to the task Uploading the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog.

Upload the Modified Report Layout to the Oracle BI Publisher Catalog
You must perform this task to use the modified report layout for notifications.

1. Sign in to the Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher server to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Home page.
2. Click Catalog.
3. On the Catalog page, in the Folders section, expand Shared Folders > Custom > Procurement > Suppliers.
4. For the Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Report, click Edit.
5. For Supplier Registration Approved FYI Email Body Layout, click Properties.
6. For Templates, click the Upload icon.
7. In the Template File field, browse for the modified UpdatedExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport.rtf template on your local drive, select the template, and click Open.
8. In the Upload Template File dialog box, from the Template Type list, select RTF Template.
9. From the Locale list, select English.
10. Click OK to open the Processing dialog box and return to the Supplier Registration Approved Email Data Model page.
11. Click Save.
12. On the right side of the page, click View a list to open the Layout page.
13. In the row for the UpdatedExtSuppRegNotifApprovalFYIReport Template, select the Default Layout check box.
14. On the right side of the page, click the Save Report icon.

Manage Requisition and Purchasing Document Approvals

Approval Rules

Approval rules are routing policies or rules that are evaluated to determine the approvers or FYI recipients for a business transaction.

Action Type

There are three types of actions:

- Approval Required: The document or object will be routed for approvals.
- Automatic: The document or object can be approved or rejected automatically.
- Information Only: FYI tasks will be sent to notify the specified persons.

Route Using

The Route Using attribute identifies the type of users needed to approve or receive notification of a document. The following list is supported for document approval. Each type has a specific set of parameters or properties that must be defined. Route Using attributes include:

- Approval Group
- Job Level
- Position Hierarchy
- Single Approver
- Supervisory Hierarchy
- User-Defined Routing

Job Level

The Job Level attribute allows you to specify:

Approval Chain Of

- Select the approval chain of the persons within a document, for example, preparer and requester in purchase requisitions, or a buyer in purchasing documents.
You can also choose to route approvals through a specific worker chain by selecting the name of the worker.

**Start With**

- Identify the first participant in a list. The Start With attribute can be:
  - Manager (default value).
  - The value selected in the Approval Chain Of choice list.

**Minimum Job Level**

- Indicate the number of job levels that are required to perform the approval action if the rule applies. For example, using the figure below, if Mary (Job Level 1) submits a document for approval and the Minimum Job Level is set to 3, then only John Allen must also approve.

![Diagram of employee hierarchy]

**Top Worker in Hierarchy**

- Identify the person at the top of the employee hierarchy, or the top person in the approval chain. In most cases, this is the CEO.

**Include**

- Indicates if everyone returned in the list of participants from this action will be included, the first and last approver from the list will be included, or only the last approver will be included.
Position Hierarchy
Defined in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management, positions are defined along with corresponding job levels, and employees are assigned appropriate positions. For example, the position Buyer is an instance of a position in the Purchasing Department. The job level of that Buyer could be any job level assigned to that position.

Position Hierarchy

- Indicates if everyone returned in the list of participants from this action will be included, the first and last approver from the list will be included, or only the last approver will be included.

Position Chain Of

- Select the approval chain of the persons within a document. For example, select preparer and requester in purchase requisitions, or a buyer in purchasing documents.

Start With

- Identify the first participant in a list. The Start With attribute can be:
  - Next Position (default value).
  - The value selected in the Approval Chain Of choice list.

Minimum Job Level

- Indicate the number of job levels that are required to perform the approval action if the rule applies. For example, using the figure below, if Job Level 1 submits a document for approval and the Minimum Job Level is set to 3, then only Job Level 3 must approve.

![Position Hierarchy Diagram]

General Manager,
Job Level 5

Regional Manager,
Job Level 3

Store Manager, Job Level 1
Top Worker in Hierarchy

- Identifies the person at the top of the employee hierarchy, or the top person in the approval chain. In the most cases, this is the CEO.

Include

- Indicates if everyone returned in the list of participants from this action will be included, the first and last approver from the list will be included, or only the last approver will be included.

Single Approver

Single approver allows you to route the approval to a specific person on the document, or a specific worker.

Supervisory Hierarchy

Approval Chain Of

- You can select the approval chain of the persons within a document. For example, preparer and requester in purchase requisitions, or a buyer in purchasing documents.
- You can also choose to route approvals through a specific worker chain by selecting the name of the worker.

Start With

- Start With identifies the first participant in a list. The Start With attribute can be:
  - Manager (default value).
  - The value selected in the Approval Chain Of choice list.

Number of Approval Levels

- The number of approvers in the supervisory hierarchy starting with the person specified in Start With.

Top Worker in Hierarchy

- The Top Worker in Hierarchy identifies the person at the top of the employee hierarchy, or the top person in the approval chain. In the most cases, this is the CEO.

User-Defined Routing

You can configure user-defined attributes to return a single user, or a list of users, to whom human tasks can be routed.

Related Topics

- Considerations for Using Jobs and Positions
- Examples of Jobs
- Examples of Positions
- Position Hierarchy Approval-Rule Attributes

Purchasing Approval Stages: Explained

Oracle Fusion Purchasing has predefined stages for approvals for purchase orders, purchase agreements and change order approvals.
This figure shows the predefined stages: Preapproval, Terms, Post Approval, and Post Approval FYI.

The participants predefined within each stage are illustrated in the figures below. Note that the participant name conveys both the participant type and the voting regime. For example, Preapproval (Parallel) First Responder Wins has a participant type of Parallel and voting regime of First Responder Wins. This implies that all the approvers will be notified in parallel and the first responder decision will be final for that participant.

This figure shows the predefined participants for the Preapproval stage:

- Preapproval FYI Participant
- Preapproval Parallel Consensus Participant
• Preapproval Parallel First Responder Wins Participant
• Preapproval Serial Participant

This figure shows the predefined participants for the Terms stage:

• Terms Approval FYI Participant
• Terms Approval Serial Participant
• Terms Approval 2 Serial Participant
• Terms Approval 3 Serial Participant
• Terms Approval Parallel First Responder Wins Participant
• Terms Approval Parallel Consensus Participant
This figure shows the predefined participants for the Postapproval stage:

- Postapproval Parallel Consensus Participant
- Postapproval Parallel First Responder Wins Participant
- Postapproval Serial Participant

This figure shows the predefined participants for the Postapproval FYI stage:

- Post Approval FYI Participant
How You Use Project Information in Approval Rules for Requisitions and Orders

You can set up approval rules and routings for requisitions and purchase orders based on sponsored project information. Aspects of using project information in approvals that are covered in this topic include:

- Example
- Attributes
- Setup

Example

Use the award contract number attribute in an approval rule condition to evaluate if a purchase order distribution is associated to a sponsored project. Then add the principal investigator in charge of the award as an approver to the approval workflow to ensure they approve expenditures against the award.

Attributes

Some of the project attributes you can use for approval rules and routings include:

- Award Owning Business Unit
- Award Purpose
- Award Type
- Contract Number
- Funding Source
- Principal Investigator

For more information, refer to the white paper available on My Oracle Support (MOS): Setting Up Document Approvals for Oracle Fusion Procurement (document ID 1967303.1).

Setup

Use the Manage Requisition Approvals and Manage Purchasing Document Approvals tasks to set up approvals. They are located in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Approval Management functional area.
How You Manage Funds Override Approval Rules for Requisitions and Purchase Orders

You can use procurement document approval rules to manage insufficient funds override approval flows for your organization’s requisitions and purchase orders.

To view the delivered procurement document approval rules for requisitions and purchase orders, respectively, use the following tasks. You can find them in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Approval Management functional area:

- Manage Requisition Approvals
- Manage Purchasing Document Approvals

The delivered funds override approval rule for requisitions has the following attributes:

- Stage: Header Postapproval Stage
- Participant: Funds Override Approval
- Routing: Parallel
- Voting Regime: Consensus
- Enabled: Check box is selected.

You cannot edit this rule on the Manage Requisition Approvals page. You can only enable or disable it.

You can define a funds override approval rule different from what is delivered. You can add conditions based on these attributes:

- Funds Override Approver
- Funds Override Approver User Name

For example, you might define a condition where a certain approver can route the document to another approver.

The delivered funds override approval rule for purchase orders has the following attributes:

- Stage: Postapproval Stage
- Participant: Funds Override Approval
- Routing: Parallel
- Voting Regime: Consensus
- Enabled: Check box is selected.

You cannot edit this rule on the Manage Purchasing Document Approvals page. You can only enable or disable it.

You can define a funds override approval rule different from what is delivered. For example, you might want to have funds override approval for purchase orders occur at the preapproval stage rather than the postapproval stage. To define the rule set the attribute values as follows:

- Stage: Preapproval Stage.
- Participant, Routing, Voting Regime, Enabled: Same values as for the delivered rule for purchase orders.
- Conditions: Funds override approver is not blank.
- Action Type: Approval Required.
- Route Using: Single Approver.
- User Type: Funds override approver.
Related Topics

- Defining Funds Override Rules for a Control Budget: Explained

Set Up Approval Rules for Purchasing Documents with Outside Processing Items

You can set up approval rules for purchase orders and blanket purchase agreements that have at least one outside processing item.

To do this, use the Manage Purchasing Document Approvals task. You can find it in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Approval Management functional area. When editing a rule on the Edit Approval Rules page, use the Includes Outside Processing Items attribute to define a condition for purchasing documents having outside processing items. The attribute is available to use in a condition at the document line or header level.

Define Complex Approval Rules by Nesting Conditions

You can create rule conditions that include AND or OR operators. Additionally, conditions can be nested.

**Nested Condition Example**

The following is an example nested approval policy condition. If the destination type is Expense, and the cost center is 111 or 112, then Pat Stock must approve.

```plaintext
CONDITION

Destination Type equals Expense
AND
Cost Center equals 111
OR
Cost Center equals 112

ACTIONS

Action Type: Approval required
Route Using: Single approver
User Type: Worker
Worker: Pat Stock
```
Manage User-Defined Attributes in Approvals

User-defined attributes can be of two types: currency based, or summation.

**Currency Based**

You can define currency-based attributes to convert transaction amounts into a common currency, then define approval rules for only that specific currency.

For example, requesters in your organization may be creating requisitions in multiple currencies. But, your organization’s approval policy requires requisitions with amounts over 500 USD be approved by the requester manager. You can set up this approval routing rule by defining an attribute, Requisition Amount in USD, and using it in a rule condition.

Define the attribute as follows:

- **User-Defined Attribute**: Requisition Amount in USD
- **Type**: Currency based
- **Attribute to Convert Type**: Approval task attribute
- **Attribute to Convert**: Requisition Amount
- **Convert To**: USD
- **Conversion Rate Type**: Corporate

Once you have defined the attribute, then it can be used in the rule condition as follows: Requisition Amount in USD greater than 500

**Summation**

Summation allows you to use values computed based on specific attributes across lines, schedules, and distributions within a document. You can specify a rule condition to use a value based on summation data. For example, you can set up a procurement category hierarchy using the Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy task, where you can define a hierarchy of groupings of purchasing categories.

This figure shows an example of a procurement category hierarchy. The top-level category, Information Technology (IT), includes the next lower-level category Components for Information Technology. The Components for Information Technology
category includes two lower-level categories: System Cards, and Computers. Included under each of those two lowest-level categories are, respectively, specific memory module cards and computer servers.

If the approval policy is: If the requisition contains lines from IT where the lines total is greater than 500, then route the requisition to the IT group for approval.

To achieve this, create a user-defined attribute for IT Spend as follows:

- User-Defined Attribute: IT Spend
- Type: Summation
- Attribute: Distribution Amount
- Match Using: Hierarchy
- Category Name Rolls up To: IT

When defining summation attribute, you can use distribution amount or the distribution approval amount. You can also apply up to three filter criteria on the lines or distributions of the transaction using attribute or hierarchy. For match using hierarchy, the following hierarchies can be used:

- Balancing Segment
- Category Name
- Cost Center
The following is a sample approval rule using the IT Spend user-defined attribute:

**CONDITION**
- IT Spend greater than 500

**ACTION**
- Action Type: Approval Required
- Route Using: Approval Group
- Approval Group: IT Spend Approvers

### Setting Up Requisition Approval Task: Critical Choices

To facilitate the approvals setup process, the following preconfigured requisition approval elements are available:
- Requisition Approval task
- Stages
- Participants

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Requisition Approvals task in the Approval Management functional area to configure requisition approval rules.

The following figure depicts the stages seeded for requisition approvals and also indicates that the stages are seeded in sequence.

1. Header Preapproval Stage
2. Header Stage
3. Header Post Approval Stage
4. Post Approval FYI Stage

Approvals are routed through the seeded stages in the following sequence:
- Header Preapproval Stage
The following figure shows seeded participants in the header preapproval stage.

2. Header Stage

The following figure shows seeded participants in the header stage.

3. Header Postapproval Stage
The following figure shows seeded participants in the header postapproval stage.

4. Postapproval FYI Stage

The following figure shows seeded participants in the postapproval FYI stage.

There are four seeded stages for requisition approvals and within each stage, there are seeded participants. The non-FYI participants are seeded as rule based, which lets you pick the list builder (Supervisory, Position, Job Level, Single User, User-Defined Routing, and Approval Groups) that is applicable for your organization.

Line and distribution level rules can be defined within the stages with header dimension.

**Header Preapproval Stage**

This is used to route requisitions for preapproved requisitions, such as emergency requisitions.

Seeded Participants:

1. Requester FYI
   - The requester on every line for a requisition receives a requisition FYI notification. This allows requesters to be notified when a preparer creates a requisition on their behalf. Each requester on every requisition line is notified. The rule to notify the requester is available out of the box, hence you do not need to perform additional steps for this.

2. Preapproval Header Consensus
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. This participant requires approval from all approvers.
3. Preapproval Header First Responder Wins
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. The first responder to approve or reject represents the outcome of all remaining approvers.

4. Preapproval Header Hierarchy
   - Approvals are routed in serial for this participant.

**Header Stage**

The header stage is often used for fiscal approvals, based on the requisition amount.

**Seeded Participants:**

1. Header Hierarchy
   - Approvals are routed in serial. This participant is generally used for supervisory or position hierarchy-based routing.
   - The approvers returned based on all rules that apply in a serial participant are notified in sequence, even if the rules are evaluated against lines or distributions.

2. Header Hierarchy 2
   - Approvals are routed in serial.
   - If your organization has a requirement to have a second hierarchy-based routing in parallel to the Header Hierarchy participant, rules should be maintained in this participant.

3. Header Hierarchy 3
   - Approvals are routed in serial.
   - Similar to Header Hierarchy 2, this participant allows another hierarchy-based routing in parallel to Header Hierarchy and Header Hierarchy 2 participants.

4. Header Stage Consensus
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. This participant requires approval from all approvers.

5. Header Stage First Responder Wins
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. The first responder to approve or reject represents the outcome of all remaining approvers.

**Overriding Approvers**

If there are cases where requesters might need to change the starting approver for supervisory-based routings, approval routing rules can be created using the overriding approver attribute at the requisition header level. You can create approval and FYI rules using this attribute, as part of the rule condition or action.

**Note:**

If you set up the overriding approver attribute, you may also send an FYI task to the original system generated first approver notifying the original approver that they have been bypassed.

**Header Postapproval Stage**

This is used to route for post approvals.
Seeded Participants:

1. Header Consensus
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. This participant requires approval from all approvers.

2. Header First Responder Wins
   - Approvals are routed in parallel for this participant. This participant is more commonly used in conjunction with approval groups. The first responder to approve or reject represents the outcome of all remaining approvers.

3. Postapproval Header Hierarchy
   - Approvals are routed in serial for this participant.

Postapproval FYI Stage

The Post Approval FYI stage is created to send the requisition preparer an FYI notification on the outcome of the requisition approvals.

This stage is not available in the BPM Worklist or Approvals UI pages for configuration.

Note

You do not need to use all of the seeded stages and participant. However, if you do not need to use any of the seeded participants, you simply need to select the Enable or Disable action for the respective participant on the Manage Approval Task page.

Examples of Requisition Approval Policy

Acme Corp has agreements in place for most facilities and IT services. In addition, they have set up a supervisory hierarchy for approvals based on requisition amount. Joe Smith is Acme’s CEO and therefore has the designation of Top Worker in Hierarchy for the supervisory hierarchy.

This figure illustrates Acme’s approval policies. Depending on the purchase amount, the requisition is autoapproved, or must go through one, two, or three levels of supervisory approval.

**ACME CORP’s Approval Policies**

- If amount is less than or equal to $500 then auto approve.
- If amount is between $500 and $1000 then one level supervisory approval required.
- If amount is between $1000 and $2000 then two levels supervisory approval required.
- If amount is greater than $2000 then three levels supervisory approval required.
Rules in Header Hierarchy Participant:

1. No approvals required, such as self approved, for requisitions less than or equal to 500 USD.
   
   o Rule setup scenario:
   
   CONDITION
   Approval Amount is less than or equal to 500
   AND Functional Currency Code equals USD

   ACTION
   Action Type: Automatic
   Set Outcome To: Approved

   Displayed in the Conditions table as:

   AND
   Approval Amount is less than or equal to 500
   Functional Currency Code equals USD

2. One level of Supervisory hierarchy approval required for requisitions more than 500 USD and less than or equal to 1000 USD.

   o Rule setup scenario:

   CONDITION
   Approval Amount is greater than 500
   AND Approval Amount is less than or equal to 1000
   AND Functional Currency Code equals USD

   ACTIONS
   Action Type: Approval Required
   Route Using: Supervisory Hierarchy
   Approval Chain Of: Preparer
   Start With: Manager
   Number of Approval Levels: 1
   Top Worker in Hierarchy: Joe Smith

   Displayed in the Conditions table as:

   AND
   Approval Amount greater than 500
   Approval Amount less than or equal to 1000
   Functional Currency Code equals USD

3. Two levels of Supervisory hierarchy approval required for requisitions more than 1000 USD and less than or equal to 2000 USD.

   o Rule setup scenario:

   CONDITION
   Approval Amount is greater than 1000
   AND Approval Amount is less than or equal to 2000
   AND Functional Currency Code equals USD

   ACTIONS
   Action Type: Approval Required
   Route Using: Supervisory Hierarchy
   Approval Chain Of: Preparer
Start With: Manager  
Number of Approval Levels: 2  
Top Worker in Hierarchy: Joe Smith

Displayed in the Conditions table as:

AND

Approval Amount greater than 1000  
Approval Amount less than or equal to 2000  
Functional Currency Code equals USD

4. Three levels of supervisory approval required for requisitions more than 2000 USD.

   Rule setup scenario:

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   \text{CONDITION} & \quad \text{Approval Amount is greater than 2000} \\
   \text{AND} & \quad \text{Functional Currency Code equals USD} \\
   \text{ACTIONS} & \quad \text{Action Type: Approval Required} \\
   & \quad \text{Route Using: Supervisory Hierarchy} \\
   & \quad \text{Approval Chain Of: Preparer} \\
   & \quad \text{Start With: Manager} \\
   & \quad \text{Number of Approval Levels: 3} \\
   & \quad \text{Top Worker in Hierarchy: Joe Smith}
   \end{align*}
   \]

   Top Worker in Hierarchy: Joe Smith  
   AND

   Approval Amount is greater than 2000  
   Functional Currency Code equals USD

Scenario

Rules in Lines Preapproval Header Stage: Preapproval Header Hierarchy Participant:

1. If the requisition is an emergency request, the preparer’s manager’s approval is required before other approvers are notified.

   Rule setup scenario:

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   \text{IF} & \quad \text{Emergency Requisition equals Yes} \\
   \text{THEN} & \quad \text{Action Type = Approval Required} \\
   & \quad \text{Route Using = Supervisory Hierarchy} \\
   & \quad \text{Approval Chain Of = Requester} \\
   & \quad \text{Start With = Manager} \\
   & \quad \text{Number of Approval Levels = 1} \\
   & \quad \text{Top Worker in Hierarchy = Joe Smith}
   \end{align*}
   \]
Setting Up Self Service Procurement Task Driven Configuration: Explained

Task driven configuration is set up in the BPM Worklist Administration application. To manage task configuration, you must be a BPM Worklist administrator.

This table shows the default task configuration options for Oracle Fusion Self Service Procurement. For each configuration option the corresponding default value is listed, along with a description of the effect of the default value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Option</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Effect of Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task Aggregation</td>
<td>Once per task</td>
<td>Within the same task, if a participant is returned multiple times based on the approvals rules, then the participant will only receive one worklist task for action or review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow all participants to invite other participants</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>Participants can add other approval or FYI participants in the approval list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow participants to edit future participants</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>Participants can update participants remaining in the approval list who were not assigned the approval task. Note that participants cannot remove approver participants pre-defined in Approval Groups or generated by the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow initiator to add participants</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>A requisition preparer can insert ad-hoc approval or FYI participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable automatic claim</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>Enabled when a task is assigned to a position, role or a LDAP group. Since there can be multiple users in a position, role, or group, a user has to first claim the task to prevent multiple users from updating the task. This does not include approvals based on approval groups. Enabling auto claim will not require a participant to first claim before performing an action, hence reducing the number of steps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete task when participant chooses</td>
<td>Reject</td>
<td>The entire requisition approval task will be completed when a Reject action is performed by a participant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable early completion of parallel subtasks</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>The entire requisition approval task will be completed when a Reject action is performed by a participant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete parent tasks of early completing subtasks</td>
<td>Yes (checked)</td>
<td>The entire requisition approval task will be completed when a Reject action is performed by a participant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Approval Rules for Internal Material Transfer Requisitions: Explained

You can use approval rules to route and manage requisitions with internal material transfer line items.

Approval rules to route and manage requisitions with internal material transfer line items can be configured just as they can for purchase requisition line items. You can also use the Source Organization as a parameter in approval rules.

You can configure approval rules taking into consideration your internal material transfer requests. The 'Internal Transfer Requisition' approval attribute indicates whether all lines of the requisition are for internal material transfer or not. This allows you to decide on the approval routing for your internal transfer requisitions. In addition, you can define rule conditions based on the requisition line attributes source organization and source type.

If your organization does not require approvals for internally sourced items, you can configure a rule to bypass approvals when all lines in the requisition are sourced internally.

Manage Supplier Registration Approvals

Supplier Registration Approval: Explained

To support separate approval routing for the external supplier registration and internal supplier registration flows, there are two distinct approval tasks in AMX:

- Manage Supplier Registration Approvals
- Manage Internal Supplier Registration Approvals

Both the tasks are predefined with two stages:

- First Stage Approvals
- Second Stage Approvals

These stages are modeled as serial stages. All first stage approvals must be completed before the second stage approvals routing rules are executed.

Each stage includes three participants:

- Parallel Approval First Responder Wins
- Parallel Approval
- Serial Approval

First Stage Approvals

The parallel approval first responder wins participant is predefined with two approval rule policies:

- Route registration for prospective supplier to supplier administrator.
- Route registration for spend authorized supplier to supplier manager.

Second Stage Approvals

The second stage allows for additional approval rules to be run as a distinct set after the first stage approvals are completed.
Set Up Supplier Registration Approvals

The following preconfigured components facilitate the supplier registration approvals setup:

- Registration Approvals task
- Stages
- Participants
- Seeded approval policy

To access the supplier registration approvals tasks, in the **Setup and Maintenance** work area, go to the following:

- Offering: Procurement
- Functional Area: Approval Management

Use the Task: Manage Supplier Registration Approvals to configure approval routing rules for registrations submitted by external users of companies interested in becoming a supplier.

Use the Task: Manage Internal Supplier Registration Approvals to configure approval routing rules for registrations submitted by internal users on the company’s behalf.

The following figure shows the seeded supplier registration approval stages that are executed in Oracle Fusion Supplier Portal.

Approval rules configured in the seeded stages are executed in the following sequence:

1. First stage approvals
2. Second stage approvals (Only executed after all first stage approvals are completed.)

The following figure shows the first stage approvals.
The following figure shows the second stage approvals that are executed after all first stage approvals are completed.
Approval Stages
Approvals to review supplier registration requests happen in a flexible two-stage process.

Within each stage, there are three seeded rule-based participants. You can pick a routing type (Supervisory, Position, Job Level, Single User, and User-Defined Approval Groups) to configure the list of approvers entitled to receive the document for approval.

You do not need to use all of the seeded stages and participants. You can disable unused participants by selecting the unused participant on the Manage Approvals Task page and clicking the Disable button.

Disabled Rules or Participants will not be evaluated. For example, if the participant is already disabled, then no rules within that participant will be evaluated. The same applies for disabled rules.

First Stage Approvals
Based on your supplier registration approval requirements, choose which seeded participants should have approval rules configured since each participant has a different approval routing behavior.

The three seeded participants are:

- **Parallel Approval First Responder Wins**
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. The first responder to approve or reject the request defines the outcome of all remaining approvers.

- **Parallel Approval**
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. Approval is required from all approvers.

- **Serial Approval**
  Approvals are routed in serial. The approval is completed sequentially from approver to approver.

Second Stage Approvals
Seeded participants are similar to those in the first stage with similar routing properties:

- **Parallel Approval First Responder Wins**
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. The first responder to approve or reject the request defines the outcome of all remaining approvers.

- **Parallel Approval**
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. Approval is required from all approvers.

- **Serial Approval**
  Approvals are routed in Serial. The approval is completed sequentially from approver to approver.

Seeded Approval Policy
The following approval rules are seeded.

Approval rules are seeded in the first stage participant: Parallel Approval First Responder Wins. You can modify or delete the seeded rules.

- If supplier registration has business relationship of Prospective, then route to supplier administrator.
- If supplier registration has business relationship of Spend Authorized, then route to supplier managers.
Supplier Managers are derived from the users defined in procurement agents. All procurement agents with Manage Suppliers function for the BU that the registration was created will receive the approval notification.

Even if new rules are not configured, the seeded rule will execute unless it is deleted.

Note: You can, at any point of time, modify or delete the seeded rule.

Options to Configure Supplier Registration and Supplier Profile Change Request

To configure the supplier registration and self service supplier profile change request approval requirements, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to Offering: Procurement, Functional Area: Suppliers, and Task: Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Request.

Supplier Registration

You can configure the supplier registration process based on the expected supplier business relationship of a supplier.

You can define two separate registration flows based on the intended business relationship.

- Spend Authorized Supplier requests: Companies already identified for a procurement need are directed by the buying organization to the spend authorized registration flow. The flow captures more rigorous profile information needed before agreements, orders, and invoices can be transacted. For example, a spend authorized company registering can be required to provide bank account information.
- Prospective Supplier requests: Unknown companies are presented with the prospective supplier flow. They must only provide minimal profile information to participate in the sourcing and supplier qualification activities.

Possible profile components that you can include during a registration flow include:

- Organization Details: Basic supplier information including the supplier name.
- Contacts: Supplier contact information.
- Contact User Account: User accounts control privileges for Supplier Portal contacts.
- Addresses: Company addresses including associated contacts.
- Business Classifications: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
- Bank Accounts: Supplier banking information.
- Products and Services: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
- Qualifications Questionnaire: Additional questions for suppliers.

When you configure the two supplier registration flows you identify which profile attributes the supplier sees. Also you can specify whether the supplier must enter a value for the attribute.

- Enabled: The attribute is displayed to the supplier, but the supplier is not required to enter information.
- Required: The supplier must supply information for this attribute.

Note: Your supplier registration configuration applies to suppliers from all registration sources.
Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources

A supplier registration can come from one of the following three sources:

- Internal Sourcing Invitation: Internal users can register and add a supplier as part of negotiation creation.
- Internal Supplier Request: Internal Supplier Request can be raised by registering from the Suppliers work area or by requesting a new supplier from the Self Service Procurement work area.
- External request from the supplier when self-registering using your organization’s external supplier registration website.

In the Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources region, you identify the default business relationship for each registration flow. The default business relationship determines what profile information is included as configured for the registration page.

Require Supplier Identifier

For Self Service Procurement, there is an option to enforce requesters to provide at least one of these attribute values: D-U-N-S Number, Taxpayer ID, or Tax Registration Number.

Post Approval Options

Once a new supplier's registration is approved, or its status promoted to spend authorized, the application automatically creates site assignments for any new sites defined for that supplier. However, you can retain control over how the supplier’s site assignments are created by deselecting the check box Autocreate site assignments for spend authorized suppliers. If you deselect this check box, site assignments for a supplier are no longer created automatically. You must create them manually.

Registration URL Encryption

When a prospective supplier saves the registration for later completion, the application sends an email to the prospective supplier containing the registration URL. The URL contains an identifier which is encrypted using an encryption key. This prevents users from altering the URL to view registrations submitted by other companies.

If you suspected that registrations have been tampered with, you can regenerate the encryption key. The encryption key is regenerated for the registration URLs used for spend authorization, saved for later, and returned for resubmission. However, if you regenerate the encryption key, the registration request URL for spend authorization business relationship available through the setup page Configure Procurement Business Function changes and therefore old and saved URLs will not work. Also, registrations that were saved for later or returned for resubmission will no longer be accessible to potential suppliers.

Supplier Registration URLs

You use different supplier registration URLs for each business relationship type (prospective and spend authorized). Your suppliers can then use the appropriate URL to register with your company. Each URL contains a parameter for the business relationship type that navigates your supplier to a registration page.

You can set the registration URL for each business relationship type on the Configure Procurement Business Function page. You can set URLs for both prospective supplier registration and spend authorized registration.

Supplier Profile Change Request

Use the Supplier Profile Change Request tab to configure the approval requirement settings for changes to supplier profile attributes through a change request. The settings apply to supplier-initiated profile change requests and to change requests resulting from Supplier Qualification or Sourcing questionnaires.

The values you set here apply to supplier profile change requests from the following sources:

- Suppliers
- Supplier Qualification
Supplier Negotiation

Supplier profiles can also be changed by internal users. Updates to bank account changes by internal users are submitted to an approval process. See Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained.

The Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Requests task does not configure supplier profile changes made by internal users.

You can specify approval requirements for prospective and spend authorized suppliers for the following entities:

- **Organization Details**: Basic supplier information including the supplier name and supplier profile level descriptive flexfields.
- **Contacts**: Supplier contact information including supplier contact descriptive flexfields.
- **Contact User Account**: User accounts that control account privileges for supplier contacts to use Supplier Portal.
- **Addresses**: Company addresses including associated contacts including supplier address descriptive flexfields.
- **Business Classifications**: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
- **Bank Accounts**: Supplier banking information.
- **Payment Methods**: The method used to pay the supplier.
- **Products and Services**: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
- **Tax Identifiers**: Tax organization, tax country, and taxpayer ID to identify the supplier for tax purposes.
- **Site Details**: Site information such as the address and site purpose (spend authorized suppliers only).

For each profile attribute, you can specify:

- **No Approval Required**: Change request is approved.
- **Approval Required**: Change request is routed for approval.

Configuration of the Site Details attribute for prospective suppliers is not available.

**Related Topics**

- **Supplier Products and Services Categories**
- **Supplier Registration Process**
- **Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained**

### Approval Task

In many end-to-end business processes human intervention is required such as for approving documents, managing exceptions, or performing activities required to advance the business process. The document approval request tasks allow you to send approval requests to approvers enabling them to make decisions and thus advancing the request-to-pay business process.

You create different approval task for each approval need, based on the business it serves. For example, you might create approval tasks for purchase requisitions approvals; expense reports approvals, and so on.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following tasks to set up approvals for procurement document objects:

- **Manage Requisition Approvals**, found in the Approval Management and Self Service Procurement functional areas
Managing Purchasing Document Approvals, found in the Approval Management functional area

- Use the Managing Purchasing Document Approvals task to create approval rules for both agreements and purchase orders.

Based on your unique business requirements, administrators can choose to send the approval request to approvers in parallel or in sequence. Approvals can be sought using single approver, supervisory chain, position, job level hierarchy, or using a list of approvers.

This figure shows the structural hierarchy of the components used in setting up an approval request task: Stage, Participant and Rule.

- A stage includes a dimension, participant and rule.
- The participant includes a routing type, voting regime and rule.
- The rule includes a condition and action.

**Stage**
A stage allows you to organize approval routing rules into logical groupings. Each stage is associated with a dimension. A dimension contains a set of attributes at a specific purchasing document level, such as header or lines, which can be used to author routing rules. Approval actions within each stage must be completed before entering the next stage.

**Participant**
There can be many participants within a stage. Properties set on the participants determine whether approvals would be routed in serial or in parallel.

Oracle Fusion Procurement is seeded with one or more participants within each stage to enable flexibility in document approvals routing.
The following are two properties defined on a participant:

- **Routing Type**: The supported routing types are: Serial, Parallel and FYI. FYI participants cannot directly impact the outcome of a task, but in some cases can provide comments or add attachments.
- **Voting Regime**: The supported voting regimes are: Serial, Consensus, and First Responder Wins.

**Rule**

Approval rules are routing policies or rules that determine the approvers or FYI recipients for a business transaction.

- **Condition**: The IF clauses in an approval rule and evaluated to either true or false. For the rule to apply to a transaction, all of its conditions must be true. An example of a condition is: If requisition approval amount is less than 500 USD, or if requisition approval amount is between 500 USD and 10000 USD.
- **Action**: Instruction to include a given set of approvers within an approval rule.

**Related Topics**

- Approval Management Configuration Options for Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management: Explained
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

---

**Manage Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals**

**Setting Up Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals Task: Critical Choices**

Enable the Approve Internal Changes on Supplier Bank Accounts feature to require changes made to supplier bank accounts by internal users to be reviewed and approved. Configure approval rules for these changes appropriate to your buying organization’s policies. These user-defined rules determine the approvers responsible for reviewing and approving changes to bank accounts.

**Configure Internal Supplier Change Request Approval Rules**

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Internal Supplier Profile Change Approvals setup task to configure internal supplier profile change request approval rules. Find the task in the Approval Management functional area.

The setup task approval configuration does not include any seeded approval rules. You must configure at least one approval rule in one of the available stages in order to use the feature.

For information about supplier profile change request approvals, see Supplier Profile Change Request Approval: Explained.

**Manage Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approval Attributes**

Use the Bank Accounts Changed attribute in rule conditions for internal supplier profile change request approvals.

**Related Topics**

- Supplier Profile Change Request Approval
- Set Up Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals
- Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained
Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approval: Explained

Approval is required for internal user bank account changes made at the supplier, address, or site level.

Use the Supplier Profile Change Request page to approve changes initiated by internal users, such as bank account changes. See Supplier Profile Change Request Approval: Explained for details.

Requested changes to bank accounts are applied to the supplier profile only when the request is approved. While the request is pending approval, the rest of the profile is still available for editing, and these changes are applied immediately when submitted.

After submitting a bank account change for approval, you cannot make additional bank account changes until the approval process is complete, or the submitted changes are canceled.

Use the Supplier page to view pending change request details. Click View Change Request to display the Profile Change Request page, which shows the supplier attribute changes that have been submitted.

You can also cancel the request by clicking Cancel Change Request.

Review Internal Supplier Bank Account Changes

Internal supplier profile change requests are distributed to approvers as a notification. They also appear on the supplier Overview page in the Supplier Profile Change Requests Pending Approval section.

Use the Supplier Profile Change Request page to review and manage internal supplier bank account changes for an internal supplier profile change request. Access it by clicking the change request link in the Notifications dialog.

Changes to attributes are indicated with the Changed icon adjacent to the bank account row. To see what was changed, click the Details icon. The Change Details dialog box shows which attributes were changed, and the values before and after the proposed change.

Related Topics

- Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained
- Internal Supplier Profile Bank Account Change: Explained

Task Life Cycle Setup

Define When to Automatically Dismiss or Withdraw Workflow Tasks

Only workflow tasks with a final status, such as Completed or Withdrawn, can be purged and removed from users' worklists. Tasks go from the Assigned status to the Completed status when the final assignee approves or rejects the tasks, or, with for your information (FYI) tasks, when assignees explicitly dismiss the tasks. If assignees don't take actions that result in a final task status, within a certain period of time, then the tasks are automatically dismissed (FYI tasks) or withdrawn (all other tasks).
When Tasks are Eligible for Automatic Dismissal or Withdrawal

The **FYI Notifications Expiration Period** profile option determines when FYI tasks are eligible for automatic dismissal. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values

On the Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values page:

- Leave the profile option with the default value of 7, or replace it with a different number.
- The profile value represents the number of days after the FYI task is created.

When assignees don’t read or dismiss an FYI task within the specified number of days after the task was created, the task is then eligible to be automatically dismissed. All other tasks are eligible for automatic withdrawal when assignees don’t take action to send the task to a final status within six months after the task was created.

When Eligible Tasks Are Automatically Dismissed or Withdrawn

Different processes run to automatically dismiss eligible FYI tasks or withdraw all other eligible tasks.

- **FYI Tasks:** The process runs every three days, starting the first day of each month. For example, it runs on May 1, 4, 7, and so on, and again on June 1 and every three days after. So, if you leave the FYI Notifications Expiration Period profile value at 7, then depending on when the process runs, an FYI task can be automatically dismissed within seven to ten days after it’s created. The process changes the FYI task status from Assigned to Completed.

- **All Other Tasks:** The process runs every three days, starting the second day of each month. For example, it runs on May 2, 5, 8, and so on, and again on June 2 and every three days after. The process changes the status of eligible tasks to Withdrawn.

**Related Topics**

- Set Profile Option Values
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

How Workflow Tasks Are Archived and Purged

Workflow tasks with a final status, such as Completed or Expired, can be archived and purged. Archiving keeps a copy of the task data for audit, data retention or analysis, and other purposes. Purging removes the completed tasks from users’ worklists and permanently deletes the original data.

**Archive**

Tasks are automatically archived once a month without you doing any setup. You can’t change or stop this automatic archive. You can, however, also run the Archive Workflow Tasks scheduled process as needed; for example, you need the latest data archived immediately for reporting purposes. The process includes all eligible tasks that aren’t yet archived.

Archived data includes task details, approval history, comments, and attachments. How you view or use the archived data depends on the products you’re using. For example, the data might be displayed in a table on a page, or available through a business intelligence subject area that you can select to create an analysis.
Purge
Archived tasks that were last updated over 30 days ago are immediately purged after the monthly automatic archive, without you doing any setup. You can't change or stop this automatic purge.

Related Topics
• Submit Scheduled Processes and Process Sets

Set Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard
You can add the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region to My Dashboard, which is a blank dashboard by default. This region displays the workflow tasks assigned to the person using My Dashboard. After you add the Worklist region, select a value for the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval (ATK_HOME_PAGE_WORKLIST_TIMEOUT) profile option.

Adding the Region
To add the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region to My Dashboard:

1. Click Navigator > My Dashboard.
2. Click your user image or name in the global header, and select Edit Pages in the Administration menu group.
3. Click the Add Content button where you want to place the region.
4. Open the Application Content folder in the Add Content dialog box.
5. Click Add for the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals item.
6. Click Close.
7. Save your work, and then click the Close button.

Defining the Timeout Interval
When users open My Dashboard and it contains the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region, data for the region is retrieved. The Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval profile option determines how long to continue retrieving before timing out and displaying no data. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

• Functional Area: Application Extensions
• Task: Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Note: If you don't see this task, then make sure that the Application Toolkit Component Maintenance feature is enabled at the offering level in the Offerings work area.

On the Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values page, set the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval profile option.

• If you don't set a value for this profile option, which is blank by default, then the region doesn't time out.
• Retrieving data for the Worklist region affects the performance of My Dashboard as a whole. So, select a value for this profile option if your users have the Worklist region on My Dashboard and notice performance issues.

After the timeout, users can refresh the region to try retrieving the data again.

Related Topics
• Set Profile Option Values
• Configuring Offerings: Procedure
Electronic Signature

Configure Electronic Signature for Purchasing Documents

Before your organization can use electronic signature functionality for purchasing documents, you must enable the feature and perform some setup steps. After the setup is complete, authorized users in your organization can use the electronic signature functionality with purchase agreements, purchase orders and change orders.

To set up electronic signature for purchasing documents, you must complete following tasks:

- Obtain a license from and register with the supported third-party electronic signature service provider.
- Enable the feature in the Procurement offering.
- Set up the Manage Electronic Signature page.

Registering with a Service Provider

Your organization must first obtain a license directly from DocuSign, the supported third-party electronic signature service provider. After the license is obtained, you must set up an account for your organization on the DocuSign web site. You must add individual users in your organization as members to the account. These are users, such as buyers, who require the ability to send purchasing documents for electronic signature.

Enabling the Feature

Enable the electronic signature for purchasing documents feature signed in as a Procurement Application Administrator. In the Offerings area, enable the Enable Electronic Signature for Procurement Documents feature:

- Offering: Procurement
- Functional Area: Procurement Contracts

*Note:* When you enable the feature, the Require Signature option is available to users on the create order, agreement and change order pages.

Setting up the Manage Electronic Signature Page

While signed in as Procurement Application Administrator, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Configure Electronic Signature for Procurement Documents task in the Procurement Contracts functional area to set up electronic signature for purchasing documents. On the Manage Electronic Signature page, enter the administrative account information for your organization from the setup on the DocuSign web site. Validate and save the information.

*Note:* If you have already set up this page for the Contracts offering, you don’t have to set it up again for the Procurement offering.

Related Topics

- Managing Setup Using Offering Functional Areas: Procedure
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
10 Define Help Configuration

Overview of Setting Up Help

Applications Help and help windows work without you having to set anything up. You can do the optional setup, mainly if you want to create and edit help. Enable the help features you want, perform tasks in the Application Extensions functional area, and create and edit help content.

Help Features

In the Offerings work area, enable help features at the offering level. The features determine:

- What’s available in Applications Help
- What you can configure to set up help

The first feature for help is Local Installation of Help, and you must leave it selected. Other features are:

- Access to Internet-Based Help Features
- Help Content Management
- Security for Added Help

Help Configuration Tasks

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use these tasks in the Application Extensions functional area to set up help for all users:

- **Set Help Options:**
  - Determine if certain aspects of Applications Help are available to users.
  - Control how aspects of Applications Help work.
  - Determine if icons for help windows are shown by default on the pages where they’re available.

- **Assign Help Text Administration Duty:** Contact your security administrator to determine who can create and edit help.

- **Manage Help Security Groups:** Set up security to limit access to certain help files.

Help Content

After you set up help, you can review the predefined help and see if you want to add or edit any content. You can also modify help text that appears on the page, for example hints.
Set Help Options

Showing Help Icons by Default

Video

Watch: This tutorial shows you how to set help options so that help icons are shown by default for all users.

How can I show icons for help windows by default?
In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Set Help Options

On the Set Help Options page, select the Show help icons by default check box in the Show Help section. You just need to do this setup for one offering, and the setting applies to all users.

Every time users sign in, they can see help icons wherever available on the pages they use. To hide the icons, users can still click their user image or name in the global header and select Hide Help Icons, as well as select Show Help Icons to display the icons again.

Related Topics
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Set Up Access to Websites from Applications Help

You can determine the websites that users can access from Applications Help. Enable the features that make this access possible, and select the websites to make available to users.

Enabling Features
In the Offerings work area:

- Leave the Local Installation of Help feature enabled at the offering level.
- Enable the Access to Internet-Based Help Features feature at the offering level to allow access to websites from Applications Help. For example, some help files link to guides on the Oracle Help Center; this access is necessary for those links to work.

Selecting Websites
In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Set Help Options

In the Web Sites Available from Help Site section on the Set Help Options page, select the sites to link to. These links would appear in the Navigator menu in Applications Help.
Set Up for Creating and Editing Help

Users with the appropriate roles can edit predefined help or add their own files to help. To enable and set up for creating and editing help, do the following in the specified order.

Enabling Features
In the Offerings work area, configure the following features at the offering level.

- Leave the Local Installation of Help feature enabled.
- Enable the Help Content Management feature.
- Enable the Security for Added Help feature if you want certain help files to be available only to a restricted set of users.

⚠️ Caution: Don’t enable this feature if you don’t have this requirement, because the feature can affect performance.

Setting Help Options
Optionally set any of the following help options according to your requirements:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions
   - Task: Set Help Options
2. On the Set Help Options page, in the Help Site Appearance section, provide a source name and image used to identify files in Applications Help that were added or edited.
3. In the Oracle User Productivity Kit section, add a link from the Navigator in Applications Help to your User Productivity Kit library.
4. In the Privacy Statement section, add a link to your own privacy statement. To see this link, users click their user name in the global header of Applications Help.

Providing Users Access to Create and Edit Help
Only users with job roles containing the Manage Help Content (ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV) privilege can create and edit help. The Assign Help Text Administration Duty task is a reminder for you to follow up with your security administrator. Make sure that users who want to create and edit help have the access to do so.

Setting Up Help File Security
If you enabled the Security for Added Help feature, then use the Manage Help Security Groups task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. Select job roles to include in help security groups. When you or other users then create or edit a help file, they can select a group to determine which job roles have access to the file.

Related Topics
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
FAQs for Set Help Options

Why can't I see certain sections on the Set Help Options page?
What's available on the page depends on the help features that you enable in the Offerings work area. This table describes the correlation between features and specific sections on the Set Help Options page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Help Feature</th>
<th>Section on Set Help Options Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Installation of Help</td>
<td>None, but without enabling this feature, you can't enable the other help features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to Internet-Based Help Features</td>
<td>Web Sites Available from Help Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help Content Management</td>
<td>Help Site Appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oracle User Productivity Kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Privacy Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security for Added Help</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When do I link to the Oracle User Productivity Kit library from Applications Help?
If you license Oracle User Productivity Kit and have your own User Productivity Kit content to share with your users. Topics that you add as help files in Applications Help are available only in the See It mode. However, in the library, users can see the same topic in other modes. If you have User Productivity Kit versions earlier than 3.6.1, then you can't add User Productivity Kit topics as help files. So the link to the library is the only way users can get your User Productivity Kit content from Applications Help.

What's the URL for my Oracle User Productivity Kit library?
The full path from the Web server where you're hosting your Oracle User Productivity Kit content to the `index.html` file that opens the table of contents for the library. For example, `http://<your_domain>.com/MyContent/PlayerPackage/index.html`.
In this example, you or your administrator published one player package that contains all the content to be linked to from Applications Help, including the `index.html` file, and placed the PlayerPackage folder in a folder called MyContent on the Web server.

FAQs for Assign Help Text Administration Duty

How can I show icons for help windows by default?
In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
• Task: Set Help Options

On the Set Help Options page, select the **Show help icons by default** check box in the Show Help section. You just need to do this setup for one offering, and the setting applies to all users.

Every time users sign in, they can see help icons wherever available on the pages they use. To hide the icons, users can still click their user image or name in the global header and select **Hide Help Icons**, as well as select **Show Help Icons** to display the icons again.

**Related Topics**

• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

---

**Who can create, edit, and manage help?**

Users with the **Manage Help Content (ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV)** privilege can create and edit:

• Help in Applications Help and help windows
• Pages in the Getting Started work area

This privilege is assigned by default to the administrators for product families. Your security administrator can define which users have job roles with this privilege.

---

**Manage Help Security Groups**

**Create Groups to Limit Access to Specific Help Files**

This example shows how to create a help security group, which contains a set of job roles. You can later assign the help security group to particular help files so that only users with any of the included job roles have access to the help.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What type of users do you need to limit help access to?</td>
<td>Human resources (HR) specialists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a specific time period for which this access is needed?</td>
<td>No, the help files should always be viewed only by the HR specialists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do you want this group to appear in the list of values for help security groups?</td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define a help security group and assign a job role to the group.

**Prerequisites**

1. In the Offerings work area, make sure that the Local Installation of Help feature is enabled at the offering level.
Creating the Help Security Group

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions
   - Task: Manage Help Security Groups
3. Complete the fields, as shown in this table. Leave the start and end dates blank.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Help Security Group</td>
<td>HR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>HR Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Viewing by HR specialists only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Sequence</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Save.
5. With your new help security group selected, go to the Associated Roles section and add a new row.
6. Select PER_HUMANRESOURCE_SPECIALIST as the role name.
7. Click Save and Close.

To assign your new help security group to help files, you must create or edit help using the Manage Help Content page, not help windows.

Related Topics
- How can I limit access to specific help files
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Help File Management

Overview of Managing Help Files

If you have the appropriate roles, then you can add and edit help files in Applications Help and help windows (which users open using help icons on the pages they work in). You can also determine which help files appear in which help windows, and which product family page a file belongs to in Applications Help.

What you can do to a help file depends on whether it’s added or predefined.

- Added:
  - Create, duplicate, edit, and delete
  - Set status (Active or Inactive)
• **Predefined:**
  - Duplicate
  - Edit (which is really creating a copy of the predefined file that you can modify)
  - Set status

**Navigation**
This table describes where to go to manage help.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Help Management Task</th>
<th>Navigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create or edit help for a specific help window.</td>
<td>Click the <strong>Manage Help Content</strong> link in the help window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit any help file, including glossary terms.</td>
<td>Open the file in Applications Help and click the <strong>Edit</strong> link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perform any help file management task, including managing a set of help, such as all help for a product.</td>
<td>Go to Applications Help and click your user image or name in the global header to select Manage Help Content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make a copy of all added help for testing, migration, or other purposes.</td>
<td>Create a configuration package then use the export and import in the Setup and Maintenance work area. The configuration package must include either:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Application Extensions functional area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A source implementation project that contains the Define Help Configuration task list, with the following objects selected to export:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o Help Configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o Help Topic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Topics**
- How can I limit access to specific help files
- Sources for Help Files
- Manage Help in Help Windows
- Exporting Setup Data Using Offering or Functional Area: Procedure

**Types of Help**
Applications Help has many types of help content: examples, FAQs, glossary terms, help topics, PDF guides, and videos.

**Example**
Examples can provide:
- Real use cases to illustrate how and when to do something
• Scenarios to explain abstract concepts

Worked examples show exactly what you do to achieve a specific result. They emphasize decisions that you make and values that you enter.

FAQ
FAQs, or frequently asked questions, provide brief answers to questions that you might have about a task or page. For example, they can explain:

• What a term means
• Why something happened
• How you can perform an action
• What happens if you perform the action

Glossary Term
Glossary terms provide definitions for words or phrases used in help content. In a help file, terms that have glossary definitions are presented as links. When you see terms underlined with dots, you can hover over the term to see its definition. To see the whole glossary, select Glossary from the Navigator menu in Applications Help.

Help Topic
Help topics can:

• Explain key concepts
• Tell you the steps to follow to perform tasks
• Help you make decisions by explaining points to consider or describing the options you have
• Show you how application components work together
• Provide reference, overview, and other information

PDF Guide
PDF guides provide information in a book format. The guides in Applications Help contain content that you usually can’t find in other help types.

Note: Most of the examples, FAQs, and help topics in Applications Help are also in guides. To see these guides, select Documentation Library from the Navigator menu in Applications Help.

Video
Videos, or tutorials, show you how to complete a short task or part of a task. Videos can also give you an overview of complex dashboards and work areas.

Assign Help Locations
To determine which help windows your help file appears in, assign the appropriate help locations to the file. You also use help locations to define where help files appear in the Task and Product filters in Applications Help, as well as which product family tabs the files belong to. Help locations include:

• Task hierarchy for the Task filter and product family tabs
• Product hierarchy for the Product filter and product family tabs
• Page or section values for help windows

Help locations are available only on the Manage Help Content page in Applications Help, not the Manage Help Content dialog box from help windows. When you create help from the help window, the help files are automatically assigned to the help window and task hierarchies associated with the window.

Determining Where Help Appears in the Task Filter, Product Filter, and Product Family Tabs
Enter at least one hierarchy, as many as you need:

1. In Applications Help, click your user name in the global header and select Manage Help Content.
2. Find the help file to edit or duplicate, or click Create.
3. Enter or update the general information for the help file.
4. In the Help Location section, add a row if there isn’t already a blank one, or edit an existing row.
5. Select Task or Product for the hierarchy type.
6. Select nodes for as many levels of the hierarchy as you need, starting with level 1. If the Task hierarchy nodes you’re assigning are at level 4 or lower, then click the Details icon to assign nodes.
7. Add more rows as needed.
8. Save your work.

Selecting Help Windows
Every page or section value is associated with a specific node in the Task hierarchy. When users click More Help from a help window, they get all the help files that are assigned to the same Task node as the page or section value.

To determine the help windows that a help file appears in:

1. Enter the Task hierarchy that’s associated with the help window, as described in the previous procedure, to narrow down the available page or section values.

Note: For any help window for specific objects in the Setup and Maintenance, Offerings, and New Features work areas, select this hierarchy:
   o Hierarchy: Task
   o Level 1: Functional Setup
     Such objects include offerings, functional areas, features, task lists, and tasks.

2. Select the page or section in the same row.

If you know the exact page or section you want, then you can select the value without entering a Task hierarchy. The associated hierarchy automatically fills in the rest of the row.

Related Topics
• Page or Section Values
• Manage Help in Help Windows
• Add Help to Getting Started Panels in Applications Help
Guidelines for Links in Help Files

When you create or edit help, follow best practices when you include links to help files or other content. If you’re duplicating a predefined help file, then you may see existing links. The types of links that you can work with include:

- Related help links
- Standard hypertext links
- Links to documentation library content
- Glossary term links

For all link types, except the standard hypertext links, you must create or edit help with a Text or Desktop File source type. For standard hypertext links, the source type can also be URL.

Related Help Links

Related help is the section at the end of help files that contains links to other help files. The syntax for related help contains a comma-separated list of title IDs that represent help files, for example:

```
OfaRelatedTopics(CREATE_AUTOMATIC_CRITERIA_S_0000, JOURNAL_ENTRIES_HOW_THEY_RE_RECORD_E_0000)
```

In this example, the help file has two links to related help.

- To remove all related help, delete this code.
- To remove individual links, delete only title IDs (for example, `CREATE_AUTOMATIC_POSTING_CRITERIA_S_0000`).
- To replace existing links or add new links, retain the code syntax and enter the appropriate title IDs. To find title IDs, search for the help files on the Manage Help Content page. Show the Title ID column in the search results if the column is hidden.

Standard Hypertext Links

You can create standard hypertext links to any file or Web site as long as you make sure that the links are valid and stable. These links can appear anywhere in the body of your help file as long as they come before any related help links.

If you’re working on a help file with the Text source type:

1. In the Help Content section of the Create or Edit Help page, highlight what you want to use as link text.
2. Click the Add Link icon.
3. Enter the full URL, for example http://www.oracle.com.

Tip: To find the URL for a help file that you want to link to, open that help file in Applications Help, and click the Bookmark link.

Links to Documentation Library Content

The syntax for links to HTML files in documentation libraries is:

```
```

In this example, `WCSUG4636` is the anchor ID and `Understanding Tags` is the link text. You can:

- Change the link by replacing the existing anchor ID, editing the link text, or both.
- Remove the link by deleting all the code for it.
Create links to documentation library content by following the same syntax. These links can appear anywhere in the body of your help file as long as they come before any related help links.

Note: To ensure that you’re linking to a supported documentation library, enter anchor IDs only from documentation libraries that are linked from predefined help.

Glossary Term Links
Glossary term links provide definitions in a note box when users hover over the term in help files. The syntax for glossary term links is:

```
OfaGlossaryTerm("accounting period", ACCOUNTING_PERIOD_0001)
```

In this example, `accounting period` is the link text, or glossary term, and `ACCOUNTING_PERIOD_001` is the identifier, or title ID.

- To remove the link but retain the text, delete all the code except the term itself.
- To add glossary term links, you must follow the link syntax and use the correct title ID for the glossary term. To find title IDs, search for the glossary terms on the Manage Help Content page. Show the Title ID column in the search results if the column is hidden.

If your help file has the Desktop File source type, then make sure before uploading that the quotes around glossary terms are actual quotation marks in raw HTML, not `&QUOT`. Otherwise, quotation marks will appear when users view the help file.

Edit PDF Guides
This example demonstrates how to modify a PDF guide that came with Applications Help. This guide is currently not available from any help window.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What changes do you need to make to the guide?</td>
<td>Change the title of the guide and hide all the content that’s not about a particular subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Should the modified guide appear in any help window?</td>
<td>Yes, the help window for the Manage Administrator Profile Values page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which products and tasks should the modified guide be assigned to?</td>
<td>Same as the original guide, plus the task associated with the help window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to limit access to the modified guide?</td>
<td>No, same as the original guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to tag the modified guide with a role for the Role filter?</td>
<td>Yes, the Application Administrator or Implementor role</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Copying and Editing the PDF Guide
1. Open the original PDF guide in Applications Help and save a copy to your desktop. Leave the help file for the guide open.
2. Using a PDF editor application, change the title of the guide wherever it appears. Delete the content you want to hide from users.

Replacing the Original PDF Guide
1. In the help file that you still have open for the original PDF guide, click the Edit link. You automatically create a copy of the predefined help file that you can edit.
2. On the Create Help page, use the default values except where indicated.
3. Update the title to the name that you want to display to users.
4. In the File Name field, browse for and select your modified guide.
5. Delete any keywords or parts of the description relevant to the content you removed from the PDF guide.
6. From the Roles list, select Application Administrator or Implementor.
7. Add a row in the Help Location table.
8. Click the icon in the Details column for the new row, and complete the fields, as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hierarchy</td>
<td>Task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Functional Setup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Perform Functional Setup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Set Application Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 4</td>
<td>Define Profiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Click OK.
10. Select Manage Profile Option Values page in the Page or Section column.
11. Click Save and Close. The help file for the original PDF guide is automatically set to inactive.

Related Topics
- How can I limit access to specific help files
- What happens when I edit predefined help
- What’s the difference between assigning a role and a security group to a help file

Add User Productivity Kit Content
This example demonstrates how to add an Oracle User Productivity Kit topic as a video help file in Applications Help.

Note: Your topic must be made with User Productivity Kit 3.6.1 or later to be added as help.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.
Decisions to Consider | In This Example
---|---
What User Productivity Kit content do you want to add to help? | One topic from a module with five topics
Should the topic appear in any help window? | Yes, the help window for the Overview page in the Scheduled Processes work area

For this scenario:

1. Generate a report of User Productivity Kit document IDs, to identify the User Productivity Kit topic when you create your help file.
2. Publish the module as a player package.
3. Create a help file for the User Productivity Kit topic.

Generating a User Productivity Kit Document ID Report

1. In the User Productivity Kit Developer, select **Details View**.
2. Right-click any column header, for example Name, and select **Column Chooser**.
3. In the Column Chooser dialog box, move the Document ID column header after the Name column.
4. Close the Column Chooser dialog box.
5. From the File menu, select to print, and save the output as a Microsoft Excel file to your desktop.

Publishing the Module as a Player Package

1. From the Developer, make sure that the topic that you want to add as a help file has the See It play mode. The topic can also have other modes, but only the See It mode is included in your help file.
2. Publish the module, specifying any location for the output and selecting to publish the selection only.
3. In the Formats section of the Publish Content window, select the **Player** check box in the **Deployment** check box group.
4. In the Player section, select the **Include HTML Web Site** check box. Your help file includes a text-only version of the User Productivity Kit topic.
5. Finish the publishing process, after optionally setting other options.
6. Go to where you specified the output to be generated.
7. In the Publishing Content folder, copy the PlayerPackage folder and add it to the Web server where you store User Productivity Kit content.

Creating a Help File for the Topic

1. Open the Scheduled Processes work area.
2. Open the help window for the Overview page, and click **Manage Help Content**.
3. Click **Create**.
4. In the Create Help dialog box, complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source</strong></td>
<td>Oracle User Productivity Kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>File Location</strong></td>
<td>The full URL of the player package folder on the Web server, for example, http://&lt;your domain&gt;.com/ MyContent/ PlayerPackage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Document ID</strong></td>
<td>The document ID of the User Productivity Kit topic to add to the help window on the Scheduled Processes Overview page. Copy and paste this ID from the Microsoft Excel file that you generated earlier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Help Type</td>
<td>Video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic Title</td>
<td>The name of the User Productivity Kit topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keywords</td>
<td>Terms relevant to the topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Summary of the topic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Save and Close**.

**FAQs for Help File Management**

**What happens to my help files after a release update?**
Nothing happens to the help files you create or edit. Upgrades affect only predefined help files, active or inactive.

Take a look at any inactive predefined file that’s updated to see if you want to:
- Activate the updated version.
- Make similar edits to your version of that file, if any.

**Embedded Help Management**

**Manage Help That Appears on the Page**
You can create, edit, or delete help that you see on the page, for example hints for buttons or text in help windows. There are different types of such embedded help. Embedded help doesn’t include help that you open using links in help windows, or help that you find in Applications Help.

**Creating, Editing, or Deleting Embedded Help**
- Use Page Composer to edit, create, or delete hint text that appears when you hover over or click certain UI elements, for example buttons, icons, fields, and check boxes. Open the properties of the UI element to define the help text in the shortDesc field. Not all types of embedded help can be created or modified using Page Composer, for example help windows.
- Use the User Interface Text tool to edit the text for any type of embedded help, including informational text in help windows. You usually use this tool to make bulk changes, for example to change a phrase wherever it appears in any UI label, embedded help, messages, and so on.

**Related Topics**
- Modify Pages
- Page Component Properties
- Bulk Text Modification
- Manage Help in Help Windows
Configuring the Application Toolkit

Oracle Fusion Application Toolkit (ATK) provides many components that are available to users of all product families. These components include Applications Help, the Reports and Analytics pane, and the Watchlist. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Application Toolkit tasks in the Application Extensions functional area to set up some of these components.

Note: The tasks are available only if the Application Toolkit Component Maintenance feature is enabled.

Tasks

Use these tasks in the Application Extensions functional area:

- **Map Reports to Work Areas**: Determine what’s available in the Reports and Analytics pane for specific work areas.
- **Set Watchlist Options**: Define settings that affect what’s displayed in the Watchlist and how often items are refreshed.
- **Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values**: Set profile options to affect how some Application Toolkit components work.
- Use other Application Toolkit tasks in this functional area to set up help:
  - Set Help Options
  - Assign Help Text Administration Duty
  - Manage Help Security Groups

Related Topics

- Set Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard
- Overview of Setting Up Help

Map Reports to Work Area

Set Up the Reports and Analytics Panel Tab

You can find the Reports and Analytics panel tab in many work areas, and the analytics and reports you see in it depend on the work area. You can define what’s available for a specific work area, by mapping reports from the business intelligence (BI) catalog to that work area. In this mapping context, reports refer to both analytics and reports. Your changes apply to all users who have access to the work area you’re mapping.
Mapping Reports from Your Work Area

To map reports to the work area that you’re in:

1. Expand the Reports and Analytics panel tab.
2. Click the Edit Settings icon in the panel tab.
   
   You see all the reports that are currently mapped to your work area.
3. Click Select and Add.
4. Find the report in the catalog and select it.
5. Click OK.
6. To remove any mapping, select the report and click Remove.
7. Save your work.

Mapping Reports to Any Work Area

To map reports to any work area that you have access to:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area use the Map Reports to Work Areas task.
2. Select the application of the work area you want to map to.
3. Select the work area.
4. Click Search and see all the reports that are currently mapped to that work area.
5. Click Select and Add.
6. Find the report in the catalog and select it.
7. Click OK.
8. To remove any mapping, select the report and click Remove.
9. Save your work.

Tip: Click Synchronize to remove all mappings to any reports that are no longer in the catalog. You synchronize all work areas, not just the one you’re mapping.

Related Topics

- Why can’t I see reports when I edit settings for the Reports and Analytics panel tab
- Why can’t I see reports when mapping reports to work areas for the Reports and Analytics panel tab
- Reports and Analytics Work Area and Panel Tab

Set Up Reports for Scheduling

You can set up reports as scheduled processes, which means users can submit them from the Scheduled Processes and other work areas. If you want users to also submit these scheduled processes from the Reports and Analytics work area and panel tab, then you must configure properties for the corresponding reports.

Enabling a Report for Scheduling

To enable scheduling in the Reports and Analytics work area and panel tab:

1. In the Reports and Analytics work area or panel tab, edit the report in the business intelligence catalog.
2. Click Properties.
3. On the General tab in the Properties dialog box, enter the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Scheduler Job Package Name</td>
<td>The path for the job definition, for example: / oracle/ apps/ ess/&lt;product family&gt;/ &lt;product&gt;/ &lt;business area&gt;/ Jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Scheduler Job Definition Name</td>
<td>The job definition name (not display name), for example: ABCDEFG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Topics**

- How You Set Up Reports to Run as Scheduled Processes
- How You Access and Modify Report Components

## Set Watchlist Options

### Disable or Enable Watchlist Categories and Items

To disable or enable predefined Watchlist categories and items for all users, use the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- **Functional Area**: Application Extensions
- **Task**: Set Watchlist Options

Ultimately, what users see in their own Watchlist would be the categories and predefined items that you enable in the Set Watchlist Options page:

- Plus any saved searches that the user is using as Watchlist items
- Minus any categories or items that the user decides to hide using Watchlist preferences
- Minus any items with no results found, if the user decides to hide such items using Watchlist preferences

### Any Category or Item

When you disable any category or item, you also disable the processes that calculate the Watchlist item counts. These processes include creating data caches, performing security checks, calling services across domains, running queries, and so on.

### Predefined Watchlist Items

An item with the Predefined type represents the actual predefined Watchlist item that appears in the Watchlist. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The item isn’t available for users to display in their Watchlist.
- The item is removed from any Watchlist where it’s currently displayed.

If you disable a Watchlist category, then the category is not available for users to include in their Watchlist. All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.
User-Created Saved Search Watchlist Items
A Watchlist item with the User-Created Saved Search type doesn't appear in the Watchlist. It controls the display of the Manage Watchlist button on pages with saved searches. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The Manage Watchlist option isn't available on the corresponding page, so users can't use their own saved searches as Watchlist items.
- Any user-defined saved searches (from that page) already used as Watchlist items are removed from the users' Watchlist. The saved searches are still available for searching, but not for the Watchlist.

Watchlist Category
If you disable a Watchlist category, then:

- The category isn't available for users to include in their Watchlist.
- All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.

> Note: You can see the Watchlist icon in the global header only if your default home page layout is Panel or Banner.

Related Topics
- Overview of Refresh Intervals for Watchlist Items
- How can I change predefined Watchlist category and item names
- Create Watchlist Items
- Show or Hide Watchlist Items
- Why can't I see some icons in the global header

Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Set Up the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses
A contextual address is marked with an orange triangle, the More icon. When users hover over the triangle, an icon appears that they can click to display the address on a map. The Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option determines the mapping service which you must use to display the map. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Profile Option Default
By default, the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option has no value.

⚠️ Caution: Until you enter a valid value for this profile option, users continue to get an error when they try to open a map for any contextual address.
Profile Option Value
After you find and select the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option, enter a mapping service URL in the Profile Value column, for example:

- http://bing.com/maps/?v=2&encType=1&where1=

You can include parameters in the URL. For example, to avoid a locator box in Google Maps, add &iwloc=& to the URL. So, you would enter http://maps.google.com/maps?iwloc=&amp;&output=embed&q= as the profile value.

Related Topics
- Set Profile Option Values
- Why can’t I see the map for contextual addresses

Set Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard
You can add the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region to My Dashboard, which is a blank dashboard by default. This region displays the workflow tasks assigned to the person using My Dashboard. After you add the Worklist region, select a value for the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval (ATK_HOME_PAGE_WORKLIST_TIMEOUT) profile option.

Adding the Region
To add the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region to My Dashboard:

1. Click Navigator > My Dashboard.
2. Click your user image or name in the global header, and select Edit Pages in the Administration menu group.
3. Click the Add Content button where you want to place the region.
4. Open the Application Content folder in the Add Content dialog box.
5. Click Add for the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals item.
6. Click Close.
7. Save your work, and then click the Close button.

Defining the Timeout Interval
When users open My Dashboard and it contains the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region, data for the region is retrieved. The Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval profile option determines how long to continue retrieving before timing out and displaying no data. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Note: If you don’t see this task, then make sure that the Application Toolkit Component Maintenance feature is enabled at the offering level in the Offerings work area.

On the Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values page, set the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval profile option.
- If you don’t set a value for this profile option, which is blank by default, then the region doesn’t time out.
• Retrieving data for the Worklist region affects the performance of My Dashboard as a whole. So, select a value for this profile option if your users have the Worklist region on My Dashboard and notice performance issues.

After the timeout, users can refresh the region to try retrieving the data again.

Related Topics

• Set Profile Option Values

• Configuring Offerings: Procedure

• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
12 Maintain Common Reference Objects

Reference Objects: Overview

The Maintain Common Reference Objects task list contains tasks that support implementation of common functionality, such as data security, reference data sets, or general preferences.

Use this task list to manage common reference objects that are defined centrally and shared across applications. You can search for and access this task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

To make the Maintain Common Reference Objects task list available in your implementation project, go to the Offerings work area and enable the Maintain Common Reference Objects feature.

Related Topics

• Overview of Moving Common Reference Objects

Why can't I edit setup data?

The configuration of your setup data may be protected. Application developers mark some configurations as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

Some examples of configurations that may be protected are:

• Descriptive flexfields
• Extensible flexfield contexts
• Extensible flexfield pages
• Value sets
• Tree structures

How can I set general preferences for all users?

Use the Global Admin Preferences page to set general preferences such as language, currency, and time zone that affect all users. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

• Functional Area: Application Extensions
• Task: Set User General Preferences

⚠️ Caution: Use this task only if you want to update preferences for all users. To update preferences for a specific user, use the General Preferences page.

If you want to set the preferences for new users whose preferences haven't been set at all, select the Reset preferences for new users only check box. Selecting this option excludes all users whose preferences were set at some point in time.
Define Application Taxonomy

Overview of Application Taxonomy

Oracle application components and functions are organized in a hierarchy, ranging from product lines to logical business areas. The hierarchy represents a breakdown of products into units based on how applications are installed and supported.

In the Application Extensions functional area within your offering, search for the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy task and view the hierarchy on the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy page.

A detailed introduction to application taxonomy is provided in the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Hierarchy

- The application taxonomy hierarchy contains various levels and types of nodes, or modules.

  See: Characteristics of the Level Categories

  See: Benefits of a Logical Hierarchy

Usage

- Use application taxonomy to understand relationships among applications and between an application and its files. This information is helpful in managing various phases of the product life cycle.

  See: How to Manage the Life cycle

Modules in Application Taxonomy

The highest level of the hierarchy is product line, followed by the product family, application, and logical business area. There can be multiple levels of logical business areas, with one or more nested within a parent logical business area. A module is a node at any of these levels. Each level is briefly described here.

- Product Line: A collection of products associated with a single brand name, for example, Oracle Fusion.

- Product Family: A collection of products associated with a functional area that may or may not be licensed together as a single unit, for example Oracle Fusion Financials.

- Application: A single product within a product family, containing closely related features for a specific business solution, for example General Ledger.

- Logical Business Area: A collection of business object definitions organized into a logical grouping. It contains the model objects, services, and UI components for those business objects. Logical business areas have their own hierarchy levels and in some cases can be up to two or three levels deep.
Guidelines for Managing Modules in Application Taxonomy

In the application taxonomy hierarchy, when you create a module, it becomes a child of the currently selected node. Once created, you cannot delete the module or move it elsewhere in the hierarchy.

From the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy page, navigate to the Create Child Module or Edit Module page to manage the modules. As you create or edit modules, consider the following points regarding specific fields.

Identifiers
Module ID is the unique primary key for nodes in the taxonomy table. When you create a module, a unique read-only ID is automatically generated. The module contains two other identifiers: Module key and alternative ID. The module key is a string identifier, for example AP for the Oracle Fusion Payables application. The alternative ID is a numeric identifier, for example 1 for the Oracle Fusion product line. These additional identifiers are provided for the product line, product family, and application modules. However, you can optionally add them for logical business areas and new modules.

Note: Don’t change the module key or alternative ID for predefined modules.

The product code is relevant only to application and logical business area modules. You can leave the field blank for other module types. The product code for applications is the short name that can be displayed in lists of application values. For example, FND for Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application.

Names
Module name is the logical name for the module. The name must be unique among nodes within the hierarchy level with the same parent, but Oracle recommends keeping it unique in the entire hierarchy. The user name and description can appear to users in other parts of Oracle Applications Cloud.

Usage Types
Though you can update the usage type to reflect the current state of the module, just doing so does not affect the actual state. For example, setting a module as installed doesn’t mean the module is actually installed if the installation itself didn’t take place. Installation refers to operations related to laying down all the components required to create an Oracle Applications Cloud environment. Deployment is the process that starts the managed servers and clusters and facilitates the actual use of product offerings. A licensed module is available for installation and deployment, and a deployed module is considered actively used when actually used by users.

Seed Data
If seed data is allowed, then data residing in flexfields and lookups can be extracted for the module using seed data loaders. By default, extract is allowed for all predefined modules of type application and logical business area.

Associations
You can associate a logical domain to modules of the type Product Family, as well as one or more enterprise applications to modules of type Application. This association represents the relationship between the taxonomy modules and the corresponding domain and enterprise applications stored in the Oracle Applications Cloud Functional Core (ASK) tables.

Define Reference Data Sharing
About Reference Data Sharing

Reference data sharing facilitates sharing of configuration data such as jobs and payment terms, across organizational divisions or business units. You define reference data sets and determine how common data is shared or partitioned across business entities to avoid duplication and reduce maintenance effort. Depending on the requirement (specific or common), each business unit can maintain its data at a central location, using a set of values either specific to it or shared by other business units.

A common reference data set is available as the default set, which can be assigned to several business units sharing the same reference data. For commonly used data such as currencies, you can use the common reference data set and assign it to multiple business units in various countries that use the same currency. In cases where the default set can’t be assigned to an entity, you can create specific sets. The data set visible on the transactional page depends on the sharing method used to share reference data.

For example, XYZ Corporation uses the same grades throughout the entire organization. Instead of different business units setting up and using the same grades, XYZ Corporation decides to create a set called Grades, which contains the grades. All business units in the organization have the Grades set so that the grades can be shared and used.

Note: For specific information about configuring reference data sharing for a particular object or product, refer to the relevant product documentation.

Related Topics

- Reference Data Sets
- Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods
- Assignment of Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects

Reference Data Sets

Reference data sets are logical groups of reference data that various transactional entities can use depending on the business context. You can get started using either the common reference data set or the enterprise set depending on your implementation requirement. You can also create and maintain additional reference data sets, while continuing to use the common reference data set.

Consider the following scenario. Your enterprise can decide that only some aspects of corporate policy should affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This enables your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. Then, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. As a result, each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods and one central reference data set for payment terms assigned to all business units.

Partitioning

Partitioning reference data and creating data sets provide you the flexibility to handle the reference data to fulfill your business requirements. You can share modular information and data processing options among business units with ease. You can create separate sets and subsets for each business unit. Alternatively, you can create common sets or subsets to enable sharing reference data between several business units, without duplicating the reference data.
The following figure illustrates the reference data sharing method. The user can access the data assigned to a specific set in a particular business unit, as well as access the data assigned to the common set.

Related Topics
- Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods
- Defining Default Reference Data Sets: Points to Consider
- Assignment of Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects

Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate
set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.
- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
  - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.
  - Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.
- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction's business unit.

Note: Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set. Also update the data set going forward as you create new reference data items.

Related Topics

- Items and Supplier Site Reference Data Sharing
- What reference data objects can be shared across cost organizations
- What reference data objects can be shared across project units
- What reference data objects can be shared across business units
• What reference data objects can be shared across asset books

Assignment of Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects

You can assign the reference data sets to reference objects using the Manage Reference Data Set Assignments page. For multiple assignments, you can classify different types of reference data sets into groups and assign them to the reference entity objects. The assignment takes into consideration the determinant type, determinant, and reference group, if any.

Determinant Types
The partitioned reference data is shared using a business context setting called the determinant type. A determinant type is the point of reference used in the data assignment process. The following table lists the determinant types used in the reference data assignment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determinant Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asset Book</td>
<td>Information about the acquisition, depreciation, and retirement of an asset that belongs to a ledger or a business unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td>The departments or organizations within an enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Organization</td>
<td>The organization used for cost accounting and reporting on various inventory and cost centers within an enterprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Unit</td>
<td>A logical organization within an enterprise that is responsible for enforcing consistent project management practices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Data Set</td>
<td>References to other shared reference data sets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Determinant
The determinant (also called determinant value) is a value that corresponds to the selected determinant type. The determinant is one of the criteria for selecting the appropriate reference data set.

Reference Groups
A transactional entity may have multiple reference entities (generally considered to be setup data). However, all reference entities are treated alike because of similarity in implementing business policies and legal rules. Such reference entities in your application are grouped into logical units called reference groups. For example, all tables and views that define Sales Order Type details might be a part of the same reference group. Reference groups are predefined in the reference groups table.

Define ISO Reference Data
Considerations for Defining Currencies

When creating or editing currencies, consider these points relevant to entering the currency code, date range, or symbol for the currency.

Currency Codes
You can’t change a currency code after you enable the currency, even if you later disable that currency.

Date Ranges
You can enter transactions denominated in the currency only for the dates within the specified range. If you don’t enter a start date, then the currency is valid immediately. If you don’t enter an end date, then the currency is valid indefinitely.

Symbols
Some applications support displaying currency symbols. You may enter the symbol associated with a currency so that it appears along with the amount.

Related Topics
- What’s the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency
- What’s a statistical unit currency type
- Euro Currency Derivation

Euro Currency Derivation

Use the Derivation Type, Derivation Factor, and Derivation Effective Date fields to define the relationship between the official currency (Euro) of the European Monetary Union (EMU) and the national currencies of EMU member states. For each EMU currency, you define its Euro-to-EMU fixed conversion rate and the effective starting date. If you have to use a different currency for Euro, you can disable the predefined currency and create a new one.

Derivation Type
The Euro currency derivation type is used only for the Euro, and the Euro derived derivation type identifies national currencies of EMU member states. All other currencies don’t have derivation types.

Derivation Factor
The derivation factor is the fixed conversion rate by which you multiply one Euro to derive the equivalent EMU currency amount. The Euro currency itself must not have a derivation factor.

Derivation Effective Date
The derivation effective date is the date on which the relationship between the EMU currency and the Euro begins.

Considerations for Natural Languages

Natural languages are all the languages that humans use, written and spoken. If a language is enabled, then users can associate it with entities, for example as languages spoken by sales representatives. When managing natural languages, consider tasks to perform and best practices for entering particular values.
Tasks
Once you add a language, it can’t be deleted, but just disabled. You can optionally associate natural languages with International Organization for Standardization (ISO) languages and territories, just for reference.

Values
When you create a natural language, use the alpha-2 ISO code as the language code, or, if not available, then alpha-3. If the language is not an ISO language, then use x- as a prefix for the code, for example x-ja for a Japanese dialect. Use the sgn code of ISO-639-2 for sign languages, followed by territory code, for example sgn-US for American Sign Language. You can also use Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) language tags.

The natural language description must be the language name with territory name in parenthesis where needed, for example English (Australia) and English (Canada).

FAQs for Define ISO Reference Data

When do I create or edit territories?
The predefined territories are countries from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 3166 standard. Edit territory descriptions to determine how they are displayed in lists of country values in an application. You don’t have to edit territory names or codes unless there is a specific requirement. Create territories if new countries emerge and the application isn’t yet patched with the latest ISO country values.

Note: The National Language Support (NLS) territory codes are territory identifiers used in the application. Don’t edit the codes unless you must change the association between ISO and the application territory.

When do I create or edit industries?
To meet a specific business need, you may edit industry names or descriptions of industries except for those belonging to the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). Edit the industry descriptions also to determine how they appear in an application.

You may also create industries with specifications not included in the NAICS standards.

When do I associate industries with territories?
To meet specific business needs, you can associate industries with territories. For example, administrators can configure a page in different ways for different sets of users of the same industry, but residing in different countries.

When do I create or enable currencies?
Create or enable any currency for displaying monetary amounts, assigning currency to ledgers, entering transactions, recording balances, or for any reporting purpose. All currencies listed in the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 4217 standard are supported.

The default currency is set to United States Dollar (USD).

Related Topics
• Considerations for Defining Currencies
What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?

Precision refers to the number of digits placed after the decimal point used in regular currency transactions. For example, USD would have 2 as the precision value for transactional amounts, such as $1.00.

Extended precision is the number of digits placed after the decimal point and must be greater than or equal to the precision value. For calculations requiring greater precision, you can enter an extended precision value such as 3 or 4. That would result in the currency appearing as $1.279 or $1.2793.

Minimum accountable unit is the smallest denomination for the currency. For example, for USD that would be .01 for a cent. In Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Currencies task to set these values for a currency.

What's a statistical unit currency type?

The statistical unit currency type denotes the Statistical (STAT) currency used to record financial statistics in the financial reports, allocation formulas, and other calculations.

When do I create or edit ISO languages?

Edit the names and descriptions of International Organization for Standardization (ISO) languages to determine how they appear in the application. The ISO languages are a part of the ISO 639 standard. If any change to the ISO standard doesn’t reflect in the application, you can update the ISO alpha-2 code or add languages to provide up-to-date information.

When do I edit languages?

Installed languages automatically appear on the Manage Languages page. This page also displays all languages that are available for installation and translation. Each dialect is treated as a separate language.

Generally, you don’t need to edit any of the detailed fields unless absolutely necessary.

Can I add or edit time zones?

You usually don’t add or edit time zones because all standard time zones are provided. However, you may create time zones if new zones become standard and the application isn’t yet updated with the latest values. You can rename existing time zones and enable them. Only the enabled time zones are available for all users to select while setting their regional general preferences.

To add or edit time zones, use the following in the Setup Maintenance work area:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Manage Time Zones

Manage Audit Policies

Audit Policies

Auditing is used to monitor user activity and all configuration, security, and data changes that have been made to an application. Auditing involves recording and retrieving information pertaining to the creation, modification, and removal of business objects. All actions performed on the business objects and the modified values are also recorded. The audit information is stored without any intervention of the user or any explicit user action.
Use audit policies to select specific business objects and attributes to be audited. The decision to create policies usually depends on the type of information to be audited and to the level of detail required for reporting.

Enabling Audit Functionality
For Oracle Applications Cloud, you must configure the business objects and select the attributes before enabling audit. If you enable audit without configuring the business objects, auditing remains inactive. By default, auditing is disabled for all applications. To enable and manage audit, ensure that you have a role with the assigned privilege Manage Audit Policies (FND_MANAGE_AUDIT_POLICIES_PRIV). For appropriate assignment of roles and privileges, check with your security administrator.

To enable auditing for Oracle Fusion Middleware products, select one of the levels at which auditing is required for that product. The audit levels are predefined and contain the metadata and events to be audited. For more information, see Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware (Doc ID 2114143.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

If you don’t want an application to be audited, you can stop the audit process by setting the Audit Level option to None.

Related Topics
• Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware

Audit Configuration for Business Object Attributes
Audit enables tracking the change history of particular attributes of a business object. However, those objects and their attributes must be selected for audit and auditing must be enabled for that application. Your configuration settings determine which attributes to audit for a given object, and when the audit starts and ends. Auditing takes into account all the operations performed on an object and its attributes, such as create, update, and delete. To configure audit business object attributes, use the Manage Audit Policies task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Selecting an Application
To set up auditing, you must select a web application that contains the required business objects that can be audited. From the list of business objects, select those business objects that you want to audit. Selecting a business object also displays its attributes that are enabled for auditing.

Selecting Attributes
For each selected business object to be audited, select the corresponding attributes to include in the audit. All attributes that belong to that object are by default selected for audit and appear on the user interface. However, you can add or remove attributes from the list. When you remove an attribute from the list, you stop auditing it even when the parent object is selected for audit. So, if you want an attribute to be audited, you must add it to the list. If the object selected in an audit hierarchy is also a part of several other audit hierarchies, the attribute configuration for that object is applicable to all the hierarchies in that application.

Tip: For business objects based on flexfields, select the Flexfields (Additional Attributes) check box to view and add or remove flexfield attributes, to include or exclude them from the audit.

Starting and Stopping Audit
The business object is ready for audit after you select its attributes and save the configuration changes. However, to start auditing, the audit level for Oracle Applications Cloud must be set to Auditing on the Manage Audit Policies page.
To stop auditing an object, you can deselect the entire object and save the configuration. As a result, all its selected attributes are automatically deselected and are not audited. To continue to audit the business object with select attributes, deselect those attributes that are not to be audited. When users view the audit history for an application, they can specify the period for which they want the results. Therefore, make a note of when you start and stop auditing an application.

For example, users intend to view the audit history of an object for the previous week, but auditing for that object was stopped last month. They wouldn’t get any audit results for that week, because during the entire month that object wasn’t audited. Even if you enable audit for that object today, users can’t get the wanted results because audit data until today isn’t available.

**Overview of Audit Configuration**

To set up auditing for Oracle Applications Cloud, select the **Manage Audit Policies** task from the Setup and Maintenance work area within your offering. To set up auditing for Oracle Fusion Middleware products, select the level of auditing mapped to a predefined set of metadata and the events that have to be audited. Information about configuring audit for Oracle Fusion Middleware products is provided in Oracle Fusion Middleware guides.

You can also create a configuration file and deploy it to audit a specific Oracle Fusion Middleware product. The configuration details for Oracle Fusion Middleware products are available as audit-specific assets that you can use to create the config.xml configuration file. To get a list of audit-specific assets, see Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware (Doc ID 2114143.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

**Oracle Fusion Middleware Products**


  See: Auditing Web Services

**Oracle Fusion Security Products**

- Configure business objects to enable auditing in Oracle Fusion security products. Refer to Oracle Fusion Middleware Application Security Guide.

  See: Oracle Fusion Middleware Audit Framework Reference

**Related Topics**

- Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware

---

**Manage Oracle Social Network Objects**

**Management of Oracle Social Network Objects**

Use the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task for managing the Oracle Social Network Objects. The integration of Oracle Social Network with applications and business processes brings key attributes from the applications to share, socialize, and update information. This helps in making better business decisions based on additional information that you obtain and analyze within your social network environment.
Use the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page to set up and define:

- The business objects and attributes to enable
- The enablement method for social network integration with Oracle Applications Cloud

To open the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page, use the following in the Set and Maintenance work area:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions
- Task: Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

Use Oracle Social Network to:

- Discuss projects and plans in public forums
- Maintain:
  - Membership groups
  - Activity feeds of the people you select
- Facilitate:
  - One-on-one Conversations
  - Reviews
  - Document sharing

An important aspect of managing Oracle Social Network objects is enabling business objects for integration.

Enabling Business Objects for Integration

A business object can’t be shared within social network until a functional administrator or implementor:

- Accesses the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page in Oracle Applications Cloud
- Enables the business object for social network integration

Related Topics

- How can I update translations
- Synchronization of Business Objects
- What happens if I synchronize business objects

FAQs for Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

What happens if I update translations?

When you update translations, you send translations for business objects with the enablement option as Manual or Automatic to Oracle Social Network.

On updating translations, you also:

- Synchronize the newly translated text from Oracle Applications Cloud so that it can be used within social network. This means you can:
  - Install and enable a new language.
Take a language patch at any time.

- Send attribute labels and business object names to social network for use in its user interface.

## Manage Applications Core Common Reference Objects

### Manage Applications Core Messages

#### Common Messages

Message names that begin with FND_CNM are common messages. Each common message can appear in multiple places in any product family across Oracle Applications Cloud. For example, the FND_CMN_NEW_SRCH message can be used for any search to indicate that no results were found. Common messages of type error or warning are part of the message dictionary.

#### Creating and Editing Common Messages

You can create common messages for use in multiple places. However, ensure that you follow the predefined naming convention and numbering series associated with the application or module.

> **Note:** Don’t use FND_CMN as the prefix for the messages you create because all the predefined common messages begin with it.

Common messages can be used in any application. Therefore, consider the ramifications if you edit any aspect of the message, including incident and logging settings. Changes would be reflected in all instances where the message is used. For example, if you change the message text, ensure that the text is generic and applies to the entire site of Oracle Applications Cloud implementation.

### Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values

#### How Profile Options and Related General Preferences Work Together

The general preferences such as Language, Territory, or Date Format that you access from the global header have corresponding predefined profile options.

#### General Preferences

When users define their preferred Date Format, Language, or Currency, they are setting the value of a profile option at the user level.

#### Profile Options

When users don’t specify anything as their preferences, the Site level profile option takes effect.

#### Guidelines for Setting Up General Troubleshooting

To help the help desk troubleshoot issues that users encounter in the application, users can record the issue while they reproduce it. Some advanced users might also need detailed information in the About This Page dialog box. Setting up for troubleshooting involves making sure that users have the right access, and determining how many users can record at the same time.
Access
Check with your security administrator that the appropriate users are assigned roles that inherit the following privileges:

- **Record and View Issue (FND_RECORD_AND_VIEW_ISSUE_PRIV):** To create a basic recording
- **Set Issue Recording Advanced Options (FND_SET_ISSUE_RECORDING_ADVANCED_OPTIONS_PRIV):** To set advanced options before starting the recording
- **View Version Information (FND_VIEW_VERSION_INFORMATION_PRIV):** To see the versions that technical components of the application are on

Number of Users
Recordings are stored on servers, and by default, up to five users can record at the same time on each server. For performance reasons, you can set the Maximum Number of Users Allowed to Record Issues (ORA_FND_RECORD_ISSUE_MAX_USERS) profile option to a number lower than five.

**Related Topics**
- Record Issues to Troubleshoot
- How can I view the version information of an application
- Set Profile Option Values

**Profile Option Values for CORS Headers**
You can set profile option values for the CORS headers using the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

**CORS Headers**
This table lists the CORS headers that you can set profile option values for.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORS Header</th>
<th>Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)</th>
<th>Profile Option Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Origin</td>
<td>Allowed Domains (ORACLE. ADF. VIEW. ALLOWEDORIGINS)</td>
<td>Valid values for allowed origins:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- URL of the specific origin, for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.exampledon.com">http://www.exampledon.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Comma-separated list of origins, for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- * to allow access to resources from all origins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Empty (no value set) to prevent access to resources from any origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> You must set a value for this header to enable CORS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Max-Age</td>
<td>CORS: Access-Control-Max-Age (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_MAX_AGE)</td>
<td>Default value for caching preflight request is 3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Topic:** Record Issues to Troubleshoot
**Related Topic:** How can I view the version information of an application
**Related Topic:** Set Profile Option Values

**Related Topic:** Profile Option Values for CORS Headers
**Related Topic:** CORS Headers

Number of Users
Recordings are stored on servers, and by default, up to five users can record at the same time on each server. For performance reasons, you can set the Maximum Number of Users Allowed to Record Issues (ORA_FND_RECORD_ISSUE_MAX_USERS) profile option to a number lower than five.

**Related Topics**
- Record Issues to Troubleshoot
- How can I view the version information of an application
- Set Profile Option Values

**Profile Option Values for CORS Headers**
You can set profile option values for the CORS headers using the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

**CORS Headers**
This table lists the CORS headers that you can set profile option values for.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORS Header</th>
<th>Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)</th>
<th>Profile Option Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Origin</td>
<td>Allowed Domains (ORACLE. ADF. VIEW. ALLOWEDORIGINS)</td>
<td>Valid values for allowed origins:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- URL of the specific origin, for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.exampledon.com">http://www.exampledon.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Comma-separated list of origins, for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- * to allow access to resources from all origins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Empty (no value set) to prevent access to resources from any origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> You must set a value for this header to enable CORS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Max-Age</td>
<td>CORS: Access-Control-Max-Age (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_MAX_AGE)</td>
<td>Default value for caching preflight request is 3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related Topics

- Set Profile Option Values
- About CORS

Set Privacy Statement URL

A privacy statement is legal content that tells you how a company collects and manages user data. You can add a link to your company’s statement in the About This Application dialog box.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values task in the Application Extensions functional area.
2. Search for the Privacy Statement URL (PRIVACY_PAGE) profile option.
3. In the Profile Values section, update the Profile Value field with the full URL of the web page that has the privacy content. By default, this profile value is N.

⚠️ Caution: Don’t enter any other value, such as Y, because that causes a broken link.

4. Click Save and Close.

And that’s it! Your users can now view the Privacy Statement link by clicking their user image or name in the global header and selecting About This Application.

How can I make message components visible only to specific users?

Use the Manage Administrator Profile Values task to determine the visibility of the message components. For the Message Mode profile option, set the profile value to either User or Administrator. Based on the set value, the administrator or user actions and details appear for the intended audience.

However, the message components are visible to the audience based on their predefined access rights. Anyone having a user level access can’t view the Administrator message components. If you set the profile value to the administrators of a specific product, the message components are visible only to that specific audience.
Note: If you don’t set any value to the profile option, the visibility of the message component is determined by the default profile option settings.

Related Topics

• Set Profile Option Values

How do I define whether the user image, name, or initials display in the global header?
Set the User Image Display Enabled (FND_USER_PHOTO_ENABLED) profile option. If you select:

• Yes, then the user image is displayed in the global header only if the user uploaded a photo. Otherwise, the user’s initials are displayed. By default, this profile option is set to Yes.
• No, then only the user name is displayed in the global header.

Related Topics

• Change Your Photo

How can I determine which languages appear in the Translation Editor?
Use the Translation Editor Languages profile option to specify the languages as the profile values, so that they are available as options for the user on the Translated Editor dialog box.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, open the panel tab and click Search to search for the Manage Administrator Profile Values task.
2. Search for the Translation Editor Languages profile option.
3. In the Profile Values section, specify the required languages as its profile values, separated by comma. You can either list the complete names of the languages or just the language codes specified on the Manage Languages page, for example, F for French, KO for Korean.

Note: You can specify only those languages that are available in the supported language pack. If you don’t specify any value, all available language packs are supported.

4. Click Save and Close. The language entries will take effect for the user in the next sign in.

Related Topics

• Enter or Edit Translated Text
13 Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions

Overview of Managing Job Definitions and Job Sets

Users run scheduled processes based on Oracle Enterprise Scheduler Services to process data and, in some cases, to provide report output. Using the Enterprise Scheduler Jobs tasks, you can define job definitions, list of values sources, and job sets.

The various Enterprise Scheduler Jobs tasks are:

- Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Financial, Supply Chain Management, and Related Applications
- Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Human Capital Management and Related Applications
- Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Customer Relationship Management and Related Applications

Each task includes:

- **Job Definitions**: Contain the metadata about the job and the options available to users. A job definition is defined by a job type, such as Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher or PL/SQL Job type or others.
- **List of Values Sources**: Determine where a list of values for the parameters in a job definition comes from and what the specific values are.
- **Job Sets**: Collections of several jobs in a single process set that the users submit instead of running separate jobs.

To access the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets tasks, use the following in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets

**Related Topics**

- Overview of Scheduled Processes

Manage List of Values Sources

A list of values source determines where a list of values comes from and what the specific values are. Use these lists to display values for the parameters and application defined properties in job definitions which the user can select. For example, a list of countries for a Country parameter. To manage list of values sources, open the Manage List of Values Sources tab using the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
Managing Job Definitions

About Job Definitions

Scheduled processes are based on jobs that process data and, in some cases, provide output. Each job requires a job definition. A job definition can also include parameters and user properties that the user defines while submitting the scheduled process.

You can view, create, edit and duplicate job definitions on the Manage Job Definitions tab using the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets

Viewing Job Definitions

Use the table on the Manage Job Definitions tab to view the job definitions created for the application. An asterisk in the name column indicates a predefined job definition.

This table describes the columns in the table on the Manage Job Definitions tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the job definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Name</td>
<td>Name of the job definition as available to users while submitting scheduled processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description for the job definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path</td>
<td>The full directory path where the job definition is saved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution Type</td>
<td>The type of job request for the given job definition, such as a Java, C, PL/SQL, Perl, or hosted script job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Type</td>
<td>The name of the job type upon which the job definition is based.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tip:  The table of job definitions shows only 10 to 20 items by default but you can use Query by Example to view other items.

Parameters
A parameter controls which records are included or how they are affected when the job runs. Parameters are available to users when they submit scheduled processes based on your job definitions. For example, a job updates only the records that are effective after the date that users enter in a Start Date parameter. You can create, edit and delete parameters for job definitions that are not predefined.

User Property
A user property is set in the job definition to attain some specific results.

Related Topics
- Overview of Scheduled Processes

Create Job Definitions
A job definition is defined by a Job type, such as Java or Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher reports. You can only create or duplicate job definitions which are based on BI Publisher reports, so that users can run the reports as scheduled processes. For more information about reports, see the Creating and Administering Analytics and Reports guides for your products.

Creating Job Definitions
Follow these steps:

1. Click Navigator > Setup and Maintenance.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
   - Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets
3. On the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page, open the Manage Job Definitions tab.
4. Click the Create icon.
5. In the Job Definition section, complete the fields, some of which are shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>What You Enter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Name</td>
<td>Provide a name that the users see while submitting the scheduled process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Provide a name with only alphanumeric characters, for example, AtkEssPrograms1. A job definition name can’t contain space or any special characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Application Name</td>
<td>Select the name of the application to associate the job definition with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Type</td>
<td>Select BIPJobType only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report ID</td>
<td>Specify the path to the report in the catalog, starting with the folder within Shared Folders, for example: User-Defined/ &lt;Family Name&gt;/ &lt;Product Name&gt;/&lt;Report File Name&gt;.xd0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Implementing Procurement

Chapter 13

Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>What You Enter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make sure to include the .xdo file extension for the report definition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Output Format</td>
<td>Select the format of the output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Don’t select the **Enable submission from Enterprise Manager** check box.

6. Use the Parameters tab to define parameters as required.
7. The only user property you need to define is **EXT_PortletContainerWebModule** and this user property is automatically created.

**Caution:** You must not create or edit a user property unless you have the accurate information that is required to create or edit one.

8. Click **Save and Close**.

When you create a job definition, the privilege with the same name as the job definition is automatically created. For example, for a job definition named **AtkEssPrograms**, the privilege is named **RUN_ATKESSPROGRAMS**.

**Duplicating Job Definitions**

Users can also create job definitions by duplicating existing job definitions, including parameters. To duplicate a job definition:

1. On the Manage Job Definitions tab, select the job definition you want to duplicate.
2. Click **Duplicate** to get another row in the table with the duplicate job definition.
3. Select the duplicate job definition and click **Edit**.
4. Enter the name and path.
5. You can update the parameters as needed.
6. Click **Save and Close**.

When you duplicate a job definition, you automatically create a view object of the same name in the list of values sources.

**Note:** The attribute validations present on the attributes in the parameters view object are not copied over.

**Edit Job Definitions**

You can only edit certain fields in predefined job definitions, as some of the fields are read only. However, you can edit all aspects of job definitions that are not predefined.

**Editing Job Definitions**

Follow these steps:

1. Click **Navigator > Setup and Maintenance**.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
   - Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets
3. On the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page, open the Manage Job Definitions tab.
4. Select the job definition you want to edit.
5. Click Edit.
6. Make the changes that you want, for example:
   - You can edit the display name of the job definition to use terms that are more familiar to your users.
   - You can use the Prompt field to edit parameter display names.
7. Click Save and Close.

Predefined Job Definitions

You cannot update parameters in predefined job definitions, but this table lists some of the other fields that you can edit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retries</td>
<td>The number of times to automatically run this job again if the scheduled process fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job Category</td>
<td>Specific to the application of the job definition, it’s used to group definitions according to your requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout Period</td>
<td>The amount of time before stopping a scheduled process that couldn’t complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority of scheduled processes submitted, with 0 as lowest. If other processes, based on the same or another job, are scheduled to run at the same time, then priority determines the run order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Define Parameters for Job Definitions

A parameter controls which records are included or how they are affected when a job runs. Job definitions can have one or more parameters or none at all. You define parameters while creating or editing job definitions using the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets

When users run the scheduled process, the values they enter for the parameters determine the data to be included in the report. Also, the values are passed to the data model that the report is using.

The parameters that you define must be in the same order as parameters in the data model. For example, the data model has parameters in this order:

- **P_START_DATE**
- **P_END_DATE**
- **P_CURRENCY**

You create parameters as follows:

- Start Date
- End Date
• Currency

Defining Parameters: Job Definitions
To define parameters while creating or editing job definitions:

1. On the Manage Job Definitions page, open the Parameters sub tab.
2. Click Create.
3. Enter the parameter prompt that users see when they submit the scheduled process.
4. Select a data type and configure how the parameter and the data entered are displayed, as described in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Select this if you want the parameter to be a check box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select True or False to determine if the check box is selected or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date or time</td>
<td>Select Date and time or Date only option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select a value from the Default Date Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Select a Number Format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Left or Right for data alignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String</td>
<td>Select a Page Element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Text box if you want the user to provide a text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Choice list if you want a list with limited options (maximum 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select List of values if you want a list with unlimited options with a search facility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Select the Read Only check box if you don’t want to enable users to set this parameter. When a parameter is set as read only, the user is required to provide a default value to be passed to the job definition.
6. If you select list of values or choice list page element, select a List of Values Source and an Attribute.
7. From the list of available attributes, select the attributes you want to appear in the list and move them to the selected attributes section. These attributes determine the values that the user can see.
8. Define a Default Value for the parameter.
9. In the Tooltip Text field, provide additional information for the user to follow.
10. Select the Required check box if users must set this parameter to submit the scheduled process.
11. Select the Do not Display check box if users should not see this parameter while submitting the process.
12. Click Save and Create Another or Save and Close.

Dependent Parameters
The attributes of some parameters depend on the attributes or values of certain other parameters. The attributes of a parameter would change if the value of its dependent parameter changes.

For example, you have three parameters, namely Country, State and, City. In this case, the value of the Country parameter would determine the values available in the State parameter. The values in the State parameter would determine the values available in the City parameter.
Define Dependent Parameters in Job Definitions

This example demonstrates how to define dependent parameters.

This table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In this Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which parameters do I want to make dependent?</td>
<td>Region, Country and City.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Region list of values includes the names of the regions like North America, EMEA, JAPAC and so on. The Country list of values includes the names of countries like USA, Canada, France, England, India, Japan and so on. Similarly City list of values includes the names of different cities like New York, Washington, London, Paris, Mumbai, Tokyo and so on. The Country parameter list of values includes only the countries like USA, Canada and so on, if user selects North America. The City parameter list of values includes the names of the cities in the country that the user has selected.

What are view criteria?

The view criteria determine the values that appear in the dependent parameter list of values for the users to see. The view criteria are used to filter the list and pass the required bind variables based on the user's selection.

To filter countries based on the selected region, you must select getCountriesByRegion and pass Region as a bind variable.

Prerequisites

Create the parameters Region, Country and City. The values available to the users in the Country parameter list of values depends on the value selected for the Region parameter. City parameter list of values depends on the value that the user selects for the Country parameter.

Defining Dependent Parameters

To define parameters with dependent lists of values:

1. On the Manage Job Definitions tab, open the Parameters sub tab.
2. Select the Region parameter.
3. Click the Manage Dependencies button located next to the Delete button.
4. From Available View Criteria, select getCountriesByRegion and move it to Selected View Criteria using the move icons.
   The selected view criteria appears in the Bind Variables section.
5. In the Bind Variables section, for the getCountriesByRegion view criteria, select Country from the mapped parameters list of values.
   The Country parameter list of values is now dependent on the value selected for the Region parameter.
6. Click OK.
7. Repeat the steps with Country parameter. Select getCitiesByCountries from the available view criteria and pass City as a bind variable.
Job Sets

Manage Job Sets

A job set is a collection of several jobs in a single process set that the users can submit instead of running individual jobs separately. The job set definition also determines if the jobs run in serial or parallel, or based on some other predetermined logic. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets

Use the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page to open the Manage Job Sets tab.

- On this tab, you can view and define job sets, and use Query By Example to find a specific job set.
- You can’t edit or delete the predefined job sets which are indicated by an asterisk. You can create job sets, and also edit and delete job sets that are not predefined.

Job Set Steps

A job set can contain any number of individual jobs as well as other job sets. There can also be multiple levels of nested job sets within a single job set. For example, a job set can include three jobs and two job sets, one of which contains another job set. Each individual job or job set that’s included within a job set is called a job set step. A job set and each of its job set steps can have additional parameters. Users provide the values for these parameters when they submit the process set.

Application Defined Properties

Some Job Sets require the user to enter certain additional properties before submitting a job request. Application Defined Properties are the additional properties that the user has to enter during runtime. For example, when `enableDuplicateJobWithParamTaskflow` property is set to `True`, it can be used to run a single job multiple times with different parameter values, within a job set.

System Properties

System Properties are the additional settings that determine how a job set runs. For example, you can use a system property to determine the number of retries for a job set that fails to execute. On this tab, you can view and define job sets, and use Query By Example to find a specific job set.

Create Job Sets

Create a job set so that users can run multiple jobs with a single submission. Before you create the job set, plan the sequence and hierarchy of the job steps within the job set. You can create job sets using the Manage Job Sets tab. You can also edit and delete job sets that are not predefined.

Steps to create Job Sets

Follow these steps:

1. Click **Navigator > Setup and Maintenance**.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Functional Area: Application Extensions a product-specific functional area
   - Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets
3. On the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page, open the Manage Job Sets tab.
4. Click Create.
5. Complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Provide a name with only alphanumeric characters, for example, ExportMetadataTables1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Name</td>
<td>Provide a name that the users see while submitting the scheduled process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Provide more information about what the job set does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Package</td>
<td>Specify the path where you want to save the job set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. In the Job Set Steps section, select **Serial** or **Parallel** to define the sequence of the job set.
7. Click **Add Job Set Step** to open the Add Step dialog box.
8. In the Step tab:
   a. Enter a **Step ID** to easily identify the steps.
   b. Search for and select a job or job set to include in your job set.
   c. Select **Job definition** or **Job set**.
   d. Type a valid name or package, or both of the Job or Job Set you are looking for and click search.
   e. Select the required job definition or job set and click **OK**.
   f. If you selected Parallel in step 4:
      - Select **Insert into main diagram** if you want the step to be executed independently.
      - Select **Add to list of available steps** if you want the step to be one of the outcomes in the available steps.
      - If you choose to add the step to the list of available steps, select an option for the possible job outcomes. For example, you can determine whether the process must stop or another step must be executed if the step fails to run successfully.
9. In the **Application Defined Properties** tab:
   a. Click **Add Application Defined Property** icon and select a data type.
   b. Enter a name and an initial value.
   c. Select the **Read Only** check box if you don’t want users to update this property when they submit the process set.
   d. Click **OK**.
10. In the **System Properties** tab:
    a. Click **Add System Property**.
    b. From the name list, select a system property.
c. Enter a value in the Initial Value field.

d. Select Read Only check box if you don’t want users to update this property when they submit the process set.

e. Click OK.

Note: You can also add and edit the Application Defined Properties and System Properties in the respective sections on the Create Job Set page.

11. Click OK to add the Job Set Step.

12. Add jobs and job sets as required. You can select job steps in the Job Set Steps section and edit, remove, or reorder (for Serial only). You can also switch between Serial and Parallel.

13. Click Save and Close.

Note: When you create a Job Set, the privilege of the same name as the Job Set is automatically created. For example, for a Job Set named ExportAppsData, the privilege is named RUN_EXPORTAPPSDATA.

System Properties for Job Sets

System Properties are the additional settings that determine how a job set runs. For example, you can use a system property to determine the number of retries for a job set that fails to execute. You can open the Manage Job Sets tab using the Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets page. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets

System Properties

This table lists some system properties with description.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SYS_allowMultPending</td>
<td>Specifies if the same job definition can have multiple pending requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_application</td>
<td>Specifies the logical name of the Scheduling Services folder application used for request processing. Oracle Enterprise Scheduler automatically sets this property during request submission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_effectiveApplication</td>
<td>Specifies the logical name of the Scheduling Services folder application that is the effective application used to process the request. You can associate a job definition, job type, or a job set step with a different application by defining the EFFECTIVE_APPLICATION system property. This property can only be specified through metadata and cannot be specified as a submission parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_priority</td>
<td>Specifies the request processing priority. The priority interval is 0 to 9, where 0 is the lowest priority and 9 is the highest. If this property is not specified, the default value used is 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_product</td>
<td>Specifies the product used for submitting the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_request_timeout</td>
<td>Enables the job request to time out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_requestExpiration</td>
<td>Specifies the expiration time for a request. This represents the time (in minutes) that a request will expire after its scheduled execution time. An expiration value of zero (0) means that the request never expires. If this property is not specified, the default value used is 0. Request expiration only applies to requests that are waiting to run. If a request waits longer than the specified expiration period, it does not run. After a request starts running, the request expiration no longer applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS_retries</td>
<td>Specifies the retry limit for a failed request. If request execution fails, the request is retried up to the number of times specified by this property until the request succeeds. If the retry limit is zero (0), a failed request is not retried. If this property is not specified, the default value used is 0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14 Define Applications Core Configuration

Overview of Applications Core Configuration

The Define Applications Core Configurations task list contains the Oracle Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application (Applications Core) tasks that support implementation of common functionality such as lookups, profile options, document sequences, and so on. Some of the tasks are also available in the Application Extensions functional area. You may also find specific versions of this task list depending upon the product family or the offering that uptakes those tasks.

Use this task list to manage configuration objects that are defined centrally and shared across applications, in addition to tasks classified in the Maintain Common Reference Objects task list. You can search for this task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Related Topics
- Overview of Common Reference Objects

Import Flexfields, Lookups, or Profile Values Using Web Services

You can import lookups, profile option values, and extensible flexfields into an application using the import function on the application page. Alternatively, you can use the web service FndManageImportExportFilesService for the import task. The web service uses the following methods:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loader Name</th>
<th>Asynchronous Method</th>
<th>Synchronous Methods</th>
<th>Supported methods for backward compatibility (without UUID)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flex data uploader</td>
<td><code>processFlexDataAsync(List&lt;String&gt; inputFieldIdTypeList, String UUID)</code></td>
<td><code>processFlexData(List&lt;String&gt; inputFieldIdTypeList, String UUID)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lookups data uploader</td>
<td><code>processLookupsDataAsync(long lookupTypesFileID, long lookupCodesFileID, long viewApplicationID, String UUID)</code></td>
<td><code>processLookupsData(long lookupTypesFileID, long lookupCodesFileID, long viewApplicationID, String UUID)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User profile values uploader</td>
<td><code>processUserProfileValuesAsync(long userProfileFileID, String UUID)</code></td>
<td><code>processUserProfileValues(long userProfileFileID, String UUID)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valueset Values data uploader</td>
<td><code>processValueSetValuesAsync(Long fileIdAtRepository, String UUID)</code></td>
<td><code>processValueSetValues(Long fileIdAtRepository, String UUID)</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generic method</td>
<td><code>downloadProcessLogFile(String UUID)</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ORACLE
Example

The following example is about importing the profile values using the web service. To import lookups or extensible flexfields, initiate the web service in the same way as shown here, after replacing the methods and other relevant values in the code.

To import profile values:

1. Perform the following substeps to generate keystore for the security policy "oracle/wss11_saml_or_username_token_with_message_protection_service_policy":
   b. Open the WSDL using the URL `http://<host>:<port>/fndAppCoreServices/FndManageImportExportFilesService.wsdl` through a web browser, and get the public key `<wsl:service>/<wsl:port>/<wsa:EndpointReference>/<wsl:Identity>/<wsl:KeyInfo>/<wsl:X509Data>/<wsl:X509Certificate>`. Then, enclose it with ---- BEGIN CERTIFICATE ---- and ---- END CERTIFICATE ---- and save it to a file by name cdrmpk.cer.
   c. Store the key information in the truststore using the command `keytool -importcert -alias cdrmkey -file cdrmpk.cer -keystore mycompclient-keystore.jks -storepass password`.
2. Open the WSDL page using the browser of your choice.
3. Export and save the associated security certificates Verisign Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority - G5 and Verisign Secure Server CA - G3.
4. Use the following command to import the saved certificates into the trust store of the client computer.
   `keytool -importcert -keystore <truststore> -storepass <truststorepassword> -file <file location where the mentioned certificate is stored> -alias <alias for certificate>`
5. Run the following command to generate the JAX-WS proxy for the `FndManageImportExportFilesService` web service.
   `C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.7.0_04\bin>wsimport -s "d:\wsimport\FndManageImportExportFilesService" -d "d:\wsimport\FndManageImportExportFilesService" http://<host>:<port>/fndAppCoreServices/FndManageImportExportFilesService.wsdl`
6. Save the generated code as a JAR file and name it `FndManageImportExportProxy.jar`.
7. Use the following code to create another JAR file to initiate the web service:

```java
package com.oracle.xmlns.oracle.apps.fnd.applcore.webservices;

import com.sun.xml.ws.developer.WSBindingProvider;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import javax.xml.ws.BindingProvider;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;
import javax.xml.ws.handler.Handler;
import oracle.webservices.ClientConstants;
import weblogic.wsee.jws.jaxws.owsm.SecurityPoliciesFeature;
// !THE CHANGES MADE TO THIS FILE WILL BE DESTROYED IF REGENERATED!
// This source file is generated by Oracle tools

```
Public class FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpContext
{
  private static FndManageImportExportFilesService_service fndManageImportExportFilesService_Service;

  @WebServiceref
  public static void main(String args)
  {
    System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStore", "<location of truststore which is used in II to import the certificates>");
    System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword", "<truststore password>");
    FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService = new FndManageImportExportFilesService_Service();
    FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService = fndManageImportExportFilesService_Service.getFndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpContext(securityFeatures);
    // Add your code to call the required methods.

    WSBindingProvider wsbP = (WSBindingProvider) fndManageImportExportFilesService;
    Map<String, Object> requestContext = wsbP.getRequestContext();

    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_TYPE, "jks");
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_LOCATION, "<location of 'mycompclient-keystore.jks' which was created during Step I>");
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_PASSWORD, "<password>");
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_RECIPIENT_KEY_ALIAS, "cdrmkey");
    requestContext.put(WsBindingProvider.USERNAME_PROPERTY, "<username>");
    requestContext.put(WsBindingProvider.PASSWORD_PROPERTY, "<password>");

    String id = invokeUploadFileToUCMMethod(fndManageImportExportFilesService);
    if (id != null) {
      invokeUserProfileValuesDataLoader(fndManageImportExportFilesService, new Long(id));
    }

    static String invokeUploadFileToUCMMethod(FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService) {
      DocumentDetails document = new DocumentDetails();
      ObjectFactory objFactory = new ObjectFactory();
      document.setFileName(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsFileName("import_data.txt"));
      document.setDocumentTitle(objfactor.createDocumentDetailsDocumentTitle("VS"));
      document.setContentType(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsContentType("plain/text"));
      try {
        // Provide location of bulk import data file in prescribed format
      }
byte[] content =
    org.apache.commons.io.FileUtils.readFileToByteArray(new File("/home/user1/import_data.txt"));

    //System.out.println("File content:" + new String(content, "UTF-8");
    document.setContent(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsContent(content));

    } catch (IOException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    }
    catch(Exception e) {
        System.out.println("Exception: "+e.getMessage());
    }

    try {
        response = fndManageImportExportFilesService.uploadFileToUCM(document);
        System.out.println("Response: " + response);
    } catch (ServiceException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    }
    return response;
}

static void invokeUserProfileValuesDataLoader(FndManageImportExportFilesService
    fndManageImportExportFilesService,
    Long id) {
    String response;
    try {
        response = fndManageImportExportFilesService.processUserProfileValuesFile(id);
        System.out.println("Response: " + response);
    } catch (ServiceException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    }
}

/**
Note: Wherever applicable, replace the values referring to the profile values with those of the lookups
or flexfields value sets.

8. Save the generated output as a JAVA file and name it FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPortClient.java.
9. Use the JAVA file to build a JAR file, and name it FndManageImportExportClient.jar.
10. Use the following command to run the web service:

    java -cp ./FndManageImportExportProxy.jar:./ws.api_1.1.0.0.jar:./FndManageImportExportClient.jar
        FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPortClient

Here’s a sample program that is a web service client for the asynchronous method deployFlexAsync(). This client program
starts callback client and does the asynchronous call. The required callback web service starts at the line no 58.

    Endpoint e = Endpoint.publish(callbackServiceAddress, new ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImpl());

The callback web service will still be in Running state after the client program execution completes and you need to close it
manually. Alternatively, you can also comment the above line here and run it in a separate client program.

    package com.ws.client;

    import com.sun.xml.ws.api.addressing.AddressingVersion;
    import com.sun.xml.ws.api.addressing.WSEndpointReference;
    import com.sun.xml.ws.developer.WSBindingProvider;
    import com.sun.xml.ws.message.StringHeader;

    import com.ws.client.callback.ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImpl;
import com.ws.client.types.DeployFlexAsyncResponse;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;

import javax.xml.ws.Endpoint;
import javax.xml.ws.Response;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;

import oracle.webservices.ClientConstants;

import weblogic.wsee.jws.jaxws.owsm.SecurityPolicyFeature;
// THIS SOURCE FILE IS GENERATED BY Oracle tools
// Contents may be subject to change
// For reporting problems, use the following
// Version = Oracle WebServices (11.1.1.0.0, build 150302.2135.1.30348)

public class ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceSoapHttpPortClient
{
    @WebServiceRef
    private static ApplicationsCoreSetupService_Service applicationsCoreSetupService_Service;

    private static final AddressingVersion WS_ADDR_VER = AddressingVersion.W3C;

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException
    {
        applicationsCoreSetupService_Service = new ApplicationsCoreSetupService_Service();
        SecurityPolicyFeature[] features = new SecurityPolicyFeature[]
            { new SecurityPolicyFeature("policy:oracle/wss_username_token_client_policy") };

        ApplicationsCoreSetupService applicationsCoreSetupService =
            applicationsCoreSetupService_Service.getApplicationsCoreSetupServiceSoapHttpPort(features);

        // Get the request context to set the outgoing addressing properties
        WSBindingProvider wsbp = (WSBindingProvider)applicationsCoreSetupService;
        Map<String, Object> requestContext = wsbp.getRequestContext();

        requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_TYPE, "jks");
        requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_LOCATION,
            "/scratch/vgarikip/view_storage/work/keys/mycompclient-keystore.jks");
        requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_PASSWORD, "mypassword1");
        requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_RECIPIENT_KEY_ALIAS, "cdrmkey");
        requestContext.put(WSBindingProvider.USERNAME_PROPERTY, "app_impl_consultant");
        requestContext.put(WSBindingProvider.PASSWORD_PROPERTY, "mypassword1");

        String callbackServiceAddress = "http://<server>:<port>/TestAsyncMani-Project1-context-root/
            ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImplPort";
        Endpoint e = Endpoint.publish(callbackServiceAddress, new ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImpl());

        WSEndpointReference replyTo = new WSEndpointReference(callbackServiceAddress, WS_ADDR_VER);
        String uuid = "uuid:" + UUID.randomUUID();

        wsbp.setOutboundHeaders(new StringHeader(WS_ADDR_VER.messageIDTag, uuid),
            replyTo.createHeader(WS_ADDR_VER.replyToTag));

        applicationsCoreSetupService.deployFlexAsync("PER_CITIZENSHIPS_DFF", "DFF",
            false); // .deployPatchedFlexAsync(mode, pCustomizationId, pCustomizationSetLoc);
System.out.println("####END OF WS CALL");
Thread.sleep(10000);

// Add your code to call the desired methods.

Example callback web service start utility if you comment line no 58 in the above program:

package com.ws.client;

import com.ws.client.callback.ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImpl;
import javax.xml.ws.Endpoint;

public class RunCallbackServtest {
    public RunCallbackServtest() {
        super();
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        RunCallbackServtest runCallbackServtest = new RunCallbackServtest();
        runCallbackServtest.runServ();
    }

    private void runServ() throws InterruptedException {
        System.out.println("$$$$$ BEFORE Server Start ###################");
        String callbackServiceAddress = "http://<server>:<port>/TestAsyncMani-Project1-context-root/ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImplPort";
        Endpoint e = Endpoint.publish(callbackServiceAddress, new ApplicationsCoreSetupServiceResponseImpl());
        System.out.println("$$$$$ AFTER Server Start ###################");
    }
}

Define Lookups

Overview of Lookups

Lookups are lists of values in applications. You define a list of values as a lookup type consisting of a set of lookup codes, each code’s translated meaning, and optionally a tag. End users see the list of translated meanings as the available values for an object.

Lookups provide a means of validation and lists of values where valid values appear on a list with no duplicate values. For example, an application might store the values Y and N in a column in a table, but when displaying those values in the user interface, Yes or No (or their translated equivalents) should be available for end users to select. For example, the two lookup codes Y and N are defined in the REQUIRED_INDICATOR lookup type.

The following table contains an example of a lookup type for marital status (MAR_STATUS) that has lookup codes for users to specify married, single, or available legal partnerships.
In this case, tags are used for localizing the codes. All legislations list Married and Single. Only the Dutch legislation lists Registered Partner. And all legislations except France and Australia also list Domestic Partner.

When managing lookups, you need to understand the following.

- Using lookups in applications
- Configuration levels
- Accessing lookups
- Enabling lookups
- The three kinds of lookups: standard, common, and set-enabled

### Using Lookups in Applications

Use lookups to provide validation or a list of values for a user input field in a user interface.

An example of a lookup used for validation is a flexfield segment using a table-validated value set with values from a lookup type. An example of a lookup in a list of values is a profile option’s available values from which users select one to set the profile option. Invoice Approval Status gives the option of including payables invoices of different approval statuses in a report. The lookup code values include All, so that users can report by all statuses: Approved, Resubmitted for approval, Pending or rejected, and Rejected.

### Configuration Level

The configuration level of a lookup type determines whether the lookups in that lookup type can be edited. This applies data security to lookups.

Some lookup types are locked so no new codes and other changes can be added during implementation or later, as needed. Depending on the configuration level of a lookup type, you may be able to change the codes or their meanings. Some lookups are designated as extensible, so new lookup codes can be created during implementation, but the predefined lookup codes cannot be modified. Some predefined lookup codes can be changed during implementation or later, as needed.

The configuration levels are user, extensible, and system. The following table shows the lookup management tasks permitted at each configuration level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permitted Task</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>Extensible</th>
<th>System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deleting a lookup type</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inserting new codes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updating start date, end date, and enabling the lookup code</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, only if the code is not predefined data</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define Applications Core Configuration

Permitted Task | User | Extensible | System
---|---|---|---
Deleting codes | Yes | Yes, only if the code is not predefined data | No
Updating tags | Yes | No | No
Updating module | Yes | No | No

Predefined data means LAST_UPDATED_BY = SEED_DATA_FROM_APPLICATION.

If a product depends on a lookup, the configuration level must be system or extensible to prevent deletion.

Once the configuration level is set for a lookup type, it can’t be modified. The configuration level for newly created lookup types is by default set at the User level.

Standard, Common, and Set-Enabled Lookups

The following table shows the available types of lookups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lookup Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Lists the available codes and translated meanings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set-enabled</td>
<td>Associates a reference data set with the lookup codes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Legacy lookups or lookups that have attributes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standard lookups are the simplest form of lookup types consisting only of codes and their translated meaning. They differ from common lookups only in being defined in the standard lookup view. Common lookups exist for reasons of backward compatibility and differ from standard lookups only in being defined in the common lookup view. These can also be lookups having attribute columns. Set-enabled lookup types store lookup codes that are enabled for reference data sharing. At runtime, a set-enabled lookup code is visible because the value of the determinant identifies a reference data set in which the lookup code is present.

Accessing Lookups

Standard, set-enabled, and common lookups are defined in the Standard, Set-enabled, and Common views, respectively. Applications development may define lookups in an application view to restrict the UI pages where they may appear.

In lookups management tasks, lookups may be associated with a module in the application taxonomy to provide criteria for narrowing a search or limiting the number of lookups accessed by a product specific task such as Manage Purchasing Lookups.

Enabling Lookups

A lookup type is reusable for attributes stored in multiple tables.

Enable lookups based on the following.

- Selecting an **Enabled** check box
- Specifying an enabled start date, end date, or both
• Specifying a reference data set
determinant

If you make changes to a lookup, users must sign out and back in before the changes take effect. When defining a list of values for display rather than validation, limit the number of enabled lookup codes to a usable length.

To view the predefined lookups and their lookup codes, use the following tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

• Manage Standard Lookups
• Manage Common Lookups
• Manage Set-Enabled Lookups

Translating Lookups

You can translate the lookups that you defined to the preferred language(s) without changing the language session of the application. Use the translation option available on the lookup code table. By default, for each lookup, all the permitted language rows in the translator dialog box appear in the source language (the current session language). When you edit a particular language entry, you can modify the translated meaning and description to the language in which you want the lookup to appear. Once the updates are made, the end-users can view the lookup in the translated text.

**Note:** You can add the translation for only as many languages as are permitted by the administrator. The functionality to limit the number of languages displayed on the dialog box is controlled through the Translation Editor Languages profile option. It can be set at the SITE or USER level. If nothing is specified, all active languages are displayed.

Related Topics

• Enter or Edit Translated Text

Example of a Standard Lookup

Creating a new standard lookup involves creating or selecting a lookup type containing the lookup code. The task also involves determining appropriate values for the lookup codes and their meanings. You can only create or edit lookup codes for a particular lookup type if its configuration level supports it.

Creating a Lookup Type Called COLORS

Your enterprise needs a list of values to be used as different statuses on a process. Each status is indicated using a color. Therefore, you create a lookup type called COLORS. The following table lists a mapping between the lookup type parameters and the actual values assigned to those parameters to create the required list of values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lookup type parameters</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lookup type name</td>
<td>COLORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Status by color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module</td>
<td>Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After you define the lookup type, you need to define the lookup codes and their related details. The following table lists the lookup codes you define for the COLORS lookup type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lookup Code</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Enabled</th>
<th>Display Sequence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLUE</td>
<td>Urgent</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RED</td>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN</td>
<td>Proceed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YELLOW</td>
<td>Check</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Resulting Data Entry List of Values

Only the enabled lookup codes appear in the list of values for the COLORS lookup type. You must select one of them to complete the activity.

The following table lists the meanings and the codes that were enabled. They appear in the order of the defined display sequence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Lookup Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>RED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check</td>
<td>YELLOW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceed</td>
<td>GREEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis

The BLUE lookup code was not enabled and does not appear in the list of values. The display sequence of values in the list of values is alphabetic, unless you enter a number manually to determine the order of appearance. Number 1 indicates the first value that appears in the list. Only lookups that are enabled and active between start and end dates are visible.

The Transaction Table

When users enter one of the values from the list of values for the lookup type COLORS, the transaction table records the lookup code. The following table contains an example, where the lookup code is stored in the Status column of the transaction table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transaction number</th>
<th>User name</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Jane</td>
<td>RED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>YELLOW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>BLUE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The status for one user is BLUE because at the time they entered a value, BLUE was enabled. Disabling a lookup code does not affect transaction records in which that code is stored. Data querying and reporting have access to disabled lookup codes in transaction tables.

Example of a Set-Enabled Lookup

Creating a new set-enabled lookup is similar to creating a standard lookup with the addition of specifying a reference data set determinant for the lookup codes. You can only create or edit lookup codes for a particular lookup type if its configuration level supports it.

The reference data set for a set-enabled lookup code is part of its foreign key. This is unlike other set-enabled entities. Use the Manage Set Assignments task to define and manage reference data set assignments.

Selecting a Reference Group for a Set-Enabled Lookup Type

Specify a reference group for a set-enabled lookup type to indicate which reference data set assignments are available for its lookup codes. For example a COLORS lookup type might be set-enabled for a Countries reference group that includes the US and EU reference data set assignments.

Selecting a Reference Data Set for a Set-Enabled Lookup

The reference data set determines which lookup code is included in the list of values. For example, there are two references data sets - one for the US and the other for EU. If a COLORS lookup type contains RED, YELLOW, ORANGE, and GREEN lookup codes, you can enable one RED lookup code from the US reference data set and another RED lookup from the EU reference data, each lookup code having different meanings.

The following table elaborates the example, how these two reference data sets (US and EU) contain one lookup code that is common, but each differing in its lookup meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference Data Set</th>
<th>Lookup Code</th>
<th>Lookup Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>RED</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>YELLOW</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>GREEN</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td>RED</td>
<td>Rouge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td>ORANGE</td>
<td>Orange</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some lookup codes may be unique to one or another reference data set as the ORANGE lookup is to the EU reference data set in the example.

In another example in the following table, a lookup type called HOLD_REASON provides a list of reasons for putting a contract renewal on hold. Reference data sets determine which codes are included in the Hold Reason list of values.
Referring to the example in the table, when end-users place a contract on hold in the US business unit, the three reason codes in the US set are available. When placing a contract on hold in the China business unit, the two codes in the China set are available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference Data Set</th>
<th>Lookup Code</th>
<th>Lookup Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>SEC Compliance Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>DIR</td>
<td>Needs Director’s Approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>VP</td>
<td>Needs Vice President’s Approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHINA</td>
<td>CSRC</td>
<td>Pending China Securities Regulatory Commission Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHINA</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Needs President’s Approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMON</td>
<td>REQUESTED</td>
<td>Customer Request</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Import Lookups

On each page pertaining to the tasks of managing the Standard, Common, and Set Enabled lookups, use the Import option to import the lookup type and lookup code information.

Prerequisite

The separate files containing the lookup types and lookup codes are already available in the document repository of Oracle WebCenter Content.

Importing Lookups

To import lookups:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Standard Lookups task. Depending on the lookup you want to import, you may select the other lookup tasks.
2. In Search Results, from the Actions menu, select Import.

The Import Lookups dialog box appears.
3. Select the WebCenter Content account to which the files were uploaded.
4. Enter the names of the separate files containing the lookup type and lookup code information. The names here must match with the names of the files uploaded to the selected account.
5. Click Upload. The lookup details are imported.

Note: If the import fails, click the link to the log file on the confirmation dialog box and examine the cause of failure.
File Format for Importing Lookups

To import lookups into an application, you create separate text files containing the lookup types and lookup codes and upload them to the Oracle WebCenter Content document repository. The files must follow a specific format, as described here. After the files are in the document repository, you can then import the lookup types and lookup codes into the application following the instructions in the Importing Lookups: Procedure topic.

While creating the file, adhere to the following guidelines:

- Use a vertical bar or pipe ( | ) as a delimiter between fields for both header and value rows.
- Set the file encoding to UTF-8 without the Byte Order Mark (BOM), as per the Oracle WebCenter Content specification.

The following sections contain details about the specific lookup types and codes.

Prerequisite
You must have worked with lookups in Oracle Cloud applications.

Standard and Common Lookups
The lookup types and codes are similar for standard and common lookups. To create a file containing the lookup types, include the following headers:

- **LookupType**: The lookup type.
- **Meaning**: The display name of the lookup type.
- **Description**: The description of the lookup type. This header is optional.
- **ModuleType**: The module with which the lookup type is associated.
- **ModuleKey**: The module code.

Here’s a sample file that contains the header values at the beginning of the file, followed by line entries of the two lookup types that are to be imported. For importing several lookup types, add more line entries in a similar format.

```
LookupType|Meaning|Description|ModuleType|ModuleKey
AFLOG_22APR_1|Log1|AFLOG_desc_1|APPLICATION|FND
PROD_22APR_2|Product1|PROD_desc_2|APPLICATION|FND
```

To create a file containing the lookup codes, include the following headers.

- **Required headers**:
  - **LookupType**: The lookup type.
  - **LookupCode**: The lookup code associated with the lookup type.
  - **DisplaySequence**: The sequence position at which the lookup code appears in the list of values.
  - **EnabledFlag**: Indicates the status of the lookup code, whether it’s enabled for display or not.
  - **Meaning**: The display name of the lookup code.
- **Optional headers**:
  - **StartDateActive**: Beginning of the date range during which the lookup code is active and visible on the page.
  - **EndDateActive**: End of the date range during which the lookup code is active and visible on the page.
o **Description**: Description of the lookup code.

o **Tag**: Any tag associated with the lookup code that may be used for a quick reference or retrieval of information.

Here’s a sample file that contains two lookup codes:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LookupType</th>
<th>LookupCode</th>
<th>DisplaySequence</th>
<th>EnabledFlag</th>
<th>StartDateActive</th>
<th>EndDateActive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TASK_22APR_1</td>
<td>Code1_1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>11/12/2014</td>
<td>1/5/2015</td>
<td>TASK_22apr_1</td>
<td>Task_desc_1</td>
<td>Tag1_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK_22APR_1</td>
<td>Code1_2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1/1/2014</td>
<td>1/11/2015</td>
<td>TASK_22apr_2</td>
<td>Task_desc_2</td>
<td>Tag1_2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK_22APR_2</td>
<td>Code2_1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>11/12/2012</td>
<td>1/7/2015</td>
<td>TASK_22qpr_2</td>
<td>Task_desc_2</td>
<td>Tag2_1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TASK_22APR_2</td>
<td>Code2_2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>11/12/2012</td>
<td>1/7/2015</td>
<td>TASK_22qpr_2</td>
<td>Task_desc_2</td>
<td>Tag2_2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**Set Enabled Lookups**

To create a file containing the set enabled lookup types, include the following headers:

- **LookupType**: The lookup type.
- **Meaning**: The display name of the lookup type.
- **Description**: The description of the lookup type. This header is optional.
- **ModuleType**: The module with which the lookup type is associated.
- **ModuleKey**: The module code.
- **ReferenceGroupName**: Name of the reference group that contains the reference data set.

Here’s a sample that contains two set enabled lookup types:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LookupType</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>ModuleType</th>
<th>ModuleKey</th>
<th>ReferenceGroupName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CODE_22APR_1</td>
<td>CODE_22apr_1</td>
<td>Code_desc_1</td>
<td>APPLICATION</td>
<td>FND</td>
<td>BU_APAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE_22APR_2</td>
<td>CODE_22qpr_2</td>
<td>Code_desc_2</td>
<td>APPLICATION</td>
<td>FND</td>
<td>BU_APAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

To create a file containing the set enabled lookup codes, include the following headers:

- **Required headers**:
  - **LookupType**: The lookup type.
  - **LookupCode**: The lookup code associated with the lookup type.
  - **DisplaySequence**: The sequence position at which the lookup code appears in the list of values.
  - **EnabledFlag**: Indicates the status of the lookup code, whether it’s enabled for display or not.
  - **Meaning**: The display name of the lookup code.
  - **SetName**: Name of the reference data set.

- **Optional headers**:
  - **StartDateActive**: Beginning of the date range during which the lookup code is active and visible on the page.
  - **EndDateActive**: End of the date range during which the lookup code is active and visible on the page.
  - **Description**: Description of the lookup code.
  - **Tag**: Any tag associated with the lookup code that may be used for a quick reference or retrieval of information.

Here’s a sample file that contains the header values at the beginning and lists four set enabled lookup codes to be imported. For importing several lookup codes, add more entries in the same format.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LookupType</th>
<th>LookupCode</th>
<th>DisplaySequence</th>
<th>EnabledFlag</th>
<th>StartDateActive</th>
<th>EndDateActive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
```

344
Related Topics

- Overview of Files for Import and Export
- Guidelines for File Import and Export
- Upload Files to WebCenter Content Server

FAQs for Define Lookups

How can I edit lookups?
On any of the Manage Lookups pages, you can edit the existing lookup codes of a lookup type or add new lookup codes. You can edit lookups using the following tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- Manage Standard Lookups
- Manage Common Lookups
- Manage Set-enabled Lookups

Each task contains a predefined set of lookup types that are classified and stored. Open a task to search and edit the required lookup. However, you may not be able to edit a lookup if its configuration level doesn’t support editing.

How can I access predefined lookups?
Search for predefined lookups using any of the manage lookups tasks.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to any of the following tasks that contains the lookups you are looking for:
   - Manage Standard Lookups
   - Manage Common Lookups
   - Manage Set-enabled Lookups

2. Enter any of the search parameters and click **Search**. If you don’t know the lookup type or the meaning, use the **Module** field to filter search results.
3. Click a lookup type to view its lookup codes.

💡 Tip: Click the Query By Example icon to filter the lookup codes.

Related Topics

- Use Query By Example

Why can’t I see my lookup types?
Lookup types are classified using tasks that involve a group of related lookups, such as Manage Geography Lookups. Each task gives you access only to certain lookup types. However, the generic tasks provide access to all lookup types of a kind, such as common lookups associated with the Manage Common Lookups task.
If the lookup types in an application are available in the standard, common, or set-enabled lookups view, they’re are central to an application. However, lookup types defined for a specific application are managed using the task or task list for that application.

**What's the difference between a lookup type and a value set?**

A lookup type consists of lookups that are static values in a list of values. Lookup code validation is a one to one match. A table-validated value set may consist of values that are validated through a SQL statement, which allows the list of values to be dynamic. The following table brings out the differences between a lookup type and a value set.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Difference</th>
<th>Lookup Type</th>
<th>Value Set</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List of values</td>
<td>Static</td>
<td>Dynamic if the list is table-validated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validation of values</td>
<td>One to one match of meaning to code included in a lookup view, or through the determinant of a reference data set</td>
<td>Validation by format or inclusion in a table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format type of values</td>
<td>char</td>
<td>varchar2, number, and so on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of value</td>
<td>Text string up to 30 characters</td>
<td>Any type of variable length from 1 to 4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplication of values</td>
<td>Never. Values are unique.</td>
<td>Duplicate values allowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management</td>
<td>Both administrators and end-users manage these, except system lookups or predefined lookups at the system configuration level, which can't be modified.</td>
<td>Usually administrators maintain these, except some product flexfield codes, such as GL for Oracle Fusion General Ledger that the end-users maintain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both lookup types and value sets are used to create lists of values from which users select values.

A lookup type cannot use a value from a value set. However, value sets can use standard, common, or set-enabled lookups.

**What's a lookup tag used for?**

A tag is an additional label attached to the lookup. Tags are user defined and can be grouped depending on the user's requirement to make search convenient and effective.

The same tag may be used across lookup categories. In such cases, tags are used as a refined search criterion to filter information across several groups and get the search result.

**Manage Messages**


Messages

Messages provide users with information about business or application errors or warnings. Typically, messages inform the users about the following:

- Missing or incorrect data
- Status of an application, page, or a business object
- Status of an ongoing process
- Result of a user action

Besides notifying users about the problem, messages provide guidance to users on taking corrective action. Messages also warn users about the consequences of a certain action.

Oracle provides a set of predefined messages that are stored in a message dictionary. You can create additional messages or modify the existing ones using the Manage Messages task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

⚠️ Note: Don’t delete predefined messages unless you are sure that they aren’t used anywhere.

Message Dictionary

The message dictionary stores messages that the application requires at run time. Messages are predefined for specific applications and modules, but a few are common messages that can be used in any application or module.

When you create messages, use the message text and the following components to cover additional details addressing users and help desk personnel:

- User Details: A detailed explanation of the message short text meant for users.
- Administrator Details: Details of the identified problem meant for the help desk personnel. The end users don’t see this text.
- Cause: An end-user version of the cause of error.
- User Action: Instructions to users for addressing the identified problem. Where there is no guidance for end users, they must approach the help desk.
- Administrator Action: Corrective action that help desk personnel must take to correct the problem. This information is not available to the end users.

Message Types

All messages must be associated with a message type. You can select the message type based on the message severity. The available message types are:

- Error
- Warning
- Information
- UI String
Error Messages

Use the Error message to inform users about, for example, entering incorrect data or performing actions that trigger validation. Error messages also inform users how to correct the situation so that they can continue with their task.

For example: You cannot specify a task without specifying the project.

Error messages also tell users about any serious problem with the application or process, and when they must seek assistance from the help desk. Some error messages trigger incidents or logs and have a mechanism to notify the help desk automatically.

Warning Messages

Use the Warning message type to inform users about an application condition or a situation that might require their decision before they can continue.

Warning messages:

- Describe the reason for the warning and potential consequence of the selected or intended user action.
- Can be either a question or a statement.

For example: You delete the primary user. Do you want to continue?

The message is usually followed by Yes and No buttons.

Information Messages

The Information message type tells users about changes in the application, a page, or a business object. These messages aren’t triggered by users, and they don’t have to take any immediate action in response.

For example: No events have been started or processed for this employee.

Use the Information message type to communicate information that is neither an error nor a warning.

UI String Messages

Use the UI string message type to store shorter messages such as UI prompts, titles, or translated text, in the message dictionary.

Related Topics

- Message Groups

Create and Edit Messages

You can create messages or edit the predefined messages stored in the message dictionary.

Creating a Message

To create a message, perform the following steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Messages task.
2. On the Manage Messages page, click the New icon.
3. On the Create Message page, enter details in each section.
4. In the Message Properties section:
   a. Enter a unique message name that helps you find the messages you create and avoid name conflicts with predefined messages. Use underscore as a separator if the name contains multiple parts.
   b. Select the application and module to associate the message with.
   c. Enter a unique number that can be used as an identifier for the message. Users can quote this number when they contact the help desk for assistance.
   
   **Note:** You can use any number between 10,000,000 and 10,999,999. This number range is allocated for the messages you create. At runtime, this number appears along with the application code after the message text, for example FND-2774.
   
   d. In the Translation Notes field, enter a description of the message indicating its use.
   e. Select the relevant message type, category, and severity.
   f. Select the **Logging Enabled** check box to create incidents or logs when messages appear on the UI.

5. In the Message Text section:
   a. In the Short Text field, provide the actual message text that appears on the page at runtime.
      
      The short text can include tokens that are placeholders for displaying dynamic values at runtime. However, to support easy translation, keep the message length (including values of tokens) within 160 characters in American English.
   b. In the User Details field, enter information for the users to know why the message appeared. You can also include information for the users to resolve the issue themselves.
      
      If your Short Text component has tokens that expand the text beyond the 160-character limit, move that portion of text here.
   c. In the Administrator Details field, provide a detailed technical explanation of the message. This field is only visible to the help desk.
   d. In the Cause field, provide a concise explanation of why the message appears. This text is visible to the users.
      
      This information is optional and is only applicable to messages of type Error and Warning. However, if you mention the cause, you must mention in the User Action field the action that users must take.
   e. In the User Action field, enter the user action to guide the users with steps to respond to the message and complete the task.
   f. In the Administrator Action field, provide information that the help desk can use to resolve the problem.

6. In the Message Tokens section, define tokens that you want to use in this message.

7. Click **Save and Close**.

**Editing a Message**

You can edit a predefined message or a message that you created.

To edit a message, search for a message on the Manage Messages page and perform the following steps:

1. Select the existing message and click the **Edit** icon.
2. On the Edit Message page, modify the existing details according to the instructions provided in the Creating a Message procedure.
   
   **Note:** Don’t edit the message number for predefined messages.

3. Click **Save and Close**.
While creating and editing messages, you can translate the message details to the preferred languages without changing the language session of the application. To specify the translations in all the enabled language rows, use the Translation Editor option. Once the updates are made, users can view the translated text for the specific details.

**Related Topics**

- Message Groups
- How can I make message components visible only to specific users
- Enter or Edit Translated Text

**Use of Tokens in Messages**

Certain messages must display variable information at run time to help users clearly relate to the actual data and perform the required action. You can use tokens to contain variable values at run time, instead of writing a unique message for every possible situation.

Tokens are programmatic parts of message text that are placed within curly brackets when creating the message. Tokens serve as placeholders for the actual data. At run time, tokens dynamically display the actual text or value in the message, making a message specific to the situation. For example, the message "Enter an effective date that is the same as or later than {MATURITY_DATE}" contains the token {MATURITY_DATE}. At run time, instead of the token, the represented value (the actual date) appears. Thus, users see the message "Enter an effective date that is the same as or later than 25-APR-2015".

Use the Manage Messages task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to create and manage tokens. You must edit a message to define tokens for it. You can create tokens for a message and also delete them. However, you can't edit or delete the pre-defined tokens.

**Token Definition**

To define a token, you must provide the following information:

- A unique name for the token.
- The type of data that the token replaces at run time. Available types are Date, Number, or Text.
- A description about what the token represents at run time.

**Guidelines**

Follow these general guidelines while defining tokens:

- Use curly brackets and all uppercase letters for the token names.
- Use underscore as a separator for a name containing two words or more.
- Don’t use a space between words.

The following table contains specific guidelines for each token data type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Guideline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Use tokens for substituting any variable text element that qualifies as a noun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Plan carefully while using tokens for numbers especially, where a token could refer to either a singular or a plural number. You can use tokens for numbers representing an order, customer, or any other business object bearing a numeric value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How can I make message components visible only to specific users?

Use the Manage Administrator Profile Values task to determine the visibility of the message components. For the Message Mode profile option, set the profile value to either User or Administrator. Based on the set value, the administrator or user actions and details appear for the intended audience.

However, the message components are visible to the audience based on their predefined access rights. Anyone having a user level access can’t view the Administrator message components. If you set the profile value to the administrators of a specific product, the message components are visible only to that specific audience.

Note: If you don’t set any value to the profile option, the visibility of the message component is determined by the default profile option settings.

Common Messages

Message names that begin with FND_CMN are common messages. Each common message can appear in multiple places in any product family across Oracle Applications Cloud. For example, the FND_CMN_NEW_SRCH message can be used for any search to indicate that no results were found. Common messages of type error or warning are part of the message dictionary.

Creating and Editing Common Messages

You can create common messages for use in multiple places. However, ensure that you follow the predefined naming convention and numbering series associated with the application or module.

Note: Don’t use FND_CMN as the prefix for the messages you create because all the predefined common messages begin with it.

Common messages can be used in any application. Therefore, consider the ramifications if you edit any aspect of the message, including incident and logging settings. Changes would be reflected in all instances where the message is used. For example, if you change the message text, ensure that the text is generic and applies to the entire site of Oracle Applications Cloud implementation.

Define Document Sequences

Document Sequences

You can assign a document sequence number to each business document or business event to uniquely identify it. For example, you can assign a document sequence number to an invoice that gets generated in response to a purchase order.
However, you must enable the document sequencing option for that business document or event to start assigning the number. A document sequence number is useful in tracking completed or failed transactions.

You can set up document sequencing in three different modes:

- Automatic
- Manual
- Gapless

**Note:** Plan your document sequencing carefully before you start applying sequence numbers. Avoid switching to a different mode after you saved your work on the Manage Document Sequences and Manage Document Sequence Categories pages.

### Automatic Sequencing

Automatic document sequencing assigns a unique number to each document automatically when the document is generated. That unique number is stored in the database. You can set an initial value for the numbering sequence. Thereafter, the numbering is sequential by date and time of creation. If you don’t provide an initial value, the application sets the default initial value as 1.

### Manual Sequencing

Use the manual sequencing mode to assign a unique number to each document before the document is generated. In manual sequencing, the numeric ordering and completeness of a transaction is not automatically enforced. As a result, users can skip or omit numbers when entering the sequence value. However, each time a user assigns a number, the application validates its uniqueness.

### Gapless Sequencing

Gapless sequencing is similar to automatic sequencing. It automatically generates a unique number for each document, but does that only for successfully generated documents. Sequence numbers are not assigned to incomplete or failed documents. As a result, the sequence is maintained for all the successfully generated documents.

Additionally, you can control the gapless document sequencing by enforcing the Transaction Date Validation option. When enabled, this option checks for the transaction date of a particular document and assigns the sequence number accordingly, to chronologically maintain the documents. The sequence numbers and the transaction dates are chronologically correlated to prevent any mismatch of a new document sequence assigned to an older document or an older document sequence assigned to a new document.

**Note:** Use this type of sequencing only if necessary because it may affect the performance of the application and slow down transaction processing.

### Related Topics

- Modules in Application Taxonomy

---

### Document Sequence Categories

A document sequence category is a set of documents that share similar characteristics and that are formed into a logical group. Document sequence categories simplify the task of assigning number sequences to specific documents. Instead of
assigning a number to each document, you assign a document sequence to one or more document sequence categories. The document sequence category automatically takes care of numbering the documents.

A document sequence category identifies the database table that stores documents resulting from transactions that your users enter. When you assign a sequence to a category, the sequence numbers the documents that are stored in a particular table. You must create document sequence categories to be able to manage the task of assigning document sequences.

**Note:** Once a document sequence category is created, you can’t change the application, the category code, or the table name. Therefore, carefully consider these details and plan your document sequencing requirement before you begin working with the application.

Once you create a document sequence category, it is available for use in the **Document Sequences: Assignments** section on the Manage Document Sequences page. The **Category** field contains the name of the document sequence category. After you create a document sequence, you can assign it to a document sequence category.

### Guidelines for Managing Document Sequences

Sequencing documents is an important business and legal requirement. Therefore, you must first decide the appropriate document sequence to use for a set of documents. Before you begin, here are a few prerequisites:

- Determine beforehand the mode of document sequencing, because you can’t switch to other types once a sequence is in use.
- Note details such as the document sequence and document sequence category, for later reference.
- Identify if there are any restrictions or configuration prerequisites.

**Note:** Products that implement document sequencing have specifications about its usage. Refer to the corresponding product documentation for specific details and also to determine if there are any restrictions or configuration prerequisites.

### Creating and Editing Document Sequences

You can create document sequences that are automatic, manual, or gapless, depending on the business or legal requirement. By default, the current date is considered as the start date. The sequence definition never expires if you don’t provide an end date. Among the several options used in creating and editing document sequences, the following options are functionally more important and therefore must be carefully determined:

- **Determinant Type:** Select to limit the document sequencing activity to certain documents that belong to a specific business entity, such as Ledger, Tax Registration, and so on.
- **Initial Value:** Enter a value for the first document in your sequence. This field applies only to sequences with automatic or gapless numbering types. Sequence numbers must not be greater than eight digits. If you leave this field blank, the first document is automatically assigned a value of 1. Once a document sequence is defined, you can’t change this initial value.

### Creating and Editing Document Sequence Categories

Document sequence categories are defined to make it easy to assign document sequence definitions to a group of documents instead of to individual documents. Each document sequence category is mapped to a specific table, where the documents belonging to that category are stored. When specifying the table, you must consider the following points:

- When the sequential numbering feature checks for completeness or generates a report, it locates the category’s documents in the table.
• Select only those tables that belong to the application associated with the category.
• Once a category is defined, you can’t switch to another table.

Assigning Document Sequences
Identify the documents to be numbered before assigning them a document sequence. For each document sequence, there can be only one active assignment to a document sequence category, and a determinant value (if applicable). As part of the assignment, specify whether the document is created automatically (for example, due to a batch process, or manually through a form). If you don’t specify an end date, the assignment continues to remain active throughout the process cycle. If a determinant type was specified for the document sequence, then enter a specific determinant value related to the determinant type.

At run time, when users create documents, the document sequence to be assigned is determined based on the following:

• An active assignment that matches the correct combination of category
• The numbering method
• The date range containing the transaction date

Auditing Document Sequences
You can audit document sequences, if required, to provide an audit trail of the document sequences used in a specific product. However, before enabling the audit functionality for a document sequence, you must have created an audit table for the specific document sequence, using appropriate details. Enabling the audit functionality is permitted only for newly created document sequences. You can’t audit document sequences that are already in use by a specific product.

For more information about defining a document sequence audit table, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Related Topics
• Guidelines for Managing Modules in Application Taxonomy

Define Trees
Overview of Trees
Trees are hierarchical data models that you can use to organize data, apply business rules, control data access, and improve performance while querying. For example, an application maintains data of an organization called Vision Corporation that has two departments: Marketing and Finance. The Finance department has two functional divisions: Receivables and Payables. You can define a tree for Vision Corporation to establish a hierarchy across its departments, and their respective functional divisions. You can use the hierarchy to manage data at various levels of the organization.

To work with trees, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use any of the following tasks:

• Manage Tree Structures: To create and update tree structures. You must first define a tree structure to create a tree.
• Manage Trees and Tree Versions: To create and update trees and their versions.
• Manage Tree Labels: To create and update tree labels.
Tree Structures
As the name suggests, tree structures provide you the framework to organize data such that you can establish a hierarchy for use by the tree. So, similar to a template, a tree structure guides the creation of a tree.

Tree
A tree is an instance of the tree structure. The root node is the highest nodal point of a tree. Child nodes branch off from the root node. Child nodes at the same level, branching off from a common parent node, are called siblings. Leaves are details branching off from a node but not extending further down the tree hierarchy. You can create trees for multiple data sources and share them across applications.

Tree Versions
A tree by default has only one version. If required, you can create and maintain more than one editable tree version. At any point, only one tree version must be active. If you edit an existing version, it changes from active to draft. To use it again, you must set it to active. Similar to any other version control system, versions of trees are maintained to track all the changes that a tree undergoes in its life cycle.

Tree Labels
Tree labels are short names given to trees and tree structures. You can label the tree versions for better accessibility and information retrieval. When nodes are created in a tree, the existing tree labels are automatically assigned to the new tree nodes. You can use any table to store the labels and register the label data source with the tree structure.

Manage Tree Structures

Tree Structures
A tree structure defines the hierarchy for creating trees and prescribes rules based on which trees are created, versioned, and accessed. You can associate multiple data sources with a tree structure. A tree is an instance of this hierarchy. Every tree structure can contain one or more trees.

You can create tree structures specific to an application but you can share tree structures across applications. If you apply version control to the tree structure, it is carried over to the trees that are based on the tree structure. Each tree version contains at least one root node. Occasionally, a tree version may have more than one root node.

An administrator controls the access to tree structures through a set of rules that are periodically audited for validity.

Guidelines for Defining the Tree Structure
While creating a tree structure, you must specify important details on the Create Tree Structure: Specify Definition page. As the source of the tree structure, you may either select the predefined tree structures and proceed with the definition or create tree structures.

Tree Node Selection
The data in Tree Node table maps to the data in nodes of the tree structure. You must select the correct and most appropriate tree node table to define the tree structure, based on which you establish the tree hierarchy. This selection also affects the level of security that is set on a tree node and its child entities.
Tree Sharing Mode
Use the following options to determine the mode of sharing a tree structure across the applications.

- Open: Indicates that the tree is associated with all reference data sets.
- Set ID: Indicates that the tree is associated with a specific reference data set.

Modification
You can modify the predefined tree structures as well as those you create. However, modifying a predefined tree structure is restricted and permitted through additional privileges. Modification is limited to specific tree nodes and lower in the tree hierarchy.

Multiple Tree Versions
Although multiple tree versions can exist together, Oracle recommends only one version be active at any given time. However, if required, you can have more tree versions to be in the active state for the same date range. You can use this flexibility to select the tree version you want to implement.

Guidelines for Managing Tree Structures
You can create, edit, and delete tree structures. You can also change the status of a tree structure and audit the changes.

Creating and Editing Tree Structures
When you edit an active tree structure, the status of the tree structure and all associated trees and their versions changes to draft. To reuse a tree structure, create a copy of the tree without copying the associated trees and tree versions. After making changes, set the status again to active. If you delete a tree structure, all the associated trees and tree versions are automatically deleted.

For information about working with the offering-specific predefined tree structures, refer to the relevant product documentation.

Status
When you change the status of a tree structure, the status of the trees and tree versions associated with that tree structure also changes.

The following table lists the different statuses of a tree structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Draft</td>
<td>In a modified state, or not yet in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>In use, indicating that one or more trees or tree versions are created from the tree structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactive</td>
<td>Not in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tree Structure Audit Results
Use the tree structure audit results to verify the tree structure's correctness and data integrity. The audit results include the following details:

- The name of the validator, which is a specific validation check
- The result of the validation, including a detailed message
- Corrective actions to take if there are any validation errors
Running an Audit

Setting the status of a tree structure to active automatically triggers an audit of that tree structure. To manually trigger an audit, select Audit from the Actions menu on the Manage Tree Structures page. The Tree Structure Audit Result table shows a list of validations that ran against the selected tree structure.

Audit Validators

The following table lists the validators used in the audit process and describes what each validator checks for. It also lists possible causes for validation errors and suggests corrective actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validator</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description (what is validated)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restrict By Set ID</td>
<td>Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data Sources</td>
<td>If you select the Reference Data Set check box for the Restrict Tree Node List of Values Based on option, each of its data source view objects must have a reference data set attribute.</td>
<td>Even when the check box is selected, one or more data source view objects doesn’t contain a reference data set attribute.</td>
<td>If reference data set restriction is required for this tree structure, include a reference data set attribute on all data sources. Otherwise, deselect the check box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Available Label Data Sources | Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data Sources           | If you select a list item from Labeling Scheme to specify a labeling scheme, the label data source view object specified for each data source must be accessible. Also, the primary keys must be valid. This restriction doesn’t apply if you select None from the list. | - Any of the specified label data source view objects doesn’t exist.  
- Any of the specified label data source view objects doesn’t have primary keys.  
- When a label data source view object is initially defined, the database registers the primary keys for the view object. If the view object is later modified such that its primary keys no longer match the primary keys that were registered earlier, this validation fails.  
- Correct the specified label data source view object.  
- Correct the primary keys of the specified label data source view object.  
- Do one of the following:  
  - Correct the primary keys in the label data source view object to match the primary keys that were earlier registered in FND_TS_DATA_SOURCE.  
  - Correct the primary keys registered in that table to match the new view object definition. | |
| Row Flattened Table Name   | Manage Tree Structures: Specify Performance Options    | You must specify a valid row flattened table for the tree structure. It can                  | - The specified table doesn’t exist in the database.                                                 | Correct the row flattened table definition.                                                |
### Validator: Column Flattened Table Name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description (what is validated)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either be the standard row flattened table FND_TREE_NODE_RF or another table.</td>
<td>The specified table doesn’t contain the same columns as the FND_TREE_NODE_RF table.</td>
<td>Correct the column flattened table definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Available Data Sources

**Add Data Source**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description (what is validated)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Each data source view object specified for the tree structure must be accessible, and all its primary key attributes must be valid.</td>
<td>Any of the specified data source view objects doesn’t exist.</td>
<td>Correct the specified data source view object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you define a data source view object, keep the Use non-defined primary key columns check box deselected. The database automatically registers the primary keys for the view object. Select this check box if you want the database to register the primary keys you specify. However, if the registered primary keys contain any duplicates, this validation fails.</td>
<td>Correct the duplicate column in the registered primary keys.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Use non-defined primary key columns check box is selected in a data source, but the list of specified primary key columns doesn’t match the primary keys defined in the corresponding data source view object.</td>
<td>Correct the primary keys of the specified data source view object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any common attribute that exists in both the data source view object and the tree node view object isn’t of the same data type in both view objects.</td>
<td>Correct any mismatch in data types.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Manage Tree Structures: Specify Performance Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description (what is validated)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You must specify a valid column flattened table for the tree structure. It can</td>
<td>The specified table doesn’t exist in the database.</td>
<td>Correct the column flattened table definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Guidelines for Specifying Data Sources for Tree Structures

The data sources provide the items for establishing hierarchy in a tree structure. In the tree management infrastructure, these data sources are Oracle ADF business components view objects, which are defined by application development.

Labeling Schemes

Selecting a labeling scheme determines how the tree nodes are labeled. You may select a labeling scheme to assign at the data source level, at the parent node level, or keep it open for customers assignment. You may also choose not to have any labeling scheme. However, if you decide to use any of the labeling schemes, select the following additional options, to restrict the list of values that appear in the selected tree node.

- **Allow Ragged Nodes**: To include nodes that have no child nodes, and are shorter than the remaining nodes in the entire hierarchy.
- **Allow Skip Level Nodes**: To include nodes that are at the same level but have parent nodes at different levels.

Restriction of Tree Node Values

You can decide the depth of the tree structure by selecting an appropriate value from the list. Keeping the depth limit open renders an infinite list of values.
Using the following options, you can restrict the list of values that appear for selection in a specific tree node.

- **Date Range**: Specifies whether a selection of nodes should be restricted to the same date range as the tree version.
- **Allow Multiple Root Nodes**: Allows you to add multiple root nodes when creating a tree version.
- **Reference Data Set**: Specifies whether a selection of nodes should be restricted to the same set as the tree.

### Data Source Values and Parameters

Tree data sources have optional data source parameters with defined view criteria and associated bind variables. You can specify view criteria as a data source parameter when creating a tree structure, and edit the parameters when creating a tree. Multiple data sources can be associated with a tree structure and can have well-defined relationships among them.

**Note:** Parameter values modified at the tree level override the default values specified at the tree-structure level.

The data source parameters are applied to any tree version belonging to that data source, when performing node operations on the tree nodes. Data source parameters also provide an additional level of filtering for different tree structures. The tree structure definition supports three data source parameter types.

- **Bound Value**: Captures any fixed value, which is used as part of the view criteria condition.
- **Variable**: Captures and binds a dynamic value that is being used by the data source view object. This value is used by the WHERE condition of the data flow.
- **View Criteria**: Captures the view criteria name, which is applied to the data source view object.

You can also specify which of the data source parameters are mandatory while creating or editing the tree structure.

View objects from the Oracle ADF business components are used as data sources. To associate the view object with the tree structure, you can pick the code from Oracle ADF business component view objects and provide the fully qualified name of the view object, for example, `oracle.apps.fnd.appcore.trees.model.view.FndLabelVO`.

### Guidelines for Improving the Performance of a Tree Structure

Tree structures are heavily loaded with data. As a tree management guideline, use the following settings to improve performance of data rendering and retrieval.

- Row Flattening
- Column Flattening
- Column Flattened Entity Objects
- BI View Objects

#### Row Flattening

Row flattening optimizes parent-child information for run-time performance by storing additional rows in a table for instantly finding all descendants of a parent without initiating a CONNECT BY query. Row flattening eliminates recursive queries, which allows operations to perform across an entire subtree more efficiently.

To store row flattened data for the specific tree structure, users can either use the central `FND_TREE_NODE_RF` table or they can register their own row flattened table. For example, in a table, if Corporation is the parent of Sales Division (Corporation-Sales Division), and Sales Division is the parent of Region (Sales Division-Region), a row-flattened table contains an additional row with Corporation directly being the parent of Region (Corporation-Region).

#### Column Flattening

Column flattening optimizes parent-child information for runtime performance by storing an additional column in a table for all parents of a child.
To store column flattened data for the specific tree structure, users can either use the central `FND_TREE_NODE_CF` table or they can register their own column flattened table. For example, in a table, if Corporation is the parent of Sales Division (Corporation-Sales Division), and Sales Division is the parent of Region (Sales Division-Region), a flattened table in addition to these columns, contains three new columns: Region, Sales Division, and Corporation. Although positioned next to each other, the column Region functions at the lower level and Corporation at the higher level, retaining the data hierarchy.

Column Flattened Entity Object

In the absence of a column-flattened table, if you need to generate the business component view objects for your tree structure for the flattened table, use the tree management infrastructure to correctly provide the fully qualified name of the entity object for the column flattened table.

BI View Object

View objects from Business Intelligence can be used as data sources, eliminating the need to create new types of data sources. This field is to store the fully qualified name for the BI view object generated by the tree management for business intelligence reporting and usage. The BI view object is a combination of the tree data source and column flattened entity. Using this option prevents data redundancy and promotes greater reuse of existing data, thereby improving the performance of the tree structure.

Search View Object

Specify the full name of the view object for the tree node to ensure that search operations performed on the tree node are efficient.

Manage Tree Labels

Tree Labels

Tree labels are tags that are stored on tree nodes. You can store labels in any table and register the label data source with the tree structure. When a labeling scheme is used for trees, the selected labels are stored in the tree label entity, and each tree node contains a reference to a tree label in the labeling scheme.

The following table lists the three ways in which tree labels are assigned to the tree nodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labeling Scheme</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level</td>
<td>Labels that are automatically assigned based on the data source to which the tree node belongs. A level label points to a specific data source. For example, in a tree that reflects the organizational hierarchy of an enterprise, all division nodes appear on one level and all department nodes on another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Labels that you can arbitrarily assign to tree nodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>Labels that are automatically assigned based on the depth of the tree node within the tree. No manual assignment is performed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* In an unbalanced hierarchy, a level may not be equal to depth.
Manage Trees and Tree Versions

Guidelines for Managing Trees and Tree Versions
You can create and edit trees and tree versions depending upon the requirement. A tree can have one or more tree versions. When changes are made to an existing tree, a new version is created and published.

Creating and Editing Trees
Trees are created based on the structure defined in the tree structure. You can create trees, modify existing trees, and delete trees. If you want to copy an existing tree, you can duplicate it. You can also select and copy the associated tree versions.

Creating a tree involves specifying the tree definition and specifying the labels that are used on its nodes. If the selected tree structure has data sources and parameters defined for it, they appear on the page allowing you to edit the parameter values at the tree node level.

Note: Parameter values modified at the tree level will override the default values specified at the tree-structure level.

Creating and Editing Tree Versions
Tree versions are created at the time of creating trees. Each tree must contain a version.

Editing an existing tree provides you with the option of updating the existing version. You can also edit the existing version that lies nested in the tree in the search results.

When you edit a tree version bearing Active status, the status changes to Draft until the modifications are saved or canceled. To edit a tree version while keeping the status active select the Update tree nodes while keeping the tree version active Check Box.

Tree Version Audit Results
Use the tree version audit results to verify the tree version’s correctness and data integrity. The audit results include the following details:

- The name of the validator, which is a specific validation check
- The result of the validation, including a detailed message
- Corrective actions to take if there are any validation errors

Running an Audit
An audit automatically runs whenever a tree version is set to active. You can also manually trigger an audit on the Manage Trees and Tree Versions page, using Actions > Audit. If you run an audit on a tree version, which is in Draft status, and want to change the status to Active after the audit is complete then select the Set tree version status to active after audit is successfully complete Check Box.

The Tree Version Audit Result table shows a list of validations that ran against the selected tree version.

Validation Details
The following table lists the validators used in the audit process and describes what each validator checks for. It also lists possible causes for validation errors and suggests corrective actions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validator</th>
<th>Description (what is checked)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Effective Date</td>
<td>The effective start and end dates of the tree version must be valid.</td>
<td>The effective end date is set to a value that is not greater than the effective start date.</td>
<td>Modify the effective start and end dates such that the effective start date is earlier than the effective end date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root Node</td>
<td>On the Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data Sources page, if the Allow Multiple Root Nodes check box for the Restrict Tree Node List of Values Based on option is not selected, and if the tree structure is not empty, the tree version must contain exactly one root node. This validation does not take place if the check box is selected.</td>
<td>Even if the check box is deselected, the tree version has multiple root nodes.</td>
<td>Modify the tree version such that there is exactly one root node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Source Maximum Depth</td>
<td>For each data source in the tree structure, on the Data Source dialog box, if the data source is depth-limited, the data in the tree version must adhere to the specified depth limit. This validation doesn’t apply to data sources for which the Maximum Depth field is set to Unlimited.</td>
<td>The tree version has data at a depth greater than the specified depth limit on one or more data sources.</td>
<td>Modify the tree version such that all nodes are at a depth that complies with the data source depth limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicate Node</td>
<td>On the Data Source dialog box, if the Allow Duplicates check box isn’t selected, the tree version must not contain more than one node with the same primary key from the data source. If the check box is selected, duplicate nodes are permitted.</td>
<td>Even when the check box is deselected, the tree version contains duplicate nodes.</td>
<td>Remove any duplicate nodes from the tree version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Node</td>
<td>All nodes in the tree version must be valid and available in the underlying data source.</td>
<td>• A node in the tree version doesn’t exist in the data source. Deleting data items from the data source without removing the corresponding nodes from the tree version can result in orphaned nodes in the tree version. For example, if you added node A into your tree version, and subsequently deleted node A from the data source without removing it from the tree version, the validation fails.</td>
<td>Remove any orphaned nodes from the tree version. Update tree reference nodes so that they reference existing tree versions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validator</td>
<td>Description (what is checked)</td>
<td>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</td>
<td>Suggested Corrective Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node Relationship</td>
<td>All nodes must adhere to the relationships mandated by the data sources registered in the tree structure.</td>
<td>The tree structure has data sources arranged in a parent-child relationship, but the nodes in the tree don’t adhere to the same parent-child relationship. For example, if the tree structure has a Project data source as its child, Task nodes must always be within Project nodes in the tree version. This validation fails if there are instances where a Project node is added as the child of a Task node.</td>
<td>Modify the tree version such that the nodes adhere to the same parent-child relationships as the data sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set ID Restricted Node</td>
<td>On the Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data sources page, if the Set ID check box is selected to enable the Restrict Tree Node List of Values Based on option for each tree node, the underlying node in the data source must belong to the same reference data set as the tree itself. This restriction doesn’t apply when the check box is not selected.</td>
<td>Even when the check box is selected, the tree version has nodes whose data source values belong to a different reference data set than the tree.</td>
<td>Modify the tree version such that all nodes in the tree have data sources with reference data set matching that of the tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label Enabled Node</td>
<td>On the Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data Sources page, if a labeling scheme is specified for the tree structure by selecting a list item from the Labeling Scheme list, all nodes must have labels. This restriction doesn’t apply when you select None from the Labeling Scheme list.</td>
<td>The tree structure has a labeling scheme but the tree version has nodes without labels.</td>
<td>Assign a label to any node that doesn’t have a label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Restricted Node</td>
<td>On the Manage Tree Structures: Specify Data Sources page, if the Date Range check box is selected to enable the Restrict Tree Node List of Values Based on option for a tree structure, each node in the underlying data source must have an effective date range same as the effective date range of the tree version. This restriction doesn’t apply if the check box isn’t selected.</td>
<td>Even when the check box is selected, there are data source nodes that have a date range beyond the tree version’s effective date range. For example, if the tree version is effective from Jan-01-2012 to Dec-31-2012, all nodes in the tree version must be effective from Jan-01-2012 to Dec-31-2012 at a minimum. It is acceptable for the nodes to be effective for a date range that extends partly beyond the tree version’s effective date range (for example, the node data source value is effective from Dec-01-2011 to Mar-31-2013).</td>
<td>Ensure that all nodes in the tree version have effective date range for the effective date range for the tree version.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Define Applications Core Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validator</th>
<th>Description (what is checked)</th>
<th>Possible Cause for Validation Failure</th>
<th>Suggested Corrective Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiple Active Tree Version</td>
<td>On the Manage Tree Structures: Specify Definition page, if the <strong>Allow Multiple Active Tree Versions</strong> check box isn’t selected for the tree structure, there must not be more than one active tree version for a tree at any time. This restriction doesn’t apply if the check box is selected.</td>
<td>Even when the check box isn’t selected, there is more than one active tree version in the tree for the same date range.</td>
<td>Set no more than one tree version to Active within the same date range and set the others to inactive or draft status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range Based Node</td>
<td>On the Data Source dialog box, if the <strong>Allow Range Children</strong> check box isn’t selected, range-based nodes are not permitted from that data source. This restriction doesn’t apply if the check box is selected.</td>
<td>Even when the check box isn’t selected, there are range-based nodes from a data source.</td>
<td>Ensure that any range nodes in your tree version are from a data source that allows range children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal Node</td>
<td>On the Data Source dialog box, if the <strong>Allow Use as Leaves</strong> check box isn’t selected, values from that data source can’t be added as leaves (terminal nodes) to the tree version. This restriction doesn’t apply if the check box is selected.</td>
<td>Even when the check box isn’t selected, values from a data source are added as leaf nodes (terminal nodes).</td>
<td>Modify the tree version such that all terminal nodes are from data sources for which this check box is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage Limit</td>
<td>On the Data Source dialog box, if the <strong>Use All Values</strong> option is selected to set the Usage Limit for the data source, every value in the data source must appear as a node in the tree. This restriction doesn’t apply if <strong>None</strong> option is selected.</td>
<td>Even if the <strong>Use All Values</strong> option is selected, there are values in the data source that aren’t in the tree version.</td>
<td>For each data source value that isn’t yet available, add nodes to the tree version.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### How Trees and Data Sources Work Together

Data sources are the foundation of tree management. Tree structures, trees, and tree versions establish direct and real-time connectivity with the data sources. Changes to the data sources immediately reflect on the Manage Trees and Tree Versions page and wherever the trees are being used.
Metadata and Data Storage
Tree structures contain the metadata of the actual data and the core business rules that manifest in trees and tree versions. You can select and enable a subset of trees to fulfill a specific purpose in that application.

Access Control
Source data is mapped to tree nodes at different levels in the database. Therefore, the changes you make to the tree nodes affect the source data. Access control set on trees prevents unwanted data modifications in the database. Access control can be applied to the tree nodes or anywhere in the tree hierarchy.

Tree Nodes
Tree nodes are points of data convergence where a tree branches into levels. Nodes are the building blocks of a tree structure and are attached to tree versions. Whenever you create or edit a tree version, you need to specify its tree node.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, open the panel tab and click Search to search for the Manage Trees and Tree Versions task.

Managing Tree Nodes
You can create, modify, or delete tree nodes on the Tree Version: Specify Nodes page. To add a tree node, ensure that the tree structure with which the tree version is associated is mapped to a valid data source. You can also duplicate a tree node if the multiple root node feature is enabled.

Node Levels
Usually, the nodes at a particular level represent similar information. For example, in a tree that reflects the organizational hierarchy, all nodes representing divisions appear at one level and all the department nodes on another. Similarly, in a tree that organizes a user’s product catalog, the nodes representing individual products might appear at one level and the nodes representing product lines on the immediate higher level.

The following node levels are in use:

- Root node: The highest node in the tree structure
- Parent node: The node that branches off into other nodes
- Child node: The node that is connected to a node higher in hierarchy (parent node)
- Sibling node: Nodes that are at the same level and belong to the same parent node
- Leaf node: Entities branching off from a node but not extending further down the tree hierarchy

Node Types
A tree node has the following node types.

- Single: Indicates that the node is a value by itself.
- Range: Indicates that the node represents a range of values and possibly could have many children. For example, a tree node representing account numbers 10000 to 99999.
- Referenced Tree: Indicates that the tree node is actually another version for the tree based on the same tree structure, which is not physically stored in the same tree. For example, a geographic hierarchy for the United States can be referenced in a World geographic hierarchy.
Define Profile Options

Overview of Profile Options

Profile options are a set of preferences that you use to centrally manage the user interface settings and application behavior.

You can use the profile options to manage, for example:

- User preferences to specify language or currency.
- Configuration choices to change the user interface skin or appearance of fonts.
- Processing options to determine how much of an activity needs to be logged and at which level.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use any of the following tasks:

- Manage Profile Options
- Manage Profile Categories
- Manage Administrator Profile Values

The following table contains a functional description of each task.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Name</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage Profile Options</td>
<td>Create new profile options or modify existing profile options, except some which are predefined and restricted to prevent any modifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Profile Categories</td>
<td>Group the profile options based on their functional similarities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Administrator Profile Values</td>
<td>Set the profile values for the enabled profile options to control application behavior.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hierarchy in Profile Levels

The hierarchy in profile levels determines the context for making a profile option effective.

You can enable a profile option at the following levels:

- Site level (lowest): The entire site of deployment
- User level (highest): A specific user

After you create or edit a profile option on the Manage Profile Options page, you must enable it. You can enable it at multiple levels. The setting at the highest enabled level takes precedence over the lower levels. User level is the highest in the hierarchy and always takes precedence over the settings at the site level.

On the Manage Administrative Profile Values page, set the profile value at any of the enabled levels of the profile option.
Example of Profile Option Hierarchy
The following table shows an example of setting the currency profile option at different levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile Level</th>
<th>Hierarchy</th>
<th>Currency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td>Lowest</td>
<td>Euro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Highest</td>
<td>US Dollar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For this example, there are two users, John and Lisa. For John, the user-level profile value currency is set to US Dollar. If the Currency profile option is enabled only at the site level, both John and Lisa would see Euro as the default currency. If the profile option is enabled at the user level, users having a different currency set as their currency profile value would see only that currency. In this case, John would see US Dollar as the default currency. If the Currency profile option is enabled at the user level and there is no user level currency defined, the site level setting takes effect. When both site and user levels are enabled, the value for the user level takes precedence over the site level value.

Set Profile Option Values
Each profile option contains specific values that determine how it affects the application. You can add or modify the values for each profile option. Select or enter the value for one or more of the available levels (site, product, and user) so that each setting takes effect at the intended level.

Setting the Profile Value

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Administrator Profile Values task.
2. On the Manage Administrator Profile Values page, search for and select the profile option.
3. In the Profile Values section, click Add. A new row is added for you to specify the following conditions:
   - Profile Level: Specify the level at which the profile value is to be set. If the profile value applies to the entire site, select Site.
   - Product Name: If you select Product as the profile level, select a product and specify the associated profile value.
   - User Name: If you select User as the profile level, select the user name and specify the associated profile value.
   - Profile Value: Select or enter the value corresponding to the selected profile level.

   Note: For an existing entry, you can modify only the profile value.

4. Repeat step 3 to add more rows and set the profile values.
5. Click Save and Close.

Note: Changes in the profile values take effect for a user on the next sign in.
Import Profile Values

Use the Import option on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page to import profile values in bulk and associate them with a profile option.

Prerequisite

The file containing the profile values is available in the document repository of Oracle WebCenter Content.

Importing Profile Values

To import profile values:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Administrator Profile Values task.
2. In the Profile Option: Profile Values section, from the Actions menu, select Import.
3. On the Import User Profile Values dialog box, select the WebCenter Content account to which the file was uploaded.
4. Enter the name of the file containing the profile values. The name here must match with the name of the file uploaded to the selected account.
5. Click Upload. The profile values are imported.

Note: If the import fails, click the link to the log file on the confirmation dialog box and examine the cause of failure.

File Format for Importing Profile Values

To import profile option values into the application, you create a text file with the values and upload the file to the Oracle WebCenter Content document repository. The file must follow a specific format, as described here. After the file is in the document repository, you can then import the profile values into the application following the instructions in the Importing Profile Option Values: Procedure topic.

To create a file containing the profile values, include the following headers:

- **ProfileOptionCode**: The profile option code.
- **LevelName**: Must contain the value (Site, Product, or User).
- **UserName**: Must correspond to the registered user name in the application. Don’t provide any other shortened or coded name of the user.
- **ProfileOptionValue**: The profile value to be imported.

While creating the file, adhere to the following guidelines:

- Use a vertical bar or pipe (|) as a delimiter between fields for both header and value rows.
- Set the file encoding to UTF-8 without the Byte Order Mark (BOM), as per the Oracle WebCenter Content specification.

Here’s a sample file that contains the header values at the beginning of the file, followed by line entries of the two profile values that are to be imported. For importing several profile values, add more line entries in a similar format.

```plaintext
ProfileOptionCode|LevelName|UserName|ProfileOptionValue
AFLOG_BUFFER_MODE|USER|APP_IMPL.ConsULTANT|TEST
AFLOG.LEVEL|USER|APPLICATION.DEVELOPER|FINEST
```
Related Topics
- Overview of Files for Import and Export
- Guidelines for File Import and Export
- Upload Files to WebCenter Content Server

Create and Edit Profile Options

Use profile options to manage user preferences and control the general function of applications. For example, you can control user preferences involving language, date, time, currency, and other similar general settings.

You can create a profile option and also determine the level at which that profile option takes effect. You can also define the profile values for the profile option. The profile values appear on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page when you select the profile option.

Creating a Profile Option

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Profile Options task.
2. On the page, click Actions > New.
3. On the Create Profile Option page, fill all the fields with relevant details with specific attention to the following:
   - Use the SQL Validation field to provide an SQL statement that displays the permissible profile values to be used. Using an SQL statement, you can select the values from another table and display them as a list of values.
     For example, to display the values Yes and No from a lookup table, you can use the following SQL statement:
     ```sql
     select MEANING, LOOKUP_CODE from FND_LOOKUPS where LOOKUP_TYPE='YES_NO'
     ```
     As a result, on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page, the profile values Yes and No are available for selection for that profile option.
   - You can specify a date range to keep the profile option active during that period. Beyond the specified duration, the profile option automatically becomes inactive. If you no longer require the profile option, you must manually delete it from the Manage Profile Options page.
4. Click Save and Close.
5. On the Manage Profile Options page, search for the newly created profile option and from the results, select it.
6. In the Profile Option Levels section, do the following:
   a. In Enabled, select the levels at which you want to enable the profile option.

   \[ Note: \] You can enable a profile option at multiple levels, but a higher-level profile value overrides a lower-level value. Therefore, enable them only at the required levels.
   b. In Updatable, select the profile level at which you want implementors to have update privileges. Leave the check box deselected if you don’t want the implementors to modify the profile values (they appear in read-only mode).
7. Click Save and Close.

To edit a profile option that you created, search for it and edit the necessary details.
Note: While creating and editing profile options and profile categories, you can translate the details to the preferred languages without changing the language session of the application. To specify the translations in all the enabled language rows, use the Translation Editor option. Once the updates are made, users can view the translated text for the specific details.

Related Topics
- Enter or Edit Translated Text

How can I access predefined profile options?

Search for predefined profile options using the Manage Profile Options task.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Profile Options task.
2. On the page, enter any of the search parameters and click Search.

Tip: If you don't know the profile option code or the display name, use the Application or Module fields to filter search results.

3. Click a profile option to view its details.

Profile Categories

You can create profile categories to group profile options based on their functional similarities and their use. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Profile Categories task.

Profile categories help administrators or implementors in retrieving profile options using a search criterion on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page.

Managing Profile Categories

Consider the following options while managing profile categories:

- Create profile categories and add existing profile options to them
- Add newly created profile options to existing user-defined profile categories

Note: While you can add a profile option to more than one category, some profile categories are predefined and restricted from any modifications. So, you can't edit them or add profile options to them.

Setting Display Sequence for the Profile Options

You must set the display sequence for each profile option that you add to a profile category. Display sequence determines the order in which the profile options appear in a search result, based on the profile category. You can set the sequence beginning with zero or one for the first profile option to display, and proceed sequentially to assign the values to the remaining profile options.
The following table demonstrates the effect of the display sequence on the profile options when they are retrieved as search results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile Category</th>
<th>Included Profile Option - Assigned Display Sequence</th>
<th>Display Sequence of Profile Options in the Search Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Attachments      | • Attachment File Directory - 2  
• Indicate Attachments - 1 | 1. Indicate Attachments  
2. Attachment File Directory |

### Define Flexfields

#### Overview of Flexfields

A flexfield is a set of placeholder fields associated with business objects and placed on the application pages to contain additional data. You can use flexfields to modify the business objects and meet enterprise data management requirements without changing the data model or performing any database programming. Flexfields help you to capture different data on the same database table and provide a means to modify the applications features.

For example, an airline manufacturer may require specific attributes for its orders that aren’t predefined. Using a flexfield for the order business object, you can create and configure the required attribute.

#### Types of Flexfields

Flexfields that you see on the application pages are predefined. However, you can configure the flexfields or modify their properties. Users see these flexfields as field or information attributes on the UI pages. To manage flexfields, use any of the following tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- **Manage Descriptive Flexfields**: Expand the forms on the application page to accommodate additional information that is important and unique to your business. You can use a descriptive flexfield to collect invoice details on a page displaying invoices.

- **Manage Extensible Flexfields**: Establish one-to-many data relationships and make application data context-sensitive. The flexfields appear only when the contextual data conditions are fulfilled. Thus, extensible flexfields provide more flexibility than the descriptive flexfields.

- **Manage Key Flexfields**: Store information combining several values, such as a number combination. The key flexfields represent objects such as accounting codes and asset categories.

- **Manage Value Sets**: Use a group of values to validate the data entered in the flexfields.

> **Note**: You can manage value sets within the Manage Descriptive Flexfields or Manage Extensible Flexfields tasks.

#### Related Topics

- Modules in Application Taxonomy
Flexfield Components

A flexfield is made up of several data entities that store and render information pertaining to flexfield configuration. Flexfields are made up of the following components:

- Segments
- Value Sets
- Contexts
- Structures

**Segments**

A segment is a field within a flexfield and represents a single table column of your database. When configuring a flexfield, define the appearance and meaning of individual segments. Segments represent attributes of information. Segments can appear globally wherever the flexfield is implemented, or based on a structure or context. Each segment captures a single atomic value and represents an attribute of information.

The characteristics of a segment vary based on the type of flexfield in which it’s used.

- In key flexfields, a segment describes a characteristic of the entity. For example, a part number that contains details about the type, color, and size of an item.
- In a descriptive or extensible flexfield, a segment represents an information attribute on the application page. For example, details about a device containing components, some of which are global while the remaining are contextually dependent on the category of the device.

**Value Sets**

Users enter values into segments while using an application. A value set is a named group of values that validate the content of a flexfield segment. You configure a flexfield segment with a value set to enforce entries of only valid values for that segment.

The configuration involves the following tasks:

- Defining the values in a value set, including characteristics such as the length and format of the values.
- Specifying formatting rules or values from an application table or predefined list.

Multiple segments within a flexfield, or multiple flexfields, can share a single value set.

**Contexts**

Context-sensitive flexfield segments are available to an application based on a context value. You define contexts as part of configuring a flexfield. Users see global segments as well as any context-sensitive segments that apply to the selected context value.

In descriptive flexfields and extensible flexfields, you can reuse the context-sensitive segments that are based on the database columns, in multiple contexts.

**Structures**

Key flexfields have structures. Each key flexfield structure is a specific configuration of segments. Adding or removing segments, or rearranging their order, produces a different structure. You can reuse the segments that are based on the database columns, in multiple structures.
Note: You can translate all these flexfield components to the preferred languages without changing the language session of the application. To specify the translations in all the enabled language rows, use the Translation Editor option on the respective edit pages. Once the updates are made, users can view the translated text for the specific flexfield components at runtime.

Related Topics
- Enter or Edit Translated Text

How Flexfields Work with Oracle Application Cloud Architecture

To capture additional data, administrators or implementors configure flexfield segments that represent attributes of business objects. Business objects are enabled for both descriptive flexfields and extensible flexfields.

The following figure shows the layers involved in configuring a flexfield:

- The business entity table and metadata in the database.
- The ADF business component objects. These are derived from the metadata and stored in Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) repository.
- The user interface where fields defined by the flexfield segments are rendered.
The following figure illustrates that the flexfield definition consists of all the metadata defined during configuration and stored in the database.

Application developers create a flexfield and register it so that it's available for configuration. Administrators and implementation consultants configure segments and other properties of the available flexfields. This information is stored as additional flexfield metadata in the database. Deploying the flexfield generates ADF business components based on the flexfield metadata in the database.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfields and Oracle Applications Cloud architecture work together:

- Integration
- Deployment
• Import and export
• Run time
• Patching

Integration
The attributes that you add by configuring flexfields are available throughout the Oracle Fusion Middleware technology stack. You can use the flexfield segment's Application Programming Interface (API) to identify segments and integrate the flexfields in the following:

• User interface pages
• Service-oriented Architecture (SOA) infrastructure
• Oracle Business Intelligence
• Extended Spread Sheet Database (ESSbase)

Flexfield configurations are preserved across application updates.

Deployment
The metadata for the flexfield is stored in the application database as soon as you save your configuration changes. Deploying the flexfield generates the ADF business components so that the run time user interface reflects the latest flexfield definition in the metadata.

Importing and Exporting
Using the Setup and Maintenance work area, you can import and export flexfields across the implementation site. The deployment status must be either Deployed or Deployed to sandbox. Therefore, before you attempt migration, verify and ensure that a flexfield is successfully deployed.

Run Time
The latest definitions of a flexfield reflect on the user interface at run time only if the flexfield is deployed. When the user interface accesses a business object, the deployed flexfield definition identifies the attributes associated with the captured values. On a page, if you add display configurations for a flexfield using Oracle Composer, the same flexfield segments can appear differently on different pages.

Patching
Flexfield configurations are preserved during patching and upgrading.

Flexfield Management

Considerations for Managing Flexfields
Managing flexfields involves registering, planning, and configuring flexfields.

You plan and configure the registered flexfields provided in your applications by applications developers. How you configure flexfield segments determines how the flexfield segments appear to users. Optionally, you can modify the UI page to change how the flexfield segments appear to users on that page.
The following figure shows the processes involved in making flexfields available to users. The tasks in the Define Flexfields activity let administrators configure and deploy flexfields. After you configure and deploy a flexfield to a sandbox, deploy it again to the mainline metadata so that it’s available to the users.

Consider the following aspects of managing flexfields:

- Registering flexfields
- Planning flexfields
- Configuring flexfields
- Enabling a flexfields segment for business intelligence
- Deploying flexfields
• Optionally changing a flexfield segment’s appearance in a user interface page
• Identifying flexfields on a run time page and troubleshooting

Registering Flexfields
A flexfield must be registered before it can be configured. Therefore, application development registers flexfields so that they are available to administrators and implementation consultants for configuration. The registration involves reserving columns of entity tables for use in flexfields. For more information about registering flexfields, see Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Planning Flexfields
Before you begin planning flexfields, determine what type is appropriate to your needs, and which business objects are available for modifying flexfields. All flexfields consist of segments which represent attributes of an entity. The value a user enters for an attribute is stored in a column of the entity table. Carefully plan flexfields before configuring them. Before configuring new segments for your flexfields, be sure to plan their implementation carefully.

If you have determined that a business object supports flexfields, and those flexfields have been registered, you can begin planning their configuration. Note the code name of the flexfield you intend to configure so that you can find it easily in the Define Flexfield activity. In some cases you can determine and configure how the flexfield appears on the page. See Oracle Applications Cloud Help for specific products to determine any restrictions on using product-specific flexfields.

Configuring Flexfields
Administrators or implementors configure flexfields so they meet the needs of the enterprise. Some flexfields require configuration to make an application operate correctly. You can configure flexfields using the following methods:

• Go to the manage flexfield tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
• Use the configure flexfield command in the Administration menu while viewing a run time page.
  ◦ Use the Configure Flexfield icon button to manage all aspects of a flexfield, such as change a segment’s sequence number or configure a flexfield segment’s business intelligence label.
  ◦ Use the Add Segment and Edit Segment icon buttons to add and edit descriptive or extensible flexfield segments with simple configurations.
  ◦ Use the Add Context icon button to add descriptive or extensible flexfield context values.

Configuring a flexfield includes the following:

• Defining value sets against which the values entered by users are validated
• Defining the structure or context of the segments in the flexfield
• Specifying the identifying information for each segment
• Specifying the display properties such as prompt, length and data type of each flexfield segment
• Specifying valid values for each segment, and the meaning of each value within the application

Tip: You can create value sets while creating descriptive and extensible flexfield segments. However, define value sets before configuring key flexfield segments that use them, because you assign existing value sets while configuring key flexfield segments.

When creating table-validated, independent, dependent, or subset value sets while creating descriptive and extensible flexfield segments, you can optionally specify to display the description of the selected value next to the segment at run time. You can assign sequence order numbers to global segments and to context-sensitive segments in each context. Segment display is always in a fixed order based on the segments’ sequence numbers. You cannot enter a number for one segment that is already in use for a different segment. Therefore, you may consider numbering the segments in multiples, such as 4, 5, or 10, to make it easy to insert new attributes.
A flexfield column is assigned to a new segment automatically, but you can change the assignment before saving the segment. If you must set a specific column assignment for a segment, create that segment first to ensure that the intended column isn’t automatically assigned to a different segment.

Enabling a Flexfield Segment for Business Intelligence
You can enable flexfield segments for business intelligence if the flexfield is registered in the database as an Oracle Business Intelligence-enabled flexfield. For more information about enabling segments for business intelligence, see points to consider when enabling descriptive, extensible, and key flexfield segments for business intelligence. For extensible flexfield segments, you can’t assign labels to equalize segments across contexts that are semantically equivalent.

Deploying Flexfields
Once you have configured a flexfield, you must deploy it to make the latest definition available to run time users. In the Define Flexfields tasks, you can deploy a flexfield using either of the following commands:

- The Deploy Flexfield command deploys a flexfield to the mainline metadata. This command is for general use in a test or production environment.
- The Deploy to Sandbox command deploys a flexfield to sandbox. This command is for confirming that the flexfield is correctly configured before deploying it to the mainline metadata.

In Highlight Flexfields mode, when using the:

- **Add Context**, **Add Segment**, and **Edit Segment** tools for extensible flexfields, use the Save command to save your changes. Then use the Deploy command to deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata
- **Add Segment** and **Edit Segment** tools for descriptive flexfields, use the Save and Deploy command to save your changes. Then deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata

Once deployed, the deployment status indicates the state of the currently configured flexfield relative to the last deployed definition.

Optionally Changing a Flexfield Segment Appearance
The flexfield attributes that you define integrate with the user interface pages where users access the attributes’ business object. Application development determines the UI pages where business objects appear and the display patterns used by default to render flexfield segments.

After a flexfield has been deployed to the mainline MDS repository so that it appears on application pages, you can modify it on a per-page basis using Page Composer. For example, you can hide a segment, change its prompt or other properties, or reorder the user-defined global attributes so that they are interspersed with the core attributes in the same parent layout. You can modify the appearance of descriptive and extensible flexfield segments in the UI page using Page Composer, once the flexfield is deployed to the mainline metadata.

If the applications are running in different locales, you can provide different translations for translatable text, such as prompts and descriptions. Enter translations using the locale that requires the translated text. In the global header, click your user name and from the **Settings and Actions** menu, select **Set Preferences**. Then change the text to the translated text for that locale.

Identifying Flexfields on a Run Time Page
The **Highlight Flexfields** command in the Administration menu of the Setup and Maintenance work area identifies the location of flexfields on the run time page by displaying an **Information** icon button for accessing details about each flexfield.

Even if a descriptive or extensible flexfield isn’t yet deployed and no segments appear on the run time page in normal view, the flexfield appears in the Highlight Flexfield view for that page. For descriptive flexfields, the segments as of the last deployment appear. For extensible flexfields, any segments and contexts that have been saved but not yet deployed also appear as disabled.
**Highlight Flexfields** accesses the current flexfield metadata definition. Use the highlighted flexfield’s **Configure Flexfield** icon button to manage flexfields directly. Alternatively, note a highlighted flexfield’s name to search for it in the tasks for managing flexfields.

For more information about creating flexfields and adding them to a UI page, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide. For more information about modifying flexfield segment appearance with Page Composer, see guidance on modifying existing pages in the Oracle Applications Cloud Configuring and Extending Applications guide.

### Flexfield Segment Properties

Independent of the value set assigned to a segment, segments may have properties that affect how they are displayed and how they function.

The following aspects are important in understanding

- Display properties
- Properties related to segment values
- Properties related to search
- Range validation segments
- Rule validation of segment values
- Naming conventions

### Display Properties

The following table summarizes display properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Whether the segment can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>The order the segment appears in relation to the other configured segments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt</td>
<td>The string to be used for the segment’s label in the user interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display type</td>
<td>The type of field in which to display the segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected and deselected values</td>
<td>If the display type is check box, the actual values to save. For example, Y and N or 0 and 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display size</td>
<td>The character width of the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display height</td>
<td>The height of the field as measured in visible number of lines when the display type is a text area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read only</td>
<td>Whether the field should display as read-only, not editable text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description help text</td>
<td>The field-level description help text to display for the field. Use description help text to display a field-level description that expands on or clarifies the prompt provided for the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction help text</td>
<td>The field-level instruction help text to display for the field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If description help text is specified, a Help icon button is displayed next to the field in the run time application. The description help text is displayed when the user hovers over the Help icon button.
Properties Related to Search
Extensible flexfield segments can be marked as selectively required in search using the indexed property. The indexed property requires users to enter a value before conducting a search on the attribute represented by the indexed segment. A database administrator must create an index on the segment column representing the indexed attribute.

Range Validation of Segments
Range validation enables you to enforce an arithmetic inequality between two segments of a flexfield. For example, a product must be ordered before it can be shipped. Therefore, the order date must be on or before the ship date. Also, the order date segment value must be less than or equal to the ship date segment value. You can use range validation to ensure this relationship.

The conditions for range validation are as follows:

- Segments must be configured for range validation in pairs, one with the low value and one with the high value.
- Both segments must be of the same data type.
- Both segments must be parts of the same structure in a key flexfield or parts of the same context in a descriptive flexfield or extensible flexfield.
- The low value segment must have a sequence number that is lesser than that of the high value segment.
- Non-range validated segments can exist between a range validated pair, but range validated pairs cannot overlap or be nested.

You can configure as many range validated pairs as you want within the same flexfield. Your application automatically detects and applies range validation to the segment pairs that you define, in sequence order. It must detect a low value segment first, and the next range validated segment that it detects must be a high value segment. These two segments are assumed to be a matching pair. The low value and the high value can be equal.

Rule Validation of Segment Values
Validation rules on descriptive and extensible flexfield segments determine how an attribute is validated. The value entered for an attribute on a business object may must match a specified format or be restricted to a list of values. Use a value set to specify the validation rules.

Value set validation is required for global segments and context-sensitive segments, and optional for context segments. In the case of context segments, the application may validate a value instead of the value set validating the value against the context segment. However the application entered values must match exactly the valid context segment values. If the context segment values are a superset or subset of the input values, you must assign a table-validated value set or independent value set to validate context values.

When you configure a descriptive flexfield segment, you can specify a constant to use for setting the initial value. The initial value can be an available parameter. For every planned segment, list the constant value or parameter, if any, to use for the initial value.

Naming Conventions
Enter a unique code, name, and description for the segment. These properties are for internal use and not displayed to end users. You can’t change the code after the segment is created.

The Application Programming Interface (API) name is a name for the segment that isn’t exposed to users. The API name is used to identify the segment in various integration points including web services, rules, and business intelligence. Use
alphanumeric characters only with a leading character. For example, enter a code consisting of the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9 with a non-numeric leading character. The use of spaces, underscores, multi-byte characters, and leading numeric characters isn’t permitted. You can’t change the API name after the segment has been created.

Naming Conventions for Flexfield APIs
Application Programming Interface (API) name is a name for your flexfield component, which isn’t exposed to users. These names are used to identify flexfield components in various integration points, including web services, rules, and business intelligence.

How to Frame API Names
You must use only alphanumeric characters for API names. For example, enter a name with the characters A-Z, a-z, or 0-9, with a non-numeric leading character. Don’t use spaces, underscores, multi-byte characters, or leading numeric characters in your API names.

⚠️ Caution: Do not change API names after they are created. Doing so could break integration points.

Words You Can’t Use for API Names
You can’t use certain words for API names when configuring flexfields because they are reserved words in ADF, SQL, PL/SQL, Java, Groovy, and so on.

This table lists some of the reserved words that can’t be used as API names. This list is not exhaustive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Reserved Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>ABORT, ABSTRACT, ACCEPT, ACCESS, ACTIONENABLED, ADD, ALL, ALLROWSINRANGE, ALTER, AND, ANY, ARRAY, ARRAYLEN, AS, ASC, ASSERT, ASSIGN, AT, ATTRIBUTEDEF, ATTRIBUTEDEFS, ATTRIBUTEVALUE, ATTRIBUTEVALUES, AUDIT, AUTHORIZATION, AVG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>BEGIN, BETWEEN, BINDINGS, BODY, BOOLEAN, BREAK, BY, BYTE, BYVALUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>CASCADE, CASE, CAST, CATCH, CATEGORY, CHAR, CHECK, CHILDREN, CLASS, CLOSE, CLUSTER, CLUSTERS, COALESCE, COLAUTH, COLUMN, COLUMNS, COMMENT, COMMIT, COMPRESS, CONNECT, CONST, CONSTANT, CONSTRAINT, CONTAINS, CONTINUE, COUNT, CRASH, CREATE, CURRENT, CURRENTROW, CURRVAL, CURSOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>DATABASE, DATACONTROL, DATE, DBA, DEBUGOFF, DEBUGON, DECIMAL, DECLARE, DEFAULT, DEFINITION, DELAY, DELETE, DELTA, DESC, DESCRIPTION, DIGITS, DISPLAY, DISPLAYDATA, DISPLAYHINT, DISPLAYHINTS, DISPOSE, DISTINCT, DIV, DO, DOUBLE, DROP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>ELSE, ELSIF, EMPTY, ENABLED, ENABLEDSTRING, END, ENTRY, EQ, EQUALS, ERROR, ESTIMATEDROWCOUNT, EXCEPTION, EXCLUSIVE, EXISTS, EXIT, EXTENDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>FALSE, FETCH, FILE, FINAL, FINALIZE, FINALLY, FINDMODE, FLOAT, FOR, FORM, FROM, FULLNAME, FUNCTION, FUTURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>GE, GENERIC, GETCLASS, GOTO, GRANT, GROUP, GROUPBY, GT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>HASHCODE, HAVING, HINTS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Reserved Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Reserved Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>IDENTIFIED, IF, IMMEDIATE, IMPLEMENTS, IMPORT, IN, INCREMENT, INDEX, INDEXES, INDICATOR, INITIAL, INNER, INPUTVALUE, INSERT, INSTANCEOF, INT, INTEGER, INTERFACE, INTERSECT, INTO, IS, ITERATORBINDING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>JAVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>KEY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LABEL, LABELS, LABELSET, LE, LEVEL, LIKE, LIMITED, LOCK, LONG, LOOP, LT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>MANDATORY, MAX, MAXEXTENTS, MIN, MINUS, MLSLABEL, MOD, MODE, MODIFY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>NAME, NATIVE, NATURAL, NE, NEW, NEXTVAL, NOAUDIT, NOCOMPRESS, NOT, NOTFOUND, NOTIFY, NOTIFYALL, NOWAIT, NULL, NULLIF, NUMBER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>OF, OFFLINE, ON, ONLINE, OPEN, OPERATIONENABLED, OPERATOR, OPTION, OR, ORDER, ORDERBY, OTHERS, OUT, OUTER, OVERLAPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>PACKAGE, PARTITION, PCTFREE, POSITIVE, PRAGMA, PRIMARY, PRIOR, PRIVATE, PRIVILEGES, PROCEDURE, PROTECTED, PUBLIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>RAISE, RANGE, RANGESET, RANGESIZE, RANGESTART, RAW, REAL, RECORD, REFERENCES, RELEASE, REMR, RENAME, RESOURCE, REST, RESULT, RETURN, REVERSE, REVOKE, ROLLBACK, ROOTNODEBINDING, ROW, ROWID, ROWLABEL, ROWNUM, ROWS, ROWTYPE, RUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>SAVEPOINT, SCHEMA, SELECT, SELECTEDVALUE, SEPARATE, SESSION, SET, SHARE, SHORT, SIZE, SMALLINT, SPACE, SQL, SQLBUF, SQLCODE, SQLERRM, START, STATEMENT, STATIC, STDDEV, SUBTYPE, SUCCESSFUL, SUM, SUPER, SWITCH, SYNCHRONIZED, SYNONYM, SYSDATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>TABAUTH, TABLE, TABLES, TASK, TERMINATE, THEN, THIS, THROW, THROWS, TO, TOOLTIP, TOSTRING, TRANSIENT, TRIGGER, TRUE, TRY, TYPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>UID, UNION, UNIQUE, UPDATE, UPDATEABLE, USE, USER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>VALIDATE, VALUES, VAR, VARCHAR, VARCHAR2, VARIANCE, VIEW, VIEWS, VOID, VOLATILE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>WAIT, WHEN, WHENEVER, WHERE, WHILE, WITH, WORK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>XOR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### How Flexfields and Value Sets Work Together

Value sets are specific to your enterprise. When gathering information using flexfields, your enterprise’s value sets validate the values that your users enter based on how you defined the value set.
You can assign a value set to any number of flexfield segments in the same or different flexfields. Value set usage information indicates which flexfields use the value set.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfields and value sets work together:

- Defining value sets
- Shared value sets
- Deployment

Defining Value Sets

As a key flexfield guideline, define value sets before configuring the flexfield, because you assign value sets to each segment as you configure a flexfield. With descriptive and extensible flexfields, you can define value sets when adding or editing a segment.

**Note:** Ensure that changes to a shared value set are compatible with all flexfield segments that use the value set.

Shared Value Sets

When you change a value in a shared value set, the change affects the value set for all flexfields that use that value set. The advantage of a shared value set is that a single change propagates to all usages. The drawback is that the change shared across usages may not be appropriate in every case.

Value Set Values

To configure user-defined attributes to be captured on the value set values screen in the Manage Value Sets task, configure the Value Set Values descriptive flexfield. The object’s code is FND_VS_VALUES_B. This flexfield expects the context code to correspond to the value set code. For each value set, you can define a context whose code is the value set code, and whose context-sensitive segments are shown for the values of that value set. By default, the context segment is hidden since it maps to the value set code and is not expected to be changed.

You can also define global segments that are shown for all value sets. However, this would be quite unusual since it would mean that you want to capture that attribute for all values for all value sets.

Deployment

When you deploy a flexfield, the value sets assigned to the segments of the flexfield provide users with the valid values for the attributes represented by the segments.

Default Segment Values

To populate a flexfield segment with a default value when a row is created, specify a default type of constant or parameter, and a default value.

To synchronize a segment’s value with another field’s value whenever it changes, specify the derivation value to be the flexfield parameter from which to derive the attribute’s value. Whenever the parameter value changes, the attribute’s value is changed to match. If you derive an attribute from a parameter, consider making the attribute read-only, as values entered by users are lost whenever the parameter value changes. When setting a default value or deriving a default value from a parameter, only those attributes designated by development as parameters are available for selection. Different combinations of making the segments read only or editable in combination with the default or derivation value or both, have different effects.

The following table maps these different combinations. Initial runtime action corresponds to the row for the attribute value being created in the entity table. If the default value is read only, it can’t subsequently be changed through the user interface.
If the default value isn’t read only, users can modify it. However, if the segment value is a derived value, a user-modified segment value is overwritten when the derivation value changes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default Type</th>
<th>Default value specified?</th>
<th>Derivation value specified?</th>
<th>Initial runtime action</th>
<th>Runtime action after parameter changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No initial segment value</td>
<td>The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Default segment value</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Default segment value</td>
<td>The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>The default segment value is the parameter’s default value</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, and same as default value</td>
<td>The default segment value is the parameter’s default and derivation value</td>
<td>The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, and different from default value</td>
<td>The default segment value is the parameter’s default value</td>
<td>The changed parameter default value doesn’t update segment value. Only the changed derivation value updates the segment value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flexfield Usages**

The flexfield usage specifies the table with which the flexfield and its segments are associated. A flexfield can have multiple usages. However, the first table registered for a flexfield indicates the master usage. Segments are based on the master usage. Other usages of the same table for the same flexfield use the same segment setup, though the column names may have a differentiating prefix.

On the Manage Descriptive Flexfields and Manage Extensible Flexfields pages, click the Show Entity Usages icon for a specific flexfield to view its entity usage. On the Manage Value Sets page, you can view the flexfield usages for a selected value set.

**Extensible Flexfields**

For extensible flexfield contexts, you can configure a different usage. The use of an extensible flexfield context determines the scenarios or user interfaces in which the segments of a context appear to users. For example, the Supplier page displays an extensible flexfield’s supplier usage and the Buyer page for the same flexfield displays the buyer usage. Then, a context that is associated only with the supplier usage appears only on the Supplier page and not on the Buyer page.

**Value Sets**

The use of value sets specifies the flexfields having segments where the identified value set is assigned.
Flexfield Deployment

Overview of Flexfield Deployment
Deployment generates or refreshes the Application Development Framework (ADF) business component objects that render the flexfield in a user interface. The deployment process adds user-defined attributes to the Web Services Description Language (WSDL) schemas exposed by Oracle ADF services and used by SOA composites. Flexfields are deployed for the first time during the application provisioning process. After you configure or change a flexfield, you must deploy it to make the latest definition available to users.

If a descriptive flexfield is enabled for business intelligence, the deployment process redeploy the flexfield’s business intelligence artifacts.

You can deploy a flexfield to a sandbox for testing or to the mainline metadata for use in a test or production run time environment. You can deploy extensible flexfields as a background process.

After deployment, the user-defined attributes are available for incorporating into the SOA infrastructure, such as business process and business rule integration. For example, you can now write business rules that depend on the user-defined attributes. You must sign out and sign back in to Oracle Applications Cloud to see the changes you deployed at run time.

The following aspects are important in understanding flexfield deployment:

- Deployment Status
- Initial Deployment Status
- Metadata Validations
- Metadata Synchronization
- Deployment as a Background Process
- Export of Artifacts from Flexfield MDS

Deployment Status
Every flexfield has a deployment status. Check the deployment status of your flexfield after patching. The following table lists the different deployment statuses a flexfield can have.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deployment Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edited</td>
<td>The flexfield metadata definition hasn’t been deployed yet. Updates of the metadata definition aren’t applied in the run time environment yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patched</td>
<td>The flexfield metadata definition has been modified through a patch or a data migration action, but the flexfield hasn’t yet been deployed. So, the updated definition isn’t reflected in the run time environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployed to Sandbox</td>
<td>The current metadata for the flexfield is deployed in ADF artifacts and available as a flexfield-enabled sandbox. The status of the sandbox is managed by the Manage Sandboxes dialog box available in the Settings and Actions menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deployed</td>
<td>The current metadata for the flexfield is deployed in ADF artifacts and available to users. No changes have been made to the flexfield after being deployed to the mainline metadata.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>The deployment attempt in the mainline metadata failed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Initial Deployment Status of Flexfields
The Oracle Applications Cloud implementation loads flexfield metadata into the database. This initial load sets the flexfield status to Edited. During installation, the application provisioning process deploys the flexfields of the provisioned applications, setting their status to Deployed if no errors occur.

In a provisioned application, deployed flexfields are ready to use. In some cases, flexfield availability at run time requires setup, such as defining key flexfields.

Metadata Validation
Use the Validate Metadata command to view possible metadata errors before attempting to deploy the flexfield. Metadata validation is the initial phase of all flexfield deployment commands. By successfully validating metadata before running the deployment commands, you can avoid failures in the metadata validation phase of a deployment attempt. The deployment process ends if an error occurs during the metadata validation phase. Metadata validation results don’t affect the deployment status of a flexfield.

Metadata Synchronization
When an extensible or descriptive flexfield is deployed, the deployment process regenerates the XML schema definition (XSD). As a result, the user-defined attributes are available to web services and the SOA infrastructure.

After deploying a flexfield configuration, you must synchronize the updated XML schema definition (XSD) files in the MDS repositories for each SOA application.

- **Note**: To synchronize the updated XSD files in the MDS repositories in Oracle Cloud implementations, log a service request using My Oracle Support at http://support.com/

Deployment as a Background Process
You can deploy extensible flexfields offline as a background process and continue working in the session without having to wait for the deployment to complete. You can queue up several extensible flexfields and deploy as a background process. The flexfields are deployed, one at a time, in the order that you deploy them to the queue. You must deploy extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories as a background process.

You can remove an extensible flexfield from the deployment queue with the Cancel Background Deployment command. When an extensible flexfield is deployed in a background process, its offline status indicates that the flexfield is in a background deployment process. A flexfield’s offline status is cleared and its deployment status updated when the background deployment process has completed.

Export of Artifacts from Flexfield MDS
You can export business components from MDS for descriptive, extensible, or key flexfields, mainly for use in troubleshooting issues with flexfields. Use **Download Flexfield Archive** on the Manage Flexfields page to export MDS artifacts of the selected flexfield, and import them to an archive on your local computer. You can use these archived business components of flexfields for troubleshooting purposes.

Alternatively, export the deployed artifacts using **exportMetadata WLST**.
How Flexfield Deployment Status is Calculated

Flexfield deployment status indicates how the flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Applications Cloud database relates to the Application Development Framework (ADF) business components residing in an Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) Repository.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfield deployment status is calculated:

- Settings that affect flexfield deployment status
- How deployment status is calculated

Settings That Affect Flexfield Deployment Status

If you have made a change to a flexfield and expect a changed deployment status, ensure that you have saved your changes. No settings affect flexfield deployment status.

How Deployment Status Is Calculated

If the flexfield definition has been edited through the Define Flexfields activity task flows, the status is Edited. The latest flexfield metadata definition diverges from the latest deployed flexfield definition. Any change, including if a value set used in a flexfield changes, changes the deployment status to Edited. If a flexfield has never been deployed, its status is Edited.

Note: When an application is provisioned, the provisioning framework attempts to deploy all flexfields in that application.

If you deploy the flexfield to a sandbox successfully, the status is Deployed to Sandbox. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the application matches with the metadata definition that generated ADF business components in a sandbox MDS Repository. Whether the sandbox is active or not doesn’t affect the deployment status. If the flexfield was deployed to a sandbox and hasn’t been edited or redeployed to the mainline metadata since then, the status remains Deployed to Sandbox independent of whether the sandbox is active, or who is viewing the status.

If you deploy the flexfield successfully to the mainline metadata, the status is Deployed. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the application matches the metadata definition that generated ADF business components in a mainline MDS Repository. Change notifications are sent when a flexfield is deployed successfully to the mainline metadata. If either type of deployment fails and that the current flexfield definition isn’t deployed, the status is Error. The deployment error message gives details about the error. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the application likely diverges from the latest successfully deployed flexfield definition.

If the flexfield definition has been modified by a patch, the status is Patched. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the application diverges from the latest deployed flexfield definition. If the flexfield definition was Deployed before the patch and then a patch was applied, the status changes to Patched. If the flexfield definition was Edited before the patch and then a patch was applied, the status remains at Edited to reflect that there are still changes (outside of the patch) that aren’t yet in effect.

When a deployment attempt fails, you can access the Deployment Error Message for details.

How Deploying a Flexfield-Enabled Sandbox Works with Mainline Metadata

The flexfield definition in a sandbox corresponds to the flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Applications Cloud database at the time the flexfield was deployed to the sandbox. When the flexfield is ready for end users, the flexfield must be deployed to the mainline metadata.

A flexfield-enabled sandbox uses the following components.

- Flexfield metadata in the Oracle Applications Cloud database
- Flexfield business components in a sandbox Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) repository
- User interface modifications for the flexfield in the mainline MDS repository

The following figure shows the two types of deployment available in the Manage Flexfield tasks of the Define Flexfields activity. Deploying a flexfield to a sandbox creates a sandbox MDS Repository for the sole purpose of testing flexfield behavior. The sandbox is only accessible to the administrator who activates and accesses it, not to users generally. Deploying a flexfield to the mainline metadata applies the flexfield definition to the mainline MDS Repository where it is available to end users. After deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata, modify the page where the flexfield segments appear. Modifications done to the page in the sandbox MDS Repository cannot be published to the mainline MDS Repository.
Sandbox Metadata Services Repository Data
Deploying the flexfield to a sandbox generates the Application Development Framework (ADF) business components of a flexfield in a sandbox MDS Repository for testing in isolation.

⚠️ **Caution:** Don’t modify flexfield segment display properties using Page Composer in a flexfield-enabled sandbox as these changes will be lost when deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata.

Mainline Metadata Services Repository Data
The Oracle Fusion Applications database stores the single source of truth about a flexfield. When the flexfield is deployed, the ADF business component objects that implement the flexfield in the run time user interface are generated in the mainline MDS Repository from this source.

Related Topics
- How You Manage Configurations in Sandboxes

Considerations for Deploying a Flexfield to a Sandbox
Deploying a flexfield to a sandbox creates a flexfield-enabled sandbox. Each flexfield-enabled sandbox contains only one flexfield.

You can test the run time behavior of a flexfield in the flexfield-enabled sandbox. If changes are needed, you return to the Define Flexfield tasks to change the flexfield definition.

When you deploy a flexfield to sandbox, the process reads the metadata about the segments from the database, generates flexfield Application Development Framework (ADF) business component artifacts based on that definition, and stores in the sandbox only the generated artifacts derived from the definition.

When you deploy a flexfield sandbox, the process generates the name of the flexfield sandbox, and that flexfield sandbox is set as your current active sandbox. When you next sign in to the application, you can see the updated flexfield configurations. The Oracle Applications Cloud global header displays your current session sandbox.

🔍 **Note:** Unlike a standalone sandbox created using the Manage Sandboxes dialog box, the sandbox deployed for a flexfield contains only the single flexfield. You can manage flexfield sandboxes, such as setting an existing flexfield sandbox as active or deleting it, using the Manage Sandboxes dialog box.

When you deploy a flexfield to the mainline metadata after having deployed it to the sandbox, the sandbox-enabled flexfield is automatically deleted.

Sandbox MDS Repository Data
The sandbox data lets you test the flexfield in isolation without first deploying it in the mainline metadata where it could be accessed by users.

⚠️ **Caution:** Don’t modify flexfield segment display properties using Page Composer in a flexfield-enabled sandbox as these changes will be lost when deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata.

Managing a Flexfield-Enabled Sandbox
When you deploy a flexfield as a sandbox, that flexfield-enabled sandbox automatically gets activated in your user session.
When you sign back in to see the changes, the sandbox is active in your session.
You can only deploy a flexfield to a sandbox using the Define Flexfields task flow pages.
You also can use the Manage Sandboxes dialog box in the Administrator menu of the Setup and Maintenance work area to activate and access a flexfield-enabled sandbox.

**Note:** Whether you use the Define Flexfields or Manage Sandboxes task flows to access a flexfield-enabled sandbox, you must sign out and sign back in before you can see the changes you deployed in the run time.

You cannot publish the flexfield from the sandbox to the mainline metadata. You must use the Define Flexfields task flow pages to deploy the flexfield for access by users of the mainline metadata because the flexfield configuration in the mainline metadata is the single source of truth.

**Related Topics**

- How You Manage Configurations in Sandboxes

### Manage Value Sets

**Overview of Value Sets**

A value set is a group of valid values that you assign to a flexfield segment to control the values that are stored for business object attributes.

A user enters a value for an attribute of a business object while using the application. The flexfield validates the value against the set of valid values that you configured as a value set and assigned to the segment.

For example, you can define a required format, such as a five-digit number, or a list of valid values, such as green, red, and blue.

Flexfield segments are usually validated, and typically each segment in a given flexfield uses a different value set. You can assign a single value set to more than one segment, and you can share value sets among different flexfields.

**Note:** Ensure that changes to a shared value set are compatible with all flexfields segments using the value set.

The following aspects are important in understanding value sets:

- Managing value sets
- Validation
- Security
- Precision and scale
- Usage and deployment
- Protected value set data

### Managing Value Sets

To open the Manage Value Sets page, use the Manage Value Sets task. You can also use the Manage Descriptive Flexfields and Manage Extensible Flexfields tasks for configuring a segment, including its value set. To open the Manage Values page, select the value set from the Manage Value Sets page, and click **Manage Values**. Alternatively, click **Manage Values** from the Edit Value Set page.
Validation

The following types of validation are available for value sets:

- Format only, where users enter data instead of selecting values from a list
- Independent, a list of values consisting of valid values you specify
- Dependent, a list of values where a valid value derives from the independent value of another segment
- Subset, where the list of values is a subset of the values in an existing independent value set
- Table, where the values derive from a column in an application table and the list of values is limited by a WHERE clause

A segment that uses a format only value set doesn’t present a list of valid values to users. If required, you may add table validated value sets to the list of available value sets available for configuration.

Note: For the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets, you must use independent validation only. If you use other validations, you can’t use the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration.

Security

Value set security only works in conjunction with usage within flexfield segments. You can specify that data security be applied to the values in flexfield segments that use a value set. Based on the roles provisioned to users, data security policies determine which values of the flexfield segment users can view or modify.

The application of value set security has the following conditions:

- At the value set level: The value set is the resource secured by data security policies. If a value set is secured, every usage of it in any flexfield is secured. Disabling security for individual usages of the same value set isn’t possible.
- Applies to independent, dependent, or table-validated value sets.
- Applies mainly when data is being created or updated, and to key flexfield combinations tables for query purposes. Value set security doesn’t determine which descriptive flexfield data is shown upon querying.
- Security conditions defined on value sets always use table aliases. When filters are used, table aliases are always used by default. When predicates are defined for data security conditions, make sure that the predicates also use table aliases.

For key flexfields, the attributes in the view object corresponding to the account combination ID, structure instance number (SIN), and data set number (DSN) can’t be transient. They must exist in the database table. For key flexfields, the SIN segment is the discriminator attribute, and the account combination segment is the common attribute.

Precision and Scale

If the data type of a value set is Number, you can specify the precision (maximum number of digits user can enter) or scale (maximum number of digits following the decimal point).

Usage and Deployment

The usage of a value set is the flexfields where that value set is used. The deployment status of flexfields in which the value set is used indicates the deployment status of the value set instance.
The following figure shows a value set used by a segment in a key flexfield and the context segment of a descriptive flexfield.

For most value sets, when you enter values into a flexfield segment, you can enter only values that already exist in the value set assigned to that segment.

Global and context-sensitive segment require a value set. You can assign a value set to a descriptive flexfield context segment. If you specify only context values, not value sets for contexts, the set of valid values is equal to the set of context values.

Protected Value Set Data
Application developers may mark some value sets as protected, indicating that you can’t edit them.

You can edit only value sets that are not marked as protected. You can’t edit or delete protected value sets. If the value set type supports values (such as independent, dependent or subset value sets), then you can’t add, edit, or delete values.
Note: References to protected value sets aren’t restricted. Value sets, protected or not, may be assigned to any flexfield segment. Likewise, other value sets may reference protected value sets; for example, an unprotected dependent value set may reference a protected independent value set.

Related Topics
- Chart of Accounts Components
- Why can't I edit my flexfield or value set configuration

Validation Type Options for Value Sets
Validation and usage of value sets determine where and how users access valid values for attributes represented by flexfield segments.

Tip: As a flexfield guideline, define value sets before configuring the flexfield, because you can assign value sets to each segment as you configure a flexfield. With descriptive and extensible flexfield segments, you can create value sets when adding or editing a segment on the runtime page where the flexfield appears.

The following aspects are important in defining value sets:
- Value sets for context segments
- Format-only validation
- Interdependent value sets
- Table validation
- Range
- Security
- Testing and maintenance

Value Sets for Context Segments
When assigning a value set to a context segment, you can only use table-validated or independent value sets.

You can use only table and independent value sets to validate context values. The data type must be character and the maximum length of the values being stored must not be larger than the context’s column length. If you use a table value set, the value set cannot reference flexfield segments in the value set’s WHERE clause other than the flexfield segment to which the value set is assigned.

Format Only Validation
The format only validation type enables users to enter any value, as long as it meets your specified formatting rules. The value must not exceed the maximum length you define for your value set, and it must meet any format requirements for that value set.

For example, if the value set permits only numeric characters, users can enter the value 456 (for a value set with maximum length of three or more), but can’t enter the value ABC. A format only value set doesn’t otherwise restrict the range of different values that users can enter. For numeric values, you can also specify if a numeric value should be zero filled or how may digits should follow the radix separator.

Interdependent Value Sets
Use an independent value set to validate data against a list that isn’t stored in an application table, and not dependent on a subset of another independent value set. You cannot specify a dependent value set for a given segment without having
first defined an independent value set that you apply to another segment in the same flexfield. Use a dependent value set to limit the list of values for a given segment based on the value that the user has defined for a related independent segment. The available values in a dependent list and the meaning of a given value depend on which value was selected for the independently validated segment.

For example, you could define an independent value set of the states in the USA with values such as CA, NY, and so on. Then you define a dependent value set of cities in the USA with values such as San Francisco and Los Angeles that are valid for the independent value CA. Similarly, New York City and Albany are valid for the independent value NY. In the UI, only the valid cities can be selected for a given state.

Because you define a subset value set from an existing independent value set, you must define the independent value set first. Users don’t have to select a value for another segment first to have access to the subset value set.

Independent, dependent, and subset value sets require a user-defined list of valid values. Use the Manage Values page to create and manage a value set’s valid values and the order in which they appear.

**Tip:** You can configure the Manage Value Sets page to capture additional attributes for each valid value by adding context-sensitive segments in a new context for FND_VS_VALUES_B descriptive field.

**Table Validation**

Typically, you use a table-validated set when the values you want to use are already maintained in an application table, such as a table of supplier names. Specify the table column that contains the valid value. You can optionally specify the description and ID columns, a WHERE clause to limit the values to use for your set, and an ORDER BY clause.

If you specify an ID column, then the flexfield saves the ID value, instead of the value from the value column, in the associated flexfield segment. If the underlying table supports translations, you can enable the display of translated text by basing the value set’s value column on a translated attribute of the underlying table. You should also define an ID column that is based on an attribute that isn’t language-dependent so that the value’s invariant ID (an ID that doesn’t change) is saved in the transaction table. The run time displays the corresponding translated text from the value column for the run time session’s locale.

Table validation lets you enable a segment to depend upon multiple prior segments in the same context structure. You cannot reference other flexfield segments in the table-validated value set’s WHERE clause. That is, the WHERE clause cannot reference SEGMENT.segment_code or VALUESET.value_set_code.

Table-validated value sets have unique values across the table, irrespective of bind variables. The WHERE clause fragment of the value set is considered if it doesn’t have bind variables. If it has bind variables, the assumption is that the values are unique in the value set. If you use table validated value sets for key flexfields, then you can’t use all integration options supported for key flexfields, such as:

- Data security
- Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence (OTBI)
- Extended Spread Sheet Database (ESSbase)
- Tree or hierarchy integration

To use these integration options for key flexfields, you must use independent value sets only.

**Range**

In the case of format, independent, or dependent value sets, you can specify a range to limit which values are valid. You can specify a range of values that are valid within a value set. You can also specify a range validated pair of segments where one segment represents the low end of the range and another segment represents the high end of the range.

For example, you might specify a range for a format-only value set with format type Number where the user can enter only values between 0 and 100.
Security
In the case of independent and dependent values, you can specify that data security be applied to the values in segments that use a value set. Based on the roles provisioned to users, data security policies determine which values of the flexfield segment users can view or modify.

To enable security on a value set, specify a database resource, typically the code value for the value set. Using the Manage Database Security Policies task, specify conditions, such as filters or SQL predicates, and policies that associate roles with conditions. You can use a filter for simple conditions. For more complex conditions, use a SQL predicate.

Value set data security policies and conditions differ from data security conditions and policies for business objects in the following ways:

- You can grant only read access to users. You cannot specify any other action.
- When defining a condition that is based on a SQL predicate, use VALUE, VALUE_NUMBER, VALUE_DATE, VALUE_TIMESTAMP, or VALUE_ID to reference the value from a dependent, independent, or subset value set. For table value sets, use a table alias to define the table, such as &TABLE_ALIAS category=70.

When you enable security on table-validated value sets, the security rule that is defined is absolute and not contingent upon the bind variables (if any) that may be used by the WHERE clause of the value set. For example, suppose a table-validated value set has a bind variable to further filter the value list to x, y and z from a list of x, y, z, xx, yy, zz. The data security rule or filter written against the value set must not assume anything about the bind variables. Instead the whole list of values must be available and you write the rule, for example, to permit x, or to permit y and z. By default in data security, all values are denied and show only rows to which access has been provided.

Testing and Maintenance
You don’t have to define or maintain values for a table-validated value set, as the values are managed as part of the referenced table or independent value set, respectively.

You cannot manage value sets in a sandbox.

When you change an existing value set, the deployment status for all affected flexfields changes to Edited. You must redeploy all flexfields that use that value set to make the flexfields reflect the changes. In the UI pages for managing value sets, the value set’s usages show which flexfields are affected by the value set changes.

If your application has more than one language installed, or there is any possibility that you might install one or more additional languages for your application in the future, select Translatable. This doesn’t require you to provide translated values now, but you cannot change this option if you decide to provide them later.

Related Topics
- Considerations for Bind Variables in Table-Validated Value Sets
- Add Attributes to the Manage Value Sets Page

Import Value Set Values Using Web Services
As an alternative to using the import option on the Manage Value Sets page, you can use the FndManageImportExportFilesService web service to import value set values into an application. The web service uses the valueSetValuesDataLoader method.
Implementing Procurement

Prerequisite

Ensure that the web service `FndManageImportExportFilesService` is added to the Manage Application Flexfield Value Set entitlement. Use the Security Console to perform this configuration on Oracle Entitlements Server. While configuring the web service, provide the following details:

- Resource type: WebserviceResourceType
- Display name: ImportExport
- Name: http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/FndManageImportExportFilesService#
- Entitlement (In Default Policy Domain): Manage Application Flexfield Value Set
- Security policy: oracle/wss11_saml_or_username_token_with_message_protection_service_policy

Importing Value Set Values

To import value set values:

1. Perform the following substeps to generate keystore for the security policy "oracle/wss11_saml_or_username_token_with_message_protection_service_policy":
   b. Access the WSDL using the URL http://<host>:<port>/fndAppCoreServices/FndManageImportExportFilesService?wsdl through a web browser, and get the public key `<wsdl:service>/<wsdl:port>/<wsa:EndpointReference>/<wsid:Identity>/<dsig:keyInfo>/<dsig:X509Data>/<dsig:X509Certificate>`. Then, enclose it with `----- BEGIN CERTIFICATE ----` and `----- END CERTIFICATE -----` and save it to a file by name cdrmpk.cer.
   c. Store the key information in the truststore using the command `keytool -importcert -alias cdrmkey -file cdrmpk.cer -keystore mycompclient-keystore.jks -storepass <password>`.
2. Access the WSDL page using the browser of your choice.
3. Export and save the associated security certificates Verisign Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority - G5 and Verisign Secure Server CA - G3.
4. Use the following command to import the saved certificates into the trust store of the client computer.
   `keytool -importcert -keystore <truststore> -storepass <truststorepassword> -file <file location where the mentioned certificate is stored> -alias <alias for certificate>`
5. Run the following command to generate the JAX-WS proxy for the `FndManageImportExportFilesService` web service.
   `C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.7.0_04\bin>wsimport -s "d:\wsimport\FndManageImportExport" -d "d:\wsimport\FndManageImportExport" http://<host>:<port>/fndAppCoreServices/FndManageImportExportFilesService?wsdl`  
   `parsing WSDL...`  
   `Generating code...`  
   `Compiling code...`
6. Save the generated code as a JAR file and name it FndManageImportExportProxy.jar.
7. Use the following code to create another JAR file to initiate the web service:
   ```java
   package com.oracle.xmlns.oracle.apps.fnd.applcore.webservices;

   import com.sun.xml.ws.developer.WSBindingProvider;
   ```
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import javax.xml.ws.BindingProvider;
import javax.xml.ws.WebServiceRef;
import javax.xml.ws.handler.Handler;
import oracle.webservices.ClientConstants;
import weblogic.wsee.jws.jaxws.owsm.SecurityPoliciesFeature;

// !THE CHANGES MADE TO THIS FILE WILL BE DESTROYED IF REGENERATED!
// This source file is generated by Oracle tools
// Contents may be subject to change
// For reporting problems, use the following
// Version = Oracle WebServices (11.1.1.0.0, build 130224.1947.04102)

public class FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPortClient {
  @WebServiceRef
  private static FndManageImportExportFilesService_Service fndManageImportExportFilesService_Service;

  public static void main(String[] args) {
    System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStore","<location of truststore which is used in II to import the certificates>");
    System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword","<truststore password>");
    fndManageImportExportFilesService_Service = new FndManageImportExportFilesService_Service();
    FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService = fndManageImportExportFilesService_Service.getFndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPort (securityFeatures);
    // Add your code to call the desired methods.
    
    WSBindingProvider wsbp = (WSBindingProvider) fndManageImportExportFilesService;
    Map<String, Object> requestContext = wsbp.getRequestContext();
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_TYPE,"jks");
    // Provide location of 'mycompclient-keystore.jks' which was created during Step I)
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_LOCATION,"/home/user1/mycompclient-keystore.jks");
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_KEYSTORE_PASSWORD,"<password>");
    requestContext.put(ClientConstants.WSSEC_RECIPIENT_KEY_ALIAS,"cdrmkey");
    //Provide user who is having permission to initiate the service
    requestContext.put(WSBindingProvider.USERNAME_PROPERTY,"<username>"),
    requestContext.put(WSBindingProvider.PASSWORD_PROPERTY,"<password>");
    
    String id = invokeUploadFiletoUCMMethod(fndManageImportExportFilesService);
    if (id != null) {
      invokevalueSetValuesDataLoader(fndManageImportExportFilesService, new Long(id));
    }
  }
}
static String invokeUploadFiletoUCMMethod(FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService) {

    String response = null;
    DocumentDetails document = new DocumentDetails();
    ObjectFactory objfactory = new ObjectFactory();
    document.setFileName(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsFileName("import_data.txt"));
    // Provide UCM repository - if repository is fin/tax/import then suffix each value with $ as mentioned here
    document.setDocumentTitle(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsDocumentTitle("VS"));
    document.setContentType(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsContentType("plain/text"));

    try {
        // Provide location of 'VS.txt' which contains ValueSet values data in prescribed format
        byte[] content = org.apache.commons.io.FileUtils.readFileToByteArray(new File("/home/user1/VS.txt"));
        document.setContent(objfactory.createDocumentDetailsContent(content));
    } catch (IOException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    } catch (Exception e) {
        System.out.println("Exception: "+e.getMessage());
    }

    try {
        response = fndManageImportExportFilesService.uploadFiletoUCM(document);
        System.out.println("Response: "+response);
    } catch (ServiceException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    }

    return response;
}

static void invokeValueSetValuesDataLoader(FndManageImportExportFilesService fndManageImportExportFilesService, Long id) {

    String response;
    try {
        response = fndManageImportExportFilesService.valueSetValuesDataLoader(id);
        System.out.println("Response: "+response);
    } catch (ServiceException e) {
        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
    }
}

8. Save the generated output as a JAVA file and name it FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPortClient.java.
9. Use the JAVA file to build a JAR file, and name it FndManageImportExportClient.jar.
10. Use the following command to run the web service:

    java -cp ./FndManageImportExportProxy.jar:/ws.api_1.1.0.0.jar:/FndManageImportExportClient.jar
        FndManageImportExportFilesServiceSoapHttpPortClient

Related Topics
• Import Value Set Values
Manage Descriptive Flexfields

Overview of Descriptive Flexfields
Use descriptive flexfields to add attributes to business object entities, and define validation for them.

All the business object entities that you can use in the application are enabled for descriptive flexfields. However, configuring descriptive flexfields is an optional task.

Context
A descriptive flexfield can have only one context segment to provide context sensitivity. The same underlying database column can be used by different segments in different contexts.

For example, you can define a Dimensions context that uses the following attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for height
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for width
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for depth

You can also define a Measurements context that uses the same columns for other attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for weight
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for volume
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for density

Segments and Contexts
The following table lists the different types of descriptive flexfield segments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment Type</th>
<th>Run Time Appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global segment</td>
<td>Always available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context segment</td>
<td>Determines which context-sensitive segments are displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context-sensitive segment</td>
<td>Displayed depending on the value of the context segment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following figure displays a descriptive flexfield having one context segment called Category for which there are three values: Resistor, Battery, and Capacitor. Additionally, the descriptive flexfield comprises two global segments that appear in each context, and three context-sensitive segments that only appear in the specific context.

Application development determines the number of segments available for configuring. During implementation, configure the flexfield by determining the following:

- Attributes to add using the available segments
- Context values
- The combination of attributes in each context

Value Sets
For each global and context-sensitive segment, you configure the values permitted for the segment. Based on it, the values that end users enter are validated, including interdependent validation among the segments.

Protected Descriptive Flexfield Data
Application developers may mark some data configurations in a descriptive flexfield as protected, indicating that you can’t edit them.
Considerations for Managing Descriptive Flexfields

Configuring descriptive flexfields involves managing the available flexfields registered with your Oracle Applications Cloud database and configuring their flexfield-level properties, defining and managing descriptive flexfield contexts, and configuring global and context-sensitive segments.

Every descriptive flexfield is registered to include a context segment, which you may choose to use or not.

In general, configuring descriptive flexfields involves:

1. Creating segment labels for business intelligence enabled flexfields.
2. Configuring global segments by providing identity information, the initial default value, and the display properties.
3. Configuring the context segment by specifying the prompt, whether the context segment should be displayed, and whether a value is required.
4. Configuring contexts by specifying a context code, description, and name for each context value, and adding its context-sensitive segments, each of which is configured to include identifying information, the column assignment, the initial default value, and the display properties.

The following aspects are important in understanding descriptive flexfield management:

- Segments
- Adding segments to highlighted descriptive flexfields
- Usages
- Parameters
- Delimiters
- Initial Values
- Business Intelligence

Segments

You can assign sequence order numbers to global segments and to context-sensitive segments in each context. Segment display is always in a fixed order. You cannot enter a number for one segment that is already in use for a different segment.

Value sets are optional for context segments and follow specific guidelines:

- The value set that you specify for a context segment consists of a set of context codes.
- Each context code corresponds to a context that is appropriate for the descriptive flexfield.
- The value set must be independent or table-validated.
- If table-validated, the WHERE clause must not use the VALUESET.value_set_code or SEGMENT.segment_code bind variables.
- The value set must be of data type Character with the maximum length of values being stored no larger than the context’s column length.
- If you don’t specify a value set for a context segment, the valid values for that context segment are derived from the context codes. The definition of each context segment specifies the set of context-sensitive segments that can be presented when that context code is selected by the end user.
- For reasons of data integrity, you cannot delete an existing context. Instead, you can disable the associated context value in its own value set by setting its end date to a date in the past.
- You can configure the individual global segments and context-sensitive segments in a descriptive flexfield. These segment types are differentiated by their usage, but they are configured on application pages that use most of the same properties.
Adding Segments to Highlighted Descriptive Flexfields

When you highlight flexfields on a run time page and use an **Add Segment** icon button to create a segment, the segment code, name, description, table column, and sequence number are set automatically. If you use an **Add Segment** icon button to configure descriptive flexfield segments, you cannot use an existing value set. Value sets are created automatically when you add the segments. You can enter the valid values, their descriptions, and the default value or specify the formatting constraints for the value set, such as minimum and maximum values.

Depending on display type, the value set you create using the **Add Segment** icon button is either an independent value set or a format-only value set. The following table shows which type of value set is created depending on the segment display component you select.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Component</th>
<th>Value Set Created Using Add Segment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Box</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drop-down List</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Values</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio Button Group</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Field With Search</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text box</td>
<td>Format Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text area</td>
<td>Format Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date/Time</td>
<td>Format Only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip:** After you add a context value, refresh the page to see the new value.

Usages

Descriptive flexfield usages allow for the same definition to be applied to multiple entities or application tables, such as a USER table and a USER_HISTORY table. Descriptive flexfield tables define the placeholder entity where the flexfield segment values are stored once you have configured the descriptive flexfield. When you configure a flexfield, the configuration applies to all its usages.

Parameters

Some descriptive flexfields provide parameters, which are attributes of the same or related entity objects. Parameters are public arguments to a descriptive flexfield. Parameters provide outside values in descriptive flexfield validation. You use parameters to set the initial value or derivation value of an attribute from external reference data, such as a column value or a session variable, rather than from user input. Parameters can be referenced by the logic that derives the default segment value, and by table-validated value set WHERE clauses.

Delimiters

A segment delimiter or separator visually separates segment values when the flexfield is displayed as a string of concatenated segments.
Initial Values

The SQL statement defining an initial value must be a valid statement that returns only one row and a value of the correct type.

You can use two types of SQL statements:

- SQL statement with no binding. For example, select MIN(SALARY) from EMPLOYEES.
- SQL statement with bind variables. You can use the following bind variables in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement.
  - \{\text{SEGMENT}.<segment\_code}\}: Identifies a segment in the same context.
  - \{\text{CONTEXT}.<context\_code>\};\{\text{SEGMENT}.<segment\_code}\}: Identifies a segment in a different context. The context must be in the same category or in an ancestor category, and it cannot be a multiple-row context.
  - \{\text{VALUESET}.<value\_set\_code}\}: Identifies the closest prior segment in the same context that is assigned to the specified value set.
  - \{\text{FLEXFIELD}.<internal\_code}\}: Identifies a flexfield.

For more information about using bind variables, see the help for value sets.

Business Intelligence

Selecting a global, context, or context-sensitive segment’s BI Enabled check box specifies that the segment is available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

When the flexfield is imported into Oracle Business Intelligence, the label you selected from the BI Label drop-down list equalizes the segment with segments in other contexts, and maps the segment to the logical object represented by the label.

Related Topics
- Why can’t I edit my flexfield or value set configuration

Considerations for Enabling Descriptive Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence

A descriptive flexfield that is registered in the database as enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) includes a BI Enabled setting for each of its segments. When a global, context, or context-sensitive segment is BI-enabled, it is available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

The following aspects are important in understanding BI-enabled flexfield segments:

- Flattening business components to use BI-enabled segments in Oracle BI
- Equalizing segments to prevent duplication and complexity in the flattened component
- Mapping attributes of flattened business components to logical objects in Oracle BI
- Managing the labels that map segments to logical objects in Oracle BI

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, use the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process to import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository. Users can make use of the newly-generated attributes in business intelligence applications. For example, a user can generate a report that includes attributes added by the descriptive flexfield. For additional information about logical objects and import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator’s Guide.

Flattening

When you deploy a business intelligence-enabled descriptive flexfield, the deployment process generates an additional set of flattened Application Development Framework (ADF) business components in addition to the usual ADF business
components and ADF faces run time artifacts that are generated during deployment. The flattened business components include attributes for business intelligence-enabled segments only. Flattening means each user-defined column in each context shows up as an attribute in an Oracle Business Intelligence folder.

Flattened components include one attribute for the BI-enabled context-segment, and one attribute for each business intelligence-enabled global segment. For BI-enabled context-sensitive segments, consider the following:

- If you assigned a label to the segment, the flattened components include an additional single attribute representing segments with that label.
- If you didn’t assign a label, the flattened components include a discrete attribute for each BI-enabled context-sensitive segment in each context.

Mapping to Logical Objects in Business Intelligence

You can simplify reporting by representing similar segments as a single logical object in Business Intelligence. If you assign a label to any set of context-sensitive segments that serve the same purpose in different contexts, you can consolidate or equalize the segments into a single attribute. This prevents duplication and the extra workload and complexity that result from the flattening process. For example, a United States context might have a Passport segment and a Canada context might have Visa segment. If you assign the NationalID segment label to both the Passport and Visa segments, they are equalized into the same NationalID attribute in the flattened business component.

Non-labeled context-sensitive segments aren’t equalized across context values, so the flattened components include a separate attribute for each context-sensitive segment for each context value. It may not be possible to equalize similarly labeled segments if they have incompatible data types or value set types.

Assign a label to a global segment, context segment, or context-sensitive segment to map the corresponding attribute in the flattened components to a logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence. Using labels to map segments to BI logical objects minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence.

Note: Assigning a label to a context-sensitive segment serves to equalize the attribute across contexts, as well as map the equalized attribute to business intelligence.

Managing Labels

You may assign a predefined label (if available) to segments or create new labels for assignment, as needed. Specify a code, name, and description to identify each label. In the BI Object Name field, enter the name of the logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence to which the segment label should map during import. Specifying the BI logical object minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence and helps to equalize context-sensitive segments across contexts.

If no labels are assigned to a BI-enabled segment, or the BI Object Name on the assigned label doesn’t exist in business intelligence, you must manually map the segment to the desired logical object when importing into Oracle Business Intelligence.

In addition, context-sensitive segments without labels cannot be equalized across context values. The flattened components include a separate attribute for each non-labeled context-sensitive segment in each context.

Importing to Oracle Business Intelligence Repository

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository to make use of the newly flattened business components in business intelligence and then propagate the flexfield object changes. When you import the metadata into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you must do so as the FUSION_APPS_BI_APPID user.
To import flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository in Oracle Cloud implementations, run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process. For additional information about import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator’s Guide.

**Note:** When you import a flexfield into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you see both `<name>` and `<name>_c` attributes for each segment, along with some other optional attributes. The `<name>` attribute contains the value. The `<name>_c` attribute contains the code of the value set that the value comes from, and is used for linking to the value dimension. You must import both attributes.

## Manage Extensible Flexfields

### Overview of Extensible Flexfields

Extensible flexfields are like descriptive flexfields, with some additional features.

- You can add as many context-sensitive segments to the flexfield as you need. You aren’t restricted by the number of columns predefined and registered for the flexfield.
- You can configure a one-to-many relationship between the entity and its extended attribute rows.
  - A row of data can have multiple contexts associated with it.
  - A row of data can have multiple occurrences of the same context.
- You can configure attributes in groups to form a context so that the attributes in the context always appear together in the user interface.
- You can use existing hierarchical categories so that entities inherit the contexts that are configured for their parents. Contexts are reusable throughout categories.
- Application development has registered some extensible flexfields to support view and edit privileges. For such flexfields, you can specify view and edit privileges at the context level to control who sees the attributes and who can change the attributes' values.

When you configure a context for multiple rows per entity, the segments are displayed as a table.

Unlike descriptive flexfields, the extension columns corresponding to extensible flexfields segments are part of extension tables, separate from the base application table. Unlike descriptive flexfield contexts, the set of attributes in an extensible flexfield context remains constant and doesn’t differ by context value. An extensible flexfield describes an application entity, with the run time ability to expand the database that implementation consultants can use to define the data structure that appears in the application. Extensible flexfields support one-to-many relationships between the entity and the extended attribute rows. To get a list of predefined extensible flexfields, use the Manage Extensible Flexfields task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

The following aspects are important in understanding extensible flexfields:

- Usages
- Categories
- Pages
- Security
- Protected Extensible Flexfield Data
Usages
Similar to the descriptive flexfields, you can define multiple usages for an extensible flexfield, which enables several application tables to share the same flexfield.

For example, a flexfield for shipping options can be used by both a Supplier table and a Buyer table. In addition, you can associate a context with one, some, or all of the flexfield’s usages. Thus, with the shipping information example, you can associate a warehouse context with the Supplier usage, a delivery location context with the Buyer usage, and a ship-via context with all usages.

Usages include security information for applying no security to user access or enforcing view and edit privileges. Some product-specific extensible flexfields have specialized usage fields beyond those for security.

Categories
You can configure multiple extensible flexfield contexts and group the contexts into categories. All extensible flexfields have at least one category. For some extensible flexfields, you can configure a hierarchy of categories. A child category in the hierarchy can inherit contexts from its parent category.

You can define categories for extensible flexfields, and you can associate any combination of contexts with a given category.

For example, the Electronics and Computers category hierarchy might include a Home Entertainment category, which in turn might include an Audio category and a TV category, and so on. The Home Entertainment product might have contexts that specify voltage, dimensions, inputs and outputs. Contexts are reusable within a given extensible flexfield. For example, the dimensions context could be assigned to any category that needs to include dimensional information.

Pages
Extensible flexfields let you combine contexts into groups known as pages, which serve to connect the contexts so they will always be presented together in the application user interface.

Each application page corresponds to one extensible flexfield category, with a separate region of the page for each associated context.

Security
When you configure a flexfield, you set the privileges for a context at the usage level by selecting actions for the view and edit privileges of a context usage.

When an end user performs a search, the user interface displays only the attribute values of the contexts for which the user has view privileges. The user can perform a search using all attributes for all contexts, regardless of view privileges.

If end users access a context through a web service, an exception is thrown if they perform an action for which they don’t have privileges.

All extensible flexfields have a base data security resource. Some data security resources for extensible flexfields are preconfigured with actions that you can use to specify access privileges. If no action is preconfigured, a security administrator can create actions and policies to support access control on the extensible flexfield attributes.

Some extensible flexfields have a translatable option; these flexfields also have a translation data security resource.

Protected Extensible Flexfield Data
Application developers may mark some data configurations in an extensible flexfield as protected, indicating that you can’t edit them.
If an extensible flexfield is partially protected, then you can’t edit the protected portions of the flexfield’s configuration. For example:

- If an extensible flexfield context is protected, you can’t edit its:
  - Context details
  - Context segments
  - Context usages
- If an extensible flexfield page is protected, you can’t:
  - Edit the page details or delete the page
  - Edit the contexts associated with the page

**Note:**

- There is no restriction on page references to protected contexts. The pages you create may contain any context, whether protected or not.
- There is a restriction on category references to protected contexts. If a context is protected, you can’t add it to or delete it from any category.

**Related Topics**

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

**Considerations for Managing Extensible Flexfields**

Configuring extensible flexfields involves managing the available flexfields registered with your application database. The following sequence describes how to configure extensible flexfields:

1. Configuring contexts by creating each context segment and the context-sensitive segments for each context segment, and providing the following for each segments:
   a. Identifying information
   b. Column assignment
   c. Initial default value
   d. Display properties
2. Configuring context usages and usage security by selecting actions to which users should have access:
   - View
   - Edit
   - None, if no special privileges should be enforced.
3. Configuring categories and category details.
4. Associating contexts with a category.
5. Creating logical pages for a category.

The following aspects are important in understanding extensible flexfield management:

- Contexts and pages
- Categories
- Initial values
• Adding segments to highlighted extensible flexfields
• Indexed segments
• Security
• Deployment

Contexts and Pages
Each context is displayed to end users as a region containing its context-sensitive segments. You can specify instruction help text to display instructions that explain how to use the region and its attributes to end users. Instruction help text is displayed at the beginning of the context region. A context can be defined as single row or multi-row. Single row contexts are the same as descriptive flexfields contexts. A single row context has only one set of context-sensitive segments. A multi-row context enables you to associate multiple sets of values with the same object instance.

For example, for a BOOK table, you could create a multi-row context named chapters that contains a segment for chapter and a segment for number of pages. Multiple chapters can then be associated with each book in the BOOK table.

For contexts that store multiple rows, you can uniquely identify each row by having the values in each row form a unique key.

If flexfield has a category hierarchy, then you can leverage the hierarchy to reuse contexts for similar entities, such as similar items in a product catalog.

Set the context to translatable so that free-form text entered by end users is stored in the language of the user’s locale, and different translations of that text can be stored in other languages. Segments in the translated contexts should use format-only value sets for storing free-form, user-entered text.

Set the context security to give an end user view or edit access to a context. The context’s task flow and region appear in the user interface only for users with view access. With edit access, an end user can edit the context’s attribute values. With no action specified for a usage, no special privileges are enforced through the context’s configuration.

Define logical pages to group contexts together in the user interface. For a given category, you may create one or more logical pages. You may add one or more of the category’s associated contexts to each of the category’s logical pages.

You can specify:

• The sequence of the contexts within each page.
• The sequence in which the logical pages appear.
• Instruction help text to display instructions that explain how to use the page to end users. Instruction help text is displayed at the beginning of the logical page, preceding all of its context regions.

Categories
A category is a grouping of related data items that can be considered to belong together. You can associate any combination of contexts with a given category. Extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories must be deployed as a background process.

A category hierarchy logically organizes a set of categories. For example, the Electronics and Computers category hierarchy might include a Computer category and a Home Entertainment category, which in turn might include an Audio category and a TV category, and so on.

A category can be a child or sibling of an existing category. The hierarchy can be as simple or as complex as desired, with any combination of zero or more sibling categories and zero or more child categories. If no category is defined, the data items are grouped in a single predefined default category.

Each category has associated contexts that store relevant information about a data item in that category. For example, a Home Entertainment product has contexts that specify Voltage, Dimensions, Inputs and Outputs. Contexts are reusable.
within a given extensible flexfield. Then, the Dimensions context could be assigned to any category that needs to include dimensional information.

If a hierarchy includes child categories, each child category inherits the contexts from its parent category; for example, the Home Entertainment category inherits Voltage and Dimensions from the Electronics and Computers category.

Each extensible flexfield is associated with a particular category hierarchy. Consider category hierarchies to be defining framework for extensible flexfields and their contexts. A category hierarchy specifies which contexts are valid for each category.

An extensible flexfield can include multiple contexts which you define to support a given category. These contexts can be suitable for various purposes, but within a particular category, some contexts might be considered to be related to, or dependent on, each other. You can combine these contexts into groups known as logical pages, and determine the sequence in which the pages appear. This serves to connect the contexts so they will always be presented together and in a particular order in the application user interface.

For example, the Home Entertainment category might have an Electrical Specifications page that contains the Voltage, Inputs and Outputs contexts, and a Physical Specifications page that contains the Dimensions and Form Factor contexts.

Initial Values
The SQL statement defining an initial value must be a valid statement that returns only one row and a value of the correct type.

You can use two types of SQL statements:

- SQL statement with no binding. For example, select MIN(SALARY) from EMPLOYEES.
- SQL statement with bind variables. You can use the following bind variables in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement.
  - :{SEGMENT.<segment_code>}: Identifies a segment in the same context.
  - :{CONTEXT.<context_code>;SEGMENT.<segment_code>}: Identifies a segment in a different context. The context must be in the same category or in an ancestor category, and it cannot be a multiple-row context.
  - :{VALUESET.<value_set_code>}: Identifies the closest prior segment in the same context that is assigned to the specified value set.
  - :{FLEXFIELD.<internal_code>}: Identifies a flexfield.

For more information about using bind variables, see the help for value sets.

Adding Segments to Highlighted Extensible Flexfields
When you highlight flexfields on a run time page and use an Add Segment icon button to create a segment, the segment code, name, description, table column, and sequence number are set automatically. If you use an Add Segment icon button to configure extensible flexfield segments, you can’t use an existing value set. Value sets are created automatically when you add segments. You can enter the valid values, their descriptions, and the default value or specify the formatting constraints for the value set, such as minimum and maximum values.

Depending on display type, the value set you create with the Add Segment icon button is either an independent value set or a format-only value set. The following table shows which type of value set is created depending on the segment display component you select.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Component</th>
<th>Value Set Created Using Add Segment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Box</td>
<td>Independent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indexed Segments

You can designate an extensible flexfield segment as indexed so that it’s one of the selectively required attributes a user can use in an attribute search. If you indicate in the Manage Extensible Flexfield UI page that a segment should be indexed, the column representing the segment must be added to the database index. Commonly, a database administrator (DBA) adds columns to the database index.

When an extensible flexfield with indexed segments is deployed, search task flows are generated along with the other flexfield artifacts and specify the indexed attributes as selectively required. In the deployed extensible flexfield’s search task flow, an end user must specify at least one of the indexed attributes in the search criteria. This prevents non-selective searches, which could cause performance issues.

For example, if you index the memory and processor attributes and ensure that the corresponding columns in the database are indexed, a user can search an item catalog for computers by entering processor or memory or both as a search criteria. No search is performed if an end user enters an attribute that isn’t indexed as a search criterion.

### Security

An extensible flexfield’s base data security resource typically has a name with an _B suffix. The translation data security resource is a view of a translation table that typically has a name with an _VL suffix.

If a flexfield supports the translatable option and has a translation data security resource, make sure that you create the action for the appropriate data security resource.

- If you create a context-specific action for a nontranslatable context, add it to the base data security resource.
- If you create a context-specific action for a translatable context, add it to the translation data security resource.

### Deployment

You can only deploy extensible flexfields using the Manage Extensible Flexfields task. You can deploy extensible flexfields offline as a background process and continue working in the session without having to wait for the deployment to complete. You can queue up several extensible flexfields and deploy as a background process. The flexfields are deployed, one at a time.
time, in the order that you deploy them to the queue. You must deploy extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories as a background process.

You can remove an extensible flexfield from the deployment queue with the Cancel Background Deployment command. When an extensible flexfield is deployed in a background process, its offline status indicates that the flexfield is in a background deployment process. A flexfield’s offline status is cleared and its deployment status updated when the background deployment process has completed.

Note: The Offline Status column refreshes when you perform a new search in the Manage Extensible Flexfields task.

Related Topics
- Why can’t I edit my flexfield or value set configuration

Manage Key Flexfields

Overview of Key Flexfields

Key flexfields provide a means to capture a key such as a part number, a job code, or an account code. A key flexfield consists of one or more segments, where each segment can have a meaning.

For example, a part number 10-PEN-BLA-450 might correspond to a black pen from supplier #450 sold by division #10 (office supplies). Behind the scenes, the application uses a unique number, 13452, for this part, but the user always sees the 10-PEN-BLA-450 part number.

The following aspects are important to understanding key flexfields:

- Architecture
- Segments and segment labels
- Structures
- Segment and structure instances
- Combinations
- Dynamic combination creation
- Security

Key flexfields aren’t optional. You must configure key flexfields to ensure that your applications operate correctly. You configure and maintain key flexfield definitions with the Manage Key Flexfields task. To get a list of predefined key flexfields, use the Manage Key Flexfields task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. For information about specific key flexfields, see the help for the product where the associated business component is implemented.

Architecture

Flexfield metadata is stored in the flexfield metadata tables. When you configure a key flexfield, you define metadata about the key flexfield covering aspects such as:

- Segments are in a structure
- Structures in the flexfield
- Value sets in each segment
Based on the flexfield metadata, actual part numbers are captured at run time as a combination of segment values and stored in a combinations table. A combinations table contains all the segment columns for a flexfield, a unique ID column, and a structure instance number column. The structure instance number column differentiates multiple arrangements of the segment columns. For example, a part number containing multiple segments can be represented by a key flexfield. A part number key flexfield has a corresponding combinations table. In that table, the flexfield stores a list of the complete codes, with each segment of the code in a column, with the corresponding unique ID and structure instance number for the code. When users define a new part number or maintain existing part numbers in the parts catalog, they directly maintain rows in the combinations table.

The foreign key table contains a different business entity than the combinations table. For example, the business entity in the foreign key table is order lines or invoice lines that contain foreign key references to parts for ordering. Any number of foreign key tables can reference a particular entity represented by a key flexfield.

Segments and Segment Labels
A key flexfield contains segments and a segment label identifies a particular segment within a key flexfield. Segment labels are defined and made available by the product development. A segment contains the following details:

- A prompt
- A short prompt
- Display width
- The sequential position of the segment within the key flexfield structure
- The range type
- Column name of the attribute being stored by the segment
- A default value set
- A label for the segment

Applications identify a particular segment for some purpose such as security or computations. Segment name or segment order cannot reliably identify a segment because key flexfield segments can be configured to appear in any order with any prompts. A segment label functions as a tag for a segment.

For example, the requirement is to identify which segment in the accounting flexfield contains balancing information and which segment contains natural account information. A segment label determines which segment you are using for natural account information. When you define your accounting flexfield, you must specify which segment labels apply to which segments. Some labels must be unique, and cannot be applied to more than one segment in each structure. Other labels are required, and must be applied to at least one segment in each structure.

A segment label helps a user searching for segments, such as the Cost Center label for all segments across key flexfields that store a value for the cost center.

Structures
A key flexfield structure definition includes the number of segments and their order.

In some applications, different users like to see different segment structures for the same flexfield. A key flexfield can have multiple structures if registered to support more than one structure.

The flexfield can display different fields for different users based on a data condition in your application data, such as the value of another field entered by the user or the user’s role. For example, the correctly formatted local postal address for customer service inquiries differs based on locale. A postal address key flexfield could display different segments and prompts for different users based on a location condition in your application data, such as the user’s role or a value entered by the user.

Each structure can have one or more segments. Thus a segment is a child of a structure. To store a particular segment, such as Cost Center, in two different structures, you must define the segment separately in each structure. Each structure may
have one or more structure instances. Each instance of a structure shares the same number and order of segments, but differs in the values or value sets used in validating the segments.

Structure and Segment Instances
You can define multiple configurations of a key flexfield structure. These structure instances have the same segment structure, in the same sequence order. They differ primarily in how each segment is validated. You define a structure instance for each key flexfield and each key flexfield structure instance.

The segments in a key flexfield structure instance are segment instances. A segment instance is a segment with a specific value set assigned to it. If a key flexfield is registered with a tree structure, you can specify a tree code for a segment instance.

Combinations
A combination is a complete code, or combination of segment values that makes up the code, that uniquely identifies an object.

For example, each part number is a single combination, such as PAD-YEL-11x14 or 01-COM-876-7BG-LTN. In these combinations, the hyphen is the segment separator. If you have ten parts, define ten combinations. A valid combination is an existing or new combination that can be used because it’s currently active and doesn’t violate cross-validation or security rules. A combination has different segments depending on the flexfield structure being used for that combination. Any combination is associated with only one particular flexfield structure.

Many applications refer to a key flexfield combination by using the name of the entity or the key flexfield itself. For example, Assets uses the asset key flexfield and refers to one of its combinations as an asset key or asset key flexfield. In another example, Oracle Fusion General Ledger refers to combinations of the accounting flexfield as account or GL account.

Each key flexfield has one corresponding table, known as the combinations table, where the flexfield stores a list of the complete codes, with one column for each segment of the code, together with the corresponding unique ID number (an account combination ID) for that code. Then, other tables in the application have a column that stores just the unique ID for the code. For example, you may have a part number code, such as PAD-YEL-11x14. The Parts combinations table stores that code along with its ID, 57494. If your application lets you take orders for parts, you might then have an Orders table that stores orders for parts. That Orders table would contain a single column that contains the part ID, 57494, instead of several columns for the complete code PAD-YEL-11x14. Typically, one combinations page maintains the key flexfield, where the key flexfield is the representation of an entity in your application. Maintain individual combinations, such as part numbers in the combinations page.

Dynamic Combination Creation
Dynamic combination creation is the insertion of a new valid combination into a combinations table from a page other than the combinations page. The following table lists the levels at which dynamic combination creation may be enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level Of Dynamic Combination Creation</th>
<th>Controlled By:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flexfield</td>
<td>Application development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each usage or reference to the key flexfield</td>
<td>Application development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure instance</td>
<td>Administrators and implementation consultants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Administrators and implementation consultants</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If your key flexfield or certain usages or references of the key flexfield don’t permit dynamic combination creation, you may control whether dynamic combination creation is enabled for each structure instance. If enabled, a user can enter a new combination of segment values using the flexfield window from a foreign key page. For example, when entering a transaction, a GL user can enter a new expense account combination for an account that doesn’t yet exist. Your application creates the new account by inserting the new combination into the combinations table behind the scenes. Assuming that the new combination satisfies any existing cross-validation rules, the flexfield inserts the new combination into the combinations table, even though the combinations table isn’t the underlying table for the foreign key page.

Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Considerations for Managing Key Flexfields

Consider the plans for a key flexfield, security, and resulting run time pages when configuring key flexfields.

Planning

Plan structures carefully and enable them for future needs. Don’t change the number, order, and maximum length of segments once you have acquired flexfield data.

Structure Delimiters

A delimiter separates the segments when they appear to users. The delimiter value of a structure specifies the character used to visually separate segment values when the key flexfield is displayed as a string of concatenated segments in the UI.

Identify the delimiter value of your key flexfield carefully so that it doesn’t conflict with the flexfield data. For example, if your data frequently contains periods, such as in monetary or numeric values, don’t use a period as your segment separator. Any character you expect to appear frequently in your segment values or descriptions isn’t a good choice for the delimiter. If you change the configuration of a key flexfield, such as the delimiter, the change affects the previously stored key flexfields with that structure.

Security

Oracle Fusion data security enforces value set security.

Within key flexfields, value set security applies to the selection of the individual segment values in the segment list of values. When selecting a key flexfield segment value from the combinations table, data security permits display of only the combinations whose segment values you have access to. Applications development controls whether or not value set security rules propagate to the foreign key table. By default they do.

Run Time Pages

Application development determines the user interface (UI) pages used to render flexfields. The types of key flexfield UI pages are as follows:

- Combinations pages where the underlying entity objects use the combinations table itself
- Foreign key pages where the underlying entity objects contain a foreign key reference to the combinations table
- Partial usage pages where some or all of the key flexfield’s segment columns are in a product table

The same key flexfield can be used in different ways on different pages.

A page with a foreign key reference has a base table or view that contains a foreign key reference to a combinations table with the actual flexfield segment columns. This lets you manipulate rows containing account combination IDs (account combination).
A page with partial usage of a key flexfield presents segments that are defined on a product’s transactional table in addition to being defined on a combinations table. In the case of a partial usage page, only a part of the configuration is likely to be visible. This enables the key flexfield to act more like a descriptive flexfield.

An account combination maintenance page or combinations page presents the combinations table. This enables directly creating and maintaining account combinations. The combinations table contains all key flexfield segment columns and a unique ID column.

A typical application has only one combinations page. An application might not have a combinations page if it doesn’t support maintenance by administrators.

A page containing a search region enables users to select which attributes of the key flexfield view object to use as criteria to search for flexfield metadata.

For example, you can configure seven segments for the Account key flexfield. In a foreign key reference page, users see the typical key flexfield picker with all seven segments where they can search for combinations. In a partial usage page using the same key flexfield, users potentially could see only a single segment such as the Cost Center labeled segment, or they might see multiple segments but displayed as individual segments rather than options for selecting combinations.

For more information about key flexfield pages, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Key Flexfield Structures
A key flexfield structure arranges the segments of a key so that you can reuse a single key flexfield in multiple combinations of the same segments or a subset of those segments. Multiple instances of a single structure can accommodate differences in the value sets assigned to the structure’s segments.

The structure determines the following aspects of a key flexfield:

- The segments to include
- The order of the segments
- Segment labels on the included segments
- Properties for each segment applied to the instances of the segments in an instance of the structure

Managing Key Flexfield Structures
All the segments defined for a key flexfield are available to be included in a key flexfield structure.

You can define as many segments as there are defined segment columns in your key flexfield combinations table. Ensure that you add segments in the order that your key requires. Once deployed, the order cannot be changed.

Enable segments to indicate that they are in use. A flexfield doesn’t display disabled segments in run time. To protect the integrity of your data, disable a segment if you have already used it to enter data.

Key Flexfield Structure Instances and Segment Instances
A key flexfield structure can have one or more alternate structure instances. The instances of a key flexfield structure share the following aspects of the structure:

- The same set of segments
- The same arrangement of segments
- The same properties at the segment and structure levels
The differences among structure instances include whether dynamic combination creation is permitted. Likewise, at the structure instance level, differences among segment instances are based on the following:

- Value set
- Default type and default value
- Tree code
- Whether the segment is any of the following:
  - Required
  - Displayed
  - Enabled for business intelligence
  - Optional or required as a query criterion

For example, you can use one group of value sets for the US and another for France.
The structures differ in the number of segments and the segment separators used. The structure instances share all the properties defined for that structure. However, the structure instances may vary if the properties are defined at the structure instance or segment instance level. For example, the value set assigned to the segment instances.

Query Required Segment Instances
You can designate a key flexfield segment instance as a query for making it a selectively required attribute. A user can use it as a key flexfield combination search. On the Manage Key Flexfields UI page, if you indicate that a segment instance requires indexing, add the column representing the segment to the database index. Commonly, a database administrator (DBA) adds columns to the database index.
Following deployment, the combination picker of the key flexfield displays the query required attributes as selectively required. A user must specify at least one of the query required attributes in the search criteria. This prevents unnecessary searches that could cause performance issues.

For example, you mark the cost center and account attributes as query required and ensure that the corresponding columns in the database are indexed. A user can search for combinations by entering cost center or account or both as search criteria. No search is performed if a user doesn’t enter at least one query required attribute as search criteria.

**Tip:** Index the Structure Instance Number column on your combinations table to improve run time performance.

**Dynamic Combinations**

If a key flexfield supports dynamic combination creation, you can select to enable this feature by selecting Dynamic Combination Creation Allowed. As a result, users enter values at run time that produce new account combinations for the flexfield. If Dynamic Combination Creation Allowed isn’t enabled, new valid combinations can only be entered using the combinations table for the flexfield.

**Trees**

You may define a tree code for the value set assigned to the segment instance. When you assign the tree code to the segment instance, tree hierarchy search operations are available on the segment values.

For a segment instance to be based on a tree, the following must be true.

- Application development registered the key flexfield with a tree structure. The tree structure may be fixed across all segments in the flexfield, or may vary across segments.
- A tree code for that tree structure exists.
- The tree code includes tree versions containing the values of the value set assigned to the segment instance.
- You assign the required tree code directly to the segment instance.

If these conditions are satisfied, you can assign the same or different tree codes to the different segment instances that use the same value set.

**Considerations for Enabling Key Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence**

A key flexfield registered in the database as enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) includes a BI Enabled setting for each of its segment instances. When a segment instance is BI-enabled, it’s available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence. The following aspects are important in understanding BI-enabled key flexfield segments.

- Flattening business components to use BI-enabled segments in Oracle BI
- Equalizing segments to prevent duplication and complexity in the flattened component
- Mapping attributes of flattened business components to logical objects in Oracle BI
- Managing the labels that map segments to logical objects in Oracle BI

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, use the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process to import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository. Users can make use of the newly-generated attributes in business intelligence applications. For additional information about logical objects and import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator’s Guide.
Flattening

When you deploy a business intelligence-enabled key flexfield, the deployment process generates an additional set of flattened business components for use in business intelligence. The flattened business components include attributes for business intelligence-enabled segment instances only.

If you assigned a label to a segment, the flattened components include a single attribute representing all segment instances with that label. If you didn’t assign a label, the flattened components include a discrete attribute for each BI-enabled segment instance in each structure.

Mapping to Logical Objects in Business Intelligence

You can simplify reporting by representing similar segments as a single logical object in Business Intelligence. If you assign a label to segments that serve the same purpose in different structures, you can consolidate the segments into a single attribute. This prevents duplication and the extra workload and complexity that result from the flattening process. For example, an organization may have more than one definition of its key accounting flexfield to support different requirements for accounting reporting. A US Accounting Flexfield structure may have a segment called Subaccount to track project expenditures. The same type of information may be tracked in a UK accounting flexfield structure with a segment called Project. Equalize these two segments to create a single list of values for reporting.

Non-labeled segments aren’t equalized across context values, so the flattened components include a separate attribute for each segment for each structure. It may not be possible to equalize similarly labeled segments if they have incompatible data types or value set types.

Assign a label to a segment to map the corresponding attribute in the flattened components to a logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence. Using labels to map segments to BI logical objects minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence. Assigning a label to a segment serves to equalize the attribute across structures, as well as map the equalized attribute to business intelligence.

Managing Labels

You may assign a predefined label (if available) to segments or create labels for assignment, as needed. Specify a code, name, and description to identify each label. In the BI Object Name field, enter the name of the logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence to which the segment label should map during import. Specifying the BI logical object minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence and helps to equalize context-sensitive segments across structures.

If no labels are assigned to a BI-enabled segment, or the BI Object Name on the assigned label doesn’t exist in business intelligence, you must manually map the segment to the required logical object when importing into Oracle Business Intelligence. In addition, segments without labels cannot be equalized across structures. The flattened components include a separate attribute for each non-labeled segment in each structure.

Importing to Oracle Business Intelligence Repository

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository to make use of the newly flattened business components in business intelligence. Then propagate the flexfield object changes. When you import the metadata into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you must do so as the FUSION_APPS_BI_APPID user.

To import flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository in Oracle Cloud implementations, run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process. For additional information about import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator’s Guide.
Note: When you import a flexfield into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you see both `<name>_` and `<name>_c` attributes for each segment, along with some other optional attributes. The `<name>_` attribute contains the value. The `<name>_c` attribute contains the code of the value set that the value comes from, and is used for linking to the value dimension. You must import both attributes.

Example of a Key Flexfields
A key flexfield can capture expense account information.

Scenario
When entering details for each expense, the user specifies an account to which the expense is charged.

Entering Expense Accounts
A user interface for entering expenses helps the user select an expense account that identifies the cost center and other details needed for processing the expense.

Analysis
The expense account field is a foreign key reference to a account combination (EXPENSE_LINES.EXPENSE_ACCOUNT = ACCOUNT.COMBINATION).

Account combinations Table for Entering Accounts and Employees
The account combinations table supports entering account information, such as for expense accounts.
The following figure shows the origin in the account combinations table of the account specified by the user. The account combination ID record stores the information of the key flexfield segments used to assemble the expense account based on the key flexfield configuration.

The combinations page, which is the maintenance page for the key flexfield, is for managing rows in the combinations table. In this example, managing the combinations means adding or editing account numbers that adhere to the key flexfield metadata rules.

The following figure shows the account combination details for the example expense account reflected in the flexfield configuration and the account combinations table.
If dynamic combination creation isn’t enabled, then when entering an expense line, the user can only select an account that already exists in the ACCOUNTS (combinations) table. If they require an account that doesn’t exist, they must consult with the appropriate application administrator who can add the account to the combinations table.

If dynamic combination creation is enabled, then when entering an expense line, the user can either select a preexisting account, or type in a new account that is created dynamically on the fly in the ACCOUNTS (combinations) table. Once the new combination is created, the same user can refer to it on the expense line.

When managing employee information, the user specifies the cost center that the employee belongs to. The cost center field corresponds to a single, labeled segment of the Account Key Flexfield and has metadata defined such as the allowable value set for that segment.

In the following figure, instead of specifying a cost center ID reference to an account, only the cost center segment is used and the value is stored directly on the employee table.
Combination Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cost Center</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Cost Center 400 â‚¬ US</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Employee Details User Interface

Employee Number 10000
Employee ID gbrown
Hire Data 1/1/2011
Structure US
Cost Center 400

Related Topics
- Example of One Chart of Accounts Structure with Many Instances

FAQs for Define Flexfields

How can I access predefined flexfields?
Search for predefined flexfields using the manage flexfields tasks.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to any of the following tasks:
   - Manage Descriptive Flexfields
   - Manage Extensible Flexfields
   - Manage Key Flexfields
2. On the page for the type of flexfield you’re looking for, enter any of the search parameters and click Search.

Tip: If you don’t know the flexfield name or the code, use the Module field to filter search results.

3. Click a flexfield to view its details.

For configuration that’s not available through the manage flexfields tasks and the UI, contact My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

Related Topics
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Why did my flexfield changes not appear in the runtime UI?
The ADF business components or artifacts of a flexfield, which are generated into an Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) Repository when the flexfield is deployed, are cached within a user session. You must sign out and sign back in again to view flexfield definition changes reflected in the runtime application user interface page.
What happens if a value set is security enabled?

Value set security is a feature that enables you to secure access to value set values based on the role of the user in the application.

As an example, suppose you have a value set of US state names. When this value set is used to validate a flexfield segment, and users can select a value for the segment, you can use value set security to restrict them to selecting only a certain state or subset of states based on their assigned roles in the application.

For example, Western-region employees may choose only California, Nevada, Oregon, and so on as valid values. They cannot select non-Western-region states. Eastern-region employees may choose only New York, New Jersey, Virginia, and so on as valid values, but cannot select non-Eastern-region states. Value set security is implemented using Oracle Applications Cloud data security.

Why did my page not display any flexfield?

For a flexfield to be available on the page, it must be registered by developers and also deployed. The segments appear on the page only after you have successfully deployed the flexfield.

A flexfield’s deployment status indicates whether the flexfield segments are available to users. The flexfield segments that users see at run time correspond to the flexfield definition last deployed successfully.

For information about registering flexfields, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide. Some business objects aren’t designed to support flexfields. For information about how to enable business objects with flexfield capability, see Getting Started with Flexfields in the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Note: Oracle Engagement Cloud doesn’t support flexfields.

To add attributes to these applications, you may use Application Composer. For more information, see the product-specific documentation.

How can I set a default value for a flexfield segment?

When you define or edit a flexfield segment, you pick a value from the assigned value set and set it as default.

You can set the default value for a descriptive flexfield segment to be a parameter. The mapped entity object attribute provides the initial default value for the segment.

You can set the default value to be a constant, if appropriate to the data type of the value set assigned to the segment.

In addition to an initial default value, you can set a derivation value for updating the attribute’s value every time the parameter value changes. The parameter you select identifies the entity object source attribute. Any changes in the value of the source attribute during run time are reflected in the value of the segment.

If the display type of the segment is a check box, you can set whether the default value of the segment is checked or unchecked.
Attachments

You can use attachments to provide supplementary information to specific business objects. Attachments can be URLs, desktop files, text, or repository folders. For a business object you may view, create, delete, or edit attachments, depending on your role and granted privileges. For more information on attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Repository

Attachments are stored in a content management repository provided by Oracle WebCenter Content Server. Users managing attachments can’t interact with the repository unless the repository mode is enabled. When enabled, users can share attachments among objects, update attachments, and perform other tasks. Access to the attachment files is controlled by a digital signing mechanism.

Security

Data security applicable to a specific business object also applies to its attachments. For example, if a user has no access to a specific expense report, then that user cannot access its attachments. You can also use attachment categories to control access and actions on attachments, based on roles associated with that category. For more information on securing attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Attachment Entities

An attachment entity is usually a database entity, for example a table or view, that represents a business object with which attachments can be associated. Each attachment UI must be defined with a corresponding attachment entity. Attachment entities are used only in the context of attachments and exist separately from the database entities that they are based on.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Attachment Entities task to edit and create attachment entities. You can either use the predefined attachment entities with attachment UIs or create entities, for example when developing your own UIs.

The entity name should match the name of the table or view that represents the business object used for attachment. The name is also used in the repository folder that is automatically created to store attachments for the entity.

The data security policies associated with the database resource defined for the attachment entity apply to attachments for that entity. However, the security setting must be enabled for that entity. The database resource value must match the value in the OBJ_NAME column in the FND_OBJECTS table for the business object that the entity represents.

Related Topics

- Modules in Application Taxonomy
- How Database Resources and Data Security Policies Work Together

How Attachment Entities and Attachment Categories Work Together

The association between attachment entities and categories determines the use of categories for an entity. For example, categories associated with the expense report attachment entity are available in the attachment UIs for expense reports. You can configure the associations when managing either entities or categories. Between the Manage Attachment Entities and Manage Attachment Categories pages, any change in association on one page automatically reflects on the other page. You can open either page by starting in the Setup and Maintenance work area and searching for the attachment tasks.
Managing Entities

On the Manage Attachment Entities page, you determine which attachment categories are relevant to a particular entity. Each entity must have at least one category. For a particular expense report page with attachments functionality, you can specify which category to use for the attachment. Accordingly, the data security defined for each category is applied to the attachments on that page if security is enabled.

Managing Categories

If you create an attachment category and must assign it to multiple attachment entities, use the Manage Attachment Categories page. The association is the same as that on the Manage Attachment Entities page.

Attachments Troubleshooting

Attachments UIs are very user-friendly and easy to work with. You may encounter issues in certain cases such as you modify the attachments, for example create additional attachment categories, or implement data security on them.

Issue: Can't View, Add, Update, or Delete Attachments

You may encounter the following issues when trying to view attachments or perform actions such as adding attachments.

- You can no longer see specific attachments that were earlier visible.
- You can no longer update or delete attachments.
- You get an error stating that you do not have permission to add attachments.

Resolution

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to ensure that attachment categories are associated to the relevant attachment entity. You might need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or what categories to assign.

If data security is implemented on the categories for the attachment entity, verify that the Enable Security check box is selected in the Manage Attachment Entities page for that entity. Also, make sure that users have a role that has the necessary privileges. The following table lists the privileges required to view, add, update, or delete attachments with a specific attachment category.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Privilege</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View</td>
<td>Read Application Attachment (FND_READ_APPLICATION_ATTACHMENT_DATA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add or Update</td>
<td>Update Application Attachment (FND_UPDATE_APPLICATION_ATTACHMENT_DATA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Delete Application Attachment (FND_DELETE_APPLICATION_ATTACHMENT_DATA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, if users have the Read Application Attachment privilege for all categories associated with the expense report attachment entity, except the Receipts attachment category, then they can view all expense report attachments except those created with the Receipts category. Likewise, if users do not have the Update Application Attachment privilege for any attachment categories tied to the expense report attachment entity, then they cannot create any attachments for the expense reports.
For more information on attachment category data security, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

**Issue: Missing Attachment Category**

You can view existing attachments but the attachments no longer have an attachment category associated with them.

**Resolution**

When the attachment was added, at least one category existed for the corresponding attachment entity. Since then, the entity was edited so that it no longer has any assigned categories, so the user cannot see the category associated with that attachment.

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to reassign attachment categories to the relevant attachment entity. For example, if users can no longer see the Receipts attachment category for an attachment to an expense report, then search for the expense report attachment entity and assign to it the Receipts category. You may need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or any additional categories to assign.

Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

**FAQs for Define Attachments**

**What's an attachment category?**

You must use an attachment category to classify and secure an attachment. While adding attachments, you can view the available attachment categories and add the attachment to one of them. For example, attachments for an expense report can be categorized as receipts, scanned invoice images, and so on.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the **Manage Attachment Categories** task. You can associate roles with categories to restrict user access and actions for an attachment entity. You can also create and manage categories for your own purpose, involving specific attachments with specific security requirements. For more information on attachment category data security, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

**Related Topics**

- Modules in Application Taxonomy
Define Collaboration Messaging

Overview of Collaboration Messaging

Use Oracle Fusion Collaboration Messaging Framework to enable Oracle Applications Cloud establish business-to-business (B2B) messaging capabilities with trading partners.

Using this framework, you can send and receive real-time transactional messages without building new SOA components. You can use the existing B2B functionality to exchange messages with collaborators such as suppliers either directly or using an intermediary agency such as a B2B Service Provider.

The framework supports transformation of a B2B document, such as a purchase order, between the Oracle Applications Cloud format and an external message format supported by the trading partner. When you send messages to partners or receive messages from them, the framework performs the required transformation.
The following figure illustrates how Collaboration Messaging Framework delivers a message to the intended recipient.

Using collaboration messaging involves performing the following high-level tasks:

- Setting up external (B2B) trading partners and their messaging capabilities.
- Cross-referencing the Oracle Applications Cloud definition of a trading partner (such as a supplier) with the external trading partner definition setup earlier. Also, selecting the messages that must be enabled with the partner.
- Configuring the message delivery method for the partner.

To open the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the Navigator menu and select **Collaboration Messaging**.
Use the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page to:

- Manage undelivered collaboration messages
- Reprocess failed collaboration messages
- Manage collaboration messaging history
- Validate inbound and outbound collaboration messaging setup

Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration

Set Up Outbound Message Processing and Delivery Methods

By default, Collaboration Messaging Framework stores all source and transformed outbound and inbound documents. This facilitates auditing the documents and reprocessing or resending them when required. So you need to configure how to process outbound messages and types of delivery methods:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration task in the Suppliers or Customers functional areas.
2. In the General Setup tab’s Outbound Message Processing section, specify values for:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global Sender ID</td>
<td>Identifies the sender of all outbound messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Sender ID Type</td>
<td>The type of identifier of the sender in a message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum attachment size</td>
<td>Determines the maximum size of embedded attachments that can be included in a message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Note:** You can set up only invoice and purchase orders to send attachments. Collaboration Messaging Framework takes into account only the size of the attachments, not the size of the message.

When Collaboration Messaging Framework does not send attachments because they exceed the maximum size, the buyer associated with the purchase order is notified that all attachments were not sent.

3. In the Delivery Method Types section, specify a value for **Maximum Message Size MB** for your **Delivery Method Type**.

Here, the maximum value specified refers to the size of the message plus the size of the attachment. Collaboration Messaging Framework does not process messages that exceed the maximum size for a delivery method. It logs the status as Error/Failed.
4. Click **Save and Close**.
If you need to stop storing the source and transformed outbound and inbound documents according to your business requirements, disable the options that you do not need in the Message Storage section in the General Setup tab.

Note that if you disable the Store outbound source document check box, you cannot reprocess existing messages.

Set Up a Business Process

You can enable Oracle Fusion Collaboration Messaging Framework for these business processes:

- Procure to Pay
- Supply Chain Operations
- Order to Cash
- Brazil Electronic Invoicing

The collaboration business processes are enabled by default and have collaboration documents associated with them. For the collaboration documents, you can configure additional details. For example, you can enable embedding attachments in an XML message for a purchase order outbound message.

a. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration task in the Suppliers or Customers functional area, and then to the Business Process Setup tab.

b. Select a collaboration business process and an associated collaboration document and, in the Configure Collaboration Documents section, click Configure Additional Details.

Note: If you disable a business process then the application does not send or receive outbound and inbound messages

Process Inbound Collaboration Messages

Validating Inbound Collaboration Messaging: Procedure

After you set up an application partner, such as a supplier site, you can send a test inbound message to verify if the setup is appropriate for messaging. Use the Validate Inbound Collaboration Messaging Setup task on the Collaboration Messaging Overview page to validate an inbound message.

All messages that go through the validation process queue up and appear on the Collaboration Messaging History page. There you can examine the details of each processed message to check if it was transformed and processed as intended.

1. On the Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the Validate Inbound Collaboration Messaging Setup task.
2. Select the service provider and the partner ID from whom you expect to receive the collaboration message.
3. Click Next.
4. On the Validate Inbound Collaboration Messaging Setup page, enter the required details.
For Processing Service, if your external message standard is OAGIS, select any processing service from the drop-down list per your requirement. If the standard is not OAGIS, select CollaborationMessageV2.Process or CollaborationMessageV2.ProcessAsync per your requirement.

5. Click Next.
6. Click Create Message Payload. The message payload is generated in XML format and appears in the text box.
7. Update the generated payload or replace it with the XML payload that you want to test.
8. Examine the elements of the message payload. The following table contains an example of the mapping between the elements and actual data for OAGIS messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XML Element</th>
<th>Corresponding Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Sender&gt;</td>
<td>The ID of the partner who sent the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Intermediary&gt;</td>
<td>Contains the ID of the service provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;Receiver&gt;</td>
<td>Contains the ID of the recipient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;BODID&gt;</td>
<td>An ID that the sender assigns to the message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. The Collaboration Message page appears. Click Refresh, if the required.
11. Click Done.

To view the processed message again, search for it on the Manage Collaboration Messaging History page. In the search results, click the generated message ID to view its details.

### Process Outbound Collaboration Messages

#### Validating Outbound Collaboration Messaging: Procedure

After you set up an application partner, such as a supplier site, you can send a test outbound message to verify if the setup is appropriate for messaging. Use the Validate Outbound Collaboration Messaging Setup task on the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page to validate an outbound collaboration message.

All messages that go through the validation process queue up and appear on the Collaboration Messaging History page. You can examine the details of each processed message to check if it was transformed and processed as intended.

1. On the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the Validate Outbound Collaboration Messaging Setup task.
3. Select the supplier. The related details, such as the supplier site and service provider appear.
4. Click Create Message Payload. The message payload is generated in XML format and appears in the text box.
5. Update the generated payload or replace it with the XML payload that you want to test.
6. Click Process. The generated message ID appears on the page.
7. Click View Collaboration Message to view the processed message.
8. Click Done.
To view the processed message again, search for it on the Manage Collaboration Messaging History page. In the search results, click the message ID to view its details.

Tip: If the message processing fails, you can view the reason for it on the Manage Failed Collaboration Messages page.

Reprocessing Undelivered Messages: Procedure

Any inbound or outbound message that isn’t processed because of some error, remains undelivered. You can view the undelivered messages on the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page. For each undelivered message, you can diagnose the errors, take corrective action, and resubmit a request to deliver it again.

To reprocess an undelivered messages:

1. On the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the Manage Undelivered Collaboration Messages task.
2. On the Manage Undelivered Collaboration Messages page, search for the undelivered message. The message is listed in a table.
3. Click the message row to view the reason for delivery failure. The details appear in Processing History.

Tip: Click the message ID link to view the setup details of the message.

4. Take the required corrective action and return to the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page.
5. Select the specific message and click Reprocess. If there are no further problems, the message is submitted for delivery.

Manage Collaboration Messages

Configuring Messages for a Predefined Service Provider: Procedure

To configure a message for a predefined service provider, do the following:

1. Open the Manage Collaboration Messaging Service Providers page and search for a predefined service provider.
2. Click Actions > Edit.
3. On the Edit Collaboration Messaging Service Provider page, do one of the following:
   - On the Outbound Collaboration Messages tab, click Duplicate Outbound Collaboration Message.
4. Change the status of the pre-seeded message to Inactive so that you can make active or loopback the duplicate message.
5. Change the duplicate message's status to Active or Loopback, based on business rule.
6. Click Save and Close.
7. Click the Manage B2B Trading Partners task.
8. Create or edit a trading partner.
9. Set up the document corresponding to the pre-seeded message that you duplicated.
10. Click the Manage Customer Collaboration Configuration or the Manage Supplier Collaboration Configuration task.

11. Search for the relevant customer or supplier and associate the service provider with your trading partner.

12. Associate the document with your customer or supplier.

13. Validate the configuration.

After validating the configuration, go to Manage Collaboration Messaging History > Configuration > Transformation and confirm that User Defined is selected in Collaboration Definition in the Transformation section.

### Configure Messages for a User-Defined Service Provider: Procedure

To configure a message for a predefined service provider, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area, click Manage Collaboration Messaging Service Providers in the Tasks panel.

2. Open the Manage Collaboration Messaging Service Providers page and click Actions > Create.

3. On the Create Collaboration Messaging Service Provider dialog box, enter the required details, and click Save and Close.

4. Search for the service provider that you created, select it, and click Actions > Edit.

5. On the Edit Collaboration Messaging Service Provider page, in the delivery Methods tab, click Actions > Add Row.

6. Enter the name of the delivery method, select the delivery method type, and enter the other required details.

7. If the Delivery Method Type is Web Service, do the following:
   - Select the Security Policy.

8. On the Outbound Collaboration Messages tab, click Actions > Add Row, and add the outbound collaboration message details.


10. Click Save and Close.

11. Click the Manage B2B Trading Partners task.

12. Create or edit a trading partner.

13. Set up the document corresponding to the message that you created.

14. Click the Manage Customer Collaboration Configuration or the Manage Supplier Collaboration Configuration task.

15. Search for the relevant customer or supplier and associate the service provider with your trading partner.

16. Associate the document with your customer or supplier.

17. Validate the configuration.

After validating the configuration, go to Manage Collaboration Messaging History > Configuration > Transformation and confirm that User Defined is selected in Collaboration Definition in the Transformation section.

### Creating a Trading Partner: Procedure

To create a trading partner with a service provider, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging framework work area, click Manage B2B Trading Partners in the Tasks panel.

3. In the Create Trading Partner dialog box, enter the required details, and click **Save and Close**.

After you create the trading partner with a service provider, you see documents associated with the service provider on the Edit Trading Partner page that you can access from the Tasks panel.

### Creating a Trading Partner without a Service Provider: Procedure

To create a trading partner without a service provider, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging framework work area, click Manage B2B Trading Partners in the Tasks panel.
3. In the Create Trading Partner dialog box, enter Service Provider as None along with the other required details.
4. Click Save and Close.

5. On the Edit Trading Partner page, in the Delivery Methods tab, Outbound Collaboration Messages tab, and Inbound Collaboration Messages tab, click Actions > Add Row and fill the required details for the service provider.

Use the following tips for filling the information on each tab.

- **Delivery Methods**
  - Provide the endpoint URL and the associated authentication credentials to initiate the collaboration messaging web service. It must be in the format `http://<server>:<port>/<context>`, where `<context>` contains the name of the web service as defined in the application.

- **Outbound Collaboration Messages**
  - Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row.
  - Select a delivery method.
  - Set the outbound collaboration document status to Active or Loopback.

- **Inbound Collaboration Messages**
  - Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row.
  - Specify an XPath that identifies the application partner in the inbound collaboration document.
  - Set the inbound collaboration document status to Active or Loopback.

5. Click **Save and Close**.

### Creating a Trading Partner: Procedure

A service provider is an intermediary for exchanging messages between Oracle Applications Cloud and trading partner. Whenever you set up a trading partner, you can link it with a service provider.

**Note:** You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.

1. In the Procurement work area, go to Suppliers.
2. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier.
3. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
5. In Associated Collaboration Documents, click Manage Trading Partners.
6. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click **Create > Create Trading Partner with Service Provider**.
7. On the Create Trading Partner dialog box, fill the required details.
8. Click Actions > Add Row and fill the details to associate collaboration documents with the trading partner. You may add multiple documents.

 près Note: To enable exchange of messages, you must set the collaboration document status to Active.

9. Click Save and Close.
10. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click OK.
11. On the Edit Site page, click Save and Close.
12. On the Edit Supplier page, click Save and Close.

To update the details for a trading partner, use the edit option on the Manage Trading Partners dialog box.

Creating a Trading Partner without a Service Provider: Procedure

You can exchange messages with a trading partner directly, without using a service provider.

 près Note: You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.

1. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier.
2. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
4. In Associated Collaboration Documents, click Manage Trading Partners.
5. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click Create > Create Trading Partner without Service Provider.
6. On the Create Trading Partner dialog box, fill the required details.

 près Note: By default, the Service Provider is set to None because this setup doesn't involve a service provider.

7. Click Actions > Add Row and fill the delivery method, outbound collaboration message, and inbound collaboration message details on the respective tabs.

 près Note: The following table contains some tips on filling the important information on each tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tab</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delivery Methods</td>
<td>◦ Provide the endpoint URL and the associated authentication credentials to initiate the collaboration messaging web service. It must be in the format http://&lt;server&gt;:&lt;port&gt;/&lt;context&gt;, where &lt;context&gt; contains the name of the web service as defined in the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outbound Collaboration Messages</td>
<td>◦ Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row. ◦ Select a delivery method. ◦ Set the outbound collaboration document status to Active or Loopback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inbound Collaboration Messages</td>
<td>◦ Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row. ◦ Specify an XPath that identifies the application partner in the inbound collaboration document. ◦ Set the inbound collaboration document status to Active or Loopback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing Associated Collaboration Documents: Procedure

To set up collaboration messaging, you must associate the supplier site with a trading partner, and select the documents you want to exchange with that partner. The documents that you set up here are associated with trading partners or the service providers of those trading partners.

✍ Note: You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.

1. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier link.
2. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
4. In Associated Collaboration Documents, click Edit.
5. On the Edit Associated Collaboration Documents dialog box, click Add Row and fill the details required to set up the document. The read-only particulars appear based on the selected details.
6. Click Save and repeat the steps to add more documents or click Save and Close to return to the previous page.
7. On the Edit Site page, click Save and Close.
8. On the Edit Supplier page, click Save and Close.

Sending an Outbound Message to Multiple Trading Partners in Procurement: Procedure

To send an outbound message to multiple trading partners, that is, suppliers or customers, you must associate the trading partners with the outbound message and ensure that only one partner is the primary recipient of the message. Do the following:

1. Click Procurement > Suppliers.
2. On the Overview page, click Manage Suppliers from the task list.
3. On the Manage Suppliers tab, search for and open the details of the supplier that you want to associate with an outbound message to be sent to multiple partners.
4. On the Edit Supplier page, click the Sites tab and then click the link for the site.
6. In the Associated Collaboration Documents section, click Edit.
7. From the Edit Associated Collaboration Documents dialog box, set up multiple associated service providers and associate the relevant document with the service providers.
8. Select the service provider that you want as the primary recipient and then in the Collaboration Documents for Service Provider section, select the Primary Recipient check box.
9. Click Save and Close.
10. Validate the configuration.
Overview of Importing Collaboration Messaging Setup Data

You can migrate your Oracle B2B setup data and update Oracle Fusion application setup in these scenarios:

- Data of Oracle Supplier Network Trading Partners
- Data of non-Oracle Supplier Network Trading Partners (a single trading partner, set up with many B2B Supplier site codes)
- Data of non-Oracle Supplier Network Trading Partners (many trading partners, each with a single B2B Supplier site code)

To migrate the data you have to first export your B2B configuration data using the B2B export feature, which creates a compressed file that contains all the B2B set up data, and upload the file into the `scm$/B2BConfigurationImport$/import$` account.

Then you need to use two scheduled processes to create a collaboration messaging setup data import file and then import the collaboration messaging setup data. And then you need to review the imported data using the Manage Collaboration Messaging Setup Data Import task.

Create a Collaboration Messaging Setup Data File

After you export your B2B set up data from B2B and upload it to the `scm$/B2BConfigurationImport$/import$` account, run the Create Collaboration Messaging Setup Data File process.

1. Go to **Tools > Scheduled Processes**.
2. Click **Actions > Schedule New Process**.
3. Search for **Create Collaboration Messaging Setup Data File** and click **OK**.
4. Specify these parameters:
   - **B2B Configuration ZIP file**: The file that you uploaded to the `scm$/B2BConfigurationImport$/import$` account
   - **Import Type**: Oracle Supplier Network B2B Setup or Other B2B Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Import Type</th>
<th>Import Data Extracted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Oracle Supplier Network B2B Setup  | - Trading partners that have the Oracle Supplier Network Test or Production URL set up with an HTTP Delivery Channel.  
                                      |   - Trading partners with a single ID, with ID Type of B2B Supplier Site Code.        |
|                                    |   - Trading Partner Agreements for trading partners that use one of the pre-seeded (V1 implementation) OAG 7.2.1 document definitions. |
| Other B2B Setup                    | - Trading partners that have an HTTP Delivery Channel with a non-Oracle Supplier Network Test or Production URL.  
                                      |   - Trading partner with a single ID or multiple IDs with ID Type of B2B Supplier Site Code. |
|                                    |   - Trading Partner Agreements for trading partners that use one of the pre-seeded (V1 implementation) OAG 7.2.1 document definitions. |

5. Click **Submit**.

The scheduled process extracts the setup data and creates two CSV files into the `scm$/B2BConfigurationImport$/import$` account (which is the same account to which you uploaded the B2B export file). The CmkConfigImportPartners.csv file contains all the trading partner information that is extracted from the B2B export file and the CmkConfigImportDocs.csv file contains all the documents that are set up for that trading partner.
The records of the CmkConfigImportPartners.csv file are described in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required During Import</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ImportPartnerId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportBatchId</td>
<td>A unique batch ID.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportPartnerLineNum</td>
<td>A unique line number.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportType</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerId</td>
<td>Trading Partner ID. For B2B export, this is the trading partner name set up in B2B.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IdType</td>
<td>ID Type. For B2B export, the ID Type is Name.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OsnPartnerId</td>
<td>This is the RECEIVER_ID set up in the HTTP channel for Oracle Supplier Network trading partners. If a value is found, it is used as the Trading Partner ID (this value overrides the Trading Partner ID value). Required only for Oracle Supplier Network migration, that is, if partnerkeytype is B2B Supplier Site Code.</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OsnPartnerIdType</td>
<td>This is the RECEIVER_ID_TYPE set up in the HTTP channel for Oracle Supplier Network trading partners. If a value is found, it is used as the Trading Partner ID Type (this value overrides the Trading Partner ID Type value).</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceProviderName</td>
<td>The service provider name to be associated with the trading partner. This service provider must exist in Collaboration Messaging Framework.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>processedStatus</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtPartnerStatus</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtPartnerFailReason</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKeyType</td>
<td>For importing trading partners to be associated to supplier sites, and for the B2B Migration import, this is to be set as B2B Supplier Site Code. For manual import this may be set to Supplier Site and, in that case, PartnerKey1, PartnerKey2, and PartnerKey3 are all required and need to be populated as outlined.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Title</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Required During Import</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKey1</td>
<td>For importing trading partners to be associated to supplier sites, and for the B2B migration import, this is to be set as the value of the B2B Supplier Site Code as specified in the B2B trading partner setup and the Oracle Fusion supplier site record. For manual import if the PartnerKeyType is set to Supplier Site, this is required and will be set to Supplier Name.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKey2</td>
<td>For manual import if the PartnerKeyType is set to Supplier Site, this is required and will be set to Supplier Site Name.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKey3</td>
<td>For manual import if the PartnerKeyType is set to Supplier Site, this is required and will be set to Procurement Business Unit Name.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partnerKey4</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKey5</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerKey6</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppPartnerStatus</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppPartnerFailReason</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApplPartnerId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExternalPartnerId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importDateTime</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreatedBy</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreationDate</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdatedBy</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdateDate</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdateLogin</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObjectVersionNumber</td>
<td>Not used during import</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The records of the CmkConfigImportDocs.csv file are described in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required During Import</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ImportDocId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportPartnerId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportBatchId</td>
<td>Key reference to an import batch.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportPartnerLineNum</td>
<td>Key reference to a trading partner.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerId</td>
<td>Partner ID.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IdType</td>
<td>Partner ID Type</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessagingStandard</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageType</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MessageSubtype</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DocumentName</td>
<td>A collaboration document name. There must be a message definition set up for the service provider for this collaboration document. The possible list of values depend on what is set up for the service provider.</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction</td>
<td>Direction of the message (In/Out).</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChannelEndpoint</td>
<td>This is not used by the import. It is populated by the Create Collaboration Messaging Setup Data scheduled process if there is an HTTP channel associated with the trading partner agreement. This is informational only, intended for the user to verify if the documents and trading partners extracted by the scheduled process from the B2B ZIP file are accurate and valid for import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BusinessProcess</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportDelMethodId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeliveryMethodName</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtPartnerDocStatus</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Define Collaboration Messaging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required During Import</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ExtPtnrDocFailReason</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppPartnerDocStatus</td>
<td>Possible values are Enabled, Disabled, Hold. This is used to set the status of the application partner document, that is, whether the B2B document for the supplier site is enabled for processing after import. If no value is specified, or the value is not one of the listed values, it is set to Enabled.</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppPtnrDocFailReason</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApplPartnerDocId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExternalPtnrDocId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PartnerMessageId</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreatedBy</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreationDate</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdatedBy</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdateDate</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LastUpdateLogin</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObjectVersionNumber</td>
<td>Not used during import.</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Import Collaboration Messaging Setup Data

After you create the import file you need to import it using the Import Collaboration Messaging Setup Data scheduled process.

1. Go to **Tools > Scheduled Processes**.
2. Click **Actions > Schedule New Process**.
3. Search for **Import Collaboration Messaging Setup Data** and click **OK**.
4. Select **Import Type** as **Import to CMK**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Import Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import to CMK</td>
<td>Uploads the setup data to the staging table, validates the import, and creates the valid records in Collaboration Messaging Framework setup tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Only</td>
<td>Uploads the setup data to the staging table and validates the import. No further processing is done.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Select the **CSV Configuration ZIP File** that you created using the Create Collaboration Messaging Setup Data File scheduled process.

6. For Oracle Supplier Network data import, enter **User Name** and **Password** for the Oracle Supplier Network buyer account.

7. Click **Submit**.

   The records created by the process have a Batch ID stamped on them.

### Manage Collaboration Messaging Setup Data Import

After you import your collaboration messaging setup data, you can review the imported data.

1. Go to the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area and click **Manage Collaboration Messaging Setup Data Import** from the Tasks pane.

2. Search for the imported data. You can:
   
   - Select a row in the Trading Partners section and click **Actions > Export to Excel**.
   - Select a row in the Documents section and click **View > About This Record**.

   The search results include:
   
   - Reasons for any import failure
   - Status of the import of trading partners: Success, Invalid, or Skipped
   - Reason for any failure of associating the supplier ID with the trading partner
   - Status of association of the supplier with the trading partner: Success, Error, or Invalid

3. Click **Done**.

### Undo Import

After reviewing the data, you might sometimes need to undo the import of the setup data that you created using the Create Collaboration Messaging Setup Data scheduled process, for example, if duplicate application partner records are created, you can delete them. Here’s what you can do:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area, click **Manage Collaboration Messaging Setup Data Import** in the Tasks panel.

2. In the Trading Partners section, click **Actions > Undo Import**.

3. Select the Batch ID and click **OK**.

If multiple batches are imported, you can delete the setup data created by each batch. Delete the latest batch that was imported, followed by the previous one, and so on.

### Configuring Email Properties: Procedure

The OAGIS XML B2B message can be delivered as an email attachment to your trading partners. Using this task, you can configure the subject and body of the email.

To configure email properties for an outbound message:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Overview work area, click **Manage Collaboration Message Definitions** in the Tasks panel.

2. Search for the outbound messages, select the collaboration message row, and click **Actions > Configure Email Properties**.
3. On the Configure Email Properties dialog box, fill the required details, such as the default text for the subject line, the XPath that identifies the email ID of the recipient, and the header and column titles in the email body.

   ✍ Note: The email body content can be configured to have only header, only column table, or both header and column table.

The following figure is a sample email format.

![Sample Email Format](image)

4. Click Save and Close.

Send Documents as Email Attachments to Trading Partners: Explained

You can send documents as email attachments to trading partners, with or without service providers. To do so, you have to do the following high-level tasks:

1. Configure email properties of collaboration messages for trading partners.
2. Configure email properties for the trading partner.
3. Associate collaboration documents with the trading partner.
4. Validate the outbound message configuration.

Configure Email Properties of Collaboration Messages for Trading Partners: Procedure

To configure messaging email properties for trading partners, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging work area, click the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions task from the Tasks panel.
2. On the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, search for the outbound message definition with the following criteria:
   - Direction: Outbound
   - Name: AnyType_PO_CollabMsg
3. In the Collaboration Message Definitions section, select the message definition and click Actions > Configure Email Properties.
4. In the Configure Email Properties window, enter My email as the Default Subject Line, leave Recipient Email ID XPath blank, and then click **Save and Close**.

5. On the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions, page. Click **Done**.

### Configure Email Properties for the Trading Partner: Procedure

To configure email properties for a trading partner, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging work area, click the **Manage B2B Trading Partners** task from the Tasks panel.
2. On the Manage B2B Trading Partners page, click **Actions > Create**.
3. In the Create Trading Partner window, specify the following details:
   - Service Provider: None
   - Trading Partner ID: For example, AnyTypeEmailNone_TPA
   - Partner ID Type: Generic
4. Click **Save and Close**.
5. On the Edit Trading Partner page, click **Actions > Add Row** in the Delivery Methods tab.
6. Specify the following values:
   - Name: For example, AnyTypeEmailNone_TPA
   - Delivery Method Type: Email
   - Recipient Email ID: A valid email address, for example, my.email@oracle.com.
   - Enable Attach XML Message.
7. Open the Outbound Collaboration Messages tab, click Actions > Add Row, and then specify the following values:
   - Name
   - Collaboration Message: For example, AnyTypeEmailNone_TPA
   - Delivery Method Name: For example, AnyTypeEmailNone_TPA1
8. Click **Save and Close**.

### Associate Collaboration Documents with the Trading Partner: Procedure

To associate collaboration documents with a trading partner, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging work area, click one of the following, as required, from the Tasks pane:
   - Manage Customer Collaboration Configuration
   - Manage Supplier Collaboration Configuration
   - Manage Customer Account Collaboration Configuration
2. Search for a customer, supplier, or site to configure using the Business Process or Customer Name, or Supplier or Site name fields.
3. Select the relevant customer or supplier, click Edit Collaboration Configuration, and specify the following values:
   - Service Provider: None
   - Trading Partner ID = For example, AnyTypeEmailNone_TPA
4. On the same page, in the Collaboration Documents for Service Provider section, add the document PROCESS_PO_OUT and set Association Status to Enabled.
5. Click **Save and Close**.
Configure Rules for Message Transformation

You can specify a default value or identify a field as required for any outbound or inbound message setup for a trading partner.

Configure Rules for a Trading Partner Without a Service Provider

For a direct trading partner:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging work area, click Manage B2B Trading Partners in the Tasks panel.
2. On the Manage B2B Trading Partners page, select Service Provider as None and click Search.
3. Select a row in the search results and click Actions > Edit.
5. Select the message you want to edit and click Actions > Manage Message Processing Rules.
6. In the Manage Message Processing Rules dialog box, do the following.
   a. Specify:
      - Name: The name of the message rule.
      - NodeXPath: The XPath of the message payload.
   b. Either select the Required check box or enter a value in the Default Value field.

   If you select the Required check box, Oracle Applications Cloud ensures that the XPath location is present in the message payload.
   
   If you enter a value in the Default Value field, Oracle Applications Cloud uses the value while processing if the message does not contain any value for the specified XPath location.

Configure Rules for a Service Provider

You can configure processing rules for transforming business-to-business (B2B) documents accurately.

For a service provider:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging work area, click Manage B2B Trading Partners in the Tasks panel.
4. In the Manage Message Processing Rules dialog box, do the following.
   a. Specify:
      - Name: The name of the message rule.
      - NodeXPath: The XPath of the message payload.
   b. Either select the Required check box or enter a value in the Default Value field.

   If you select the Required check box, Oracle Applications Cloud ensures that the XPath location is present in the message payload.

   If you enter a value in the Default Value field, Oracle Applications Cloud uses the value while processing if the message does not contain any value for the specified XPath location.
Enable or Disable Processing of Attached Documents: Procedure

You can globally enable or disable processing of documents attached to emails that can be sent to or received by trading partners. Do the following:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management
   - Functional Area: Suppliers
   - Task: Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration


3. Select the relevant collaboration business process, for example, Procure to Pay or Order to Cash.

4. On the same page, in the Configure Collaboration Documents section, select the relevant document and click Configure Additional Details.

   The document must be enabled for additional configuration.

5. In the window that appears, enable the Embed Attachments in the XML Message check box and click OK.

6. The application returns to the Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration page. Click Save and Close.

7. Create or edit a trading partner and associate the trading partner with a supplier site.

8. Validate the outbound collaboration messaging setup.

Set up a User-Defined External Message Type

To set up a user-defined external message type, you have to do the following:

1. Add a message standard lookup code.
2. Create an external message definition.
3. Create a collaboration message definition for your trading partner.
4. Create a generic XSLT file for message transformation.

Add a Message Standard Lookup Code

To add a message standard lookup code, do the following:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Standard Lookups task.
2. Click the search result link.
3. On the Manage Standard Lookups page, search for the Lookup Type ORA_CMK_EXT_MESSAGE_STANDARD.
4. In the ORA_CMK_EXT_MESSAGE_STANDARD: Lookup Codes section, click Actions > New and add your message standard.
5. Click Save and Close.

Create an External Message Definition

To create an external message type with any existing standard message or with a new standard message, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area, click Manage External Message Definitions from the Tasks pane.
2. On the Manage External Message Definitions page, click **Actions > Add Row** and enter the required details.
   - Select the messaging standard that you added.
   - If you leave the Identification XPath field blank, Collaboration Messaging Framework matches the message by Message Type definition, which corresponds to the incoming message payload root element.
   - If you leave the Message Identifier XPath field blank, Collaboration Messaging Framework does not cross-reference any existing message with the incoming payload.

3. Click **Save and Close**.

Create a Collaboration Message Definition for Your Trading Partner

To create a collaboration message definition for your trading partner, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area, click Manage Collaboration Message Definitions.
3. In the Create Collaboration Message Definition dialog box, enter the required details.
   - The External Message Definition can be an existing message type or the message definition that you created.
   - The Collaboration Document field determines whether the external message will be inbound or outbound. If it is an inbound message:
     - Application Partner Code XPath is an XPath expression that identifies the Oracle Fusion application partner code in a trading partner XML payload.
     - Object Key XPath is an XPath expression that identifies the object key in an XML payload. For example, Invoice number is the object key in the invoice XML file and the original message ID in Confirm Bod Messages.
     - Reference Object Key XPath is an XPath expression that identifies the reference object key in an XML payload. For example, the purchase order number is the reference object key in the invoice XML file or in the shipment XML file.
   - Select an XSLT file for your collaboration message transformation.
   - Select a payload template to validate inbound or outbound documents.
4. Click **Save and Close**.

Create a Generic XSLT File for Message Transformation

To create a generic transformation XSLT file for message transformation, do the following:

1. In the Collaboration Messaging Framework work area, click **Manage Collaboration Message Definitions** from the Tasks panel.
2. On the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, search for the message definition you created for your trading partner.
3. Select the message definition and click **Actions > Export Transformation Package**.
4. Add the CollaborationMessagingCommonComponents.xsd and ProcessOutboundCollaborationMessage.xsd files into the xsd/target folder and delete the other XSDS files.
6. Open the root transformation package folder and then the xsl folder.
   - Rename the XSL file appropriately.
   - Rename the XSD file, per the file you copied into the xsd/target folder, in the target schema location.
7. Delete all the content under `<xsl:template match="/"/>` and all templates that were created outside `<xsl:template match="/"/>`. 
9. Open the XSL style sheet in a development environment tool such as Oracle JDeveloper and map the required elements.

Related Topics
- Overview of Lookups

Collaboration Messaging in Procurement

Supplier B2B Communication and Collaboration Messaging

As a procurement administrator, you can configure Oracle Procurement Cloud to use Oracle Fusion Collaboration Messaging Framework for electronic business to business (B2B) communication with your suppliers. Enable a supplier site for electronic communication using Collaboration Messaging Framework as the communication channel. Use collaboration messaging to provide inbound and outbound communication of procure-to-pay transactions with the supplier.

Collaboration Messaging Framework

With Collaboration Messaging Framework you can set up B2B communication to work within the procure-to-pay business flow. Perform the configuration using the Collaboration Messaging work area. The application provides ready-to-use integration with Oracle Supplier Network.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Suppliers task in the Suppliers functional area to perform the configuration required for a supplier within the supplier site setup.

- Set up properties for the supplier site.
- Select the messages to be exchanged with the supplier, and the service provider (if any) used for each message.
- Enable messaging.

Collaboration Messaging Framework supports two document protocols:

- OAGIS 10.1
- OAGIS 7.2.1

You can enable messages for inbound and outbound communication. You can also communicate attachments and the purchase order PDF with your outbound purchase order and change order messages.

The following transaction messages, or document types, are supported:

Outbound Messages -
- Process Purchase Order
- Change Purchase Order
- Cancel Purchase Order

Inbound Messages -
- Process Shipment Notification
- Process Invoice
• Receipt Advice
• Receipt Notification

For details about configuring electronic communications with Collaboration Messaging Framework, see the white paper available on My Oracle Support: Oracle Procurement Cloud Purchasing Electronic Communication (Document ID 2174649.1).

Related Topics
• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Extend the Outbound Purchase Order Message for Electronic Communication

You can extend the information contained in purchase order outbound messages used in collaboration messaging. For example, you may require additional information to be sent in the messages to suppliers.

You can extend the following messages:

• OAGIS 7.2.1 purchase order outbound message
• OAGIS 7.2.1 change order outbound message
• OAGIS 10.1 purchase order outbound message
• OAGIS 10.1 change order outbound message
• OAGIS 10.1 cancel purchase order outbound message

To extend the information in the purchase order outbound message perform these main tasks:

1. Enable the Extensible Data Model Used for Electronic Messaging profile option.
2. Extend the Purchase Order Data Model by adding new attributes.
3. Update the predefined XSLT map.
4. Duplicate the predefined message and associate the updated XSLT map with the new message.
5. Update the trading partner setup to use the new message.

Enable the Profile Option
If the profile option is already enabled, proceed to the section of this topic titled Extend the Data Model. To enable the profile option:

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user having the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
3. On the Manage Administrator Profile Values page, search for the Extensible Data Model Used for Electronic Messaging (PO_ELECTRONIC_COMM_DATA_MODEL) profile option.
4. Set the profile option value to Yes.

Extend the Data Model
Use Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher (Oracle BI Publisher) to extend the Purchase Order Data Model by adding more attributes to the model.

1. Sign in to Oracle BI Publisher as a user with the BI Administrator Role.
2. From the Catalog, navigate to the delivered Purchase Order Data Model.
   a. In the Folders pane, expand Shared Folders > Procurement > Purchasing > Data Models.
3. Make a copy of the delivered data model and place it in the Custom folder.
4. Modify the copy of the data model to include the new attributes.
5. When you complete the changes to the modified copy of the data model, ensure the Purchase Order PDF Report points to the modified copy for the changes to take effect.

For more information about working with data models and editing data sets, refer to these guides available on the Oracle Help Center:

- Oracle Procurement Cloud Creating and Administering Reports and Analytics
- Oracle Fusion Middleware Data Modeling Guide for Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher

**Update the XSLT Map**

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to extend the predefined XSLT map.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user with the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, select Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions task.
4. Download the predefined XSLT map.
   a. From the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, select the message you want to update.
   b. From the Actions menu, click Export Transformation Package to download a .zip file of the XSLT and XSD files to your local computer.
5. Use a text or XSLT editor to update the downloaded copy of the XSLT map to include the new fields you added to the Purchase Order Data Model.
6. Save the updated copy of the XSLT file locally.

**Duplicate the Predefined Message to Create a New One**

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to duplicate the predefined message to create a new one. Associate the updated XSLT map with the new message. You cannot update the existing, predefined message with your updated map.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user with the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, select Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions task.
4. From the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, select the message you want to update.
5. From the Actions menu, click Duplicate Collaboration Messages.
6. The Duplicate Collaboration Message dialog opens and displays a new, automatically generated, unique Message Name. You can enter a new, unique name of your choice instead.
7. Click Update to navigate to and specify the updated XSLT map file to associate with the new message.
8. Click Save and Close to upload the XSLT and create the new message. The new message is created with the same external message type as the predefined message.

**Update the Trading Partner Setup**

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to associate the new message with any service providers or trading partners.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user with the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, select Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage B2B Trading Partners task.
4. On the Manage B2B Trading Partners page, search for, select, and act to edit the service provider or trading partner.
5. From the **Edit Trading Partner** page, click the **Outbound Collaboration Messages** tab.
6. Add a row for the new message and enter the **Collaboration Message Definition** to include the new message.
7. Remove the row for the predefined message.
8. Click **Save**.

**Retrieve Supplier Site Details from a PO for a Procure to Pay Inbound Message: Procedure**

You can retrieve supplier site details from a purchase order (PO) for a procure to pay inbound message.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management
   - Task: Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration
2. On the Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration page, click the **Business Process Setup** tab.
3. In the Configure Collaboration Documents area, select PROCESS_INVOICE_IN or PROCESS_SHIPMENT_IN and then click **Configuration Additional Details**.
4. In the Process Inbound Configuration window that appears, enable the Retrieving Supplier Site from PO check box and then click **OK**.
5. Click **Save and Close**.

**Configuring Purchase Order PDF Delivery in Purchase Order Collaboration Messages**

You can configure the application to deliver the purchase order PDF in purchase order collaboration messages. Embed the purchase order PDF within OAGIS 10.1 purchase order outbound messages to suppliers and trading partners set up on Oracle Collaboration Messaging Framework Cloud.

To set up the application to include the purchase order PDF in purchase order collaboration messages, perform these main tasks:

1. Enable the **Include Attachments in Electronic Communication** profile option.
2. Download and modify the predefined XSLT map.
3. Duplicate the predefined message and associate the updated XSLT map with the new message.
4. Update the trading partner setup to use the new message.

**Enable the Profile Option**

If the profile option is already enabled, proceed to the section of this topic titled **Modify the XSLT Map**. To enable the profile option follow these steps:

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user having the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
3. On the **Manage Administrator Profile Values** page, search for the **Include Attachments In Electronic Communication** profile option (PO_ELECTRONIC_COMM_ATTACHMENT).
4. Set the profile option value to **Yes**.
   - **Yes**: The purchase order PDF and other attachments are sent with the purchase order outbound message.
• No: The purchase order PDF and other attachments are not sent with the purchase order outbound message.

Modify the XSLT Map

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to modify the predefined XSLT map.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user having the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, click Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions task.
4. Download the predefined XSLT map.
   a. From the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, select the message you want to modify.
   b. From the Actions menu, click Export Transformation Package to download a .zip file of the XSLT and XSD files to your local computer.
5. Use a text or XSLT editor to modify the downloaded copy of the XSLT map.
   a. Change the line `<xsl:variable name="includePOPdf" select="false()"/>` to read `<xsl:variable name="includePOPdf" select="true()"/>`.
6. Save the modified copy of the XSLT file locally.

Duplicate the Predefined Message to Create a New One

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to duplicate the predefined message to create a new one. Associate the updated XSLT map with the new message. You cannot update the existing, predefined message with your updated map.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user having the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, select Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions task.
4. From the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, select the message you want to update.
5. From the Actions menu, click Duplicate Collaboration Messages.
6. The Duplicate Collaboration Message dialog opens and displays a new, automatically generated, unique Message Name. You can enter a new, unique name of your choice instead.
7. Click Update to navigate to and specify the updated XSLT map file to associate with the new message.
8. Click Save and Close to upload the XSLT and create the new message. The new message is created with the same external message type as the predefined message.

Update the Trading Partner Setup

Use the Collaboration Messaging work area in Oracle Applications Cloud to associate the new message with any service providers or trading partners.

1. Sign in to Oracle Applications Cloud as a user having the Procurement Application Administrator role.
2. From the Navigator, select Collaboration Messaging.
3. From the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, open the Manage B2B Trading Partners task.
4. On the Manage B2B Trading Partners page, search for, select, and act to edit the service provider or trading partner.
5. From the Edit Trading Partner page, click the Outbound Collaboration Messages tab.
6. Add a row for the new message and enter the Collaboration Message Definition to include the new message.
7. Remove the row for the predefined message.
8. Click Save.
Manage Message Transformation Rules

Managing Message Transformation Rules: Points to Consider

For external partner messages, you can add user-defined transformation rules such as default values and cardinality to specify whether it’s required or optional. For example, to ensure that messages have a response Email address, you can specify it as required or add a default value.

You can setup transformation rules for each message exchanged with a trading partner. These rules are always setup at the trading partner level, and not for the service provider.

☞ Note: Collaboration Messaging Framework processes the rules after transformation for outbound messages and before transformation for inbound messages.

To setup a rule for a trading partner, on the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, click the Tasks panel tab, and select the Manage B2B Trading Partners task. Select the trading partner to edit and click Actions - Manage Message Processing Rules.

The transformation rules specified on the messages are processed as follows:

- If the message field is configured to use a default value:
  - Uses the value if it exists, otherwise uses the default value.
  - Triggers an error if the default value is missing.
- If the message field is configured as required:
  - Uses the value if it exists, otherwise triggers an error that a required value is missing.
  - Triggers an error if the required value node is missing.
The following flow illustrates how the transformation rules are processed:
Export or Import Collaboration Messaging Configuration Setup Data: Explained

To export or import collaboration messaging configuration setup data, you have to do the following. Use your test environment to export the configuration data and use your production environment for the import.

1. Create an implementation project and add the task name.
2. Create a configuration package that will use the implementation project for exporting and importing collaboration messaging configuration setup data.

Create an Implementation Project

To create an implementation project, do the following:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management
   - Task: Manage Implementation Projects
2. Click **Actions > Create**, enter the required details, and click **Save and Open Project**
3. On the Implementation Project page, click **Actions > Select and Add**.
4. In the Select and Add: Task Lists and Tasks dialog box, enter Manage Collaboration Messaging Configuration in the Name field and click **Search**.
5. Select the task from the results, click **Apply**, and then click **Done**.
6. On the Implementation Project page, click **Done**.

Create a Configuration Package

Do the following:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management
   - Task: Manage Configuration Packages
2. On the Manage Configuration Packages page, click **Actions > Create**.
3. On the Create Configuration Package page, from the Name menu, select the implementation project that you created.
4. Click **Yes** on the warning message.
5. Click **Submit**.
6. Click **Yes** on the warning message.
   - The configuration package is added to the Manage Configuration Packages page in the Export and Import Processes section.

Export the Configuration Package

To export the configuration package, do the following:

1. On the Manage Configuration Packages page, click the **Download** icon and then click **Download Configuration Package**.
2. Extract the content.
3. Open the folder named businessObjectData.
4. Decompress the ORA_CMKCOLLAB_MSG_BUS_PROCESS.zip file, and open the ORA_CMKCOLLAB_MSG_BUS_PROCESS folder. It contains three XML files:
   - CollaborationMessagingParameters.xml: Collaboration Messaging Framework uses this file to configure collaboration messaging storage.

Import the Configuration Package

After you complete exporting the configuration package, do the following in your production environment:

1. Create an Implementation project and configuration package.
2. Upload the downloaded configuration data (compressed file) using the following XML files. The compressed file to be uploaded should have the exact package structure as the downloaded compressed file.
   - CollaborationMessagingBusinessProcess.xml
   - CollaborationMessagingParameters.xml
   - CollaborationMessagingParamsData.xml

FAQs for Define Collaboration Messaging

What are the different undelivered collaboration message error statuses?

The following table describes the main differences among the various error statuses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error</th>
<th>B2B Error</th>
<th>Hold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicates that the messages haven’t been delivered because of a validation, configuration, or processing error in Collaboration Messaging Framework.</td>
<td>Indicates that the B2B component of the SOA suite couldn’t deliver the message because of a configuration or processing error.</td>
<td>Indicates that messages haven’t been processed because an administrator has put them on hold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What are the different undelivered collaboration message error types?

The following table describes the main differences among the message error types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document Retrieval Error</th>
<th>Inbound Processing Error</th>
<th>Outbound Processing Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework fails to retrieve the document</td>
<td>Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework can't process inbound messages because</td>
<td>Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework can't process outbound messages because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associated with a collaboration event.</td>
<td>of setup or business rule validation issues.</td>
<td>of setup or business rule validation issues.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What happens if I don't enable a document type for storage?

If you don't enable a document type for storage, the message processing and delivery details of such documents aren't stored in the log table.

Why did my message fail?

To know the cause of a message failure, search for the failed message on the Manage Failed Collaboration Messages page. When you click the message row, the cause of the failure appears in Processing History.

Why can't I see the import batch list to select from?

To see the list of setup data, you must first run the scheduled process to import the data into the staging tables.

When would you resubmit a collaboration message?

After Collaboration Messaging Framework delivers an outbound message and sets the status to Success or Sent, the processing may fail further in the business flow. In such cases, you can resubmit the message from Collaboration Messaging Framework.

How can I use a user-defined XSLT file?

You can attach a user-defined XSLT file only to user-defined messages. To create a user-defined message, duplicate a predefined message.
Why can't I perform any action if I select messages with different statuses?

The actions you can perform for the selected messages depend on the message status. For example, if you select messages with Success and Error status, you can't perform any action.

Based on the message status, you can:

- Resubmit messages with Success or Sent status
- Reprocess messages with Failed status
- Cancel messages with Error or B2B Error status
- Delete messages with Success, Sent, Failed, or Canceled status

Where are logs maintained for failed synchronous inbound trading partner messages?

You can view the logs on the Message History page.

How can I download a transformation package for a user-defined message?

Go to the Manage Collaboration Message Definitions page, search for a user-defined message, and then click Export Transformation Package.
Other Common Setup and Maintenance Tasks

Home Page Setup

Configure Home Page Navigation

Use the Home Configuration page to configure the icons for infolet pages or other configurable pages in the page control on the home page.

Before You Start

Following are the prerequisites:

1. From the Navigator menu, select Configuration > Structure.
2. Click the Home Configuration tab.
3. Activate a sandbox. If you're not in an active sandbox, click Edit in the Structure work area. You're prompted to activate a sandbox.

Tip: If you're already in an active sandbox, then the Edit button doesn't appear in the Structure work area.

If prompted, select a context layer to determine the scope of users that your changes affect. After you complete your changes, you can preview and test the changes, and then publish the sandbox to make your changes available to users.

Define Settings

You can rename icons for infolet pages and other configurable pages in the page control, change their visibility settings, and reorder them. On the Home Configuration page, you can:

- Click the infolet name or any other configurable page name to rename it.
- Click the Visible field for an infolet or any other configurable page to change its visibility setting. You can show or hide the icon for these pages in the page control on the home page. You can select one of the following options:
  - Yes: The icon appears in the page control.
  - No: The icon doesn’t appear in the page control.
  - EL expression: The evaluation of the EL expression decides whether the icon appears in the page control.
- Click the Default View field for an available configurable page to specify whether the page should be set as the default home view. You can select one of the following options:
  - Yes: The page is set as the default home view.
  - No: The page isn’t set as the default home view.
  - EL expression: The evaluation of the EL expression decides whether the page is set as the default home view.
**Note:** Only specific configurable pages, such as Quick Actions, are available for you to set as the default home view. When you click the Default View field for such pages, you get the options to select Yes, No, or **EL Expression**. These options aren't available for other pages that you can't set as the default home view.

- Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** icons to adjust the relative positions of the icons for the infolet pages or other configurable pages in the page control on the home page.

You can use profile options to define settings for the filmstrip, which you can find above all pages:

- To enable users to use the filmstrip, set the **Springboard Strip Enabled** profile option (**FND_USE_FILMSTRIP**) to **Yes**.
- If the **FND_USE_FILMSTRIP** profile option is set to **Yes**, then you can display the filmstrip as expanded by default. To do so, set the **Springboard Strip Expanded** profile option (**FND_EXPAND_FILMSTRIP**) to **Yes**. A user can still collapse or expand the strip on any page, and when done, this profile option is set by default for subsequent sessions of that user.

**Related Topics**
- Examples of EL Expressions for Configuring Navigation
- Set Profile Option Values
- Create and Activate Sandboxes

**Define Home Page Appearance**

Use the Home Page Layout tab of the Appearance work area to define the display settings of the home page. To open the Appearance work area, from the Navigator menu, select **Configuration > Appearance**. The home page display options available on the Home Page Layout page may vary based on the default home layout setting that you have configured in the General section of the Themes page.

**Before You Start**

Activate a sandbox.

**Define Display Settings for Home Page with Panel or Banner Layout**

If you have selected Panel or Banner as the default home page layout on the Themes page, then follow these steps:

1. Select one of the following options to display on the home page panel or banner:
   - **Social**: Displays social networking content, such as the number of followers
   - **Announcements**: Displays employee announcements
   - **Cover image**: Displays the image for the main panel or banner, which you specify on the Themes page
   - **None**
2. Specify whether to display the photo in the main panel or banner of the home page from the social network profile or from HCM.
3. Click **Apply**.
Define Display Settings for Home Page with News Feed Layout

Use the Home Page Layout page to define the display settings for sections of the home page with the news feed layout. You can define these settings only if you have selected **News feed** as the default home page layout on the Themes page.

Follow these steps:

1. Click the section name to rename it.
2. Click the **Visible** field for a section to change its visibility setting. You can show or hide the section on the home page:
   - **Yes**: The section appears on the home page.
   - **No**: The section doesn't appear on the home page.
   - **EL expression**: The evaluation of the EL expression decides whether the section will appear on the home page.
3. Use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** icons to adjust the relative positions of the sections on the home page.
4. Click **Apply**.

**Related Topics**

- Manage Themes
- Overview of Configuring Themes and Home Page Settings
- Create and Activate Sandboxes
- Create Themes

Create and Enable an Announcement

You can create, edit, or delete company announcements. After you create an announcement, you can enable it to display on your home page.

Create an Announcement

1. From the Navigator, select **Tools > Announcements**.
2. Click **Create**.
3. Specify the details, such as subject, start date, and end date.
4. Select a category. If you select User-Defined, a text box appears, where you can provide additional details.
5. Select any of these options:
   - **Predefined**: Select an image from the list.
   - **File**: Browse and select a file from your local computer.
   - **URL**: Enter a full URL for the image

   **Note**: Make sure your image size is 776x437 px or larger to avoid image distortion.
6. Add the content in the text box. You can format your text using the formatting options.
7. Click **Save and Close**.
Your changes on the Announcements page apply immediately to all users, even if you saved your changes while a sandbox is active and not yet published.

**Edit or Delete an Announcement**

1. From the Navigator, select **Tools > Announcements**.
2. Select the announcement that you want to edit or delete.
3. Edit the announcement details or click **Delete**.

**Enable an Announcement on the Home Page**

After you create or edit an announcement, you can determine whether to display the announcement on your home page.

1. From the Navigator, select **Configuration > Appearance**.
2. Click the **Home Page Display** tab.
3. Based on your home page layout, use any of these options:
   - **Panel** or **Banner**: Select Announcements from the home panel options, and then click **Apply**.
   - **News feed**: Select **Yes** for News and Announcements, and then click **Apply**.

Your default home page layout also determines how the home page displays the announcement.

- **Panel** or **Banner**: The home page displays only the announcement content, not the subject or image.
- **News feed**: The home page displays the entire announcement along with the subject and image in the News and Announcements section.

**Related Topics**

- Overview of Configuring Themes and Home Page Settings
- Why can’t I see announcements on the Home page

**FAQs for Home Page Setup**

How can I rename an icon for an infolet page in the page control on the home page?

You can rename an icon for an infolet page using the Home Configuration page of the Structure work area. To open this page, select **Configuration > Structure** from the Navigator menu, and then click the **Home Configuration** tab.
How do I define whether the user image, name, or initials display in the global header?

Set the User Image Display Enabled (FND_USER_PHOTO_ENABLED) profile option. If you select:

- Yes, then the user image is displayed in the global header only if the user uploaded a photo. Otherwise, the user's initials are displayed. By default, this profile option is set to Yes.
- No, then only the user name is displayed in the global header.

Related Topics
- Change Your Photo

Contextual Addresses

Set Up the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses

A contextual address is marked with an orange triangle, the More icon. When users hover over the triangle, an icon appears that they can click to display the address on a map. The Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option determines the mapping service which you must use to display the map. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following:

- Functional Area: Application Extensions or a product-specific functional area
- Task: Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Profile Option Default
By default, the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option has no value.

⚠️ Caution: Until you enter a valid value for this profile option, users continue to get an error when they try to open a map for any contextual address.

Profile Option Value
After you find and select the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option, enter a mapping service URL in the Profile Value column, for example:

- http://bing.com/maps/?v=2&encType=1&where1=

You can include parameters in the URL. For example, to avoid a locator box in Google Maps, add &iwloc=& to the URL. So, you would enter http://maps.google.com/maps?iwloc=&output=embed&q= as the profile value.

Related Topics
- Set Profile Option Values
- Why can't I see the map for contextual addresses
Privacy Statement

Set Privacy Statement URL

A privacy statement is legal content that tells you how a company collects and manages user data. You can add a link to your company’s statement in the About This Application dialog box.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the **Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values** task in the Application Extensions functional area.
2. Search for the Privacy Statement URL (PRIVACY_PAGE) profile option.
3. In the Profile Values section, update the **Profile Value** field with the full URL of the web page that has the privacy content. By default, this profile value is **N**.

⚠️ **Caution:** Don’t enter any other value, such as **Y**, because that causes a broken link.

4. Click **Save and Close**.

And that’s it! Your users can now view the **Privacy Statement** link by clicking their user image or name in the global header and selecting **About This Application**.

Guidelines for Setting Up General Troubleshooting

To help the help desk troubleshoot issues that users encounter in the application, users can record the issue while they reproduce it. Some advanced users might also need detailed information in the About This Page dialog box. Setting up for troubleshooting involves making sure that users have the right access, and determining how many users can record at the same time.

**Access**

Check with your security administrator that the appropriate users are assigned roles that inherit the following privileges:

- **Record and View Issue (FND_RECORD_AND_VIEW_ISSUE_PRIV):** To create a basic recording
- **Set Issue Recording Advanced Options (FND_SET_ISSUE_RECORDING_ADVANCED_OPTIONS_PRIV):** To set advanced options before starting the recording
- **View Version Information (FND_VIEW_VERSION_INFORMATION_PRIV):** To see the versions that technical components of the application are on

**Number of Users**

Recordings are stored on servers, and by default, up to five users can record at the same time on each server. For performance reasons, you can set the Maximum Number of Users Allowed to Record Issues (ORA_FND_RECORD_ISSUE_MAX_USERS) profile option to a number lower than five.

**Related Topics**

- Record Issues to Troubleshoot
- How can I view the version information of an application
• Set Profile Option Values
17 Define Common Procurement Configuration

Define Basic Catalogs

Create Catalogs

How Catalogs Work Together
A catalog is a collection of categories that you use to classify items. You can organize the categories into a hierarchy that represents a taxonomy. You create new categories only in the context of a catalog. You can add existing categories to one or more catalogs, either from another catalog or as shared categories from a source catalog. You can control the assignment of items and categories in the catalog by controlling the catalog content. For example, you can set the value of the Catalog Content field on the Edit Catalog page to Items at all levels, which allows items to be assigned to any level within the category hierarchy, not only to the leaf levels.
This figure shows the relationships of the catalog components to each other.

**Catalog**
A catalog is a collection of categories that are organized to define a classification of items. The top most level of a catalog is the catalog root. All categories for the first level in the category hierarchy are associated with the catalog root through the catalog category association component.

**Category**
A category is a component of a catalog that represents a set of items. You can associate a category to a catalog through the catalog category association. Both the shared category and the native category are associated thorough the catalog category association.
Catalog Category Association

Catalog category association represents the relationship between a catalog and a category, or a parent category and a child category. Each catalog category association represents one relationship between the catalog and a category or one relationship between a parent category and a child category.

Item Category Assignment

Item category assignment represents the assignment of the item to a category in a catalog. Each item category assignment represents the relationship between a category and an item.

Item

An item represents objects such as a product, service or template. An item is assigned through the item category assignment component.

Attachment or Image

Information is associated to the catalog or category through the attachment framework. Multiple attachments are supported but you can only associate a single attachment or attachment type image with a catalog or category for viewing in the UI.

Catalog Formatting

The format of a catalog is defined at the time the catalog is created and controls the behavior of the catalog at runtime.

When you format a catalog, the layout controls three main areas and includes the following tasks:

- Catalog configuration
- Date enablement
- Category sharing

Some fields are required, and others are optional.

Catalog Configuration

You can configure the catalog, and this affects how the content behaves. The catalog configuration contains a set of attributes that define the catalog configuration. These attributes interact to define the runtime behavior of the catalog.

The configuration functions are:

- Catalog code: A unique identifier that is used.
- Controlled at: Controls how items are assigned to categories and has two values. The first value is master level, which enables the automatic assignment of items to all child organizations associated with the master organization, if the current context is a master organization. The second value is organization level, which assigns the item only to the organization in the current context.
- Default category: A newly created item is automatically assigned to the default category if specific operational attribute values are entered for the new item. The automatic assignment is controlled by the functional area. Each functional area has specific rules about which operational attribute values are used to trigger the automatic assignment process. For example, an item will be assigned to the catalog assigned to the functional area called Purchasing if the Purchased specification is turned on or if the Internal Ordered Item specification is enabled.
- Assign items to leaf level categories only: Allows items to be added only to the bottom level categories in the hierarchy.
- Catalog content: Controls what content can be added to the catalog and where the content can be added.
• Allow multiple item category assignment: When this option is selected, you can assign an item to one or more categories in the catalog. The default is deselected, which means that each item can be assigned to only one category in the catalog.

• Public Catalog: Select to mark this catalog as public. All users with access to view catalogs will have access to this catalog.

\textbf{Note:} The catalog behavior for functional area catalogs is defined through the combination of fields within the pages and the seeded functional area rules.

Catalog Date Enablement

The date enablement function controls when the catalog is in an active state or inactive state by using the start date and end date attributes.

Category Sharing

The category sharing function enables sharing categories from a designated source catalog.

The sharing function has these attributes:

• Share by Reference: Catalog elements that are shared by reference are read-only in the target catalog. Multiple source catalogs can be used in this type of sharing.

• Copy: Content from other catalogs can be added to the current catalog by creating a copy of the content. The copied content can be edited within the current catalog.
  
  o Include child categories: Indicate whether to copy child categories when copying categories.
  
  o Copy item category assignments: Indicate whether to copy items assigned to the category into the catalog.

\textit{Related Topics}

• Default Catalog Assignment

Catalog Details

You can view and edit a catalog on the Edit Catalog page when you have the appropriate permissions.

The following parts of the Edit Catalog page provide important capabilities for managing and editing catalogs:

• Catalog header region

• Catalog details tab

• Category hierarchy tab

Catalog Header Region

The header region for the Edit Catalog page contains the catalog name and description, the selection of the default category and the start and end date for the catalog.

You can change the default category for a catalog so that the category is used for the item creation process, based on the values of attributes for the item. The choice of default category also enables other Oracle Fusion applications to assign items to a category.

You can modify the start and end dates for a category as you update a catalog in order to control when the category is used.

You can revise or reclassify the category to reflect shifting relationships within the category hierarchy.
Catalog Details Tab
The Details tab contains:

- The configuration attributes for the catalog, which control the runtime behavior for the catalog.
- The sharing attributes for the catalog, which control the source catalog that will be used for sharing from and what content can be shared.
- The additional information for the catalog, which contains the descriptive flexfields that support the catalog metadata.

Category Hierarchy Tab
The Category Hierarchy tab contains the category hierarchy region, in which the category hierarchy can be created and maintained. In addition, items can be assigned, the usage of the category in other catalogs can be viewed, and the attributes for the category and catalog category association can be edited.

Related Topics
- Category Sharing
- Category Descriptive Flexfields

Automatic Assignment Catalogs
The automatic assignment catalog feature is a simple way to create a non-hierarchical catalog because you do not have to add categories manually to the catalog. This feature adds the categories at the root level, so it works with both flat and hierarchical catalogs.

All categories that have the same category structure value as the catalog are automatically assigned and associated to the catalog when you create a catalog category association for each category.

Automatic Assignments
The automatic assignment feature is enabled during catalog creation when you select the Enable automatic assignment of category check box. The categories displayed for auto assignment catalogs are refreshed only at start up and after you save.

Note that if you create a category in another catalog with the same structure value as the automatic assignment catalog, the category is also added to your catalog. The categories displayed for auto assignment catalogs are refreshed only at start up and after you save.

When you open a new catalog, any categories that have the same category structure value as the catalog structure value for the catalog are automatically assigned to the catalog.

For example, Purchasing may maintain a master catalog containing all categories that represent commodities. Each commodity team can create categories for their commodity in their own catalog.

The master catalog for purchasing is named Purchasing and is configured during creation to support the automatic assignment of categories. Because you enabled automatic assignments for the Purchasing catalog, any categories created by the commodity teams are added to the catalog automatically. The purchasing managers can view the collection of all commodities represented as categories in the Purchasing catalog.
Manage Catalogs

What Can You Edit on the Edit Catalog Page

The Edit Catalog page is a shared page that has two modes - view and update. The view mode displays the selected catalog in a read-only file. The update mode displays the selected catalog in an editable file. You must have edit catalog privileges to access the catalog in the update mode. You can edit only an active or future-dated catalog.

You can edit the following fields in the catalog:

- Catalog Name
- Description
- Start Date
- End Date
- Default Category
- Allow multiple item category assignment
- Addition Information
- Category Hierarchy
- Category Details
- Items assigned to category

Default Category

You can edit this field to select another category as the default category for item creation. You cannot remove the default category if the catalog is assigned to a functional area that requires a default category to be specified.

Allow Multiple Item Category Assignment

This check box is editable only until you assign an item to a category in the catalog.

Addition Information

You can edit the values of the descriptive flexfields attributes.

After you make changes, clicking the Save button saves the changes to the database but will does not close the Edit Catalog page. Clicking the Save and Close button saves the changes to the database and closes the Edit Catalog page.

Relationship Between Categories and Catalogs

Catalogs are used to organize and classify collections of items by associating categories to the catalog. The categories are organized to form a taxonomy and items are assigned to the categories. When a category is associated with the catalog a catalog category association is created which specifies the relationship of the association. The catalog category association may also represent the relationship between two categories, for example a relationship between a parent category and a child category.

Catalog Category Association

The date enabled attribute value is important regarding catalog category association. The catalog category association is date enabled providing the control of when the catalog category association is active in the catalog and when the catalog category association is inactive. The catalog category association has two attributes to support enabling dates; the start date and the end date. The start date is value is the first day that the catalog category association is available or active for use and the end date is the last day the catalog category association can be used, after this date the catalog category association is inactive. The date enabled attribute values are also used to control the visibility of content and the behavior of the category in...
the catalog. If a category association is inactive or end dated, having the value of the end date attribute past the current date, then the items cannot be assigned to the category.

A catalog category association will be set to inactive state when the category referenced by the catalog category association is set to an inactive state automatically, but the display will not be refreshed automatically.

Date Enablement for Catalogs and Categories
The catalog, categories, and catalog category association use date enablement to determine if the object specified is active or inactive based on the start date and end date. The following are date enablement definitions:

- **Active**: An object is active when the current date is later than or equal to the value of the start date, but earlier than or equal to value of the end date.
- **Inactive**: An object is inactive when the current date is later than the value of the end date.
- **Future dated**: An object is future dated when the current date is earlier than the value of the start date.

You set the date enablement attributes are used to determine when a catalog, category, or catalog category association is used or visible.

- On the Manage Catalog page, a table filter determines which catalogs appear. The default value for the choice list is **Active**, indicating that only active catalogs will be displayed. You can select the value **All** to view both active and inactive catalogs.
- On the Edit Catalog page, on the category hierarchy tab, two table filters determine what categories and catalog category associations appear. The default values for the two choice lists are **Active**, indicating that only active categories and active catalog category associations will be displayed. You can select the value **All** to view both active and inactive categories and catalog categories associations.
- Other applications also use the date enablement attributes to filter information retrieved through application programming interfaces or services for catalogs.
The following figure provides the date enablement attributes for these objects. The catalog, category, or the catalog category association has an internal state that is active or inactive.

The following aspects are important regarding date enablement for catalogs and categories:

- Start date
- End date
- Catalog and category objects
- Catalog category association
- Catalog and category rules
Start Date
The start date is defined as the first date that the object can be active. The start date can be future dated by setting the value to a date later than the current date. The start date value defaults to the system date if no date is entered during catalog or category creation.

End Date
The end date is defined as the last date that the object can be active. The object is end dated one second after the date specified by the value of End Date, that is the next day at 12:00:01 a.m. You cannot set the end date in the past. Also, you can change the end date from a condition when the object is ended to a new end date greater than or equal to the system date, causing the object to go from inactive to active. The end date value is optional during catalog or category creation.

Catalog and Category Objects
The start and end dates have been added for the catalog and catalog category association. The inactive date for categories has been renamed as the end date and the start date has been added.

Catalog Category Association
The catalog category association is used to specify the parent and child relationships between catalogs and categories and for category to category relationships. The catalog category association date enablement is independent of the category data enablement, except for the case where the category is end dated; the association is ended automatically as well. The catalog category association dates represents the state of the category for the catalog in which the category is associated.

Catalog and Category Rules
When a catalog is inactive the following rules apply:

- All operations for the catalog are disabled; the catalog can be edited.
- The catalog cannot be used in other processes.
- The catalog can be viewed only if you set filters on the Manage Catalog page to a value of All, enabling you to view active and inactive catalogs.

When a category is inactive the following rules apply:

- All operations for the category are disabled; the category is not able to be edited.
- The category cannot be added to other catalogs.
- The category can be viewed only if you set the filters on the Edit Catalog page to a value of All, enabling you to view active and inactive catalogs.
- The application sets the catalog category association for the inactive category to inactive.

When a catalog category association is inactive the following rules apply:

- The category may be inactive or active; if the category is active it can be edited.
- The catalog category associations and related category can be viewed only if you set the association filter on the Edit Catalog page to a value of All, enabling you to view active and inactive catalogs.

When a catalog is future dated the following rules apply:

- All the operations of the catalog are enabled and the catalog is can be edited.
- The catalog can be used in other processes, if allowed.
- The catalog can be viewed only if the you set the filters on the Manage Catalog page to a value of All.
How Various Catalog Hierarchies Fit Together

You use catalogs to organize and classify collections of items by associating categories with the catalog. You organize the categories to form a taxonomy and assign items to the categories. When you associate a category with the catalog, a catalog category association is created which specifies the relationship of the association. The catalog category association may also represent the relationship between two categories, for example, a relationship between a parent category and a child category.

The following figure shows the relationships of the category hierarchy components.
Components
The components of a category hierarchy are:

- Catalog root: The topmost node in category hierarchy that represents the object called catalog.
- Category: The catalog component that is used to represent the classification structure.
- Catalog category association: The line in the diagram represents the relationship between a catalog and category or between a parent category and child category.
- Item category assignment: The dotted line in the diagram represents the relationship between a category and an item.
- Reference category: The category, C5 in this diagram, is shared as a reference category from a source catalog.
- Leaf level category: The lowest or bottom-level category in a category hierarchy. You can assign items to all levels in a category hierarchy if you configure the catalog to support this.
- Browsing category: The category, C2 in this diagram, is a browsing category. Browsing categories are categories that you add to the category hierarchy for the purpose of classification and do not have items assigned to them.

The category hierarchy does not have a limit on how many levels can be represented. The category hierarchy can have multiple hierarchies within a single category hierarchy.

Category Edits
Categories can be edited only from within the Edit Catalog page, on the Category Hierarchy tab. To edit a category, expand, or search in, the tree of categories associated with the catalog, then select the row for the category in the category hierarchy table and edit the category’s attributes in the category’s Details panel. A category can only be edited if the category is active and its associated catalog is active or future dated. If a category is directly shared, the same category can be edited in multiple catalogs, except for the item assignments that are local to the catalog you are editing.

Category information can be edited in both the Details and Items subtabs.

Details and Items Tabs
The following fields are editable in the category:

- Category name
- Description
- Attachments
- Category start date
- Category end date
- Items assigned to category

After changes are made, the Save button saves your changes without closing the Edit Catalog page. The Save and Close button saves your changes and closes the Edit Catalog page.

Catalog Category Association
The catalog category association assigns the category to the catalog or parent category. This association allows you to manage when a category is assigned to a catalog, by setting the start and end dates for the association. The catalog category association can be edited only within the Edit Catalog page, in the category hierarchy tab. The catalog category association start date and end date attributes can be edited in the details region. The association cannot be deleted, only end dated.
Category Catalog Associations
You select the category in the category hierarchy table for the catalog category association that you are editing, the category details are displayed in the right-hand panel. The association start date and association end date are the only editable fields.

After you make changes, clicking the **Save** button saves the changes to the database but does not close the Edit Catalog page. Clicking the **Save and Close** button saves the changes to the database and closes the Edit Catalog page.

Category Details
You can see category details when you select the row with the category in the category hierarchy table of the Edit Catalog page. The category details are displayed in the right hand pane. You can edit the details of native categories. The category detail region contains information about the category that is associated to the catalog. It also contains the association start and end dates.

You can view and edit a catalog on the category details tab when you have rights to manage catalogs.

The following parts of the Category Hierarchy tab provide are important capabilities for managing and editing category details:

- Details subtab
- Items subtab
- Attachments subtab

Details Subtab
The details tab contains information about the category that has been associated to the catalog. This information appears in all catalogs, since a category can be associated to one or more catalogs. The details tab contains the category configuration, category date enablement, association date enablement, and the additional attributes for the category.

The details tab contains attributes that define a category. Unstructured information is added through attachments. Images are added to a category and are displayed in the category details tab.

Items Subtab
The Items subtab contains item assignments are local to the catalog that the category is associated with. You can add and delete item assignments.

Attachments Subtab
The Attachments tab contains the list of attachments that the category is associated with.

Create Categories
You can create categories in the context of a catalog, on the Category hierarchy tab on the Edit Catalog page. When you select the **Create** icon in the category hierarchy table, the Create Category dialog appears.

Create Category Dialog
After you enter a name and tab out of the field, the category code will be automatically populated. You can update this value if required. Enter a meaningful description of the category. Optionally, you can add an image and an attachment to this category.

Date enablement determines if an object is active or inactive based on the start date and end date. When categories are created, the default start date value is the current date. You can move the category start date beyond the current date to a future date within the category. The end date value is optional.

Select the **Restrict category to item assignment only** check box to add only items to the category.
After you complete the required fields for the catalog, clicking **OK** creates the category in the database, adds the category to the point of selection in the category hierarchy, and closes the dialog.

**Category Moves**

You use the move category function in the category tree table region of the Edit Catalog page. This is a table row action. The dialog is launched when you select an active or future dated category within the catalog and select this action.

**Identifying the New Parent**

The dialog provides the current category parent and allows you to pick a new category parent. Only the legal category parents are displayed in the choice list.

The category list within the **New Parent** choice list is filtered by based on a set of rules:

- The new parent category must be an active or future dated category; the end date value of the category must be later than the current system date.
- The value of the category content for the new parent category must allow the selected category to be added; the legal values are items and categories and categories only.
- A selected category associated with the catalog at a level below the categories at the root categories can be moved to the root of the catalog.
- The new parent category catalog category association must be active; the end date value of the catalog category association must be later than the current system date.

**Hierarchies in Import Category**

A category hierarchy can be created and maintained through a spreadsheet interface, reducing the amount of time required to create and maintain catalogs. Existing catalog content can be exported and the content used in other catalogs for catalog category hierarchies.

The following aspects are important regarding category hierarchy import used in catalogs:

- Spreadsheet interface
- Export category hierarchy

**Spreadsheet Interface**

You can manage the catalog category hierarchy by downloading and modifying the content in the spreadsheet, and then uploading the content back into the catalog.

Within the spreadsheet, you can define new categories, edit the catalog hierarchy, and add categories to the catalog, either as direct or reference categories. You can define the category hierarchy for a catalog in the spreadsheet, by creating or adding categories, then upload it when you create a catalog. If you have an existing hierarchy, you can cut and paste the flattened hierarchy into the spreadsheet.

**Export Category Hierarchy**

You export a category hierarchy when you need to share its structure, for example, with a product partner. Your partner can import the catalog file using a spreadsheet.

You can export the category hierarchy from your catalogs so that it can be used by your partners. In the Product Information Management work area, partners can directly import the category hierarchy into their catalogs.

**Related Topics**

- Set Up Desktop Integration for Excel
Catalog and Category Attachments

Catalogs and categories support attachments and use a common component for managing attachment content. You can add attachments on both the Create Catalog and Edit Catalog pages.

The attachment component displays a plus sign icon indicating that no attachments are available for the object. The Attachment dialog appears when you click the plus sign icon. You define the attachment by selecting the attachment type, file name or Uniform Resource Locator (URL), title, description, and by indicating whether the attachment can be shared with other objects. Once you define the attachments and click the OK button, that attachment title appears in the attachment component region of the page along with an X icon that you can click to delete the attachment.

The attachment file types are:

- File
- Repository File or Folder
- Text
- URL

File

You must provide a title for the file and create a description for the attachment. You select a file to upload from your desktop.

Repository File or Folder

You click the Browse button to attach a repository file or folder from the document repository to a catalog. The attachment repository contains existing attachments and is organized as a set of folders. The Browse button launches the Attachment Repository dialog to enable you to select an attachment. You must provide a title for the repository file or folder and create a description for the attachment.

Text

Enter the text string in the field that you want to appear as an attachment. You must provide a title for the text and create a description for the text attachment.

URL

Enter the URL address to a web page that you want to attach to the catalog. You must provide a title for the URL attachment and create a description for it.

The Share check box alerts users that you added an attachment and the date that you performed the task.

Items to Categories Assignment

You can assign items to categories on the Edit Catalog page, category hierarchy tab, on the category detail item tab. You can assign items only to active categories. In addition, you can configure catalogs to control item assignment to categories within the catalog by selecting the Allow multiple item category assignment check box on the Create Catalog page, which allows items to be added to all levels of the category hierarchy.

To begin, select the item class and enter search information in either the Item ID, Item description or Keyword fields and click the Search button. You select items from a choice list and add them to the category.
Controlling Item Assignment
You also control item assignment by selecting the value of the Controlled at check box on the Edit Catalog page. If you select the Master Level value and the organization context is a master organization, then the assigned items are automatically assigned to all child organizations that are associated with the master organization. The added items will also be assigned to any child organizations that might be created under the master organization, even after the items were assigned to the master-controlled catalog.

FAQs for Manage Catalogs

How can I define category hierarchies?
Categories can be organized to represent classification taxonomies. The hierarchy organizations for categories have parent and child relationships that form a tree structure. The category hierarchy is created and maintained within the Edit Catalog page, category hierarchy tab. The category hierarchy is shown in true relationship to the way it is defined.

The category hierarchy can be created using two methods: the first is manually creating the hierarchy by adding referenced categories, duplicating categories or creating category for the catalog.

The second method for creating the hierarchy is by importing the category hierarchy through the spreadsheet interface. The category hierarchy can be exported from another catalog or other sources, edited and imported into a new catalog. The hierarchy can also be added manually to the spreadsheet.

On the toolbar of the Category Hierarchy tab, you can create new categories, using the Create Category button. You can add categories, including shared categories, using the Add Category button. If a catalog is has a category hierarchy, you can edit it using the Move Category button, which opens a dialog box.. You can also modify the hierarchy using drag and drop. The catalog category association cannot be deleted, but can be end dated to make the catalog category association inactive. The category hierarchy table provides a choice list filter that controls what catalog category associations and categories area displayed based on the date enablement.

How can I duplicate categories?
You can select and duplicate a category as a quick way to create a similar category configuration. Selecting the Duplicate icon action launches a Create Category dialog that has attribute fields populated based on the selected category attribute values. The category name is prefixed with Copy_ followed by the name of the selected category. Fill in the required field information in the key flexfield segment values. Once the category attributes are updated and the key flexfield segments values are entered, click the OK button to add the newly created category into the category hierarchy of the selected category you have configured.

How can I add categories?
Categories are catalog components that are associated to a catalog for purpose of classification of items. You can add existing categories to the point of selection, which can be a category in the hierarchy or the root of the catalog. If no category is selected, the default is the root of the catalog.

You can add categories by selecting Add Category and selecting Add Category. You can then search for existing categories based on the value of the catalog structure for the catalog. You can narrow the search for existing categories by using the Advance Search region in the dialog. You can add each selected category by selecting the Apply button and the add category region remains open. The OK button adds a category, if a category is selected, and then closes the dialog.

How can I add shared categories?
Adding a shared category is similar to adding an existing category except the category is selected from the catalog that has been designated as a source catalog. The sharing content attribute value determines what content is shared from the source catalog. A category within a source catalog that has been added to a native catalog is also known as a referenced category.
You use the list of values from the Add Categories menu. The Shared Category option will be disabled if the catalog has not been configured for category sharing.

How can I add images to a catalog or category?
You can attach an image from your desktop or from a configured repository to a catalog or a category, or both. The image is displayed in the catalog detail and the category detail sections of the catalog page. Only one image can be associated with a catalog or category. To attach an image, select the Attachments control and launch the Manage Attachment dialog. The title you provide for the image attachment will appear after the image that is displayed in the catalog. The description you provide is not displayed. Clicking the Browse button will allow you to select the file to be used as the image for the catalog or category. After the information is entered into the dialog, click the OK button to load the image. The image will not initially be displayed until the catalog is saved. The image can be replaced with another image by selecting the X to delete the existing image and adding a new image.

What is catalog mapping?
You can map categories of different catalogs to the reporting categories in other catalogs, by using the Manage Catalog Mapping task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. This feature allows one or more categories within a catalog to be mapped to category in a second catalog. For example, suppose that you want to roll up the costs associated with all items assigned to a set of categories in catalog. Catalog mapping allows you to select a category in a catalog, and map all the categories in the set to that category.

Related Topics
- Default Catalog Assignment

Define Supplier Configuration

Preparing Suppliers: Overview
The rapid implementation approach for setting up your Procurement configuration uses only the required and most frequently used tasks in the Define Procurement Configuration task list. You complete the application maintenance tasks in this chapter to begin using Oracle Cloud Service for Procurement.

Tasks
The following tasks are application maintenance tasks recommended when using the rapid implementation approach:

1. **Create a Supplier and Supplier Site**
2. **Import Suppliers**

* Required task

Create a Supplier and Supplier Site
Creating suppliers and supplier sites is an essential part of the procurement process. A supplier is modeled as a global entity. It is not created within a business unit or any other organizational context. A procurement business unit establishes a relationship with a supplier through the creation of a site which maintains internal controls for how to procure to pay transactions are executed with the supplier.

1. Within the application, navigate to the Suppliers > Create Supplier task.
2. On the Create Supplier dialog box, enter:
   - Name
   - Tax Country
   - Tax Registration Number

3. Click **Create**.
4. On the Edit Supplier page, Profile tab, enter:
   - Supplier Type

5. On the Edit Supplier page, Addresses tab, click the **Create** icon.
6. On the Create Address page, enter:
   - Address Name
   - Country

   **Note:** The Country field automatically defaults to the country set in your Work Location, as seen in the Personal Information page, Employment Details tab.
   - Address Line 1
   - City
   - County
   - State
   - Postal Code
   - Language
   - Address Purpose

   Select all applicable boxes. At a minimum select Purchasing.

7. Click **Save and Close**.

   Repeat address creation for all addresses you do business with for this supplier.

8. With your supplier selected, open the Sites tab and click the **Create** icon.
9. On the Create Site page, enter:
   - Address Name

   Select the address for this supplier site.

10. Click **Save**.
11. Click the Receiving subtab and enter:
    - Receipt Routing

12. Click the Site Assignments subtab and click **Autocreate Assignments**. This may only be appropriate for your first site. Other sites may require manual creation.

13. Click **Save and Close**.
14. With your supplier selected open the Contacts tab and click the **Create** icon.
15. On the Create Contact page, enter:
    - First Name
16. Click the Create icon.
17. In the Contact Addresses region, click the **Select and Add** icon:
   - Select the contact address.
   - Click **Apply**.
   - Click **OK**.
18. In the User Account region, click the Create user account check box. Accept all the applicable roles for this contact.
19. Click **Save and Close**.
20. Click **Save and Close**.

### Supplier Numbering

The Procurement Application Administrator configures supplier numbering. Suppliers created through the Create Supplier task flow, through the supplier registration process, or through supplier import, are automatically numbered. The starting supplier number is defined in the Specify Supplier Numbering Setup page. The predefined default number is 1. The supplier number increments with each additional supplier created.

The next supplier number can be updated at any time, not just during initial setup. This can be used, for example, to skip a range of supplier numbers. The application validates that the next supplier number specified is not already used.

*Related Topics*
- Create Suppliers with the Import Suppliers Process

### Supplier Outbound Synchronization Service

When using Supplier Model as the master supplier data repository it’s often necessary to send the supplier record updates to another application that depends on this supplier data.

The Supplier Outbound Synchronization Service lets you perform real-time synchronization of updates in the supplier master to other applications. This is achieved by generating a snapshot of the supplier profile record whenever it is created or updated. The snapshot output is an XML file that models the supplier data structure. The XML file is then delivered securely over HTTPS to a target destination for use by a downstream application.

For more information refer to the Supplier Outbound Synchronization Service white paper on My Oracle Support.

### Options to Configure Supplier Registration and Supplier Profile Change Request

To configure the supplier registration and self service supplier profile change request approval requirements, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to Offering: Procurement, Functional Area: Suppliers, and Task: Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Request.
Supplier Registration

You can configure the supplier registration process based on the expected supplier business relationship of a supplier.

You can define two separate registration flows based on the intended business relationship.

- Spend Authorized Supplier requests: Companies already identified for a procurement need are directed by the buying organization to the spend authorized registration flow. The flow captures more rigorous profile information needed before agreements, orders, and invoices can be transacted. For example, a spend authorized company registering can be required to provide bank account information.
- Prospective Supplier requests: Unknown companies are presented with the prospective supplier flow. They must only provide minimal profile information to participate in the sourcing and supplier qualification activities.

Possible profile components that you can include during a registration flow include:

- Organization Details: Basic supplier information including the supplier name.
- Contacts: Supplier contact information.
- Contact User Account: User accounts control privileges for Supplier Portal contacts.
- Addresses: Company addresses including associated contacts.
- Business Classifications: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
- Bank Accounts: Supplier banking information.
- Products and Services: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
- Qualifications Questionnaire: Additional questions for suppliers.

When you configure the two supplier registration flows you identify which profile attributes the supplier sees. Also you can specify whether the supplier must enter a value for the attribute.

- Enabled: The attribute is displayed to the supplier, but the supplier is not required to enter information.
- Required: The supplier must supply information for this attribute.

⚠️ Note: Your supplier registration configuration applies to suppliers from all registration sources.

Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources

A supplier registration can come from one of the following three sources:

- Internal Sourcing Invitation: Internal users can register and add a supplier as part of negotiation creation.
- Internal Supplier Request: Internal Supplier Request can be raised by registering from the Suppliers work area or by requesting a new supplier from the Self Service Procurement work area.
- External request from the supplier when self-registering using your organization’s external supplier registration website.

In the Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources region, you identify the default business relationship for each registration flow. The default business relationship determines what profile information is included as configured for the registration page.

Require Supplier Identifier

For Self Service Procurement, there is an option to enforce requesters to provide at least one of these attribute values: D-U-N-S Number, Taxpayer ID, or Tax Registration Number.
Post Approval Options

Once a new supplier's registration is approved, or its status promoted to spend authorized, the application automatically creates site assignments for any new sites defined for that supplier. However, you can retain control over how the supplier's site assignments are created by deselecting the check box Autocreate site assignments for spend authorized suppliers. If you deselect this check box, site assignments for a supplier are no longer created automatically. You must create them manually.

Registration URL Encryption

When a prospective supplier saves the registration for later completion, the application sends an email to the prospective supplier containing the registration URL. The URL contains an identifier which is encrypted using an encryption key. This prevents users from altering the URL to view registrations submitted by other companies.

If you suspected that registrations have been tampered with, you can regenerate the encryption key. The encryption key is regenerated for the registration URLs used for spend authorization, saved for later, and returned for resubmission. However, if you regenerate the encryption key, the registration request URL for spend authorization business relationship available through the setup page Configure Procurement Business Function changes and therefore old and saved URLs will not work. Also, registrations that were saved for later or returned for resubmission will no longer be accessible to potential suppliers.

Supplier Registration URLs

You use different supplier registration URLs for each business relationship type (prospective and spend authorized). Your suppliers can then use the appropriate URL to register with your company. Each URL contains a parameter for the business relationship type that navigates your supplier to a registration page.

You can set the registration URL for each business relationship type on the Configure Procurement Business Function page. You can set URLs for both prospective supplier registration and spend authorized registration.

Supplier Profile Change Request

Use the Supplier Profile Change Request tab to configure the approval requirement settings for changes to supplier profile attributes through a change request. The settings apply to supplier-initiated profile change requests and to change requests resulting from Supplier Qualification or Sourcing questionnaires.

The values you set here apply to supplier profile change requests from the following sources:

- Suppliers
- Supplier Qualification
- Supplier Negotiation

Supplier profiles can also be changed by internal users. Updates to bank account changes by internal users are submitted to an approval process. See Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained.

The Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Requests task does not configure supplier profile changes made by internal users.

You can specify approval requirements for prospective and spend authorized suppliers for the following entities:

- Organization Details: Basic supplier information including the supplier name and supplier profile level descriptive flexfields.
- Contacts: Supplier contact information including supplier contact descriptive flexfields.
- Contact User Account: User accounts that control account privileges for supplier contacts to use Supplier Portal.
- Addresses: Company addresses including associated contacts including supplier address descriptive flexfields.
- Business Classifications: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
• Bank Accounts: Supplier banking information.
• Payment Methods: The method used to pay the supplier.
• Products and Services: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
• Tax Identifiers: Tax organization, tax country, and taxpayer ID to identify the supplier for tax purposes.
• Site Details: Site information such as the address and site purpose (spend authorized suppliers only).

For each profile attribute, you can specify:

• No Approval Required: Change request is approved.
• Approval Required: Change request is routed for approval.

Configuration of the Site Details attribute for prospective suppliers is not available.

Related Topics
• Supplier Products and Services Categories
• Supplier Registration Process
• Supplier Registration Approval: Explained
• Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals

Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained

When this feature is enabled, approval is required for any changes made to bank accounts for a supplier, its addresses, and its sites. Changes include creating and modifying bank accounts, adding bank accounts and designating an account as the primary bank account.

Changes to other parts of a supplier profile other than bank account information do not require approval, and are applied to the supplier profile immediately.

Bank accounts created using import are not subject to review and approval and are saved to the profile immediately.

Enable and Configure Approve Internal Changes on Supplier Bank Accounts
To use this feature you must:

• Enable the Approve Internal Changes on Supplier Bank Accounts feature.
• Set up approval rules to specify the approvers responsible for reviewing and approving supplier bank account changes using the Manage Internal Supplier Profile Change Approvals setup task. Find it from the Setup page, Procurement offering, Approval Management functional area. Because no approval rules for this feature are provided by default, you must set up at least one approval rule. See the My Oracle Support document Setting up Document Approvals for details.

Bank Account Changes Pending Approval
While internal bank account changes are pending approval, internal users can continue to update other attributes in the supplier profile. However, additional bank account changes can be made only after pending changes are approved or rejected.
Supplier users cannot create any profile change requests while internal bank account changes are pending approval. However, bank account import will still work when internal bank account changes are pending approval.

Any bank account changes pending approval can be canceled before the final approval is obtained.

**Related Topics**
- Internal Supplier Profile Bank Account Change: Explained
- Options to Configure Supplier Registration and Supplier Profile Change Request
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals
- Set Up Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals

**Enable Supplier Matching**

To enable supplier matching to perform duplicate supplier checks during supplier creation and registration approval, use the following tasks.

1. Configure Party Relationships for Supplier Match
2. Manage Data Quality Server Configurations
3. Manage Enterprise Data Quality Matching Configurations

The supplier match feature leverages Oracle Enterprise Data Quality, which provides data quality services for Oracle Cloud applications.

Be aware that making changes to the Enterprise Data Quality setup tasks (tasks 2 and 3 in this topic) can impact other product flows using Enterprise Data Quality, for example, customer data management.

**Select Types of Parties to Match**

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Configure Party Relationships for Supplier Match task in the Suppliers functional area to enable supplier matching by selecting the types of parties to match. If the setup table is empty, the feature is disabled. This setup task also configures the scope for matching, as Enterprise Data Quality can perform matching on parties other than suppliers. The same party can be shared by a supplier, customer and partner record. If you only want to enforce duplicate prevention within supplier parties, then only the party relationship type of Supplier should be added.

**Manage Data Quality Server Configuration**

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Customer Data Management offering, use the Manage Server Configurations task in the Data Quality Foundation functional area. Use this Enterprise Data Quality setup task to enable the Enterprise Data Quality matching engine by checking the Batch Basic Match option. Server parameters can be ignored as these are configured by Oracle Cloud Operations.

Enterprise Data Quality is used for supplier matching in other Oracle products, so it is advised not to disable it. To disable supplier matching, use only the Configure Party Relationships for Supplier Match.

**Task 3: Manage Enterprise Data Quality Matching Configurations**

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Enterprise Data Quality Matching Configurations task in the Suppliers functional area to control the sensitivity level of the matching results impacting the number of possible party matches that are returned during supplier creation. Oracle recommends to use more conservative settings initially, and increase the score threshold if you find too many potential matches are returning due to your data volume.
The following settings are recommended:

1. Find the configuration named Account Duplicate Identification.
2. The following predefined settings are in the Real-Time subtab:
   - Cluster Key Level: Typical: When using the Supplier Matching feature, this value is set internally to Exhaustive, which is the desired setting level to produce optimal matching results.
   - Score Threshold: 50.0 This threshold indicates the minimum match score above which results are returned.
   - Match Results Display Threshold: 20.0 This threshold indicates the number of matched records that display during the matching process.
3. To edit the settings, you must duplicate the predefined configuration. Generally, this is not necessary as the predefined settings described above should return the desired results in the supplier matching process.
4. Select the configuration and click Duplicate.
5. Edit the configuration that you duplicated.

**Note:** Remember to change the Cluster Key Level to Exhaustive.

6. Click Rebuild Keys to rebuild all indexes for the new configuration matching to take effect. This process can take a number of hours.

**Note:** Note: The Rebuild Keys action must be performed even if you have not edited the predefined configuration. This step is essential in cases where the supplier matching feature is enabled on an existing instance, for example, where parties already exist in the customer instance in order for existing parties to be included in the search for duplicate matches.

To perform a quick test of the configuration and exercise the Enterprise Data Quality matching engine, go to Review Configuration Results and enter the settings described previously:

- **Cluster Key Level** - 3 (Exhaustive)
- **Score Threshold** - 50

Enter a Party Name that is similar to an existing supplier and click Find to retrieve the match results.

**Note:** The supplier match feature is available on Oracle Procurement Cloud only. It is not supported on Oracle Fusion Procurement (on-premise).

**Related Topics**
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

**Define Address Configuration for Supplier Addresses**

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the following setup tasks from the Suppliers functional area to configure country-specific address definitions for managing supplier address data:

1. Manage Geographies
2. Manage Address Formats

These setup tasks are used to optionally modify the default country address format. (Supplier addresses can be entered using the default format). Country-specific address formats can be defined, along with the loading of country geographic location data for performing address validation. If you have a high concentration of suppliers in specific countries, you may want to
leverage these setups tasks to streamline supplier address entry and maintenance, by tailoring formats to the specific postal requirements of these countries.

**Note:** These setup tasks are supported by the Oracle Trading Community Architecture, which manages external party data used by supplier and customer master data. Changes to these setup tasks impact other products using Trading Community Architecture location data.

**Note:** The job role of Application Implementation Consultant is required to access these tasks.

### Task 1: Manage Geographies

Use this task to configure the following geography data setup functions:

- Load geography data.
- Define the geography structure per country, which can be organized in a hierarchy. For example, State, Country, City, Postal Code.
- Map geography data to address fields.
- Set validations and controls on the address fields.

### Task 2: Manage Address Formats

Use this task to configure the following setup functions for address formats:

- Select and modify the default address style format.
- Define country-specific address style formats, which include the settings:
  - Address field sequence
  - Address labels
  - Address data standards and validations
  - Required fields

**Note:** Address cleansing is not available in Oracle Procurement Cloud. The settings selected on the Address Cleansing Level dialog box have no effect on how Data Quality Management functions.

### Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

### Define Transaction Accounting for Procurement

**Transaction Account Builder**

Use the Transaction Account Builder to derive default accounts for Oracle Fusion Common Module: Intercompany and Oracle Fusion Purchasing transactions before they are accounted.
Define Transaction Account Rules

Transaction account definitions are assigned at the ledger and subledger levels. Transaction attributes are used in account rules, which are used in transaction account definitions.

Transaction account types are predefined by the Subledger Accounting application, and categorize different accounts generated for transactions. Sources are assigned to transaction account types.

Transaction account types allow subledger applications to categorize different accounts that are generated for transactions. Accounts that require a consistent derivation throughout the application should share the same transaction account type. This also provides the ability to view or manually override an account on the transaction.

Transaction account types are assigned to transaction account definitions. Assign account combination or segment rules to each transaction account type assignment in a transaction account definition. Assigned sources in each transaction account type are available for use in account rules to derive accounts for a transaction account type.

This setup is accomplished using the **Define Transaction Account Rules** task list in the **Setup and Maintenance** work area.

Transaction account rules are used by:

- Oracle Fusion Common Module: Intercompany
- Oracle Fusion Purchasing
Transaction Account Builder Components

This figure illustrates the transaction account builder components.

Legend

- Introduced by Transaction Account Rules
- Indicates component assignment
- Predefined and Users
- Users

- **Transaction Account Type**: Predefined.
- **Account Rules**: Users and Predefined.
- **Sources**: Predefined.
Account Rules

Account rules are used to determine the accounts for subledger journal entry lines. In addition, you can specify the conditions under which these rules apply. Using these capabilities, you can develop complex rules for defining accounts under different circumstances to meet your specific requirements. You can define account rules for an account, segment, or value set.

Account Rules by Account

Define account rules by account to determine the entire account combination. For example, an account rule defined by account can be used to determine the complete supplier liability account in Oracle Fusion Payables.

Account Rules by Segment

Define segment rules to derive a specific segment of the general ledger account. For example, a particular segment like the company segment can be determined from the distribution account.

Another segment can be determined with the use of a constant value. Creating the account one segment at a time offers greater flexibility, but also requires more setup.

Use both segment based and account based rules to derive a single account. Segment-specific rules are used, where they are defined, and take the remaining values from an account-based rule. For example, you can use an account rule which is for all segments and also separately use a rule which is for one particular segment. Segment-specific rules take precedence over the all segments account based rule.

Combine account rules with segment rules. In this case, the segment value is derived from the segment rule to override the corresponding segment of the account. If the segment rule has conditions associated with the priorities and none are met, no override occurs and the segment value is derived from the account rule.

Note:

- If the returned account is end dated with a date that is the same or before the subledger journal entry accounting date, and an alternate account is defined in the general ledger, the alternate account is used. The original account is stored on the journal line for audit purposes.
- If the alternate account is invalid, and the Post Invalid Accounts to Suspense Account option is selected in the Create Accounting process, then a suspense account is used. An error message is displayed if a valid suspense account is not available.

Account Rules by Value Sets

In the absence of a chart of accounts, you may define account rules based upon value sets. This enables you to share the same rule between more than one chart of accounts if the segments in these charts of accounts share the same value set.

Sharing Account Rules across Applications

You may share account rules across applications in the following ways.

- Assign an account rule from the same or a different application to a journal line rule in the subledger journal entry rule set. For example, to derive an expense account for journal line rule Expense, assign the Projects Cost Account rule owned to the Payables journal line rule Expense.
- Create an account rule based on an account rule from another application and assign it to a journal line rule. For example, you may create an account rule Invoice Expense Account referencing Project Cost Account assigned in the
Priorities region. You may attach the Invoice Expense Account rule to the journal line rule Expense in the journal entry rule set.

**Note:**
- To share an account rule across applications, all sources used by the account rule must be available for the event class.
- If the sources are available, an account rule is assigned to a journal line rule in the journal entry rule set. Verification occurs to confirm that all sources used by the account rule are available for the journal line rule accounting event class. Journal line rules are only available if the sources are shared; such as reference objects.

**Account Rules and Mapping Sets**
Mapping sets can be used to associate a specific output value for an account or segment. You can use mapping sets in account rules to build the account.

**Account Rules Conditions**
In the account rules you may specify conditions for each rule detail line. Priorities determine the order in which account rule conditions are examined. When the condition is met, the rule associated with that priority is used. Depending on which of the defined conditions is met, a different account rule detail is employed to create the account.

The Create Accounting process evaluates conditions based on the priority of the rule detail. When the condition is met, the rule detail is applied.

**Related Topics**
- Examples of Creating Condition

**How You Define Account Rules**
You can define an account rule using the following rule types:

- Account combination
- Segment
- Value Set

**Account Combination Rules**
Set up account combination rules based upon the following value types:

1. **Source Value Type**: Derive the account combination by specifying a source.
   
   Sources that have been set up as accounts can be assigned to an account combination rule. Subledger Accounting then obtains the account combination identifier from the source.

2. **Constant Value Type**: Establish the account as a constant value.
   
   For example, the constant could be a completed account combination from the chart of accounts specified. An example is the account combination, 01.000.2210.0000.000. This is the simplest way to derive an account.

3. **Mapping Set Value Type**: Derive the account combination by referencing a mapping set.
   
   Set up a mapping set to determine the complete account combination from the chart of accounts specified.
4. Account Rule Value Type: Derive the account by referencing another account rule.

The chart of accounts is optional when defining this type of rule. If the account rule has a chart of accounts assigned, then all the related account rules must use the same or no chart of accounts.

**Note:** A chart of accounts must be specified for account combination rules using constants.

**Segment Rules**

Set up segment rules as follows:

- When a chart of accounts is specified, create a rule to derive the value for a specific segment from the chart of accounts.
- If the chart of accounts is not specified, create a rule to derive the value for an account segment with a specific qualifier.

Set up segment rules using the same methods discussed in the preceding Account Combination Rules section. By specifying different value types, users can select the way in which the segment value is derived.

**Note:** A chart of accounts must be specified for segment rules using constants.

**Value Set Rules**

Value set based rules can be created when a chart of accounts is not specified, enabling you to share the same rule between more than one chart of accounts. But, only if the segments in these charts of accounts share the same value set.

Set up value set based rules using the same methods discussed in the preceding Account Combination Rules section.

**Mapping Sets**

Mapping sets provide an efficient way to define a segment or account combination value for one or more transaction or reference attribute values. Using such input and output mappings is simpler than using complex conditions on account rules.

Based on the value of the source input, a single segment or a full account is derived.

Examples of source input value types:

- Transaction attributes
- Reference attributes

With mapping sets you can:

- Use up to 10 transaction or reference attributes as inputs into a mapping.
- Define default output value to use when actual input values do not match the mappings.
- Use wildcards for multiple input mapping sets to indicate that the value of a particular input should be ignored for certain mappings.
- Enter the mappings directly on the user interface or use the spreadsheet available in the Export option, and then import.

Export allows:

- Exporting a template to create mappings.
Exporting all mappings created for the mapping set to add or edit the current mappings.

Example

Assume a business operates in several regions, including:

- East
- South
- West

The business has a Region segment in their chart of accounts.

The region name can be the input for the mappings to derive the value of the region segment. You can create a mapping set that maps region names to the corresponding region code.

This table contains region names and segment values used in this example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Value (Region Name)</th>
<th>Segment Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>East</td>
<td>01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td>02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional transaction information, such as transaction type and salesperson name, could also be used as inputs to help derive a different segment value for each combination of the input values.

Related Topics

- Accounting Sources

Define Mapping Sets

Define a mapping set when you have a matrix of input values that produces distinct output values. For each input value, specify a corresponding account combination or segment output value. One or more related pairs of these input values with the segment or account combination output values form a mapping set.

A mapping set definition includes the selection of input sources, output type, and mappings. The mappings section displays how input values are mapped to output values.

To define mapping sets:

- Specify the output type:
  - The output type for a mapping set can be an account combination, segment, or value set.
  - Use value set:
    - If the value set is used by more than one chart of accounts,
    - And the mapping set can be reused across multiple charts of accounts.
  - Expected input or output combinations are constant across the charts of accounts.
Based on the selection, the mapping set provides the value for an account, segment, or value set.

- Define the input source:
  - Specify the input source for mapping.
    - The input source is provided for predefined mapping sets.
  - Define the chart of accounts and value sets.

- Specify the output value for the mapping:
  - For a given input value, enter the corresponding output value.
  - The account rule uses this value to populate either the account or the segment.
    - If the output type is a value set, the output value is an individual value from the value set entered.
    - If the output type is segment, the output value is an individual segment value.
    - If the output type is account combination, the output value is an entire account.

Mapping sets are used with account rules:

- If the output type is account combination or segment, identify the chart of accounts assigned to the mapping set.
- If the output type is a value set, identify the value set assigned to the mapping set.
- If defining a mapping set for more than one chart of accounts or value set, it can be assigned to more than one account rule. This increases the ability to share the mapping set.

A mapping set with no associated chart of accounts:

- Can be assigned to an account rule if:
  - The account rule is not associated with a chart of accounts.
  - The mapping set can have any chart of accounts or no chart of accounts.
- Cannot be assigned to an account rule if:
  - The account rule is associated with a chart of accounts. The mapping set must have the same chart of accounts.

**Example**

In the following example, the chart of accounts is set up with four segments. A mapping set is defined with a value set for Supplier Type as described in the following table.

This table contains examples of input values and output values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Value</th>
<th>Output Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
<td>01-100-6120-000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consulting</td>
<td>01-400-6110-000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assume that two invoices are entered, one for a supplier with a type of Services and one for a supplier with a type of Manufacturing.
When using the mapping set, the source value Supplier Type is compared with the mapping set input values to determine the account.

In this example, there is a match for the first case; the invoice with a supplier type of Services maps to an input value. However, the invoice with a supplier type of Manufacturing does not map to an input value.

This table contains the derived accounts based on the example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Invoice</th>
<th>Supplier Type</th>
<th>Output Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Services</td>
<td>01-100-6120-000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Manufacturing</td>
<td>No account generated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** To ensure that transaction 2 is accounted, you may want to modify the account rule to which the mapping set is assigned. If not, a separate rule can be defined to provide for the Manufacturing supplier type, or define a default output in the existing mapping set.

**Project Information in Account Derivation for Procurement Transactions: Explained**

You can use project information to set up rules to derive accounts, for sponsored project procurement transactions in requisitions and purchase orders.

Use project-related attributes to derive transaction accounts by applying them as:

- Input sources for creating mapping sets.
- Values for account rule priorities.
- Account rule conditions.

Aspects of using project information for account derivation that are covered in this topic are:

- Example
- Attributes
- Setup

**Example**

For example, you can set up an account rule to select the account to which a project expenditure should be charged. Base the rule on the contract number, or the funding source of an award, or the contract owning organization.

**Attributes**

The following are some of the project attributes you can use in account rules.

- Award Owning Business Unit
- Award Purpose
- Award Type


Setup

Set up account rules using the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement offering, Procurement Transaction Account Rules functional area.

For more information refer to the following white paper available on My Oracle Support (MOS): Transaction Account Builder in Oracle Fusion Procurement (document ID 1507175.1).

Set Up an Account Rules for Outside Processing Purchases

You can define account rules to derive charge accounts specifically for purchases of outside processing items.

To do this use, the following tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Procurement offering, Procurement Transaction Account Rules functional area:

- Manage Account Rules task
- Manage Mapping Sets task

Use the Manage Account rules task to review the delivered Purchasing Charge Account Rule. The rule includes the Outside Processing Account rule value. The rule value includes a condition defined for outside processing purchases, where the Outside Processing Indicator value is set to Yes. When the condition is true the charge account is derived from a mapping set.

Use the Manage Mapping Set task to configure the delivered Outside Processing mapping set associated with the Purchasing Charge Account rule. To derive the charge account required for automatic creation of outside processing purchase orders, you must define rules for the delivered mapping set. Outside processing-related Input values include:

- Inventory Organization Code
- Work Order Sub Type
- Purchasing Category Code
- Item

For each input value select an output charge account to map it to.

You can also use the Manage Account rules task to define a rule with a condition where the Destination Type Code is set to Work Order.

Define Transaction Taxes

Define Tax Configuration: Overview

Oracle Fusion Tax provides a single-point solution for managing your transaction and withholding tax requirements. The Define Tax Configuration activity lets you manage the entire configuration and maintenance of tax content.
Oracle Fusion Tax:

- Uniformly delivers tax services to all Oracle Fusion application business flows through one application interface
- Provides a single integration point for third-party tax products and services
- Lets you configure and add country-specific tax content
- Ensures control over manual intervention and update

With Oracle Fusion Tax, you can model your taxes according to the needs of the following local and international tax requirements:

- Simple and complex country-specific tax legislation
- Cross-border transactions, including exports and Intra-European Community transactions
- Intercompany transactions
- Local compliance requirements for recording and reporting
- Continual changes to tax legislation, such as:
  - New taxes
  - Local law changes
  - Special tax rates
  - Special exceptions for products and customers

Task Lists

The Define Tax Configuration activity contains the following task lists

- Define Tax Configuration: Use these tasks to create a basic tax configuration for each of your tax regimes.
- Define Advanced Tax Configuration: Use these tasks to configure optional tax setup that addresses more complex tax requirements, such as exceptions to standard tax calculations.

Defining Tax Configuration for Transaction Taxes: Critical Choices

To determine how to set up your tax configuration, you must first analyze your requirements.

Analyzing Your Transaction Tax Requirements

When you analyze your transaction tax requirements and use Oracle Fusion Tax and other Oracle Fusion applications to implement a solution, you must consider the following questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Consideration</th>
<th>Impact to Tax Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who am I?</td>
<td>You must first answer questions about yourself and your relationship to the legal and regulatory agencies that enable you to operate in one or more counties.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I have operations and businesses?</td>
<td>Identify the countries:</td>
<td>Use Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator to capture information about your legal entities and legal registration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  - Which you operate in
  - Where you are legally registered
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Consideration</th>
<th>Impact to Tax Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>What taxes am I subject to?</strong></td>
<td>Analyze your tax environment for each of the countries in which you operate.</td>
<td>Set up your tax regimes, taxes, and tax jurisdictions according to the tax requirements for each country.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **What are the operations and businesses that I have?**                 | Consider the types of operations and businesses in which you are engaged and the countries where you have legal entities or reporting units. The following may impact your taxability:  
  - The type of industries that you work under. For example, mining, telecommunications, and pharmaceuticals.  
  - The kind of operations in which you engage. For example, trading, manufacturing, and services.  
  - The scale of your operations. For example, your turnover, company size, and growth. | Use the classifications feature to categorize or classify your first parties under various classification schemes. In analyzing your operations, you can associate the three main classifications of a transaction to:  
  - What you do: Use transaction fiscal classifications.  
  - What products you buy or sell: Use product fiscal classifications.  
  - Who your customers and suppliers are: Use party fiscal classifications.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| **What do I do?**                                                       | Identify and classify the transactions that you perform.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Create fiscal classifications to classify and categorize your transactions in a common manner across your organization. Use these fiscal classifications in tax rules to obtain the appropriate tax result.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| **What products do I buy or sell?**                                    | Determine the products that you buy and sell. The taxes that you are subject to depend on them.                                                                                                                                                                     | Where Oracle Fusion Inventory is installed use the Inventory Catalog feature with Oracle Fusion Tax product fiscal classifications and intended use functionality to classify the taxable nature and intended use of the items. You can then define tax rules using these classifications to obtain the appropriate tax result. To address classification needs of transactions that do not use inventory items, define product category and noninventory based intended use fiscal classifications. |
| **Who are my customers and suppliers?**                               | Determine the types of customers and suppliers. They can affect the taxes to which you are subject, the tax status, or tax rate that applies.                                                                 | Use the party classifications feature to categorize your customers and suppliers. You can use the classifications while defining tax rules to derive the appropriate tax result. You can create a party fiscal classification by assigning a Trading Community Model class category to a predefined party fiscal classification. |
Consideration
European Union. The transaction rate for UK VAT is dependent on whether the customer is registered for VAT in the country to which the supply is made.

Impact to Tax Configuration
classification type code. The Trading Community Model class codes defined under the class category become fiscal classification codes belonging to the party fiscal classification type. You can create a hierarchy of party fiscal classification types to reflect the levels of codes and subcodes within the Trading Community Model classification.

---

**Scope Values for Define Tax Configuration Task List: Explained**

The scope defines the parameters of your implementation project by setting the context of a task list during the initial configuration. When you export setup data based on setup migration services, the scope values serve as parameters to control the data selected for export to the respective configuration package.

The foundation tax setup is an incremental setup where each step of the foundation configuration builds on the previous step. The task list is sequentially organized. You can define scope values at incremental steps in the implementation project to move to subsequent tasks and to ensure continuity and ease of setup.

> **Note:** Scope is a valuable tool during implementation, but tax scope values are not mandatory. You can elect to not define them.

**Defining Scope**

When implementing transaction or withholding tax, you can define scope values for taxes, tax jurisdictions, tax statuses, tax rates, tax recovery rates, and tax rules. To set scope, you can:

- Select and add multiple values
- Create a new value

The scope value you select defines the context of that setup. For example, if you select a tax regime to use as a scope value for a tax, that value is automatically populated in the search attributes on the Manage Tax page. That tax regime’s attributes are also populated on the Create Tax page. The same logic applies to the next step in the tax setup.

**Scope Values**

The following table identifies where you define the scope value in the Define Tax Configuration and Define Advanced Tax Setup task lists:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where Scope is Defined</th>
<th>Scope Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage Taxes</td>
<td>Tax regime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Tax Rates and Tax Recovery Rates</td>
<td>• Tax regime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tax status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Tax Rules</td>
<td>• Tax regime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Foundation Tax Configuration: Points to Consider

Use Oracle Fusion Tax to set up and maintain your transaction and withholding tax requirements in all geographic locations where you do business. Foundation tax configuration refers to a set of tax setup components that you use to satisfy your tax requirements.

At transaction time, the tax configuration determines the following taxes and tax amounts:

- Taxes that apply to each transaction
- Transaction tax amount
- Withholding tax amount

Foundation tax configuration components consist of:

- Tax regimes
- Taxes
- Tax jurisdictions
- Tax statuses
- Tax rates

Foundation Tax Configuration

Complete the setup tasks to create a basic tax configuration for each of your tax regimes. A foundation tax configuration contains the data applicable to the taxes belonging to a tax regime. The following table describes the levels of specifying setup options for foundation tax components with Canada Goods and Services Tax (GST) and Harmonized Sales Tax (HST) as an example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Tasks you can perform:</th>
<th>Tasks you cannot perform:</th>
<th>Canada GST and HST Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime</td>
<td>• Share tax content among legal entities and business units.</td>
<td>• Define configuration owner tax options.</td>
<td>CA GST and HST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enable partner integration.</td>
<td>• Define application tax options.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Associate fiscal classifications.</td>
<td>• Define party tax profiles.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Define tax reporting types and codes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Define features to influence setup task list.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>• Enable controls to influence tax behavior.</td>
<td>• Share tax content.</td>
<td>CA GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CA HST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tax Rule Configuration: Points to Consider

Create a simple tax model using tax rule defaults predefined in the foundation tax configuration. You can also create tax rules for complex tax requirements that consider each tax requirement related to a transaction before making the final tax calculation.

When running the tax determination process, the tax rules defined against the foundation tax configuration setup and the details on the transactions are evaluated in the order of priority. If the first rule is:

- Successfully evaluated, the result associated with the rule is used.
- Not successfully evaluated, the next rule is evaluated until either a successful evaluation or a default value is found.

Tax Rule Configuration

The complexity of tax rule setup is categorized on the following basis:

- No tax rules required
- Simple tax rule regimes
- Complex tax regimes

The following table presents the scenarios and actions associated with each of these categories:
## Define Common Procurement Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **No tax rules required**     | The tax authority levies tax on all sales and purchase transactions at the same rate. Tax applicability, tax rates and recovery rates do not vary based on:  
  - Parties to the transaction  
  - Products or services in the transaction  
  - Business processes involved in the transaction | For the tax, define tax rule defaults for the tax status, tax rate, and tax recovery rate.  
The tax determination process uses the tax rule defaults to determine the tax.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| **Simple tax rule regimes**   | The tax authority levies tax on your transactions at the same rate, with a simple set of identifiable exceptions. The exceptions apply to either:  
  - One part of the transaction only, such as to certain parties.  
  - A combination of parties, products, and transaction processes that you can summarize in a simple way. | Create a simple set of rules.  
For example, to identify the place of supply and tax registration, and use the tax rule default values for the other processes.  
The tax determination process uses tax rules and tax rule defaults to determine the tax.                                                                                                                                                   |
| **Complex tax regimes**       | Tax regimes in certain countries require a complex logic to determine the applicable taxes and rates on a transaction. Both tax applicability and tax rates may vary based on:  
  - The place of origin  
  - The place of destination  
  - The party registration  
  - The tax status  
  - Service  
  - A combination of factors  
In some cases, the taxable amount of one tax may depend upon the amount of another tax on the same transaction. And in rare cases, the tax amount itself may depend on the tax amount of another tax. | Set up tax rule to define the logic necessary to identify each step of the tax determination process.  
The tax determination process uses the tax rules to determine the tax.                                                                                                                                                                      |

### Related Topics
- Defining an Exception to the Tax Registration Tax Rule Default: Example

### Define Tax Geographies

#### Place Information: Explained
All tax regimes need information about place or geography. Use place information for determining factors within tax rules in the tax determination process. Also, use place information while defining tax regimes, tax geography, and tax jurisdictions. Information about place or geography is required to determine:

- Where the tax is applicable
• What tax rules to apply to a transaction when goods are:
  o Delivered to another country
  o Delivered inside or outside an economic region such as, the European Community (EC)
• What the specific regions are, such as:
  o City, county, and state for US Sales and Use Tax
  o Provinces in Canada

To support these requirements, define and use geography regions and tax zones. Geography regions and tax zones provide a conceptual model to use place information on transactions and information related to the transaction.

The following types of places are supported for tax purposes:
  • Country information
  • Geography elements
  • Tax zones

Country Information
Country is a required field in all of the tax-related address locations. The country fields are supported by a predefined ISO 3166 country name and two-character country code. For more information on country names and codes, see http://www.iso.org/iso/english_country_names_and_code_elements.

You don't set up a country as a specific geography level in Trading Community Model geography because country is an inherent part of all tax-related address locations.

💡 Tip: Use the highest level of geography, typically country, wherever possible.

Geography Elements
Define geography elements as part of Trading Community Model geography. They control the use of geography and addresses. Oracle Fusion Tax commonly uses the following features:
  • Geography or tax zones
  • Geography levels
  • Address controls
  • Geography name referencing

Use geography levels to define the levels of geography that are used within a country. It’s only relevant elements of the address that are referenced for tax purposes. For example, state, county, and city are used for US Sales and Use Tax. County in the UK isn't relevant from a tax perspective and therefore, you don’t need to set it up.

💡 Tip: When address elements are needed for tax purposes, such as county and city for US Sales and Use Tax, set these address levels as mandatory within Trading Community Model geography. This ensures that these elements are always present on all applicable addresses. Setting address levels as mandatory also ensures that amended or newly applicable addresses are validated and that the level is either derived or entered. When you’re setting up migrated addresses ensure that they’re compliant with the mandatory levels being present. This should be validated and any address levels added as part of the migration process.
The geography name referencing process within Trading Community Model geography links specific addresses to the levels defined in the geography setup. This process is typically automatic. However, when you encounter issues, you may need to trigger this process to ensure that all addresses are correctly linked to their applicable levels.

Tax Zones
Use the tax zone functionality when you need to identify a group of geography elements while calculating tax. Tax zones are defined as part of Trading Community Model geography.

For example, in the EC it’s important to know whether goods and services are being delivered within the EC. Use the tax zone functionality to create a tax zone, which defines the membership to the EC as well as, the dates on which a country became the member.

Tip: Create a generic tax zone so that you create a tax zone type that can be used in multiple situations. For example, for a tax zone type needed to identify EC, create a generic tax zone type for all economic communities, which can later be used in other situations where economic communities or trade agreements affect tax determination. You can also use the tax zone functionality to group postal codes to provide useful groupings that can identify some higher-level tax regions such as, cities or counties.

How Country Information Works in Tax Rules and on Transactions
Use geography determination factors to specify country information in tax rules. A combination of determination factor class, class qualifier, and determining factor represent these determination factors. Specify the taxation country at transaction time which is used, along with the tax rules, during the tax determination process.

Country Information in Tax Rules
To set up tax rules based on country information, use:

- Geography as the determining factor class
- Location type on the transaction as the class qualifier
- Country as the tax determining factor.

You can also use country as a tax rule qualifier.

The tax determining factors for locations are given generic names such as ship-to and bill-from, depending on the transaction types.

The transaction types are

- **Order-to-cash**: For Oracle Fusion Order Management and Oracle Fusion Receivables transactions.
- **Procure-to-pay**: For Oracle Fusion Purchasing and Oracle Fusion Payables transactions.

These generic locations are mapped into specific locations based on the transaction as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Party</th>
<th>Order-to-Cash Party</th>
<th>Procure-to-Pay Party</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill-from party</td>
<td>Location assigned to the business unit for the transactions</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill-to party</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Location assigned to the business unit for the transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship-to party</td>
<td>Customer (ship-to) party site</td>
<td>Ship-to location on the line</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Generic Party | Order-to-Cash Party | Procure-to-Pay Party
--- | --- | ---
Ship-from party | Warehouse on the line. If there is no warehouse on the line, such as with services, the location from the item validation organization in the Receivables system parameters is used. | Supplier (ship-from) party site
Point of acceptance party | Customer point of acceptance party | Not applicable
Point of origin party | Customer point of origin party | Not applicable

Country Information at Transaction Time
Specify the taxation country on the transaction to identify the country in which the transaction is deemed to have taken place for taxation purposes. The default value is the country of the legal entity.

Use the country name to search for country defaults, which control the:

- Fiscal classification defaults
- Party tax profile defaults
- Tax regime defaults
- Tax defaults

Use the country name to select the following fiscal classifications associated with that specific country:

- User-defined fiscal classifications
- Product categories
- Intended use fiscal classifications
- Transaction business categories

**Related Topics**

- [Overview of Transaction-Based Fiscal Classifications](#)
- [Tax Rules: Explained](#)

**Using Country Information in Tax Rules: Example**
For many regimes, it is important to know if the supply of goods is exported. The easiest way of doing this is to ensure that the ship-from location is from the country in question and the ship-to location is a different country.

The following scenario illustrates setting up tax rule components to identify if the goods are exported from the United States.

**Creating Tax Rule Components**
Create a tax determining factor set as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship from</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship to</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Create a condition set that refers to this geography determining factor as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship from</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Equal to</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship to</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Not equal to</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use this combination of determining factors in any situation where you need to identify exports from the United States.

**Geography Elements: How They Work in Tax Rules**

Geography determination factors allow you to use geography elements in tax rules. A combination of determination factor class, class qualifier, and determining factor represent these determination factors.

**Geography Elements in Tax Rules**

To set up tax rules based on geography elements, use:

- Geography as the determining factor class
- Location type on the transaction as the class qualifier
- Geography level, such as county, province, or city, as the tax determining factor

You can also use the geography level as a tax rule qualifier.

The tax determining factors for locations are given generic names such as ship to and bill from, depending on the transaction types. The transaction types are:

- **Order-to-cash**: For Oracle Fusion Order Management and Oracle Fusion Receivables transactions.
- **Procure-to-pay**: For Oracle Fusion Purchasing and Oracle Fusion Payables transactions.

These generic locations are mapped to the specific location, based on the transaction as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Party</th>
<th>Order-to-Cash Party</th>
<th>Procure-to-Pay Party</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill-from party</td>
<td>First-party legal entity</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill-to party</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>First-party legal entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship-to party</td>
<td>Customer (ship to) party site</td>
<td>First-party legal entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship-from party</td>
<td>First-party legal reporting unit</td>
<td>Supplier (ship from) party site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point of acceptance party</td>
<td>Customer point of acceptance party</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point of origin party</td>
<td>Customer point of origin party</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Geography Levels in Tax Rules: Example
Use the geography element in tax rules to identify a specific geography region when taxes in a country need to identify geography elements for the country level. For example, in US Sales and Use Tax, you may need to create tax rules for a specific state.

The following scenario describes how you can set up tax rule components to identify when goods are being delivered to a specific state, such as Ohio.

Creating Tax Rule Components
Create a tax determining factor set with the following geography elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Tax Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship to</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create a condition set that refers to a specific state value as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship to</td>
<td>State</td>
<td>Equal to</td>
<td>Ohio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use this combination of determining factors in any situation where you need to identify specific deliveries to a specific state.

Tax Zones: How They Work in Tax Rules
Geography determination factors allow you to use geography elements in the tax rules. The determination factors include a combination of determination factor class, class qualifier, and determining factor.

Tax Zones in Tax Rules
Use geography as the determining factor class, location type on the transaction as the class qualifier, and tax zone type such as county, as the determining factor.

The tax determining factors for locations are given generic names such as ship-to and bill-from, depending on the transaction types.

These generic locations are mapped to the specific location based on the transaction as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Party</th>
<th>Order-to-Cash Party</th>
<th>Procure-to-Pay Party</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill-from party</td>
<td>First-party legal entity</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill-to party</td>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>First-party legal entity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Generic Party | Order-to-Cash Party | Procure-to-Pay Party
--- | --- | ---
Ship-to party | Customer (ship to) party site | First-party legal entity
Ship-from party | First-party legal reporting unit | Supplier (ship from) party site
Point of acceptance party | Customer point of acceptance party | Not applicable
Point of origin party | Customer point of origin party | Not applicable

You can also use tax zones as tax rule qualifiers.

**Related Topics**
- Overview of Transaction-Based Fiscal Classifications
- Tax Rules: Explained

**Using Tax Zones in Tax Rules: Example**
For the European Community (EC) or the European Union (EU), it’s important to know whether goods and services are being delivered within the EC. Use the tax zone functionality to create a tax zone that defines the membership of the EC and the dates on which a country became a member.

The following scenario describes the use of a partial condition set that you can use within tax rules to define when a delivery is being made to an EC from the United Kingdom.

**Scenario**
Use geography as the determining factor class, ship-to as the class qualifier, and all economic communities and country as the determining factors of the tax zone type as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-to</td>
<td>All Economic Communities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-to</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-from</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create the condition set as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determining Factor Class</th>
<th>Class Qualifier</th>
<th>Determining Factor Name</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-to</td>
<td>All Economic Communities</td>
<td>Equal to</td>
<td>European Community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-to</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Not equal to</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Ship-from</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Equal to</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can use this combination of determining factors in any situation where you need to identify the deliveries that are made from the UK to other EU countries.

Define Tax Regimes

How You Set Up Regimes to Rates
Regime to rate setup contains the details of a tax regime, including all taxes, tax jurisdictions, tax statuses, and tax rates. You can update existing records or create new records at any point in the tax regime hierarchy.

Regime to rate setup tasks include:

- Tax regimes
- Taxes
- Tax jurisdictions
- Tax statuses
- Tax rates

Tax Regimes
Set up tax regimes in each country and geographical region where you do business and where a separate tax applies. A tax regime associates a common set of default information, regulations, fiscal classifications, and optionally, registrations, to one or more taxes. For example, in the US, create a Sales and Use Tax tax regime to group taxes levied at the state, county, and district levels. For the UK, create a tax regime for GB VAT.

Taxes
Set up details for the taxes of a tax regime. Each separate tax in a tax regime includes records for the tax statuses, tax rates, and tax rules that are used to calculate and report on the tax.

For example, for US Sales and Use Tax define a tax for each state, county, and city. For the UK, set up a tax for GB VAT.

Tax Jurisdictions
Set up tax jurisdictions for geographic regions or tax zones where a specific tax authority levies a tax. A tax jurisdiction specifies the association between a tax and a geographic location.

You also use tax jurisdictions to define jurisdiction-based tax rates. A tax jurisdiction tax rate is a rate that's distinct to a specific geographic region or tax zone for a specific tax.

For example, for US Sales and Use Tax create a county jurisdiction for every county in the parent geography type of State and in the parent geography name of California. For the UK, create a tax jurisdiction for the country of United Kingdom.

Tax Statuses
Set up the tax statuses that you need for each tax that you create for a combination of tax regime, tax, and configuration owner. A tax status is the taxable nature of a product in the context of a transaction and specific tax on the transaction.

For example, for US Sales and Use Tax create a tax status for standard and exempt. For the UK set up separate tax statuses for standard, zero, exempt, and reduced rates.
Tax Rates
Set up tax rates for your tax statuses and tax jurisdictions. For tax statuses, set up a tax rate record for each applicable tax rate that a tax status identifies. For tax jurisdictions, set up tax rate records to identify the tax rate variations for a specific tax within different tax jurisdictions.

For example, for US Sales and Use Tax create a tax rate for each tax jurisdiction (jurisdiction-based rates). For the UK, set up separate tax rates for standard, zero, exempt, and reduced (tax status-based rates).

Tax Recovery Rates
Set up tax recovery rate codes for the recovery types identified on the taxes within a tax regime. A tax recovery rate code identifies the percentage of recovery designated by the tax authority for a specific transaction.

For example, organizations that produce VAT-applicable goods and services are allowed to recover 100% of the VAT they pay on typical purchases. They would use a default 100% recovery rate.

Organizations, such as financial institutions, which create services that are exempt from VAT, are not able to recover VAT on their normal purchases. They would use a default 0% recovery rate.

Related Topics
- Tax Regimes: Explained
- Taxes: Explained
- Tax Jurisdictions: Explained
- Tax Rate Setup

Minimum Tax Configuration: Explained
The minimum tax configuration to meet the basic tax requirements of your transaction and withholding taxes comprise of defining a tax regime and associated taxes.

The two steps in defining the minimum tax configuration are:

1. Define tax regime: This step includes the tax regime definition as well as the subscription by the appropriate legal entity or business unit.
2. Define transaction and withholding taxes: This step includes the basic tax definition, controls and defaults, direct and indirect tax rule defaults, and tax accounts.

The following prerequisite setups must be completed for minimum tax configuration:

- First parties, such as legal entities and business units
- Tax geographies and zones
- Ledger and accounts

A legal entity tax profile is automatically created when a legal entity is defined in the implementation. Similarly, a business unit tax profile is automatically created when a business unit is defined. For the business unit, indicate whether it uses the subscription of the legal entity instead of creating its own.

Define Tax Regime
The first step includes the tax regime definition and subscription by an appropriate legal entity or business unit. While creating your tax regime, you can minimize configuration and maintenance costs by creating content that can be shared by more than one entity. For example, legal entities can subscribe to the shared reference data instead of creating separate and repetitive
Define Transaction and Withholding Taxes
The second step includes basic tax definition, such as:

- Geographic information
- Controls and defaults
- Direct and indirect tax rule defaults
- Tax accounts

The basic tax definition includes controls that you can set to provide the override capability at transaction time. For example, allow users to make manual updates on transaction tax lines, select the **Allow override for calculated tax lines** and the **Allow entry of manual tax lines** options. However, to enforce automatic tax calculation on transaction tax lines, don’t enable these options.

Use the direct and indirect tax rule defaults to specify the values that apply to the majority of your transactions. Create tax rules to address the exceptions or variations to the defaults. For example, for the Goods and Services Tax (GST) that applies to the supply of most goods and services in Canada, set the Tax Applicability default to **Applicable**. A luxury tax, on the other hand, is a tax on luxury goods or products not considered essential. As it doesn’t apply to most goods and services, set the Tax Applicability direct tax rule default to **Not Applicable**. Then create a tax rule to make the tax applicable when the product in the transaction satisfies the luxury requirement.

Assign your default tax accounts for the taxes in a tax regime to post the tax amounts derived from your transactions. The tax accounts you define at the tax level, populate either the tax rate accounts or tax jurisdiction accounts for the same ledger, and optionally, the same business unit. You can update these default tax accounts in the tax rate or tax jurisdiction setup.

**Note:** When you create your tax, the tax recoverable account and tax liability account may be prepopulated from default account values defined in the Rapid Implementation for General Ledger spreadsheet upload. You can override these values.

Considerations for Minimum Tax Configuration
Define the minimum tax configuration setup to handle the majority of your tax requirements. As part of defining transaction and withholding taxes, decide the direct and indirect tax rule defaults for the tax and set up the associated tax accounts.

For complex tax requirements, create tax rules that consider each tax requirement related to a transaction before making the final tax calculation.

Setting Up Direct Tax Rule Defaults
The direct tax rule defaults are the default values for the direct tax rule types, which include:

- Place of supply
- Tax applicability
- Tax registration
- Tax calculation formula
- Taxable basis formula

The following table describes the direct tax rule defaults and examples:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Tax Rule Default</th>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Place of Supply</td>
<td>Indicates the specific tax jurisdiction where the supply of goods or services is deemed to have taken place.</td>
<td>In Canada, the place of supply for Goods and Services Tax (GST) is typically the ship-to location. To handle the majority of GST transactions, select <strong>Ship to</strong> as your default place of supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The corresponding place of supply differs based on the type of transaction. For example, a place of supply of <strong>Ship to</strong> corresponds to the location of your first-party legal entity for Payables transactions. For Receivables transactions, <strong>Ship to</strong> corresponds to the location of your customer site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Applicability</td>
<td>Indicates whether the tax is typically applicable or not applicable on transactions.</td>
<td>The GST in Canada is a tax that applies to the supply of most property and services in Canada. When you create the GST tax, select <strong>Applicable</strong> as your default tax applicability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>税登记信息</td>
<td>Determines the party whose tax registration status is considered for an applicable tax on the transaction.</td>
<td>With a direct default of bill-to party, the tax registration of the bill-to party is considered. The application stamps their tax registration number onto the transaction, along with the tax registration number of the first-party legal reporting unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>税计算公式</td>
<td>Represents the typical calculation of tax for a transaction line.</td>
<td>A common formula, <strong>STANDARD_TC</strong>, is predefined, where the tax amount is equal to the tax rate multiplied by the taxable basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>税基公式</td>
<td>Represents the amount on which the tax rate is applied.</td>
<td>The following common formulas are predefined:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>STANDARD_TB</strong>: The taxable basis is equal to the line amount of the transaction line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>STANDARD_QUANTITY</strong>: The taxable basis is equal to the quantity of the transaction line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>STANDARD_TB_DISCOUNT</strong>: The taxable basis is the line amount of the transaction line less the cash discount.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Use the Manage Tax Rules task to define exceptions to the direct tax rule defaults you define for the tax.

Setting Up Indirect Tax Rule Defaults
The indirect tax rule defaults for a tax include:

- Tax jurisdiction
The following table describes the indirect tax rule defaults and examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indirect Tax Rule Default</th>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Jurisdiction</td>
<td>Indicates the most common geographic area where a tax is levied by a specific tax authority.</td>
<td>Value-added tax (VAT) is applicable to the supply of most goods and services in Portugal. For the tax PT VAT, create the default tax jurisdiction as the country of Portugal. To address specific tax regions such as Azores and Madeira, which have lower VAT rates than Portugal, define jurisdiction rates with different VAT rates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Status</td>
<td>Indicates the taxable nature of the majority of your transactions.</td>
<td>If your operations primarily include zero-rated transactions, select the default tax status as <strong>Zero</strong> instead of <strong>Standard</strong>. This setting facilitates tax determination when multiple zero rates are defined to handle different reporting requirements for zero rate usage, such as intra-EU, zero-rated products, or zero-rated exports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Recovery</td>
<td>Indicates the recovery rate to apply to each recovery type for each applicable tax on a purchase transaction.</td>
<td>In Canada, both federal and provincial components of Harmonized Sales Tax (HST) are 100% recoverable on goods bought for resale. In this case, with two recovery types, you can set up two recovery rate defaults for the HST tax.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Tax Rate                  | Specifies the default tax rate that is applicable to the majority of your transactions associated with this tax. You can create additional tax setup, such as jurisdiction rates, or create tax rules to set alternate values as required. | HST in Canada is applied at a 13% rate in most provinces that have adopted HST. The exceptions are British Columbia where the rate is 12% and Nova Scotia where the rate is 15%. To satisfy this requirement:  
  - Define a single rate of 13% with no jurisdiction.  
  - Define a 12% rate and associate it with the British Columbia jurisdiction.  
  - Assign a 15% rate to Nova Scotia.  
  
This minimizes the setup required by creating an exception-based setup. |

**Note:** Use the Manage Tax Rules task to define exceptions to the indirect tax rule defaults you define for the tax.

### Setting Up Tax Accounts

Set up tax accounts at the tax level. The application automatically copies the tax account combination to the tax rate accounts or tax jurisdiction accounts that you create for the tax for the same ledger and optionally, the same business unit.
Any subsequent changes you make to existing tax accounts at the tax level aren’t copied to the tax rate or tax jurisdiction level.

Define tax accounts at any of the following levels. The defaulting option is only available at the tax level.

- Tax
- Tax jurisdiction
- Tax rate
- Tax recovery rate

**Note:** When you create your tax, the tax recoverable account and tax liability account may be prepopulated from default account values defined in the Rapid Implementation for General Ledger spreadsheet upload. You can override these values.

Set up tax accounts for the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ledger and Business Unit</strong></td>
<td>The ledger and business unit for which you are creating the tax accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interim Tax</strong></td>
<td>An account that records tax recovery or liability until the event prescribed by the statute is complete. Generally, the payment of the invoice is the event that triggers the generation of the tax recovery or liability. You must set up an interim tax account for taxes and tax rates that have a deferred recovery settlement. Once you set up an interim tax account for this tax rate, you can’t change the recovery settlement to Immediate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tax Recoverable Account</strong></td>
<td>An account that records tax recovery amounts. If you set up recovery rates for a tax that you also self assess, then define a tax recovery account for the associated recovery rates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tax Liability Account</strong></td>
<td>An account that relieves tax liability amounts. If you set up recovery rates for a tax that you also self assess, then define a tax liability account for the associated tax rates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Finance Charge Tax Liability</strong></td>
<td>An account that records the tax liability associated with finance charges that is used as a deduction against overall tax liability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonrecoverable Tax Accounts</strong></td>
<td>Accounts that record tax amounts on earned and unearned discounts and adjustments that you can’t claim as a deduction against tax liability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expense and Revenue Accounts</strong></td>
<td>Accounts that record net changes generated by adjustments, earned and unearned discounts, and finance charges. Receivables activities such as discounts and adjustments reduce the receivable amount, and are therefore considered an expense.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Topics**

- Tax Rules: Explained

**Defining a Minimum Tax Configuration: Worked Example**

The following example illustrates the minimum tax configuration setup to meet the basic requirements in Canada for the Goods and Services Tax (GST). Set up a tax regime for both GST and Harmonized Sales Tax (HST). Create one recovery type for the fully recoverable status of the transaction.
In Canada, GST is a tax that applies to the supply of most property and services in Canada. The provinces of British Columbia, Ontario, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Newfoundland and Labrador, referred to as the participating provinces, combine their provincial sales tax with GST to create HST. Generally, HST applies to the same base of property and services as the GST. Every province in Canada except Alberta has implemented either provincial sales tax or the HST. In countries like Canada, some or all taxes on business transactions for registered companies are recoverable taxes.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decision to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What province does ABC Corporation do business in?</td>
<td>Alberta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What taxes are applicable?</td>
<td>GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to set up tax accounts at the tax level?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tax implications in this scenario are:

- Five percent (5%) GST is applicable on the sale of goods in Alberta
- Neither the HST nor provincial sales tax applies in Alberta
- Place of supply for GST tax is generally based on the place of delivery or ship-to location.

To determine the GST tax in Alberta, perform the following steps:

1. Define the tax regime
2. Define the transaction taxes
3. Create the direct tax rule defaults
4. Create the indirect tax rule defaults
5. Enable the tax

**Defining the Tax Regime**

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Transaction Tax
   - Task: Manage Tax Regimes
2. On the Manage tax regimes page, click **Create**.
3. On the Create Tax Regime page, complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>CA GST and HST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regime Level</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Date</td>
<td>1/1/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: Consider your tax planning carefully before entering the start date. This date must accommodate the oldest transaction that you want to process within this tax regime. After you create the tax regime, you can only update this date with an earlier date. If you enter an end date, you can’t update this date after you save the record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Currency</td>
<td>CAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow cross regime compounding</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. On the Configuration Options tab, select the party name that identifies either the legal entity or the business unit or both for which you define the configuration options.

5. For the Configuration of Taxes and Rules, select the subscription that defines the configuration owner setup that is used for transactions of the legal entity and business unit for this tax regime.

6. Enter the effective start date for this configuration option. Enter a date range that is within the date range of both the party tax profile and the tax regime.

7. Click Save and Close.

Defining the Transaction Taxes

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Financials
   - Functional Area: Transaction Tax
   - Task: Manage Taxes

2. On the Manage Taxes page, click Create.

3. On the Create Tax page, complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>CA GST and HST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Owner</td>
<td>Global configuration owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>CA GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography Type</td>
<td>Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Geography Type</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounding Precedence</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow override of calculated tax lines</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow multiple jurisdictions</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assigning the Tax Accounts

1. Navigate to the Tax Accounts tab and click **Create**.
2. Complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary Ledger</td>
<td>CA Ledger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Unit</td>
<td>CA Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Recoverable Account</td>
<td>0001-1500-1100-1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Liability Account</td>
<td>0001-1500-1100-1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating the Direct Tax Rule Defaults

1. Navigate to the Tax Rule Defaults tab and click **Create**.
2. Complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Place of Supply</td>
<td>Ship to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Applicability</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Registration</td>
<td>Ship-from party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Calculation Formula</td>
<td>STANDARD_TC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taxable Basis Formula</td>
<td>STANDARD_TB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating the Indirect Tax Rule Defaults

1. On the Tax Rules Defaults tab, select **Tax Jurisdiction** as your rule type and click **Create Default**.
2. On the Create Tax Jurisdiction page, complete the fields as shown in this table:
3. Click **Save and Close**.
4. Select **Tax Status** as your rule type and click **Create Default**.
5. On the Create Tax Status page, complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Status Code</td>
<td>CA GST STD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as default tax status</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Start Date</td>
<td>1/1/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click **Save and Close**.
7. Select **Tax Recovery Rate** as your rule type and click **Create Default**.
8. On the Create Tax Recovery Rate page, complete the fields as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Recovery Rate Code</td>
<td>CA GST STD REC RATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Type</td>
<td>STANDARD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate Percentage</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>1/1/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as Default Rate</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Start Date</td>
<td>1/1/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Click **Save and Close**.
10. Select **Tax Rate** as your rule type and click **Create Default**.
11. Complete the fields on the Create Tax Rate page as shown in this table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Status Code</td>
<td>CA GST STD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate Code</td>
<td>CA GST STD RATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Rate Type</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate Percentage</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as Default Rate</td>
<td>Select</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Start Date</td>
<td>1/1/01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. Click **Save and Close**.

**Enabling the Tax**

1. On the Create Tax page, click the **Enable tax for simulation** option. This lets you verify the tax configuration using the Tax Simulator.
2. Once you have verified your tax configuration with simulated transactions, click the **Enable tax for transactions** option. This lets you use this tax in transaction processing.
3. Click **Save and Close**.

For ABC’s transactions in the province of Alberta, the following is determined by default:
- GST tax is applicable and is calculated at a percentage rate of 5%.
- 100% of the GST can be recovered.

**Related Topics**
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

**Associated Taxes Setup for a Tax Regime**

When you create a tax regime, you specify the options and defaults available to the taxes associated with the tax regime. You also enable the features that apply to the tax regime and its taxes.

The options appearing in the Associated Taxes Setup Information region on the Edit Tax Regime page result from the features enabled and the options selected at the tax level. These options include:

- Allow multiple jurisdictions
- Allow tax recovery
- Allow tax exceptions
- Allow tax exemptions

The preceding options always appear as read-only check boxes in the Associated Taxes Setup Information region. The option appears as selected if you selected the option in one of the taxes within this tax regime. If you didn’t select the option in one of the taxes, the option appears as not selected.

For example, suppose you have a California county sales tax that applies to all counties, so you need a tax with multiple jurisdictions. In this case, enable the **Multiple Jurisdictions** feature at the tax regime level and select the **Allow multiple jurisdictions**.
jurisdictions option at the tax level. When you open the Edit Tax Regime page, Associated Taxes Setup Information region for this tax regime, the Allow multiple jurisdictions option appears as selected.

Manage Controls and Defaults

How You Setup Tax Regime

A tax regime associates a common set of default information, regulations, fiscal classifications, and optionally, registrations, to one or more taxes. Set up tax regimes in each country and geographical region where you do business and where a separate tax applies.

The tax regime setup details include:

- Designating the geography to which taxes within a tax regime apply
- Defining the controls and defaults that apply to taxes and associated lower level information
- Specifying configuration options and service subscriptions

Designating the Geography

The common tax regime setup is one tax regime per country per tax type. However, you can also have tax regimes based on parts of a country or more than one country. Select the regime level as:

- **Country**: The tax regime is applicable to a specific country.
- **Tax zone**: The tax regime is applicable to parts of a country or multiple countries. Enter the tax geography type and tax geography name associated with the group of countries or the tax zone that you want. The tax geography type and tax geography name correspond to the tax zone type and tax zone respectively.

If applicable, designate the tax regime as a parent regime or indicate the parent regime name if the tax regime belongs to a parent regime. Use a tax regime defined as a parent tax regime to group other nonparent tax regimes for reporting purposes.

Defining Controls and Defaults

Set tax-level controls to enable the options that you want to make available to the taxes in this tax regime. If necessary, you can disable the options that you enable here for individual taxes within the tax regime. Enter default values for the taxes in this tax regime. You can update the default values at the tax level. If you disable a controlled option at the tax regime level it is not available as an option at the tax level.

The following table describes the defaults and controls available at the tax regime level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Derived from</th>
<th>Default Appears on</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Currency</td>
<td>The default currency of the taxes within this tax regime</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal Accountable Unit</td>
<td>The minimal unit of currency that is reported to the tax authority; for example, 0.05 GBP indicates that 5 pence is the minimal unit</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Define Common Procurement Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Derived from</th>
<th>Default Appears on</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Precision</td>
<td>A one digit whole number to indicate the decimal place for tax rounding</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Inclusion Method</td>
<td>A method that describes whether the line amount includes tax or excludes tax</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Rate Type</td>
<td>The specific conversion rate table that is used to convert one currency into another. For example, the Association of British Travel Agents conversion rate used in the travel industry</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding Rule</td>
<td>The rule that defines how rounding is performed on a value. For example, up to the next highest value, down to the next lower value, or to the nearest value</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow tax rounding override</td>
<td>Allow the override of the rounding defined on the tax registration records</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Tax Authority</td>
<td>The default tax authority to whom the tax reports are sent</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>• Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collecting Tax Authority</td>
<td>The default tax authority to whom the tax is remitted</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>• Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use legal registration number</td>
<td>Option that controls whether the tax registration number is the same as the legal registration number of the party</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General Controls Region**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Derived from</th>
<th>Default Appears on</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow override and entry of inclusive tax lines</td>
<td>Option that controls whether you can override and enter inclusive or exclusive line amounts</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Tax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 17
Define Common Procurement Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Derived from</th>
<th>Default Appears on</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use tax reporting</td>
<td>Option that controls whether the tax reporting details are available on the</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Controls whether you can enter tax reporting configuration details on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td>first-party tax registration record for this tax regime</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the tax registration for this tax regime for your first parties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compounding Level Controls Region

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Derived from</th>
<th>Default Appears on</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow cross regime</td>
<td>Option that controls whether cross regime compounding is needed for this tax</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Controls whether this tax regime is compounded based on the tax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compounding</td>
<td>regime</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>calculated from another tax regime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounding Precedence</td>
<td>Defines the order in which taxes within the compound tax regimes need to be</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Controls the order in which taxes within tax regimes are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calculated. A tax within a tax regime with a lower value is calculated first.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Oracle Fusion Tax provides features at the tax regime level to streamline your implementation by selecting the features that are applicable to the tax regime in scope. You must enable the features to use that functionality for the tax regime and related taxes.

Specifying Configuration Options and Service Subscriptions
Set up configuration options to associate tax regimes with the parties in your company that have a tax requirement under these tax regimes. You can set up tax configuration options when you create a tax regime or when you create a party tax profile for a first-party legal entity or business unit. Both tax regime and party tax profile setup flows appear and maintain the same party and tax regime association. Configuration options only apply to tax regimes directly linked to taxes and not to tax regimes that are used to group other tax regimes.

A service subscription is used to reference a specific transaction tax offering or offerings provided by an external tax partner. The transaction tax offering provided by an external tax partner can be related to content, calculation services, or both. Oracle Fusion Tax supports the use of transaction tax offerings provided by external tax partners for transaction tax calculation processing. Depending on the specific depth and scope of an individual tax partner's offerings, you can use either Oracle Fusion Tax or a Partner Tax application to perform the transaction tax calculation.

Related Topics
- Manage Tax Controls and Defaults
- Specifying First-Party Tax Profile Options
Inclusive Taxes
Calculating tax on a transaction as inclusive of the line amount is generally a business decision. This decision is based on the relationship between the transacting parties and the items or taxes involved.

Taxes applicable on a transaction are made inclusive of the item line amount either:

- Manually
- Automatically

Manual Approach
In the manual approach, you access the calculated tax lines on a transaction and select the Inclusive option. This action includes the calculated tax amount with the item value.

However, this option is controlled through two factors:

- Privileges are assigned to the users for accessing and editing the calculated tax lines.
- Setup restrictions are applied to edit the Inclusive option on the calculated tax lines.

Automatic Approach
In the automatic approach, you can configure the tax setup and calculate the tax on a transaction as inclusive of the item line amount. Since the tax legislation and the business relationship between the transacting parties primarily drive this requirement, the option for configuring the inclusiveness is made available on the tax and tax rate definition and the third party and legal reporting unit tax profiles on the tax registration and general data tabs. The tax determination process uses a hierarchy approach to evaluate the defined setup and applies the inclusiveness option on the transaction.

In tax setup, the options to choose for applying the inclusiveness on a transaction are:

- **Standard noninclusive handling**: This option calculates the taxes as exclusive of the given transaction line amount.
- **Standard inclusive handling**: This option calculates the taxes as inclusive of the given transaction line amount.
- **Special inclusive handling**: This option calculates the taxes as inclusive of the given transaction line amount, but the calculation methodology differs from the standard inclusive process.

The following table illustrates the calculation methodology used with each of these options when a transaction line amount is 1000 USD and the applicable tax rate is 10% of the taxable basis amount. For example, line amount:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Calculation</th>
<th>Taxable Basis Amount</th>
<th>Tax Amount</th>
<th>Transaction Line Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard Noninclusive</td>
<td>1000 USD * 10/100</td>
<td>1000 USD</td>
<td>100 USD</td>
<td>1100 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Inclusive</td>
<td>1000 USD * 10/110</td>
<td>909.09 USD</td>
<td>90.91 USD</td>
<td>1000 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Inclusive</td>
<td>1000 USD * 10/100</td>
<td>900 USD</td>
<td>100 USD</td>
<td>1000 USD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Topics**
- Configuring Inclusive Taxes: Points to Consider
- What happens if I make the transaction line inclusive of tax
- Tax Inclusiveness Hierarchy: How It Is Determined
Manage Configuration Options and Service Subscriptions

Configuration Options
Set up configuration options to associate tax regimes with the parties in your company that have a tax requirement for these tax regimes.

There are two fundamentally different approaches to tax configuration options, namely:

- Using tax configuration setup defined directly in Oracle Fusion Tax.
- Using external tax partner content uploaded for use with Oracle Fusion Tax.

Using Tax Configuration Setup Defined Within Oracle Fusion Tax
Use the tax configuration setup in Oracle Fusion Tax to calculate, record, and account for transaction taxes on transaction taxable transactions.

The following concepts control how this setup is managed, used, and shared:

- Tax configuration owner
- Tax content subscription
- Existing tax option

Tax Configuration Owner
The tax configuration owner is a business unit, legal entity, or the global configuration owner that owns the data. The global configuration owner is an abstract owner. It is used to define the owner of content that can be shared by any business units and first-party legal entities.

Identify a specific first-party legal entity as a parent first-party organization. This allows the configuration to be owned by a specific first party and shared by other parties. You can then share this setup with another first-party legal entity or business unit for their transactions. Use a parent first-party organization tax configuration to share among a group of first-party organizations. However, you still have the tax setup managed by a single first-party organization.

For global configuration owner, if you’re assigned the Create Tax Regime privilege, you have update rights to all tax configuration data maintained by the global configuration owner.

Tax Content Subscription
Use tax content subscriptions to define which configuration owner’s setup is used for transactions for a specific first-party legal entity or business unit for a specific tax regime. Also, use tax content subscriptions to specify whether any shared content can be overridden by the subscribing party to allow unique, separate setup for certain tax content.

Party override is permitted for the following setup:

- Tax
- Tax status
- Tax rate
- Tax recovery rate
- Tax rules

Do this indirectly by adding higher priority rules specific to the subscribing first-party legal entity or business unit.
The content subscription options are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tax Content Subscription</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration</td>
<td>For tax processing, the tax determination process uses the shared tax content defined and maintained by the global configuration owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>The specified first-party organization defines and maintains its own tax content. For tax processing, the tax determination process uses only the tax content owned by the specific first-party legal entity or business unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration with party</td>
<td>This option is similar to the common configuration because it lets you use the tax content owned by the global configuration owner. However, you can also maintain party-specific content which is used in preference to the common configuration content. In the absence of tax content owned by the specific first-party organization, the tax determination process uses the tax content owned by the global configuration owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overrides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
<td>This option is similar to the common configuration with party override subscription with one difference. The tax content here is owned by a specific first-party legal entity instead of the global configuration owner. You can override the specific first-party setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with party overrides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A similar concept is used to define where you use tax exceptions for a specific tax configuration. The tax subscription option available for product exceptions is dictated to some extent by the main tax content subscription as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options Defined for Tax Content Subscription</th>
<th>Content Subscription Options Available for Product Exceptions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration</td>
<td>Common configuration</td>
<td>For tax processing, the tax determination process uses tax exceptions defined and maintained by the global configuration owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>The specified first-party organization defines and maintains its own tax exceptions. For tax processing, the tax determination process uses only the tax exceptions owned by the specific first-party organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration with party</td>
<td>Common configuration</td>
<td>For tax processing, the tax determination process uses tax exceptions defined and maintained by the global configuration owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overrides</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration with party</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>The specified first-party organization defines and maintains its own tax exceptions. For tax processing, the tax determination process uses only the tax exceptions owned by the specific first-party organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overrides</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent first-party organization with party</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>The specified first-party organization defines and maintains its own tax exceptions. For tax processing, the tax determination process uses only the tax exceptions owned by the specific first-party organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overrides</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set up tax configuration options when you create a tax regime or when you create a party tax profile for a first-party legal entity or business unit. Both setup flows display and maintain the same party or regime definitions. Specify effective start and end dates to identify which configuration should be used based on the transaction date. You can enable the business unit so that Oracle Fusion Tax automatically uses the configuration of the legal entity. Once you set this option the application records the date it occurred as the start date. This date is used and compared to the transaction dates to identify if the application uses the legal entity subscription in preference to the subscription of the business unit. The specific first-party legal entity that is used is defined by the legal entity associated with the transaction.

Existing Tax Option
Copy a tax from an existing tax in the Manage Taxes page to share tax registrations and tax jurisdictions. This will create two versions of the same tax, owned by two different tax configuration owners each with their own tax statuses, tax rates, and tax rules. For example, this is useful when you set up US sales and use tax that requires a significant number of tax registrations and tax jurisdictions.

Using External Tax Partner Offerings
Oracle ERP Cloud integration is currently available with comprehensive transaction tax management solutions provided by tax partners for tax content, tax calculation, and tax reporting. You can leverage these partner transaction tax solutions independently or together based on different transaction tax requirements across market segments and industries.

Individual tax partners can offer transaction tax solutions in the following areas:

Tax Partner Content
- Offerings may include geographies, tax jurisdictions, tax rates, and taxability rules for products and services.
- Updates are available on a periodic basis for statute changes.

Tax Partner Calculation
- Cloud-to-Cloud integration of the Oracle ERP Cloud and a Partner Tax Application Cloud for performing transaction tax calculation.
- Neither tax software nor tax integration components are required on the Oracle ERP Cloud.
- Streamlined data flow between Oracle ERP

Tax Partner Reporting
- Signature ready returns for automatic transaction tax filings in specific countries.
- Tax partner can manage the entire tax compliance function from tax returns generation to payment remittances.

The following table lists cases of customer implementations using tax partner offerings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tax Implementation Variation</th>
<th>Customer Tax Solution Uptake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1: Partner Tax Content + Oracle Fusion Tax Calculation</td>
<td>Case 1 uptake:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Partner Rapid Implementation Content (Geographies, Tax Rates, Taxability Rules, or a combination of these content areas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Oracle Fusion Tax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2: Partner Tax Content + Partner Tax Reporting + Oracle Fusion Tax Calculation</td>
<td>Case 2 uptake:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Partner Rapid Implementation Content (Geographies, Tax Rates, Taxability Rules, or a combination of these content areas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Partner Automatic Tax Returns Generation using BI Publisher Extracts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 However, each individual tax partner is different with regard to specific transaction tax solutions they can offer and tax implementation cases that they can fulfill in practice.

You must follow up with an individual tax partner to understand the level of coverage and capabilities of their respective transaction tax offerings, including any prerequisite configuration.

Content Subscriptions: Critical Choices
You can select which of the following tax content subscription options to use to optimize your tax setup:

- Subscribe to the content provided by a tax partner or use the content created directly in Oracle Fusion Tax.
- The type of tax configuration options to use.
- When to manage and apply tax configuration using business units versus legal entities.
- When to use create from an existing tax option.

Using a Tax Partner Content Subscription Versus Oracle Fusion Tax Content
Use the tax content of an external tax partner for the following instances:

- When you need the tax content for a significant number of tax jurisdictions.
- When you want a tax partner to automatically update the content for statutory changes on a recurring basis.
- When you need to automate the upload of content to minimize user intervention.

You can use the content provided by a tax partner in the following scenarios:

Content Scenario 1: Partner Tax Content + Oracle Fusion Tax Calculation
Content Scenario 2: Partner Tax Content + Partner Tax Calculation

Note: Not all tax partners support both scenarios. Even if an individual tax partner supports a specific scenario, the level of depth and geographic scope of partner tax content provided varies between individual tax partners. You must follow up with an individual tax partner to understand the level of coverage and capabilities of all transaction tax offerings provided, including the tax content.

Using Tax Configuration Options
Create and maintain your tax content in Oracle Fusion Tax in the following cases:

- If you decide not to use an external tax partner to provide the content.
- If you can create the required content for the geographic operations of your business.

In both cases, when you subscribe or assign a business unit or legal entity to a tax regime, you must select the level of tax configuration options that apply in this context. Sharing the tax content prevents the need for duplicate maintenance with its inefficiencies and potential inconsistencies.

The following table lists scenarios and options:
Scenario | Option
--- | ---
You have a single central corporate tax center responsible for maintenance of tax setup for all legal entities and business units. | Use the common configuration with party override option. This allows a single tax setup to be created and maintained by the corporate tax center.

You need strict control over who can maintain the tax content. | Use the common configuration option. By not allowing party override, you restrict the access to the global configuration owner to an authorized user who can maintain all of the tax content.

You have regional centers responsible for tax content. | Use the parent first party configuration with party override option. This permits a regional setup with an actual or logical parent legal entity to be created and maintained by each regional center.

Even if there is no obvious need to share tax configuration, for example, there is only a single first party legal entity operating in each tax regime, significant business events such as takeovers or mergers may mean that there could be a future need to share content. In this case, the original first party legal entity can act as the configuration owner and then any subsequent first party can subscribe to the first party’s content using the parent first party configuration with party override. Alternatively, set up the original tax content using global configuration owner to prepare for any future business event that requires tax content to be shared.

Changing from Business Unit to Using Tax Configuration at the First Party Legal Entity
If you standardize your tax setup across all business units for a given legal entity, consider configuring and using tax setup at the legal entity level. Set the **Use subscription of the legal entity** option on the business unit party tax profile. Oracle Fusion Tax records the date this occurs and compares it to the transaction date to identify if the legal entity subscription should be used in preference to the subscription to the business unit subscription.

> **Important:** If the Use subscription of the legal entity option is used on the business unit party tax profile, it is an irrevocable election. Ensure that this type of configuration approach meets your business needs on a permanent basis. If you are not sure, you can subscribe or assign the business unit to a tax regime and select not to set the Use subscription of the legal entity option on the business unit party tax profile. The business unit subscription approach is more common, but you must evaluate your requirements.

Using Create from an Existing Tax Option
Create a tax from an existing tax when you need to share tax jurisdictions and tax registrations. Maintain the tax jurisdictions and tax registrations once for taxes with the same name within the same tax regime owned by different configuration owners.

How Tax Configuration Options are Used in the Tax Determination Process
At transaction time, the owner of the transaction derives the configuration options that are used.

When you enter a transaction for a given first-party organization, the tax data applied to that transaction is determined by the:

- Configurations defined for the combination of that first-party organization (business unit or first-party legal entity)
- Tax regime derived from the addresses or from the tax classification codes used on the transaction

**Settings That Affect the Application of Tax Data on Transactions**
Use tax content subscriptions to define which configuration owner’s setup is used for transactions for a specific first-party legal entity or business unit for a specific tax regime. Also, use tax content subscriptions to specify whether any shared content can be overridden by the subscribing party to allow unique, separate setup for certain tax content.
Tax content subscription options are:

- Common configuration
- Party-specific configuration
- Common configuration with party overrides
- Parent first-party organization with party overrides

**How Tax Data Is Determined**

Based on the defaults and tax rules you have defined, tax data is applied to transactions as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration for Taxes and Rules Option</th>
<th>Tax Content Available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Common configuration                     | - The tax determination process uses only the tax content owned by the global configuration owner.  
- If you manually override tax information on the transaction, only the tax content owned by the global configuration owner is displayed in the list of valid values available. |
| Party-specific configuration              | - The tax determination process uses only the tax content owned by the first-party organization, business unit or first party legal entity, for whom the transaction is being entered.  
- If you manually override tax information on the transaction, only the tax content owned by the first-party organization is displayed in the list of valid values available. |
| Common configuration with party overrides | - The tax determination process uses any tax content owned by the first party for whom the transaction is being entered. In the absence of tax content owned by that first-party organization, the tax determination process uses tax content owned by the global configuration owner.  
- If you manually override tax information on the transaction, both the override tax content owned by the specific first party and the tax content owned by the global configuration owner that you have not overridden are displayed in the list of valid values available. |
| Parent first-party organization with party overrides | - The tax determination process uses any tax content owned by the first party for whom the transaction is being entered. In the absence of tax content owned by the first-party organization, the tax determination process uses tax content owned by the parent first-party organization.  
- If you manually override tax information on the transaction, both the override tax content owned by the specific first party and the tax content owned by the designated parent first-party organization that you haven’t overridden are displayed in the list of valid values available. |

If you are using product exceptions, those exceptions are applied to the transactions as shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration for Product Exceptions</th>
<th>Tax Exceptions Available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common configuration</td>
<td>The tax determination process uses only the tax exceptions defined and maintained by the global configuration owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
<td>The tax determination process uses only the tax exceptions owned by the specific first-party organization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set Up Tax Configuration Options
This example demonstrates how you set up the appropriate tax configuration options for your company that has three regional centers. These centers are responsible for tax setup and maintenance among other corporate activities. Each of these regional corporate centers is associated with a first-party legal entity and business unit.

Your company has their regional centers in:

- North America (NAM), based in Redwood City, California, US
- Asian and Pacific (APAC), based in Melbourne, Australia
- Europe, Middle East, and Africa (EMEA), based in London, UK

Each country has a single first-party legal entity with a single business unit, except for:

- Countries with the regional corporate centers have a first-party legal entity and business unit for each corporate center.
- Sales, marketing, and manufacturing organization have a first-party legal entity and business unit.

Create tax regimes for each country and the appropriate tax configuration options.

Prerequisites
To create the appropriate tax configurations, you must set up the following:

1. The legal entities for:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First-Party Legal Entity</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMEA LE</td>
<td>UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB LE</td>
<td>UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR LE</td>
<td>FR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE LE</td>
<td>DE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APAC LE</td>
<td>AU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU LE</td>
<td>AU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI LE</td>
<td>SI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZ LE</td>
<td>NZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAM LE</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US LE</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. The sales, marketing, and manufacturing organization’s business unit uses the tax configuration of the legal entity.
3. The relevant tax regimes for each country’s tax include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Tax Regime</th>
<th>Tax</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMEA</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>GB VAT</td>
<td>GB VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMEA</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>FR VAT</td>
<td>FR VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMEA</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>DE VAT</td>
<td>DE VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APAC</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>AU GST</td>
<td>AU GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APAC</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>SI VAT</td>
<td>SI VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APAC</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>NZ VAT</td>
<td>NZ VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAM</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>US SALES TAX</td>
<td>US STATE SALES TAX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAM</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>CA HST and GST</td>
<td>CA HST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting Up Tax Configuration Options**

1. On the Create Legal Entity Tax Profile page, select EMEA LE in the Legal Entity field. In the Configuration Options tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>GB VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Click **Save and Create Another**.

2. Select GB LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>GB VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Parent first-party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>EMEA LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

3. Select FR LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>FR VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Parent first-party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>EMEA LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

4. Select DE LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>DE VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Parent first party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>EMEA LE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Click **Save and Create Another**.

5. Select APAC LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>AU GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

6. Select AU LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>AU GST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Parent first party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Product Exceptions</td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent First-Party Organization</td>
<td>APAC LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Start Date</td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

7. Select SI LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tax Regime Code</td>
<td>SI VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</td>
<td>Parent first party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. Select NZ LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tax Regime Code</strong></td>
<td>NZ VAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</strong></td>
<td>Parent first party with party overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration for Product Exceptions</strong></td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parent First-Party Organization</strong></td>
<td>APAC LE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective Start Date</strong></td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

9. Select NAM LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tax Regime Code</strong></td>
<td>US SALES TAX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration for Taxes and Rules</strong></td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration for Product Exceptions</strong></td>
<td>Party-specific configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parent First-Party Organization</strong></td>
<td>Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective Start Date</strong></td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click **Save and Create Another**.

10. Select US LE in the **Legal Entity** field. In the **Configuration Options** tab enter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuration for Product Exceptions</strong></td>
<td>Parent first-party organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parent First-Party Organization</strong></td>
<td>Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective Start Date</strong></td>
<td>01-Jan-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**External Tax Partner Integration in Procurement**

**Set Up External Tax Partner Integration for Procurement: Explained**
You can set up a third-party, external tax partner to compute taxes on purchase requisitions and purchase orders.

To set up integration with an external tax partner you must configure tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area, under the Financials offering’s Transactional Tax functional area. For detailed information about configuring the external tax partner setup, refer to the External Tax Partner Integrations chapter of the Oracle Financials Cloud Implementing Tax guide, available on the Oracle Help Center.

When the external tax partner integration is set up, the external tax partner integration service is called to provide tax calculations for the following procurement flows where the Oracle Fusion tax engine is usually called.

- Purchase Request web service
• Requisition import
• Online requisition flows
• Purchase Order web service
• Purchase Order import
• Online purchase order flows
• Retroactive pricing

Related Topics
• Overview of External Tax Partner Integrations
• Oracle Fusion Tax Configuration for External Tax Partner Calculation: Points to Consider
• Creating Tax Setup Using Tax Partner Content in the Tax Configuration Workbook: Worked Example

Inclusive and Exclusive Taxes in Procurement

Configure Inclusive Tax Calculation for Purchasing
As an administrator you can enable and set up inclusive tax calculation for purchase orders.

Normally the price entered on a purchase order line is considered as the item price and excludes all taxes. Applicable taxes are calculated on top of the line or schedule amount.

In some countries, tax authority guidelines require transaction taxes to be calculated and tracked as part of the pricing in your transactions. You can enable and set up the Inclusive Tax Handling in Procure to Pay Flows feature to implement inclusive tax calculation and tracking on purchase orders processed in Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning Cloud.

Enable Inclusive Tax Handling in Procure to Pay Flows
In the Offerings work area, enable the Inclusive Tax Handling in Procure to Pay Flow feature in the Financials functional area.

Perform Additional Setup for Inclusive Tax
Typically, transaction taxes, inclusive and exclusive taxes, tax rates and tax rules are set up by the Tax Administrator in the Financials offering’s Transaction Tax functional area. For details, refer to the Oracle Financials Cloud Implementing Tax guide, available on the Oracle Help Center.

A procurement-specific tax setup worth noting is to enable the inclusive tax option for a business unit's or legal entity's purchase orders. To enable the option, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use Manage Configuration Owner Tax Options in the Transaction Tax functional area.

1. On the Manage Configuration Owner Tax options page, search using these criteria:
   - Configuration Owner: Enter the business unit or legal entity.
   - Application Name: Select Purchasing.
   - Event Class: Select Purchase Order and Agreement for Enterprise Tax.
2. In the results, select the record and click View Tax Options.
3. On the Configuration Owner Tax Options page, select the check box for Inclusive Treatment for Calculated Tax.

Related Topics
• Inclusive and Exclusive Tax Information in Purchase Orders: Explained
• Configuring Offerings: Procedure

• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

FAQs for Define Tax Regimes

What’s a service subscription?
You can use a service subscription to reference a specific transaction tax offering or offerings provided by an external tax partner. The transaction tax offering provided by an external tax partner can be related to content, calculation services, or both. Oracle Fusion Tax supports the use of transaction tax offerings provided by external tax partners for transaction tax calculation processing. Depending on the specific depth and scope of an individual tax partner’s offerings, you can use either Oracle Fusion Tax or a Partner Tax Application to perform the transaction tax calculation.

Why are controls and defaults important?
Throughout Oracle Fusion Tax care is taken to minimize your effort in creating setup. One way of doing this is the extensive use of defaulting so that you can enter your data once and use the defaults that appear on the subordinate or child records where applicable. For example, many values you enter on the tax regime appear as defaults on each tax that is associated to that tax regime. Generally, you can override the data where necessary if the defaulted value isn’t correct.

Also, to ensure maximum flexibility, as well as to ensure that the accuracy and integrity of the data and transactions are maintained, Oracle Fusion Tax makes extensive use of data-driven controls that enable and control how tax functionality works. For example, you have the requirement to set up tax recovery for value-added tax (VAT) processing. Enable the Allow tax recovery option on the tax record so you can set up tax recovery rates for this type of tax.

Manage Payment Terms

Payment Terms: Explained

Payment terms are used to automatically create invoice installments. You can define payment terms to create multiple installments and multiple levels of discounts.

Payment terms consist of one or more lines, each of which creates one invoice installment. When you define a payment term, you can specify either percentages or fixed amounts. A payment term line can have up to three discounts. Each line and corresponding installment have a due date and up to three discount dates. Each line and corresponding installment also have due or discount amounts. You can assign a payment term to one or more sets to share that payment term across business units.
This figure shows the components of a payment term.

Payment Term Line

- Discount 1
- Discount 2
- Discount 3

Tip: If you change the payment terms on an invoice, the installments are automatically recalculated and you must reenter any manual adjustments made previously.

Payment Terms Due Dates and Discount Dates

Payment terms due dates and discount dates are based on one of the following methods:

- **Fixed Date**: A specific day, month, and year that an installment is due for payment.
- **Days**: A number of days added to the invoice terms date.
- **Calendar**: A Payables calendar that's divided into periods. You can assign a due date to the period that includes the invoice terms date. You can assign due dates to avoid weekends, holidays, and so on. You can't assign calendar-based terms to an invoice if a period isn't defined for the terms date.
- **Day of Month**: A type of payment term with the following attributes:
  - **Day of Month**: A specific day of the month when an installment is due for payment. For example, enter 15 to schedule payment on the fifteenth day of the month. Enter 31 to schedule payment for the last day of the month, including months with less than 31 days.
  - **Cutoff Day**: The day of the month after which the installment due and discount dates advance to a future month. If you don't specify a cutoff day, the current accounting month is used to determine due and discount dates.
  - **Months Ahead**: The number that's used to determine the month the installment is due. If you enter 0 and the terms date is the same as, or later than, the cutoff day, the installment is due the following month.

For example, a payment term has a **Cutoff Day** of 11, the **Day of Month** is 15, and **Months Ahead** is 0. If you enter an invoice with a terms date of January 12, the installment is due February 15. If you enter an
invoice with a terms date of January 10, the installment is due January 15. If the terms date is January 12 and **Months Ahead** is set to 1, the installment is due March 15.

**Note:** Only due dates, not discount dates, can be based on a calendar.

**Default Payment Terms**

If you enter an **Identifying PO** on an invoice, the purchase order provides the default payment terms for the invoice. If you don’t enter an **Identifying PO**, the supplier site provides the default payment terms. If the supplier site doesn’t have payment terms, the payment terms from the Manage Invoice Options page are used. You can override the default payment terms on any invoice.

This figure shows how payment terms flow to the invoice.

---

**Related Topics**

- Invoice Installments: How They’re Recalculated
- What’s a Payables calendar
- Payment Terms and Reference Data Sharing: Explained
- Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods
Manage Payment Terms

You can define payment terms for use by your organization in purchasing transactions.

Create a Payment Term

To create a payment term and create discounts for the term, follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Payment Terms task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
2. On the Manage Payment Terms page, click the Create icon.
3. On the Create Payment Terms page, enter a Name. For example, ABC Net 90.
4. Enter a Description. For example, Net in 90 days. Discounts for net in 30 or 60 days.
5. Enter a From Date and To Date.
6. Click the Add icon for Installments.
7. In the Installments table enter your payment due terms: For example, for Due enter 100, and for Days enter 90.
8. In the Discount region under the First Discount table header enter your term discount: For example, for Discount enter 10, and for Days enter 30.
9. In the Discount region under the Second Discount table header enter your term discount: For example, for Discount enter 5, and for Days enter 60.
10. In the Set Assignments table click the Add icon to create a new row.
11. Enter your Set Code. For example, COMMON.
12. Click Save and Close.

Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Manage Units of Measure

How Units of Measure, Unit of Measure Classes, and Base Units of Measure Relate to Each Other

Units of measure, unit of measure classes, and base units of measure are used for tracking, moving, storing, and counting items.
The following graphic shows that the unit of measure class named ‘Quantity’ contains the units of measure: Box of 8, Box of 4, and Each. The unit of measure named Each is assigned as the base unit of measure.

**Units of Measure Classes**

Units of measure classes represent groups of units of measure with similar characteristics such as area, weight, or volume.

**Units of Measure**

Units of measure are used by a variety of functions and transactions to express the quantity of items. Each unit of measure you define must belong to a unit of measure class.

**Base Units of Measure**

Each unit of measure class has a base unit of measure. The base unit of measure is used to perform conversions between units of measure in the class. The base unit of measure should be representative of the other units of measure in the class, and must be the smallest unit. For example, you could use CU (cubic feet) as the base unit of measure for a unit of measure class called Volume.
Assigning Base Units of Measure to Unit of Measure Classes: Examples

Each unit of measure class must have a base unit of measure.

Scenario

This table lists examples of unit of measure classes, the units of measure in each unit of measure class, and base unit of measure. Note that each base unit of measure is the smallest unit of measure in its unit of measure class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit of Measure Class</th>
<th>Units of Measure</th>
<th>Base Unit of Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>dozen</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>box</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>each</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>pound</td>
<td>gram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kilogram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>hour</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>cubic feet</td>
<td>cubic inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cubic centimeters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cubic inches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Defining Unit of Measure Standard Conversions: Examples

A unit of measure standard conversion specifies the conversion factor by which the unit of measure is equivalent to the base unit of measure.

Scenario

This table lists examples of unit of measure classes, one unit of measure included in each class, the base unit of measure for the unit of measure class, and the conversion factor defined for the unit of measure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit of Measure Class</th>
<th>Unit of Measure</th>
<th>Base Unit of Measure</th>
<th>Conversion Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>dozen</td>
<td>each</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FAQs for Units of Measure

What's a unit of measure standard conversion?

A unit of measure standard conversion defines the factor by which the unit of measure is equivalent to the base unit of measure, that you defined for the unit of measure class. Defining a unit of measure standard conversion allows you to perform transactions in units other than the primary unit of measure of the item being transacted. The standard unit of measure conversion is used for an item if an item-specific unit of measure conversion has not been defined.

What's a UOM interclass conversion?

A UOM interclass conversion defines the conversion between the source base unit of measure ("From Base UOM") in one unit of measure class ("From Class") and the destination base unit of measure ("To Base UOM") in a different unit of measure class ("To Class").

For example, the item is gasoline. The From Base UOM (of the From Class called "volume") is liters. The To Base UOM (of the To Class called "quantity") is Barrels. The conversion is 158.76 liters (volume) to 1 barrel of oil (quantity).

You cannot create the interclass and intraclass conversions when building the standard conversions. The UOM must be defined prior to creating Items. Items must be defined prior to creating interclass or intraclass conversions.

What's a UOM intraclass conversion?

A UOM intraclass conversion specifies the conversion between a unit of measure (the "From UOM") and the base unit of measure of the same class.

For example, the item is soda pop. The unit of measure class is Quantity. The From UOM is Case (CS). The base unit of measure is Each (EA). The conversion is 24, to specify that 1 CS = 24 EA.

Define Corporate Procurement Cards
Options for Creating Corporate Cards

You can create corporate cards in two ways. You can choose either of the following actions at different points in time or you can do both at the same time:

- Automatic corporate card creation
- Manual corporate card creation

**Automatic Corporate Card Creation**

Automatic corporate card creation applies only to corporate cards that are issued to employees and used primarily for travel expenses. New employees are typically given new corporate cards, but the information on the cards isn’t manually entered into the application at that time.

You can create corporate cards automatically by selecting an employee matching rule for new cards on the Upload Rules tab of the Create Corporate Card Program page. Then, when the corporate card transaction file containing transactions for the new card is uploaded to Expenses for the first time, the corporate card transaction upload and validation process uses the matching rule to match the new corporate card to the new employee.

Using the specified employee matching rule, the application automatically enters the transaction data for the new corporate card and associates it with the applicable employee. If the employee matching rule fails to identify a match, the application leaves the corporate card unassigned.

> **Note:** If desirable, each corporate card program can have a different matching rule.

> **Tip:** To reduce or eliminate manual effort, automatic corporate card creation is recommended.

**Manual Corporate Card Creation**

You can manually create corporate cards for employees in the Create Corporate Card dialog box where you enter the following data:

- Corporate card program
- Company account name
- Token or masked card number
- Employee name and number
- Expiration date
- Maximum amount per transaction: Applicable for procurement cards only
- Maximum amount per billing period: Applicable for procurement cards only

> **Note:** Manual creation of corporate cards is the exception, rather than the rule. Corporate cards are company account-specific. For example, if an employee transfers to another organization within your company and the organization belongs to another company account, you must create the corporate card again with the applicable company account name.

**Related Topics**

- How can I configure corporate card issuers
- What’s a corporate card program
Define Common Payables and Procurement Options

Common Options for Payables and Procurement: Critical Choices

For invoice business units, you can set options common to the procure-to-pay business flow on the Manage Common Options for Payables and Procurement page.

The common options are grouped into the following categories:

- Default distributions
- Automatic offsets
- Currency conversion
- Expense accruals
- Self-billed invoices
- Legal entity information

Default Distributions

Default distributions are used to define accounts for payables transaction accounting.

Note: You can also specify some default distributions for a supplier on the Edit Site page.

Offset Segments

If you enter invoices for expenses or asset purchases with more than one primary balancing segment value, consider using automatic offsets. Automatic offsets balance accounting entries for Oracle Fusion Payables transactions. If you don't use automatic offsets, an invoice transaction has a single liability accounting entry and a payment transaction has a single cash accounting entry.

Currency Conversion

This table describes the options you can set for currency conversion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require conversion rate entry</td>
<td>If enabled, you must provide a conversion rate whenever you enter an invoice or a payment in a currency other than the ledger currency. If you maintain daily rates, the rate is automatically supplied based on the date and rate type that you enter. If daily rates don't exist for that date and rate type, you can't enter or save the transaction. If the conversion rate type is User, then you must enter a conversion rate. You can't create accounting entries for, or pay foreign currency invoices without conversion rates. If you don't enable this option, you can enter conversion rates manually on invoices and payments, or submit the Apply Missing Conversion Rates process. When you create a bills payable document, you must still provide a maturity rate, rate type, and date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion rate type</td>
<td>This setting provides the default conversion rate type when you enter invoices or create payments. You can change the conversion rate type at invoice entry or payment creation time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Define Common Procurement Configuration

#### Realized Gain or Loss Distributions
These distributions represent the default realized gain and loss accounts for payments from each of your bank accounts. If the conversion rate changes between invoice entry and payment time, the realized gain or loss is automatically calculated and recorded to these accounts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Realized Gain or Loss Distributions</td>
<td>These distributions represent the default realized gain and loss accounts for payments from each of your bank accounts. If the conversion rate changes between invoice entry and payment time, the realized gain or loss is automatically calculated and recorded to these accounts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Expense Accruals
Determine when to accrue for expense items.

#### Self-Billed Invoices
This table lists the options for self-billed invoices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gapless invoice numbering</td>
<td>You can enable gapless, that is, no breaks in numbering, invoice number generation for your buying organization during pay on receipt processing. You can enable gapless numbering for the entire business unit with this setting or limit it to a supplier site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying Company Identifier</td>
<td>A unique identifier that’s included in the invoice number created by the pay on receipt process and in the debit memo number from returned receipts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Legal Entity Information
This table describes the options for legal entity information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VAT Registration Member State</td>
<td>If your company operates in a member state of the European Union, select the country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAT Registration Number</td>
<td>If your company operates in a member state of the European Union, enter the value-added tax (VAT) registration number for your organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill-to Location</td>
<td>Enter the bill-to location to provide default values. The application uses the bill-to location to derive legal entity information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* You can use the Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheet task to automate common options setup.

**Related Topics**
- Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheets
- How Charts of Accounts, Ledgers, Legal Entities, and Business Units Are Created Using Spreadsheets
- Default Distributions: Explained
- Automatic Offsets: Explained
- Accruing Expense Items: Critical Choices
Manage Procurement Document Numbering

Define Procurement Document Numbering

Organizations need the ability to define procurement document numbers based on document type. The sequence may differ by legal entity or business unit. Here are some considerations when defining a document numbering sequence.

If a document number sequence is not defined in advance, the application creates it when the first transaction is created for that document type and legal entity or business unit combination. The application starts the document number with 1.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement offering, use the Manage Procurement Document Numbering task in the Procurement Foundation functional area to define procurement document numbering.

Determinant Type

Document numbers are typically based on the sold-to legal entity, the procurement business unit, or the requisition business unit. On the Manage Procurement Document Numbering page this is the Determinant Type.

The determinant type is fixed for a given document type. This table lists procurement document types and their respective determinant types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document Type</th>
<th>Determinant Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase Order</td>
<td>Sold-to Legal Entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchase Agreement</td>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requisition</td>
<td>Requisitioning BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negotiation</td>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiative</td>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification</td>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Determinant Value

You can define a unique document number sequence for a combination of document type, determinant type and the determinant value, where determinant value represents a specific legal entity or business unit.

Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy

Create a Procurement Category Hierarchy

As a procurement application administrator you can set up a procurement category hierarchy. A procurement category hierarchy is a grouping of purchasing categories which maps how your organization categorizes spend. By setting up a procurement category hierarchy, you gain the ability to use the nonitem categories from the hierarchy to set up:

- Transaction approval rules
- Account generation rules
- Business intelligence reports on the Requisitions, Purchasing and Sourcing subject areas

**Note:** A procurement category hierarchy is not the same entity as a catalog category hierarchy. The structure of the two can be the same, but do not have to be the same. Each hierarchy can be configured differently to meet the needs of your organization. Also, a procurement category hierarchy is not the same entity as a supplier products and services hierarchy.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy task in the Procurement Foundation functional area to create a procurement category hierarchy.

1. On the Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy page, you can perform these actions to build a hierarchy:
   - Create browsing categories
   - Insert item categories
   - Edit, move or delete categories

2. To create a browsing category:
   a. Highlight an existing category in the hierarchy.
   b. Click the **Create** button or select **Create** from the Actions menu.
   c. On the Create Browsing Category dialog, enter a name and description and click **Save**.

3. To insert an item category:
   a. Highlight an existing category in the hierarchy.
   b. Click the **Insert Item Category** button or select **Insert Item Category** from the Actions menu.
   c. On the Select and Add: Item Categories dialog, search for and select the item category from the existing list.

**Note:** To create additional item categories for insertion into the procurement category hierarchy, use the Manage Functional Area Catalogs task. You can find the task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Purchasing Categories functional area. You can also find the task in the Catalogs functional area.

**Related Topics**
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
Use the Procurement Category Hierarchy in Approval Rules, Account Generation and Reporting

You can use a procurement category hierarchy to set up transaction approval rules, account generation, and reporting.

Approval Rules

You can set up approval rule conditions using up to the top 10 levels of categories in a procurement category hierarchy.

For example, this graphic shows four levels of categories for IT level spend.

![Image of a procurement category hierarchy]

If you have approval policies that apply to all hardware categories, you need only one rule condition applied to the highest hardware category level in the hierarchy. For example, you might set up an approval rule where if the procurement category hierarchy equals level 2 hardware, then route a requisition to the information technology approval group for approvals. This way, you do not need separate approval policies for the lower levels (notebooks and standard laptops). In this example, any changes you make to the categories below hardware would not affect the approval policy rule because everything rolls up to hardware.

You can use procurement category hierarchies for approvals of requisitions, purchasing documents, and negotiation approval tasks.

Account Generation

You can also use a procurement category hierarchy for deriving accounts. You can use the top 10 levels of categories for account mapping sets. Using the same example hierarchy, you might set the input source to be based on hierarchy level 2.
hardware, and set the mapping to hardware to derive an account. In that case, any categories or items that roll up to level 2 hardware can then use the mapped account.

You can use a predefined, delivered mapping set to derive natural account segments based on the requisitioning business unit and procurement category hierarchy level 1.

**Reporting**

You can also use the category dimension to create business intelligence reports, based on the top 10 levels of a procurement category hierarchy. The category dimension is available in the reporting subject areas for requisitions, purchasing documents, and negotiations.

**Use Procurement Category Hierarchies in Approval Rules**

This example shows how to use a procurement category hierarchy to set up an approval rule for purchase orders for hardware and software.

Use a procurement category hierarchy having the level 2 category, Information Technology, to set up an approval rule. Set up the approval rule to route hardware and software purchases to the information technology (IT) approval group. This table summarizes key decisions to consider, and the decisions made for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to set up an approval rule for requisitions, purchase orders or negotiations?</td>
<td>Set up an approval rule for purchase orders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have an existing approval group for your IT organization?</td>
<td>Assume an approval group named IT Approvals exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have an existing procurement category hierarchy to use?</td>
<td>Assume the example procurement category hierarchy is set up and available for use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What procurement category hierarchy level do you want to use for the rule?</td>
<td>In this example, use the level 2 category Information Technology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example Procurement Category Hierarchy**

The example procurement category hierarchy has the following levels:

- No level number: Root
- Level 1, under Root: Indirect spending.
- Level 2, under Indirect: Marketing, IT, and Legal Services
- Level 3 item categories, under IT: Software, Hardware, and Peripherals
This figure illustrates the structure of the example procurement category hierarchy for information technology purchases.

\[\text{Root}\]
\[\text{Indirect (Level 1)}\]
\[\text{Marketing (Level 2)}\]
\[\text{IT (Level 2)}\]
\[\text{Legal Services (Level 2)}\]
\[\text{Software (Item category)}\]
\[\text{Hardware (Level 3)}\]
\[\text{Peripherals (Item category)}\]
\[\ldots\]

\[\text{Note:}\] You can create more than 10 levels under the root category of a procurement category hierarchy. You can only set up approvals based on the top 10 levels.
Prerequisites

This example assumes the following prerequisites setups are completed.

1. A procurement category hierarchy has been created in the Setup and Maintenance work area using the Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
2. An IT approval group has been created in the Setup and Maintenance work area using the Manage Approval Groups task in the Approval Management functional area.

Creating the Approval Rule

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Purchasing Document Approvals task in the Approval Management functional area.
2. On the Manage Purchasing Document Approvals page, select an approval stage for your rule. For example, select the stage Post Approval First Responder Wins. This table lists the attributes for the stage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Routing</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voting Regime</td>
<td>First Responder Wins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click the Edit Rules button to open the Edit Approval Rules page.
4. In the Rules section, Actions list, select Create. Give the rule a name such as IT Approvals.
5. In the IT Approvals Details section add a condition stating “Procurement Category Hierarchy Level 2 Equals Information Technology.” Complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Procurement Category Hierarchy Level 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operator</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Information Technology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. In the Actions section, click the Add Action button. Complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action Type</td>
<td>Approval Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route Using</td>
<td>IT Approval Group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Click Save.
Use a Procurement Category Hierarchy to Set Up an Account Mapping

This example shows how to use a procurement category hierarchy to set up an account mapping. The mapping derives an account for purchases of hardware and software.

Use a procurement category hierarchy having the level 2 category, Information Technology, to set up an account mapping set for purchases of computer hardware. This table summarizes key decisions to consider, and the decisions made for this scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions to Consider</th>
<th>In This Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you have an existing procurement category hierarchy to use?</td>
<td>Assume the example hierarchy exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What procurement category hierarchy level do you want to use for the mapping?</td>
<td>In this example use the level 2 category Information Technology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have an account set up that you can use in the mapping?</td>
<td>In this example assume the account Purchasing Computer Hardware exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does your organization have an account combination in the Chart of Accounts that you can use in the mapping?</td>
<td>In this example assume that it does.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example Procurement Category Hierarchy

The example procurement category hierarchy has the following levels:

- No level number: Root
- Level 1, under Root: Indirect spending.
- Level 2, under Indirect: Marketing, IT, and Legal Services
- Level 3 item categories, under IT: Software, Hardware, and Peripherals
This figure illustrates the structure of the example procurement category hierarchy.

Note: You can create more than 10 levels of categories under the root category. You can only set up account mapping sets based on the top 10 levels.
Prerequisites

This example assumes the following prerequisites setups are completed.

1. A procurement category hierarchy has been created, in the Setup and Maintenance work area using the Manage Procurement Category Hierarchy setup task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
2. Accounts have been created in the Chart of Accounts, using the Define Chart of Accounts task.
3. Account rules have been created, using the Manage Account Rules setup task.

Creating the Account Mapping

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Mapping Sets task in the Procurement Transaction Account Rules functional area.
2. On the Manage Mapping Sets: Purchasing page, click the Create icon.
3. On the Create Mapping Set page, complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Hierarchy Mapping Set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Name</td>
<td>HIERARCHY_MAPPING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Type</td>
<td>Account Combination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. In the Input Sources section, click the Add icon.
5. On the Search and Select Input Sources dialog, complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subledger Application</td>
<td>Purchasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Procurement Category Hierarchy Level 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. On the Create Mapping Set page, in the Input Sources section, the Number field value is populated with 1. The Source value is Procurement Category Hierarchy Level 2.
7. In the Chart of Accounts section, click the Add icon.
8. In the Chart of Accounts field, select an account from the list of values. For example, Purchasing Computer Hardware.
9. In the Mapping section, click the Add icon. Complete the fields as shown in this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Input</td>
<td>Enter the exact category name. For example, Information Technology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output</td>
<td>Click the Output icon. In the dialog enter the chart of accounts values for your account combination: Company, Department, Account, Sub-Account, and Product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Click OK, and then click Save.
How can I use the procurement category hierarchy to create reports?

Use the Reports and Analysis work area to create a business intelligence report. You can use the Category dimension to set up reports based on the levels of the procurement category hierarchy. The dimension is available in the reporting subject areas for requisitions, purchasing documents, and negotiations.

Note: You can set up reports based on the top 10 levels of a procurement category hierarchy.

What's the difference between the catalog, procurement, and products and services category hierarchies?

A procurement category hierarchy maps how spend is categorized in your organization. Use it when setting up approval rules, deriving spend accounts, and in reports.

A catalog category hierarchy defines the structure for browsing the shopping catalog. Requesters use it when creating purchase requisitions.

A supplier products and services category hierarchy identifies the categories of products of services that suppliers and prospective suppliers can provide. Use it when setting up a supplier profile, in supplier registration, and to identify suppliers to invite to sourcing negotiations.
18 Define Purchasing Configuration

Define Common Purchasing Configuration

Examples of Purchase Order Line Types

These examples demonstrate why the line type feature is an important part of the purchase order. It enables you to clearly differentiate orders for goods from those for services.

Quantity-Based Purchasing

Use quantity-based line types when you want to specify the quantity, unit of measure, and unit price for the items you are ordering. Oracle Fusion Purchasing provides Goods as an initial quantity-based line type. You can modify this line type or create new quantity-based line types to satisfy your business needs.

This table provides an example of a line with the line type Goods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>UOM</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goods</td>
<td>AS54888</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Each</td>
<td>$1,107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fixed Price Services Purchasing

You can use fixed price-based line types when you want to order general business services by a fixed amount. Oracle Fusion Purchasing provides Fixed Price Services as an initial fixed price-based line type. You create an order for fixed price service by selecting a fixed price services line type, category, item description, and total amount of the service. You can receive and match fixed price services by amount.

This table provides an example of a fixed price-based line with the line type of Fixed Price Services.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed Price Services</td>
<td>Office Cleaning</td>
<td>Office Miscellaneous</td>
<td>$1,350</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create Document Style: Critical Choices

You can use purchasing document styles to control the look and feel of a purchasing documents in the application to match their business usage. Through reusable document styles, you can turn on or off various procurement features, thereby simplifying the user interface. In addition, document styles provide the ability to define purchasing document names that align more closely with the naming conventions of your organization's business.

When you create a purchasing document using a document style, disabled features are hidden. For example, if price breaks are not allowed on an agreement document style then agreements using this style will not display the price break region.
Commodities
You can create a document style for a specific commodity such as services. This document style optimizes field labels and presentation for that commodity, thereby simplifying purchase order entry.

Blanket Purchase Agreement
You can enable a document style for use with blanket purchase agreements. This document style could be used to limit the use of price breaks, for example. You can also give a document style a distinctive name. For example, a construction company might name their agreement styles Equipment Agreement and Supply Agreement to easily separate the two types of agreements.

Contract Purchase Agreement
You can enable a document style for use with contract purchase agreements utilizing the naming convention of your organization.

Review the Delivered Document Style for Outside Processing
You can review the delivered document style for use with purchasing documents having outside processing items.
In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Document Styles task in the Procurement Foundation functional area to access the Outside Processing Style document style. Review the delivered settings:

- Status is Active.
- Purchase Basis is Goods.
- Line Types is All. (For Goods only.)
- The Outside Processing value is enabled.
  - The Configurations and Consignment Terms values are not enabled. These three values are mutually exclusive, only one can be enabled in a document style at a time.
- Display names are enabled for Outside Processing Purchase Order, Outside Processing Blanket Agreement, and Outside Processing Contract Agreement.
  - For Outside Processing Blanket Agreement the Price Breaks Allowed value is set to Yes.

You cannot change the delivered Outside Processing Style. If needed, you can create a new document style with a different set of values for outside processing.

Related Topics
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Define a Document Style for Outside Processing
You can create a new document style for purchasing transactions for outside processing items.
You cannot change the delivered document style for purchasing transactions for outside processing items. To define new document styles, use the Manage Document Styles task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
To define a new document style for outside processing:

1. Enter a name and description for the document style, and set the status to Active.
2. Select the Purchase Bases: Goods, Services or Both.
3. Set the Outside Processing Enabled option to Yes.
   
   The Outside Processing Enabled, Consignment Terms Enabled, and Configuration Ordering Enabled options are mutually exclusive. You cannot enable more than one of them in a document style.
4. Set the Line Types: All or Specified.
5. In the Purchase Order section enter the Display Name.
6. In the Blanket Purchase Agreement and Contract Purchase Agreement sections, you can optionally enable the document style for those purchasing document types. Also enter display names for them. For blanket agreements you can also define whether or not price breaks are allowed.

For document styles having outside processing enabled, you cannot disable the Outside Processing Enabled option if any purchasing document is using the style.

Change Order Template: Explained

A change order template is a set of guidelines that enables an organization to specify what constitutes an internal change and what constitutes an external change to a procurement document during the course of its lifecycle.

Some of the document change terminology:

1. External Change Order
2. Internal Change Order

**External Change Order**

This is a type of change order that modifies an attribute or attributes that may be relevant to the supplier as defined in the change order template. Examples include changes to price, amount, or contract terms. This is also referred to as a supplier facing change order. In commercial organizations these types of changes are referred to as an amendment and in a Federal organization they are called MODs or modifications.

**Internal Change Order**

This is a type of change order that modifies an attribute or attributes that may not be relevant to the supplier as defined in the change order template. Examples includes changes to a descriptive flexfield or a certain category of attachments. These are also referred to as administrative changes.

Typically this will be a buyer or requester requested change order. That is a change order requested by a user whose role is either buyer or requester.

What's a purchasing document report template?

The purchasing document report layout is set by a purchasing document report template. The report template determines what information is displayed in the purchasing document report. The template also provides the headers, footers, text, style, and pagination of the printed document.

Your options for report templates include:

- Use one of the delivered report templates.
- Create a report template in RTF format and upload it to Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher (Oracle BI Publisher).
• Copy and configure one of the delivered report templates using Oracle BI Publisher.

You can use the Configure Procurement Business Function task to select a document layout for each purchasing document type. You can find the task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Procurement Foundation functional area.

Related Topics

• Purchasing Document Report
• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Configure Purchasing Document Reports

As a procurement application administrator with the data model developer role, you can copy and configure new versions of the delivered purchasing document report templates. Use the report creation capabilities of Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher Enterprise (Oracle BI Publisher), and Oracle BI Publisher Desktop.

Aspects of copying and configuring delivered purchasing document report templates that are explained in this topic include:

• Report templates.
• Data models.
• General steps to copy and configure a report.

Report Templates

Two predefined purchasing document report templates are delivered: Purchase Order PDF Report and Purchase Agreement PDF Report.

The reports have two main elements:

• Procurement data source.
• Report layout template.

Obtain the delivered report templates in Oracle BI Publisher, using the following path: Catalog/Shared Folders/Procurement.

You can configure new versions of the delivered reports by adding fields to the report layout, to include reporting attributes not shown in the delivered versions, such as:

• Attributes from the delivered data model.
• Additional attributes from tables not available in the delivered data model.

Data Models

Two data models are delivered, one for each purchasing document report: Purchase Order Data Model, and Purchase Agreement Data Model. Obtain them from Oracle BI Publisher, using the following path: Catalog/Shared Folders/Procurement.

Use the data models to:

• See all of the fields that can be included in a report.
• Retrieve fields from other tables that aren’t included in the delivered data models.
• Make changes to the data models for the two purchasing document types independent of each other.
Copy and Configure a Purchasing Document Report

To copy and configure a purchasing document report follow these general steps.

1. Use Oracle BI Publisher to:
   a. Obtain the delivered data model and report template appropriate to the purchasing document type.
   b. Make a copy of them to configure into a new version, preserving the delivered versions unchanged.
   c. Edit the data model and export the XML.
   d. Download the report template.

2. Use Oracle BI Publisher Desktop, in Microsoft Word, to:
   a. Import the data model to the copy of the report template.
   b. Modify the report template to add fields to the report that are not a part of the delivered report.

3. Use Oracle BI Publisher to:
   a. Upload the modified report template to the catalog, making it available to other users.

The modified report template displays in the Configure Procurement Business Function task. You can find the task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Procurement Foundation functional area. For each affected business unit, you can associate the modified report template with the appropriate purchasing document type.

For more information refer to the white paper available on My Oracle Support (MOS): Document Publishing and Communication in Oracle Fusion Purchasing (document ID 1610339.1). The document:

- Provides detailed procedures for using Oracle BI Publisher to copy and configure reports.
- Includes a copy of the delivered XML data model.

Related Topics

- Purchasing Document Report

Assign Buyers using Buyer Assignment Rules

Your organization’s procurement buyers have different sets of expertise. Identifying the best buyer for a purchasing transaction can play a significant role in cost sensitive business procurement. As a procurement manager you can use buyer assignment rules to help with this process.

The application assigns a buyer to a requisition line only if a suggested buyer is not provided by the requester. The application assigns a buyer using the following steps, in order of precedence:

1. Evaluate the buyer assignment rules, as set up in the Manage Buyer Assignment Rules task. Find the task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Purchasing Foundation functional area.
2. Use the default buyer from the item definition in the deliver-to organization of the requisition line. Find the requisition line on the Process Requisitions page, in the Purchase Orders or Purchase Agreements work area.
3. Use the default buyer from the Configure Procurement Business Function task. Find the task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Procurement Foundation functional area.

If the **Use Same Buyer for all Lines in a Requisition** profile option is enabled in the application, the buyer assigned to the first line will also be assigned to all other lines.
Buyer Assignment Rules

As a procurement manager, you can define buyer assignment rules that direct automatic routing of requisition lines to the most appropriate buyer for processing. The application uses the rules to assign buyers to requisition lines, when requisitions you create online or import are submitted for approval.

Define buyer assignment rules using the Manage Buyer Assignment Rules task, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Purchasing Foundation functional area.

These are the choices to consider when creating a buyer assignment rule:

- Rule Sequence
- Requisitioning BU
- Commodity
- Deliver-to Organization
- Project
- Supplier
- Noncatalog Request
- Exceeds Line Amount
- Procurement BU
- Buyer

**Note:** A value for rule sequence, procurement business unit, and buyer are required to create a rule. In addition, either a requisitioning business unit, or a commodity, or both are required.

**Rule Sequence**

Specify a number to control the sequence of evaluation of the rules.

- Rules are evaluated in ascending order of the sequence number.
- The sequence numbers have to be rational numbers (supporting decimals).
- No two rules can have the same sequence number.

**Commodity**

Enter a Commodity that can be either a category or a group of categories. Define commodity-based rules at higher levels to avoid creating rules for each category.

**Deliver-to Organization**

Identify the deliver-to organization of the requisition line. This determines the item definition used to derive the default buyer.

**Project**

Specify the project identification, which the application matches to the requisition distribution. A requisition line is considered a match only if all the distributions have the same project.
Supplier
Enter the supplier, which the application matches to the requisition line.

Noncatalog Request
Indicate whether or not the requisition line is for a noncatalog request.

Related Topics
• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Upload Buyer Assignment Rules
As a procurement manager, you can use spreadsheet processing to manage buyer assignment rules. Use this method when there is a large amount of data to manipulate.

Work with buyer assignment rules spreadsheets using the Manage Buyer Assignment Rules task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Purchasing Foundation functional area.

Using Spreadsheet Processing
To use the spreadsheet, follow these steps.

1. On the Manage Buyer Assignment Rules page, use the Manage in Spreadsheet button to save the spreadsheet file to your local computer. You can also use the Manage in Spreadsheet option from the Actions drop-down list.
2. Once you save the file locally, open and complete the spreadsheet. The spreadsheet includes a worksheet containing instructions and a worksheet for creating and maintaining rules.
3. After completing your entries in the spreadsheet, click Upload to move your changes to the application.
4. The application validates your entries.
   a. View the overall outcome for your upload in the Status column of the spreadsheet.
   b. View highlighted spreadsheet cells for any errors.
5. If there are errors, correct the errors in the spreadsheet and upload again.

Related Topics
• Guidelines for Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks
• Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Configure Approved Supplier Status Validation for Blanket Purchase Agreement Items
As an administrator, you can configure the profile option that prevents submission of a blanket purchase agreement unless the agreement supplier has approved status for the agreement line items that are marked to use only approved suppliers.

To configure the profile option, follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Purchasing Profile Options task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
2. On the Manage Purchasing Profile Options page, in the list of names click the profile option code PO_ASL_VALIDATION_FOR_BPA.
3. In the Search Results: Profile Options section, note the profile option display name is Approved Supplier Validation for Blanket Purchase Agreements.

4. In the PO_ASLS_VALIDATION_FOR_BPA: Profile Values section, select a Profile Value: Yes or No. The default value is Yes.
   - Yes: Blanket purchase agreements are validated to prevent submission unless the agreement supplier has approved status for the agreement line items that are marked to use only approved suppliers.
   - No: Blanket purchase agreements are not validated on submission to ensure the agreement supplier has approved status for the agreement line items that are marked to use only approved suppliers.

5. Click Save.

Related Topics
- Set Profile Option Values

Configure Purchase Order Requested Delivery Date Validation Against Agreement Effective Dates

As an administrator, you can configure a profile option to enable or disable the validation on purchase order submission that the Requested Delivery Date is within the source agreement start and end dates.

To configure the profile option, follow these steps:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, access the Manage Purchasing Profile Options task in the Procurement Foundation functional area.
2. On the Manage Purchasing Profile Options page, in the list of names click the profile option code PO_REQUESTED_DELIVERY_DATE_VALIDATION.
3. In the Search Results: Profile Options section, note the profile option display name is Requested Delivery Date Validation Against Agreement Effective Dates.
4. In the PO_REQUESTED_DELIVERY_DATE_VALIDATION: Profile Values section, select a Profile Value: Yes or No. The default value is Yes.
   - Yes: If a Requested Delivery Date is provided on an order that is sourced against a purchase agreement, there is validation on purchase order submission that the date is within the agreement start and end dates.
   - No: If a Requested Delivery Date is provided on an order that is sourced against a purchase agreement, there is no validation on purchase order submission that the date is within the agreement start and end dates.

5. Click Save.

Related Topics
- Set Profile Option Values

FAQs for Define Common Purchasing Configuration

What's a document style?

Purchase order document styles allow organizations to control the look and feel of the application to match the usage of the purchasing document. Through reusable document styles, organizations can turn on or off various document attributes, thereby simplifying the user interface to fit their business needs.
What's a buyer assignment rule set?
As a procurement manager, you can use rule sets to manage large numbers of assignment rules. Rules that share a common use can be grouped under a name that you can later use to filter search results.
To manage assignment rules, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Buyer Assignment Rule Sets Lookup task in the Purchasing Foundation functional area.

How can I automatically calculate blanket purchase order requested delivery dates?
Opt in to the Automatically Determine Requested Delivery Date Using Agreed Lead Time feature to enable requested delivery date calculation. In the blanket agreement, set the Lead Time Days line attribute. When requisitions are converted to orders, the requested delivery date on the requisition line is compared to the current date plus the Lead Time Days on the agreement line. The later date is used for the requested delivery date on the order.

Define Procurement Configuration Options

Price Break Types
Select the default price break type for blanket purchase agreements using the Configure Procurement Business Function task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional offering.

Cumulative Pricing
Select Cumulative Pricing if you want to choose the price break by adding the current release shipment quantity to the total quantity already released against the purchase agreement line.

\[\text{Note:} \quad \text{Cumulative Pricing cannot be used with global agreements.}\]

Non-Cumulative Pricing
Select Non-Cumulative Pricing if you want to choose the price break by using the individual release shipment quantity of the agreement line.

Choose an Inventory Organization
You can create purchasing documents to replenish goods stocked in an organization's inventory. You can associate each of your procurement business units with one inventory item master organization using the Configure Procurement Business Function task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional offering.

Choosing an Inventory Organization
When you associate your procurement business unit (BU) with an inventory organization, items you define in this BU become available throughout procurement. Do not change the Inventory Organization after you have already assigned one to a procurement BU.
Allow Retroactive Pricing: Critical Choices

Retroactive price updates automatically update existing purchase orders retroactively with price break quantities from the parent blanket agreement.

Open Orders Only
Choose this option to allow retroactive price updates to open orders with no receiving or invoicing activity.

All Orders
Choose this option to allow retroactive price updates to all orders irrespective of whether they have been received or invoiced.

Receipt Close Point: Explained

Used to select the close point, which is when the shipment is closed for receiving: You can override this option for specific items and orders.

Selecting the close point gives you more precise control over when the shipment is accounted for.

Note: The receipt close tolerance percentage must be set in combination with this setting.

Accepted
Ordered goods have passed inspection and are ready for use.

Delivered
Ordered goods have been delivered and are ready for use.

Received
Ordered goods have been received and are ready for use.

Match Approval Level: Critical Choices

A transaction status match combination after which the document may be considered approved for payment.

Note: The invoice match option in the purchase order schedule and the match approval level described here are independent options. The invoice match option determines whether Payables performs invoice matching to the purchase order or the receipt.

Two-Way
Purchase order and invoice quantities must match within tolerance before the corresponding invoice can be paid.

Three-Way
Purchase order, receipt, and invoice quantities must match within tolerance before the corresponding invoice can be paid.
Four-Way
Purchase order, receipt, accepted quantities from inspection, and invoice quantities must match within tolerance before the corresponding invoice can be paid.

Group Requisitions: Critical Choices

During automatic creation of purchase orders from requisitions, use the following options to control how requisition lines are combined on order lines in the new document.

Group Requisitions
By default, the requisitions are converted into purchase order lines individually. This option allows consolidation of requisition lines from across multiple requisitions into a single purchase order.

Select this check box to group requisitions into a single purchase order. The application will try to group all the requisitions that share the same:

- Requisitioning BU and Sold-to BU
- Document style
- Supplier and site
- Currency and conversion rates
- Buyer

Group Requisition Lines
By default, the requisition lines are combined into individual lines based on document type. This option determines whether each requisition line being fulfilled in the order will have its own order line or can be combined with other requisition lines.

Select this check box to group requisition lines into the same purchase order line. The application will try to group requisition lines that share the same:

- Line type
- Item, item revision, item description, supplier item number, supplier configuration ID
- Category
- UOM
- Source agreement and source agreement line
- Requested delivery date (used optionally if the Use requested delivery date check box is selected)
- Ship-to organization and location (used optionally if the Use ship-to organization and location is selected)

For all requisition lines grouped into the same purchase order line, the application will further group these lines into schedules if they share the same:

- Requested delivery date, ship-to location and ship-to organization
- Destination type
Standard Purchasing Terms and Conditions

Standard terms and conditions outline any legal or functional constraints under which the purchase order or purchase agreement will be conducted. These terms and conditions apply to any orders executed by the procurement business unit and can be made available in all installed languages.

Define standard terms and conditions for purchasing documents with the Configure Procurement Business Function task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional offering.

Standard terms and conditions are included with each purchasing document sent to the supplier.

Terms
Purchasing terms commonly indicate the buying organization's rules and expectations as related to pricing and payment.

Conditions
Purchasing conditions typically describe the buying organization's rules related to but not limited to delivery, acceptance of delivery, cancellations, additions to the approved order, and general behavior of the supplier during the course of the transaction.

Languages
Indicate that this set of terms or conditions are not to be made available in all installed languages by selecting the check box: Disable terms and conditions for all languages.

FAQs for Configure Procurement Business Function

What's a receipt close tolerance percent?
This setting is used in combination with the closing point to close a schedule for receiving. It is the allowable difference (expressed as a percentage) between the quantity stated on the order schedule and the actual quantity received. Quantities can vary up to this difference without preventing an automatic closed for receipt status. You can override this option for specific items and orders.

Note: You must also set the receiving close point.

For example, with a receipt close tolerance percent of 99 with a quantity ordered of 100 and a closing point of receipt the schedule would automatically be closed for receiving when 1 of the 100 are received.

What's a contract terms layout?
For purchasing documents, you can select a contract terms layout for the document type. These templates determine what information is displayed along with providing the headers, footers, text style, and pagination of the printed document. You can configure your own layout in RTF format and upload it to Oracle BI Publisher, or select one already provided.

Related Topics
- What's a layout template
Configure Requisitioning Business Function

Configure Business Units with Requisitioning Business Functions

As a Procurement Application Administrator, use the Configure Requisitioning Business Function task to configure business units that have associated requisitioning business functions. Use the attributes configured here to specify default application values and behaviors for user requisition and purchase order creation for the requisitioning BU.

Requisitioning Section

**Default Deliver-to Organization**

The default organization is used as the deliver-to organization for a requisition line if it is a global location. This organization is used to derive the list of item master items that are accessible to the user when creating a requisition for the requisitioning BU.

**Line Type**

Line Type specifies the default line type to be used for requisition lines created for the requisitioning BU. Line Type can be modified.

**One-Time Location**

The One-Time Location is the location code to be defaulted as the deliver-to location for the requisition line when the requester specifies an unstructured one-time delivery address on a requisition. Note that this value is not used if the structured one-time delivery address feature is enabled.

The location specified must be a global location that is enabled for the requisitioning BU.

**Group Requisition Import By**

The Import Requisition process can be used to import requisitions from other Oracle or non-Oracle applications. On import, requisition lines are grouped first by requisition header number, then by the provided Group Code, then by the value set in the Group-by input parameter (None, Buyer, Category, Item, Location, or Supplier). The specified attribute is used as the default value for Group-by. All remaining requisition lines that have not yet been assigned a requisition number will be grouped together under the same requisition.

**Allow one-time addresses**

Select Allow one-time addresses to allow requesters to specify a unique delivery address not attached to any configured location. One-time addresses are entered into a free-form field unless the structured one-time delivery addresses feature is enabled for Procurement and is enabled for the requisitioning BU. In that case, the one-time address is captured and validated in a set of fields determined by country.

Administrators can enable the feature on the Edit Features: Self Service Procurement page by selecting Capture One-Time Address in Structured Format. See Configuring Offerings: Procedure for more information.

**Reapproval required for changes made during an active approval process**

Reapproval required for changes made during an active approval process is applicable when allowing approvers to modify a requisition when it is routed for approval. It controls whether the requisition must be sent back for reapproval when the approver submits the modified requisition.
Create orders immediately after requisition import
When selected, the Generate Orders program runs immediately after the requisition import process is complete.

Approval required for buyer modified lines
Trigger the approval process when a buyer modifies a requisition line.

Enable approval override
Enable the ability to override approvals.

Enable Supply Availability Details for Internal Transfers
When creating a requisition that includes internal transfer items, the source of supply can be modified.
When this is selected, availability information from each supply source for the transfer item is provided in the Select Supply Source dialog, accessed when Select Source is clicked for a transfer requisition line.

Context Values for Requisition Descriptive Flex-fields
You can define additional attributes of a requisition at the header, line, and distribution level using descriptive flex-fields. Specifying the context value pulls in the associated descriptive flex-fields when the user enters the requisition.

Purchasing Section

Default Procurement BU
A requisitioning BU can be served by multiple procurement business units. If a procurement BU cannot be determined based on information on the requisition line, the Default Procurement BU is used to process all requisition lines.

Price Change Tolerance
The Price Change Tolerance is applicable when there is a price change on the purchase order line associated with a requisition line. If the value is null, no checks will be performed. If the value is a valid numeric value, then any changes made to the price on the purchase order line must be within the tolerance percentage value, or the purchase order cannot be submitted. The tolerance can be specified using the tolerance percentage or tolerance amount. The more restricting of the two tolerances will take precedence if both are specified.

Ship-to Location
When the purchase order cannot derive a ship-to location, the specified Ship-To on the Requisitioning BU is defaulted.

Cancel Backing Requisitions
Cancel Backing Requisitions controls whether a backing requisition should be canceled when there is purchase order cancellation.
Options are:
- Always: When canceling the purchase order, Oracle Fusion Purchasing also cancels the requisition.
- Never: When canceling the purchase order, Oracle Fusion Purchasing does not cancel the requisition, therefore it is available for inclusion on another purchase order.
- Optional: When canceling the purchase order, the buyer is given the option to cancel the requisition.

Multiple Legal Entities on Order
Control if a purchase order can contain ship-to organizations belonging to different legal entities.
Allow Requisition-To-Agreement UOM Conversion

If a requisition does not have an agreement specified, Allow requester-to-agreement UOM conversion is used to specify whether Requisition UOMs can be converted to Agreement UOMs during agreement sourcing. Checking this box indicates that agreements that meet the sourcing criteria, but have Agreement Line UOMs different from Requisition Line UOMs, can be considered during agreement sourcing. If the box is left unchecked, such agreements will not be considered.

Related Topics
  • Overview of Descriptive Flexfields

Define Procurement Agents

Manage Procurement Agent Security

Use the Manage Procurement Agents task to create and maintain a procurement agent’s access to procurement functionality for a business unit. Find the task in the Procurement Foundation and Payables functional areas.

You can implement document security for individual document types such as purchase orders, purchase agreements, and requisitions. You can also control a procurement agent’s access to manage activities for suppliers, negotiations, catalog content, and business intelligence spend data.

Key aspects for managing procurement agents are:
  • Understanding what a procurement agent is.
  • Implementing document security.
  • Navigating to the Manage Procurement Agents task.

What is a Procurement Agent?

Procurement agents are typically users with procurement roles such as:
  • Buyer
  • Catalog Administrator
  • Category Manager
  • Procurement Contract Administrator
  • Procurement Manager
  • Supplier Administrator
  • Supplier Manager
  • Supplier Qualification

They have procurement job responsibilities in the buying organization, such as creating purchase agreements, purchase orders, and related procurement functions. You must set up these users as procurement agents for them to manage procurement documents and perform other procurement actions.

Implement Document Security

The key elements for setting up procurement agent document security are:
  •Assigning the agent to a procurement business unit.
• Enabling the agent’s access to procurement actions.
• Defining the agent’s access levels to other agents’ documents.

Procurement Agents

Use the Manage Procurement Agents task to manage procurement agents, including defining an agent’s access to procurement functionality within a procurement business unit.

Find the task in the Procurement Foundation and Payables functional areas.

The following predefined procurement roles are controlled by procurement agent access configuration:

- Buyer
- Catalog Administrator
- Category Manager
- Procurement Contracts Administrator
- Procurement Manager
- Supplier Administrator
- Supplier Manager
- Supplier Qualification

Procurement BU

Assign the agent to one or more procurement business units (BU).

Action

Enable the agent with access to one or more procurement actions for each procurement business unit.

- Manage Requisitions: Enable access to purchase requisitions.
- Manage Purchase Orders: Enable access to purchase orders.
- Manage Purchase Agreements: Enable access to blanket purchase agreements and contract agreements.
- Manage Negotiations: Enable access to Sourcing negotiations, if implemented by your organization.
- Manage Sourcing Programs: Enable access to track and manage sourcing programs.
- Manage Catalog Content: Enable access to catalog content. This includes local catalogs, punchout catalogs, content zones, smart forms, information templates, and collaborative authoring.
- Manage Suppliers: Enable access to create and update supplier information.
- Manage Supplier Qualifications: Enable access to initiatives, qualifications, and assessments, if Supplier Qualification is implemented by your organization.
- Manage Approved Supplier List Entries: Enable access to create and update approved supplier lists.
- Analyze Spend: Used by the business intelligence functionality to enable access to view invoice spend information.

Access to Other Agents' Documents

Assign an access level to documents owned by other procurement agents for each procurement business unit.

Note: An agent can perform all actions on their own documents as long as they have procurement BU access.

- None: The agent has no access to documents owned by other agents.
• View: Permits the agent to search and view other agents’ documents.
• Modify: Permits the agent to view, modify, delete, and withdraw other agents’ documents.
• Full: Permits the agent full control of other agents’ documents. This includes the view, modify, delete, withdraw, freeze, hold, close, cancel, and finally close actions.

Buyer Managed Transportation Setup

Set Up Buyer Managed Transportation

Buyer managed transportation can be used to process procurement transactions. You can configure business units and supplier sites to support default actions, and transit times to support calculation of anticipated arrival dates.

Enable the Feature

Enable the Buyer Managed Transportation feature in the Offerings work area, in the Procurement offering, Procurement functional area.

Configure Business Units

Optionally, you can configure the buyer managed transportation setting for a business unit (BU). Selecting the setting for a BU does the following:

• Indicates your buying organization’s intent to manage transportation for purchasing transactions for the business unit.
• Enables default action for the selection of the setting in procurement transactions for the business unit.

To enable the buyer managed transportation setting for a business unit, use the Configure Procurement Business function task.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional area, access the Configure Procurement Business Function task.
2. On the Specify Procurement BU dialog, select the Procurement BU, and click OK.
3. On the Configure Procurement Business Function page’s Main tab, General section, select the Buyer managed transportation check box.
4. In the Purchasing section, you have the option to select the Default promised date from requested date check box. When selected, the buyer’s requested date is used to populate the promised date field, in purchasing transactions for the business unit.
5. Click Save.

Configure Supplier Sites

Optionally, you can configure the buyer managed transportation setting for a supplier site. Selecting the setting for a site does the following:

• Indicates your buying organization’s intent to manage transportation for purchasing transactions for the site.
• Enables default action for the selection of the setting in procurement transactions for the site.

To enable the buyer managed transportation setting for a supplier site, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Suppliers functional area, use the Manage suppliers task. On the Edit Site page, Purchasing tab, Buyer Managed Transportation drop-down list, select Yes and then save your change.
Configure Transit Times

Optionally, you can configure the transit time between two locations to enable the calculation of anticipated delivery dates. To configure transit times:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Suppliers functional area, access the Manage Transit Times task.
2. On the Manage Transit Times page, set up transit information for the origin and destination locations.
   - Origin type, location and description.
   - Destination type, location and description.
   - Shipping method.
   - Transit time in days.
3. Click Save.

The transit information you set up is used to calculate anticipated delivery dates on purchasing transactions, when the transportation is buyer managed. The anticipated delivery date is calculated as the requested or promised ship date plus the transit time in days.

Related Topics

- Buyer Managed Transportation in Procurement
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
19 Define Self Service Procurement Configuration

Manage Information Template Descriptive Flexfields

Information Template: Explained

An information template is used to gather additional information from a user. It can be assigned to an item, a category, or a request form. Information templates are used in the creation of a Request Form to provide the flexibility to add additional attributes in a request form in order to gather required information from a user. Information templates are also applicable to item master items and purchasing categories.

The data entered for an information template, which is associated with a request form, item or category, is available as attachments in downstream products (such as Purchasing) after the requisition is approved. When creating an information template, the catalog administrator selects the attachment category that determines if the attachment will be available to the supplier or buyer.

Using Information Templates

Information Templates are created in a Procurement Business Unit and are available to Requisitioning Business Units serviced by that Procurement BU. In the event where a Requisitioning BU is serviced by multiple Procurement BUs, and more than one service provider had assigned an information template to an item or category, applicable information templates from all service provider Procurement BUs will be returned.

Information templates are available to the user if the items or request forms that the information templates are associated with are available to the preparer.

Procurement catalog administrators can define a unique information template name so they are easily identifiable in a request form. Information template header information provides users the ability to specify a non-unique Display Name, while creating information templates with unique information template names. For example, more than one procurement BU can maintain information templates to collect business card information. The same Display Name, Business card information, can be used on these information templates to indicate the purpose of these templates when displayed in Oracle Fusion Self Service Procurement. Procurement Catalog Administrators can also define an information template section description or instruction text providing users with specific instructions on how to fill out the form.

Information templates can only be deleted if they are not referenced. An information template is considered referenced if it is applied on any requisition lines, whether in completed or incomplete state. This is to prevent deletion of an information template that is currently in use.

Once an information template is deleted, it is no longer returned on the Manage Information Templates page.

Adding Attributes

Information template attributes are maintained as Descriptive Flexfields.

Attributes first need to be set up in the Descriptive Flexfields application, and the catalog administrator specifies the descriptive flexfield context on the Create and Edit Information Template page to apply the list of attributes.
For example, the catalog administrator set up a context Business Cards Marketing, with the following context sensitive fields:

- Job Title
- Organization
- Office Location

When creating an information template, the catalog administrator can then specify in the Attribute List field the context Business Cards Marketing, which will associate the attributes to the information template.

Note: The maximum number of attributes that can be created for an information template is fifty.

Existing information attributes are maintained as attachments downstream, such as in Purchasing.

Supported Attributes

The following attribute types are supported by descriptive flexfields:

- Text: Text attributes can be setup using descriptive flexfield to be added to an information template. For example, the procurement catalog administrator can create an information template called Business Card Information USA to be used for collecting related information when ordering business cards. Examples of text typed fields are Name, Title, Address and so on.

- Number: Procurement catalog administrators can create number types attributes using descriptive flexfields, to be used in an information template. For example, region code, telephone, and area code.

- Standard Date, Standard DateTime and Time: Procurement catalog administrators are able to define date format attributes in descriptive flexfields, to be used in an information template. This allows for automatic date formatting according to globalization requirements, since 09/01/2007 may mean September 1, 2007 in the US, but January 9, 2007 in others.

- List of Values: Value sets can be added to Information Templates through descriptive flexfields as List of Values. Implementing attributes as List of Values allows enforcement of values that can be populated in these fields. For example, as part of an address, the Country field can be implemented as list of values containing only countries that are applicable.

- Choice Lists: Choice lists make use of value sets as well, similar to List of Values.

End Dates

Procurement Catalog Administrators can specify an End Date on an information template. An information template is inactive if the system date is more than or equal to the End Date.

When an information template is inactive, it will no longer be applied when items (to which this information template is assigned) are added to the requisition. Requisitions created with lines that are associated to this information template will continue to display the information template information.

For incomplete requisitions, the inactive information templates are no longer available at the time the requisition is retrieved.

For copied and withdrawn requisitions, information templates are also no longer available if the information template is inactive at the time the requisition is copied or resubmitted.

Related Topics

- Information Templates and Smart Forms : How They Work Together
- Information Templates, Items and Categories : How They Work Together
Manage Catalog Category Hierarchy

Catalog Category Hierarchy

A catalog category hierarchy presents a hierarchical view of the catalog to users. Catalog category hierarchies allow administrators to create a parent category that includes child categories. When users navigate through the parent category, the child categories appear, helping them to navigate quickly to the catalog category containing the products they need.

Related Topics
- Browse Catalogs by Category

What's a category?

Categories are used to classify items. You can develop your own method of categorizing products or use a standard coding system such as UNSPSC. Adopting a standard coding system allows better visibility of spend analysis throughout the corporation, cost control optimization, and ability to explore all the e-commerce capabilities.

What's the difference between an item category and a browsing category?

Item categories are also known as purchasing categories and are used to group items for various reports and programs. Every item must belong to an item category.

Browsing Categories, also known as navigation categories, define the category hierarchy for category browsing or for category grouping. They can be either parent or child to another category, but they cannot contain any items. They are used as navigation categories to help users browse for items.

Catalog Category Hierarchy: How Browsing Categories and Item Categories Fit Together

If you manage a large number of products and services, you can organize them in the catalog to help users navigate to the items they want to buy. The catalog category hierarchy presents a hierarchical view of the catalog to users.

Categories are used to classify items. With catalog category hierarchies you can create a parent category that includes child categories. When users navigate through a parent category, the child categories appear, helping them to quickly find the products they need.

You can develop your own method of categorizing products. You can also use standard coding systems such as the United Nations Standard Products and Services Code (UNSPSC). Some of the benefits of adopting a standard coding system are:

- Helps improve visibility of spend analysis throughout the corporation
- Aids the organizing and optimizing of cost control initiatives
- Provides a structure for exploring all the e-commerce capabilities for purchasing products and services

The figure below shows the category hierarchy for a catalog. You can define a catalog category hierarchy using two types of categories: browsing categories and item categories. You are not required to have the same number of levels in all branches of the hierarchy.

**Browsing Categories**

Browsing categories are also known as navigation categories. Use them to define the catalog category hierarchy for category browsing. The category hierarchy helps users browse for catalog items. Browsing categories can be either a parent or child to another category, but cannot contain any items. Browsing categories are optional and you can decide what categories should be enabled for browsing.

You can associate catalogs (such as local, punchout or informational) and request forms to the browsing categories. When a user navigates to a category, the associated content type is displayed. An alternative to setting up browsing categories is to tag punchout, informational, and request forms with keywords, so that users can find them when performing a basic search.

**Item Categories**

Item categories are also known as purchasing categories. Use them to group items for various reports and programs. An item category is a logical classification of items that have similar characteristics. For a catalog, every item must belong to an item category. You can:

- Place item categories under browsing categories.
- Search the catalog and sort by item category name. The item category name is displayed in the search pages.
- Bulk load by item category code.
Associate Catalog Category Hierarchy with Catalog

Administrators can group punchout, informational catalogs, and request forms by category. Users can browse to retrieve punchout, informational catalogs, and request forms together with local content. Users can also search for all content (local content, punchout, request forms, informational content) regardless of how the content is grouped.

Local content (item master items and agreement lines) is associated with purchasing categories. Request forms, punchout, and informational catalogs can optionally be associated with any level of the category hierarchy (browsing or purchasing category).

Category Hierarchy With Associated Catalog Content

When an administrator associates punchout, informational, local, or request form content to a category, the application associates the content with all the browsing and purchasing categories of the same branch. Item master items, and agreement items are indexed with their corresponding purchasing categories.

For example, in the figure below, the Dell USA punchout is associated with the browsing category Computers. When you navigate down the branch from the Information Technology browsing category to the Computer Servers purchasing category, the search results always include the punchout catalog. The categories of the same branch as Computers are:

- Information Technology
- Components for Information Technology
- Computers
- Computer Servers

The informational catalog How to Request Computer Services is associated with the browsing category Information Technology. As you navigate the Information Technology branch, the Informational Catalog is seen at the following levels:

- Information Technology
- Components for Information Technology
- System Cards
- Computers
- Memory Module Cards
- Computer Servers

Local catalog items are also included in browsing results. Using the example in the figure below, items in blanket purchase agreements with supplier Zones Corporate are associated with the Information Technology content zone. Such items show up as you navigate down the Information Technology branch, based on the content available to you from the content zone.

The procurement catalog is automatically updated after an administrator saves any changes made to the catalog category hierarchy.
This figure shows the example catalog category hierarchy structure discussed in this topic.

How can I configure what appears in top categories?

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Catalog Category Hierarchy task in the Self Service Procurement functional area to configure which categories are included in the Requisitions page. Select a category’s Featured Category check box to include the category in the Top Categories panel.

Related Topics

- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure

Assign Returned Requisition Lines to the Previous Buyer

Configure the application to assign returned requisition lines to the previously assigned buyer with the site-level profile option Retain Last Assigned Buyer on Requisition Line.
If enabled, when a requester resubmits a returned line, the line is reassigned to the buyer that returned it. Buyer assignment rules are not invoked when returned requisition lines are resubmitted, but are invoked for other active lines, such as those with Rejected, Withdrawn, or Incomplete status. Set the Retain Last Assigned Buyer on Requisition Line (POR_RETAIN_LAST_ASSIGNED_BUYER) profile option to Yes to enable this feature. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Self Service Procurement functional area. The default value for the Retain Last Assigned Buyer on Requisition Line profile option is No.

How You Assign All Requisition Lines to the Same Buyer

Configure the application to assign all lines in a submitted requisition to the same buyer with the site-level profile option Use Same Buyer for all Lines in a Requisition.

If enabled, when a requester submits a requisition, the buyer assigned to the first requisition line is used as the buyer for all lines in the requisition. To enable this feature, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Administrator Profile Values task to set the Use Same Buyer for all Lines in a Requisition (POR_ASSIGN_REQ_SAME_BUYER) profile option to Yes. The default value for the Use Same Buyer for all Lines in a Requisition profile option is No. If a buyer cannot be derived for the first line of a requisition, then no buyer is assigned to other lines of the requisition. A procurement agent who has access to other agents' documents can process all such lines on the Process Requisitions page User-specified buyers on any lines other than the first are overwritten with the buyer assigned to the first line if this feature is enabled.

Configure Structured One-Time Delivery Addresses

When creating or editing a requisition, requesters may want to specify a one-time delivery address, a unique address not attached to any configured location.

If the structured one-time delivery address feature is not enabled for Procurement, you can still configure the requisitioning BU to allow one-time addresses. In this case, one-time addresses are captured in a single free-form field, but the captured information is difficult to parse by downstream processes.

With the structured one-time delivery address feature enabled for Procurement, when you configure the requisitioning BU to allow one-time addresses, structured one-time addresses are used. In this case, one-time addresses are stored in structured fields.

Structured address data can be accurately used by downstream processes. For example, one-time addresses can be used in tax calculations performed after the requisition is submitted.

Enable and Configure Structured One-Time Address

To use this feature you must:

- In the Offerings work area, enable the Capture One-Time Address in Structured Format feature in the Self Service Procurement functional area. This makes the feature generally available in the Procurement application.
- Configure specific Business Units to use structured one-time addresses with the Configure Requisitioning Business Function setup task. Find it in the Setup and Maintenance work area, Procurement Foundation functional area.

Click the task, select the requisitioning BU for which to enable the feature, and click OK. On the Configure Requisitioning Business Function page, in the Requisitioning section, select Allow one-time addresses.
You can optionally set up Enterprise Data Quality (EDQ) using the Manage Data Quality Server Configurations task.

After the feature is enabled for the BU, requesters can enter structured one-time addresses when creating requisition lines or editing previously created requisition lines. Unstructured one-time addresses are not available when the feature is enabled. Structured addresses are passed downstream to purchase orders, but can't be created or edited in purchase orders.

Configure Country-Specific Address Formats

The fields available for the structured one-time address are based on per-country address style definitions. Within an address style, you can specify that some fields are mandatory. You can also specify lists of valid values for specific fields.

For each country, you can optionally enable address cleansing, which uses an external data quality application to validate addresses as they are entered by the user. In addition, users can verify addresses on demand by clicking the Verify Address icon, which appears for addresses in countries for which address cleansing is enabled.

Define geography structures and country-specific address formats with the Manage Geographies and Manage Address Formats tasks.

Address Availability to Downstream Processes

Structured one-time addresses can be used by downstream processes, such as in purchase orders and invoices, or for tax calculations. See Structured One-Time Delivery Address in Purchase Orders: Explained.

Structured One-time Addresses in Purchase Orders

When the Capture One-Time Delivery Address in Structured Fields feature is enabled, there may be existing in-process requisitions containing unstructured one-time addresses, along with their resultant purchase orders. These addresses will not be converted automatically to structured addresses.

Related Topics

- Deliver to a Structured One-Time Address from a Requisition
- Structured One-Time Delivery Address in Purchase Orders: Explained
- Define Geographies: Overview
- Seeded Address Formats for Countries: Explained
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure

Configure Expense Requisition Fulfillment for Agreement-Based Catalog Items from Internal Sources

As an administrator, you can configure Oracle Fusion Self Service Procurement to fulfill expense requisitions for agreement-based catalog items from internal sources.

Normally, when a user requests a catalog item that is sourced against a blanket purchase agreement, the application purchases the item from the agreement supplier, even if the item is also available through internal material transfer. In
certain industries, such as healthcare, the requester’s expectation is when they order supplies or equipment the items are sourced first from an internal warehouse. To meet the needs of this type of organization, you can enable the *Fulfill Expense Requisitions for Agreement-Based Catalog Items from Internal Sources* feature. Then the application fulfills expense requisitions for such items from internal sources, when the items are both available internally and purchasable against a blanket purchase agreement.

In the Offerings work area, enable the **Fulfill Expense Requisitions for Agreement-Based Catalog Items from Internal Sources** feature in the Procurement offering, Purchasing functional area.

The Internal Material Transfers feature must also be enabled.

After the feature is enabled, when a requester shops for an agreement-based expense item from the catalog:

- Their requisition for the item is fulfilled through an internal source, even if the item is also purchasable against a blanket purchase agreement.
- They see the blanket purchase agreement price for the item when searching and shopping. When they add the item to the **Cart**, the price may change if the internally ordered price for the item is different.

**Related Topics**

- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
20 Define Supplier Portal Configuration

Manage Supplier User Roles

How Supplier User Provisioning Works

Supplier user provisioning refers to the process of establishing supplier users with access to the Supplier Portal work area. Your buying organization can create and maintain user accounts, job roles, and data access controls for supplier contacts.

The content supplier users can access, and tasks they can perform, are controlled by your buying organization. You can allow trusted supplier users to request and manage user accounts for their fellow employees that require access to the Supplier Portal work area.

User Provisioning Job Roles

You provision supplier users with job roles, giving them the ability to perform business tasks and functions using the Supplier Portal work area. The predefined job roles that can perform supplier user provisioning are:

- **Supplier Administrator**: This is a buying organization job role. Users with this role are responsible for maintaining supplier profile information as well as administering user accounts for supplier contacts.
- **Supplier Manager**: This is a buying organization job role. Users with this role are responsible for authorizing new suppliers for spending. They control the addition of new spend authorized suppliers into the supply base. In smaller organizations, you can assign this job role and the Supplier Administrator role to the same individual.
- **Supplier Self Service Administrator**: This is a supplier organization job role. Supplier users with this role can maintain company profiles and request user accounts for their fellow employees. All profile changes and user account requests made by the supplier self service administrator require approval by the buying organization.
- **Supplier Self Service Clerk**: This is a supplier organization job role. Supplier users with this role can maintain company profiles and request user accounts for their fellow employees. All profile changes and user account requests made by the supplier self service clerk require approval by the buying organization.

You can perform user provisioning from the following procurement flows:

- Supplier registration review and approval.
- Supplier profile change request review and approval.
- Suppliers work area, Manage Suppliers task, Edit Supplier flow where supplier profiles are maintained.
- Supplier Portal work area where suppliers can perform user provisioning on behalf of their company using the Manage Profile task.

In each of these flows a user with one of the appropriate job roles can:

- Create or request a user account.
- Assign job roles.
- Set data security access for supplier contacts.
Manage Supplier User Roles Setup Page

The IT security manager can go to the Setup and Maintenance work area and use the Manage Supplier User Roles task in the Procurement offering and Supplier Portal functional area.

The Procurement Application Administrator can go to the Setup and Maintenance work area and use the Manage Supplier User Role Usages task in the Procurement offering and Supplier Portal functional area.

Your buying organization uses the Manage Supplier User Roles page to perform the following setup actions. These actions are performed by two different job roles: IT Security Manager, and Procurement Application Administrator.

- IT Security Manager: Define the list of roles that can be granted to supplier users in Supplier Portal provisioning flows. Only the IT Security Manager job role can add and remove roles. This helps your organization avoid the risk of adding an internal application job role inadvertently. It prevents suppliers from gaining unauthorized access to internal data. The supplier roles are added from the central Oracle LDAP roles repository which stores all Oracle Fusion application job roles. Once they add a role to the table, the role is immediately available for provisioning to supplier contacts by the Supplier Administrator.

- Procurement Application Administrator: Define the supplier role usages. The Procurement Application Administrator is responsible for this setup task. They manage settings for how the supplier job roles are exposed in provisioning flows.

The IT Security Manager can also set supplier role usages, as they can access all functions on the setup page. However, this task is typically performed by the Procurement Application Administrator. The Procurement Application Administrator cannot add or remove roles from the table.

Your buying organization can establish default roles which expedite supplier user account requests. To do this, identify the minimum set of job roles that a supplier contact can be granted. Use default roles so that approvers don’t have to explicitly review and assign job roles for each user account request.

When the role default setup is done correctly, the Supplier Administrator (or approver) can review supplier contact user account requests. This allows them to:

- Review requests with job roles selected based on the source of the request.
- Approve user account requests with appropriate role assignments.

The two role usages relevant to supplier user provisioning are:

- Default for Oracle Fusion Supplier Portal: If selected, the role is automatically added to supplier user requests in the core user provisioning flows, such as supplier profile maintenance.
- Default for Oracle Fusion Sourcing: If selected, the role is automatically added to supplier user requests generated in sourcing flows such as Create Negotiation.

A role in the table can be marked for one or more of the two usages.

Related Topics

- Supplier User Account Request
Set Up Supplier Roles

The following simple examples illustrate selecting and managing roles for supplier user provisioning.

Select Roles for Supplier User Provisioning:
Vision Corporation decides to expand their Supplier Portal work area deployment and allow supplier customer service representatives to access orders and agreements.

The IT security manager navigates to the Setup and Maintenance work area and uses the Manage Supplier User Roles task in the Procurement offering and Supplier Portal functional area. They search for the supplier job role Supplier Customer Service Representative, and add the role to the table.

The Procurement Application Administrator then navigates to the Setup and Maintenance work area and uses the Manage Supplier User Role Usages task in the Procurement offering and Supplier Portal functional area. For the Supplier Customer Service Representative role, they select the following option: Default for Supplier Portal.

Manage Default Roles for Supplier Users and Supplier Bidders:
Vision Corporation decides the Supplier Sales Representative role should not be marked as a default role for the Supplier Portal work area. The Procurement Application Administrator navigates to the Manage Supplier User Role Usages task. They ensure the Default for Supplier Portal option is not selected for that role.

Vision Corporation also recently implemented Oracle Fusion Sourcing. They must provision the Supplier Bidder role to suppliers invited to sourcing events. The IT Security Manager navigates to the Manage Supplier User Roles page. They add the Supplier Bidder role to the table. For the newly added role, they select the Default for Sourcing option.

Related Topics
- Supplier User Account Request

Supplier User Account Administration

The buying organization's supplier administrator provisions user accounts to provide supplier contacts access to the Supplier Portal work area. The administrator performs user account maintenance for a specific supplier contact in the Suppliers work area, on the Edit Supplier page, Contacts tab. The administrator assigns a user account with roles that determine what functions the supplier contact can perform in the Supplier Portal work area.

The following are Oracle Procurement Cloud flows where a supplier administrator can request and manage a user account for a supplier contact:

- Create Supplier Contact: When creating a supplier contact, the administrator can also request to create a user account for the contact, request roles and grant data access. A supplier user can also request a user account to be created.
- Edit Supplier Contact: The supplier administrator can make changes to supplier contact information as well as create or maintain the user account for the contact. A supplier user can also request a user account to be created for an existing contact.
- Approve supplier registration request: When approving a supplier registration, an approver can create and edit supplier contacts. A user account is part of a supplier contact. The approver has the ability to create a user account and assign roles within this flow.
Note: Creating a user account for a supplier contact cannot be reversed. Once a user account is created it cannot be deleted, but it can be inactivated.

The Supplier Administrator is responsible for:

- Creating and inactivating supplier user accounts.
- Assigning job roles.
- Assigning data access.

Create and Inactivate Supplier User Accounts

Select the Create User Account option for a contact to send a request to the identity management system to provision the account. Status is displayed to communicate provisioning status during this process. When the process is complete, the identity management system sends notification to the supplier contact with the user name and temporary password for the Supplier Portal work area. If the process fails, a notification is sent to the Supplier Administrator that a user account was not successfully provisioned.

Assign Job Roles

Use the Roles subtab to control function security. This determines the business objects and task flows the supplier user can access. Supplier job roles should be assigned based on the job that the contact performs within the supplier organization. For example, Customer Service Representative or Accounts Receivable Specialist.

Assign Data Access

Use the Data Access tab to control data security. This determines which transactions the user can access for the specific business objects their job role is associated with. The two levels of data security are: Supplier and Supplier Site. By default, all supplier user accounts start with Supplier level, meaning they can access all transactions belonging to their supplier company only. For more restrictive access, the Supplier Site level limits user access to transactions for specific supplier sites only.

Configure Supplier Registration

Set Up Supplier Registration Approvals

The following preconfigured components facilitate the supplier registration approvals setup:

- Registration Approvals task
- Stages
- Participants
- Seeded approval policy

To access the supplier registration approvals tasks, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:

- Offering: Procurement
- Functional Area: Approval Management

Use the Task: Manage Supplier Registration Approvals to configure approval routing rules for registrations submitted by external users of companies interested in becoming a supplier.
Use the Task: Manage Internal Supplier Registration Approvals to configure approval routing rules for registrations submitted by internal users on the company’s behalf.

The following figure shows the seeded supplier registration approval stages that are executed in Oracle Fusion Supplier Portal.

Approval rules configured in the seeded stages are executed in the following sequence:

1. First stage approvals
2. Second stage approvals (Only executed after all first stage approvals are completed.)

The following figure shows the first stage approvals.
The following figure shows the second stage approvals that are executed after all first stage approvals are completed.

Second Stage Approvals

- Parallel Approval – First Responder Wins
- Parallel Approval
- Serial Approval

**Approval Stages**

Approvals to review supplier registration requests happen in a flexible two-stage process. Within each stage, there are three seeded rule-based participants. You can pick a routing type (Supervisory, Position, Job Level, Single User, and User-Defined Approval Groups) to configure the list of approvers entitled to receive the document for approval.

You do not need to use all of the seeded stages and participants. You can disable unused participants by selecting the unused participant on the Manage Approvals Task page and clicking the **Disable** button.

Disabled Rules or Participants will not be evaluated. For example, if the participant is already disabled, then no rules within that participant will be evaluated. The same applies for disabled rules.

**First Stage Approvals**

Based on your supplier registration approval requirements, choose which seeded participants should have approval rules configured since each participant has a different approval routing behavior.

The three seeded participants are:

- Parallel Approval First Responder Wins
  
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. The first responder to approve or reject the request defines the outcome of all remaining approvers.

- Parallel Approval
  
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. Approval is required from all approvers.

- Serial Approval
Approvals are routed in serial. The approval is completed sequentially from approver to approver.

Second Stage Approvals
Seeded participants are similar to those in the first stage with similar routing properties:

- Parallel Approval First Responder Wins
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. The first responder to approve or reject the request defines the outcome of all remaining approvers.

- Parallel Approval
  All identified approvers receive a notification for approval in parallel. Approval is required from all approvers.

- Serial Approval
  Approvals are routed in Serial. The approval is completed sequentially from approver to approver.

Seeded Approval Policy
The following approval rules are seeded.
Approval rules are seeded in the first stage participant: Parallel Approval First Responder Wins. You can modify or delete the seeded rules.

- If supplier registration has business relationship of Prospective, then route to supplier administrator.
- If supplier registration has business relationship of Spend Authorized, then route to supplier managers.

Supplier Managers are derived from the users defined in procurement agents. All procurement agents with Manage Suppliers function for the BU that the registration was created will receive the approval notification.

Even if new rules are not configured, the seeded rule will execute unless it is deleted.

\[\text{Note: You can, at any point of time, modify or delete the seeded rule.}\]

Configure the New Supplier Notification
When suppliers are registered as, or promoted to spend authorized status, the application sends an email notification to all the supplier contacts with a valid email address. Use Setup and Maintenance to enable this functionality. You can define the content of this email to include important information for the supplier. Additionally, you can include country-specific attachments as well as general attachments to the email notification.

An automated email notification is sent to suppliers at the moment they are approved as spend authorized. This notification is triggered when a prospective supplier is promoted or when a spend authorization request for the supplier is approved. You can define the email notification content.

After you have configured and enabled the notification builder, it reduces any manual intervention required to communicate various business related policies to the supplier when they are approved for spend.

How You Define Notification Content
You can enter text for the subject and the body content of the email notification. After you enable the notification, the subject and body content fields become required fields. Rich text support for the email body content allows you to flexibly format and display the content, for example, by highlighting important information, such as links to important websites.
How You Add Attachments

You can also upload documents which are added as attachments to the notification. Such attachments could include, for example, a welcome letter or policy explanations. In the Notification Documents table, there is a predefined entry labeled Global. You can use this category to contain documents that are sent to suppliers that do not have either a Taxpayer Country value or a Tax Registration Country value defined in the supplier definition. When determining the destination for the notification, the application checks first if the supplier has a Taxpayer Country defined, and if so, the notification is sent to that location. If there is no Taxpayer Country defined, the application uses the value for Tax Registration Country as the location. If the supplier definition has no value for either Taxpayer Country or Tax Registration Country, it attaches any documents defined as global in the Notification Documents table.

Configure the Notification Generator

Use Setup and Maintenance to configure the notification generator. You must have the Procurement Application Administrator job role to configure the generator.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the following:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Suppliers
   - Task: Configure New Supplier Notification
2. Click the link for the Configure New Supplier Notification task.
3. On the Configure New Supplier Notification page, in the Notification Content section, you can enter the text for the
   - Subject line text
   - Body text
4. In the Notification Documents section, you can add attachments. Attachments can be global or country-specific. Global attachments are added to all notifications. Country-specific attachments are added depending on the Supplier location.
5. When you are finished entering text and uploading attachment documents, select the Enable notification option.
6. Click Save and Close.

Options to Configure Supplier Registration and Supplier Profile Change Request

To configure the supplier registration and self service supplier profile change request approval requirements, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to Offering: Procurement, Functional Area: Suppliers, and Task: Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Request.

Supplier Registration

You can configure the supplier registration process based on the expected supplier business relationship of a supplier.

You can define two separate registration flows based on the intended business relationship.

- Spend Authorized Supplier requests: Companies already identified for a procurement need are directed by the buying organization to the spend authorized registration flow. The flow captures more rigorous profile information needed before agreements, orders, and invoices can be transacted. For example, a spend authorized company registering can be required to provide bank account information.
• Prospective Supplier requests: Unknown companies are presented with the prospective supplier flow. They must only provide minimal profile information to participate in the sourcing and supplier qualification activities.

Possible profile components that you can include during a registration flow include:

• Organization Details: Basic supplier information including the supplier name.
• Contacts: Supplier contact information.
• Contact User Account: User accounts control privileges for Supplier Portal contacts.
• Addresses: Company addresses including associated contacts.
• Business Classifications: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
• Bank Accounts: Supplier banking information.
• Products and Services: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
• Qualifications Questionnaire: Additional questions for suppliers.

When you configure the two supplier registration flows you identify which profile attributes the supplier sees. Also you can specify whether the supplier must enter a value for the attribute.

• Enabled: The attribute is displayed to the supplier, but the supplier is not required to enter information.
• Required: The supplier must supply information for this attribute.

〉 Note: Your supplier registration configuration applies to suppliers from all registration sources.

Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources
A supplier registration can come from one of the following three sources:

• Internal Sourcing Invitation: Internal users can register and add a supplier as part of negotiation creation.
• Internal Supplier Request: Internal Supplier Request can be raised by registering from the Suppliers work area or by requesting a new supplier from the Self Service Procurement work area.
• External request from the supplier when self-registering using your organization’s external supplier registration website.

In the Default Business Relationship for Registration Sources region, you identify the default business relationship for each registration flow. The default business relationship determines what profile information is included as configured for the registration page.

Require Supplier Identifier
For Self Service Procurement, there is an option to enforce requesters to provide at least one of these attribute values: D-U-N-S Number, Taxpayer ID, or Tax Registration Number.

Post Approval Options
Once a new supplier’s registration is approved, or its status promoted to spend authorized, the application automatically creates site assignments for any new sites defined for that supplier. However, you can retain control over how the supplier’s site assignments are created by deselecting the check box Autocreate site assignments for spend authorized suppliers. If you deselect this check box, site assignments for a supplier are no longer created automatically. You must create them manually.
Registration URL Encryption

When a prospective supplier saves the registration for later completion, the application sends an email to the prospective supplier containing the registration URL. The URL contains an identifier which is encrypted using an encryption key. This prevents users from altering the URL to view registrations submitted by other companies.

If you suspected that registrations have been tampered with, you can regenerate the encryption key. The encryption key is regenerated for the registration URLs used for spend authorization, saved for later, and returned for resubmission. However, if you regenerate the encryption key, the registration request URL for spend authorization business relationship available through the setup page Configure Procurement Business Function changes and therefore old and saved URLs will not work. Also, registrations that were saved for later or returned for resubmission will no longer be accessible to potential suppliers.

Supplier Registration URLs

You use different supplier registration URLs for each business relationship type (prospective and spend authorized). Your suppliers can then use the appropriate URL to register with your company. Each URL contains a parameter for the business relationship type that navigates your supplier to a registration page.

You can set the registration URL for each business relationship type on the Configure Procurement Business Function page. You can set URLs for both prospective supplier registration and spend authorized registration.

Supplier Profile Change Request

Use the Supplier Profile Change Request tab to configure the approval requirement settings for changes to supplier profile attributes through a change request. The settings apply to supplier-initiated profile change requests and to change requests resulting from Supplier Qualification or Sourcing questionnaires.

The values you set here apply to supplier profile change requests from the following sources:

- Suppliers
- Supplier Qualification
- Supplier Negotiation

Supplier profiles can also be changed by internal users. Updates to bank account changes by internal users are submitted to an approval process. See Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained.

The Configure Supplier Registration and Profile Change Requests task does not configure supplier profile changes made by internal users.

You can specify approval requirements for prospective and spend authorized suppliers for the following entities:

- Organization Details: Basic supplier information including the supplier name and supplier profile level descriptive flexfields.
- Contacts: Supplier contact information including supplier contact descriptive flexfields.
- Contact User Account: User accounts that control account privileges for supplier contacts to use Supplier Portal.
- Addresses: Company addresses including associated contacts including supplier address descriptive flexfields.
- Business Classifications: Supplier certifications important to the buying organization such as supplier diversity programs.
- Bank Accounts: Supplier banking information.
- Payment Methods: The method used to pay the supplier.
- Products and Services: Identifies what categories of products and services are provided by the supplier.
- Tax Identifiers: Tax organization, tax country, and taxpayer ID to identify the supplier for tax purposes.
- Site Details: Site information such as the address and site purpose (spend authorized suppliers only).
For each profile attribute, you can specify:

- No Approval Required: Change request is approved.
- Approval Required: Change request is routed for approval.

Configuration of the Site Details attribute for prospective suppliers is not available.

**Related Topics**

- Supplier Products and Services Categories
- Supplier Registration Process
- Supplier Registration Approval: Explained
- Configuring Internal Supplier Bank Account Change Approvals: Explained
- Internal Supplier Profile Change Request Approvals

**Supplier Qualification Rule Sets**

Oracle Fusion Procurement provides a functionality that you can use to solicit information from your suppliers at various points in the supplier’s life cycle. You control the content and timing of the questionnaire by defining rule sets.

A rule set consists of one or more qualification areas. The questions defined to these qualification areas are used to generate a questionnaire and send it to a supplier. After the supplier receives and answers the questionnaire, you can use the supplier’s response information to update the supplier profile information. You can:

- Use existing qualification areas.
- Create qualification areas in Supplier Qualification Management and then use them in your rule set.

  If you have to create a qualification area, note that:
  
  - The questions must be at the supplier level.
  - The questions must not include internal responders.
  - The questions are active.

When one of the triggering events occurs for which you have defined a rule set, the application creates a questionnaire consisting of the qualification areas that you identified in your rule set. This questionnaire is what the supplier sees. When you receive the supplier’s response, you use the supplier’s basic registration information and questionnaire responses to evaluate the supplier information with regards to the triggering event.

When a supplier is approved as a prospective or spend authorized supplier, his responses are stored in the Supplier Qualification Response Repository. Once the supplier’s responses are in the Response Repository, you can use those responses to create qualifications for the supplier.

**Spend Authorization Requests**

Suppliers that participate in sourcing negotiations and qualifications but are not yet allowed to participate in procurement transactions involving financial spend, are known as prospective suppliers. When a prospective supplier is identified for a procurement need, a request is raised to promote the supplier to spend authorized.
A spend authorized request for a supplier can be created in one of the following ways:

- User requests the supplier to be promoted to spend authorized manually on the supplier record by using the promote to spend authorized button from the Edit Supplier page.
- Initial creation of supplier with the business relationship of spend authorized. The supplier must first be approved through the supplier registration process before the request for spend authorization is sent for approval.
- Negotiation is awarded to a prospective supplier, a spend authorization request is automatically created.

Approvers can approve, reject, or reassign the spend authorization requests. Rejected requests can be resubmitted for approval.

**Resubmit Pending Request for Approval**

You can resubmit a request for approval using the Resubmit Request action from the View Spend Authorization Request page, which can be accessed either through the Supplier Spend Authorization Requests table on the Overview page or from the spend authorization review status link on supplier profile. After you resubmit, the current request is rejected and another request is immediately sent for approval from start. You must have the privilege to resubmit spend authorization requests. This action is secured through the privilege Resubmit Supplier Spend Authorization Request and you can only resubmit requests that are in pending approval status.

When you resubmit a pending request, you can include a reason, which will be available as additional information in the approval history. Even though the current request is being rejected, this activity will not affect the Negotiation Award flow (if the request has come from negotiation award) as a new request is immediately created and submitted for approval.

**Related Topics**

- Supplier Model

**Managing Certifying Agencies : Explained**

Managing certifying agencies setup enables the buying organization to manage the authorized organizations that issue business classification certifications. Certification agencies are maintained and associated with the applicable classifications that can be selected when creating a classification for a supplier. End dates can be set when the agency is no longer valid, to prevent it from being used on new classification records. The procurement application administrator can access this setup through the Manage Certifying Agencies in Oracle Fusion Setup Manager setup task.

**How can I submit a supplier for spend authorization that was previously rejected?**

From the Edit Suppliers page, you can resubmit the request by clicking the **Submit for Spend Authorization Review** button.
How can I restart approval process for a registration request that is pending approval?

If for any reason a request must be resubmitted for approval, you can use the Resubmit Request action, which will resubmit the current request for approval from the start. You can restart the approval process on the View Supplier Registration Request page, which can be accessed from the Manage Supplier Registration Requests page.

You must have the privilege to resubmit registration requests. This action is secured through the privilege Resubmit Supplier Registration Request and you can only resubmit requests that are in pending approval status.

When you resubmit a pending request, you can include a reason, which will be available as additional information in the approval history.

Updating Suppliers

Updating Supplier Profile Entities: Explained

You can make mass updates to suppliers through a file-based upload, using the supplier import template.

Mass Updating Supplier Profile Entities

The Action column in the supplier import template can be used to create, update, or delete records.

You can use the update action to:

- Create and update supplier attributes.
- Deactivate or reactivate suppliers.
- Update existing records with a new column for each functional key by appending _NEW to the column name. The existing CSV loader file is updated with the new column.

Updates can be viewed on a report, with the new column indicating the import action of the record.
Purging Supplier Interface Records: Explained

From the suppliers work area, you can purge records from the supplier interface tables.

Purge Supplier Interface Records Action

Access Purge Supplier Interface Records from Procurement > Suppliers work area > Import Suppliers > Actions menu. You can purge all supplier records or purge records in a particular status, for example, Processed, New, or Rejected. The default value for this process is All.

Purging supplier records is a permanent action. Exercise caution when running the purge program.

After a purge, a report is generated lists the count of records successfully purged. If the purge process fails, all records previously purged during the job will be restored. In this case, you must rerun the process for all records.

Interface tables supported for supplier purge are:

- POZ_SUPPLIERS_INT
- POZ_SUP_ADDRESSES_INT
- POZ_SUPPLIER_SITES_INT
- POZ_SITE_ASSIGNMENTS_INT
- POZ_SUP_CONTACTS_INT
- POZ_SUP_CONTACT_ADDRESSES_INT
- POZ_SUP_BUS_CLASS_INT
- POZ_SUP_PROD_SERV_INT

Configure Taxpayer ID Sharing Across Suppliers: Explained

Suppliers in the same parent child hierarchy can share taxpayer IDs.

Enable Taxpayer ID Sharing

To enable taxpayer ID sharing across suppliers:

1. In the Navigator, click Setup and Maintenance.
2. From the Actions menu, select Go to Offerings.
3. Select the Procurement offering.
4. Click New Features.
5. Click the Opt In button for Allow Taxpayer ID Sharing Across Suppliers.
6. Select the Enable check box for Allow Taxpayer ID Sharing Across Suppliers.

Related Topics

- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
- Supplier Taxpayer ID Sharing: Explained
Supplier Import

Create Suppliers with the Import Suppliers Process

Supplier Import processes are programs that you can use to import new supplier records from external systems and to update and delete existing supplier records.

The following programs are used to import supplier information:

- Import Suppliers
- Import Supplier Addresses
- Import Supplier Sites (includes third-party payment relationships)
- Import Supplier Site Assignments
- Import Supplier Contacts (includes contact addresses import)
- Import Supplier Business Classifications
- Import Supplier Products and Services Categories
- Import Supplier Attachments
- Purge Supplier Interface Records

How the Import Process Works

The Supplier Import process is run by either the Supplier Administrator or the Supplier Manager.

You can load data to interface tables using predefined templates and the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process. Both are part of the External Data Integration Services for the Oracle Cloud feature.

Obtain FBDI templates from the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Procurement Cloud guide from the links found in the File-Based Data Imports section.

The process for supplier import is as follows:

1. Data must first be inserted into the existing Open Interface Tables:
   - `POZ_SUPPLIERS_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_ADDRESSES_INT`
   - `POZ_SUPPLIER_SITES_INT`
   - `POZ_SITE.Assignments_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_CONTACTS_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_CONTACT_ADDRESSES_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_BUS_CLASS_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_PROD_SERV_INT`
   - `POZ_SUP_ATTACHMENTs_INT`
POZ_SUP_THIRDPARTY_INT

**Note:** For more information about tables, see the Tables and Views for Oracle Procurement Cloud guide. To obtain the templates to use, see File-Based Data Import for Oracle Procurement Cloud. Use the instructions contained in the template to complete the template. The fields used vary from one type of template to another, but all templates begin with these fields:

- **Batch ID** - Enter a value in the Batch ID field to group certain entries together. When you perform the upload, you can choose to process only the entries with a certain batch ID value. This lets you maintain a single upload file and selectively choose subgroups of entries to be processed from it, without having to process the entire file. For example, for a supplier address upload file, you might use a batch ID value for the state. When you process the upload file, you can choose to process only the records for the state of California.

- **Import Action** - Use Create to add a new entity, such as a new site assignment or a new address. Use Update to modify an existing entity.

2. Once the data is inserted, the following concurrent processes must be run to import the supplier profile data in Oracle Fusion Suppliers:

- Import Suppliers
- Import Supplier Addresses
- Import Supplier Sites
- Import Supplier Site Assignments
- Import Supplier Contacts
- Import Supplier Business Classifications
- Import Supplier Products and Services Categories
- Import Supplier Attachments

These import processes are executed by the Enterprise Scheduler Service (ESS), which manages all concurrent processes. ESS allows you to monitor the status of each process and provides access to output reports.

Supplier import processes contain the following parameters:

- **Import Options**: Options include All, New, and Rejected. Import Options are used to determine if the import process should attempt to import new, rejected, or all rows from the respective open interface tables.
- **Report Exceptions Only**: Values are Yes or No. Used to determine if the Import Process Reports prints success and rejected information, or just the rejected information.

3. When the processes are complete, a .pdf report is generated detailing the status of the records that were imported. If a record could not be imported, then the status is set to Rejected. The reason for the rejection is provided.

Upload line level errors are applicable only to a line and do not affect the loader’s capability to read and process the remainder of the lines in the upload file. Upload line errors can be caused by an invalid UOM for a line, or an incorrect data type specified for a line attribute. Line level errors are displayed in the line errors region or parsing errors region on the upload errors page. Line level errors can be exported to a spreadsheet for review.

Upload file-level errors are detected at the start of processing. The loader is halted and no file lines are processed. Upload file-level errors can be caused by invalid XML or cXML files, mandatory sections missing from a TXT file, or sections out of order in a TXT file. The upload errors page displays the file level error. The line or parsing errors region is not displayed.
The error threshold parameter sets the maximum number of errors allowed on upload lines before termination of upload file processing. You can export the items table to perform an error analysis.

**Note:**
- The supplier import processes are used to create new entities, and to update or delete existing supplier profile data. Creation can be done only with attachments. Deletion can be done only with contact addresses, business classifications, and products and service categories.
- Supplier import supports supplier numbering of characters that are not numeric to allow supplier records from legacy systems to retain their unique identifier.
- Update supports updating the functional key attributes. The columns ending with _NEW are specifically earmarked for updates. Use this only if the underlying functional key attributes must be updated. To update functional keys, the new value should be provided in the _NEW column.

Consider the following when using supplier import:

**Import Suppliers**
Both prospective or spend authorized suppliers can be imported. Sites and site assignments cannot be imported for prospective suppliers.

Business relationship of the supplier cannot be updated through import.

**Import Supplier Sites and Third-Party Payment Relationships**
Supplier Sites are imported for a specific procurement BU, which is specified on the site import record. Additionally, an existing supplier address reference must be defined as part of the site import record.

After a site is created and associated with an address, the association can’t be changed. For this reason, including a value for Address Name when updating an existing supplier site triggers an error. The Address Name field maps to PARTY_SITE_NAME, which is the field named in the error.

Supplier Sites Import process allows you to load third-party payment relationships from an external system. Before you import supplier site third-party payment relationship data, review the recommendations in the supplier site import template, Instructions and CSV Generation worksheet.

There are two separate worksheets available for importing supplier sites and third-party payment relationships on the supplier site import template.

**Import Site Assignments**
Site assignments are created for client BUs that are serviced by the procurement BU to which the site belongs. Assigning the client BU to the site enables the client BU to use the site for ordering and invoicing.

**Import Supplier Contacts and Contact Addresses**
You can provide addresses associated with a contact for all sites using that address.

**Note:** Two separate worksheets are available for contacts and contact addresses on the import upload template for supplier contacts.
The import process checks for duplicate contacts. Provide distinguishing email addresses for imported supplier contacts with the same last name as existing supplier contacts.

Import Business Classifications

New certifying agencies can be created and associated with relevant classifications through import. However, the Certifying Agency attribute option 'Other' is not supported. Consider using the Create New Certifying Agency attribute as an alternative.

Note:
Legacy data including both inactive and active data can be loaded for all the supplier entities.

Import Supplier Attachments

You can import attachments for supplier profiles, supplier sites and supplier business classifications for existing suppliers. Different types and categories of attachments can be imported.

For File type attachments, you must add the file to a .zip file and upload the .zip to the Procurement Suppliers UCM account: /prc/supplier/import. Multiple files can be added to the same .zip file and can be organized within folders as needed. The template is designed to accept the path along with the file name. This tells the application in which folder of the .zip file the file is located. The Recommendations for Loading Supplier Attachments Data section in the Instructions and CSV Generation tab contains more information on importing attachments.

You can import attachments for:

- Supplier profile
- Supplier sites
- Supplier business classifications

Related Topics

- External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud: Overview

Using Supplier Import to Create a New Supplier from an Existing Party: Explained

You may want to use an existing supplier definition to create a new supplier relationship that is tied to an existing party entity. This may be needed as a result of growing multiple relationships within the same business entity, for example, as a bank operating as a customer or a customer that also deals with a buying organization as a supplier. Such relationships are sometimes required by government policies when conducting international transactions.

You can create a business as a party entity, and then create multiple business relationships with that party. For example, when a business entity starts transacting with your organization as a customer, you create it as a new party in the application. Thereafter, if this same customer is added as a supplier, you can establish an additional supplier relationship with an existing non-supplier party. This way you can avoid duplicating the party information when a new relationship with the party is created. This helps reduce the data maintenance by avoiding record duplication. It also helps in consolidating tax reports by specifying a single tax identifier for all relationships. Once you establish a new supplier relationship for an existing party, it shows up as a supplier and is available for all supplier transactions.
You create this structure by using the supplier import process to create an additional relationship with an existing party.

Creating a New Supplier from an Existing Party

A party is identified uniquely by its registry ID. Using a registry ID as a unique identifier for a party provides a simple way to associate any new business relationships to a single party.

The table below shows the column attributes and suggested values for the import template.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier Name</td>
<td>The name for the supplier you want to create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Organization Type</td>
<td>Tax organization type for the new supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registry ID</td>
<td>The registry ID of the party you are creating as a supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Relationship</td>
<td>The type of relationship between your company and the new supplier. The relationship type controls which transactions you and the supplier can conduct. There are two choices: Prospective supplier, Spend authorized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To create the new supplier, you use the supplier import template. When you submit an import process to create a new supplier relationship with an active party, the process checks that:

- The registry ID that you entered is valid and belongs to an active party.
- That party does not already have a supplier relationship.
- The supplier name that you entered in the template is an exact match with the party name for the registry ID you entered in the import process.

When the supplier import process completes successfully, the existing party is associated with the supplier relationship and is therefore available for transactions as a supplier. When you view the party as a supplier, you see the registry ID as part of the profile information. Also, shared attributes like D-U-N-S Number, contacts, and addresses are available from the existing party and displayed for the supplier.

Specify Supplier News Content

Supplier Portal

The Supplier Portal page serves as the landing page for Oracle Fusion Supplier Portal and provides quick access to tasks and reports relevant to you. The content that you can access in the Supplier Portal is controlled by your job role and your data access settings.
The Supplier Portal page includes an integrated search facility to locate particular orders, agreements, shipments and so on, a Tasks list from which to access all Supplier Portal tasks and reports, and a number of dynamically updated infolets. Infolets provide interactive graphic readouts of critical real time information, such as supplier transaction reports, for example.

**Supplier Portal Search**

You can directly search for specific items such as orders, agreements, and shipments. Select the type of object to search for in the Search drop down, and provide appropriate search criteria, such as an order number, in the search field, and click Search.

**Tasks**

Select tasks and reports from the Tasks list on the Supplier Portal page. Links are included for all activities you need to perform in Supplier Portal such as managing shipments and deliverables and creating invoices. Updates to your company profile can be initiated by clicking Manage Profile. See Supplier Profile Change Requests: Explained for more information.

**Monitoring Actions and Activities**

Graphic infolets provide an interactive readout of real time information. You can see recent activities and news, as well as view the items requiring attention, which you access by drilling down into the infolet. See the common topics on infolets for more information.

**Related Topics**

- Supplier Profile Change Requests
- Oracle SCM and Procurement Cloud Infolets
21 Define Sourcing Configuration

Manage Negotiation Styles

Example of Negotiation Styles

Negotiation styles control the definition of your negotiation documents. Negotiation styles can specify the terminology used within the document and control which processing capabilities can be performed using the style. For example, you can define a simple negotiation style and then use it to create very straightforward, streamlined negotiations. Alternately, you can create a negotiation style that takes advantage of many processing features. You can then use this style to create a complex negotiation. Using negotiation styles, you can also define default textual content for certain sections of a negotiation document.

In this example, Jan Martin is going to create a new negotiation style for use with RFQs. She allows alternate lines, multiple responses and response revision. She allows responses using a spreadsheet.

Create a Negotiation Style

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, Jan goes to the task: Manage Negotiation Styles:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Sourcing
   - Task: Manage Negotiation Styles
2. From the Manage Negotiation Styles page, Jan clicks the add icon to create a new style.
3. Jan creates her new style using the Create Negotiation Style page. She calls the style Alternate Lines and Responses, and gives it a description of *Use this style with RFQs that need to allow suppliers to enter alternate response lines.*
4. She deselects the auction and RFI document types. This new style can only be used for an RFQ.
5. She leaves the default terminology values as they are since she doesn’t need to change them.
6. In the Controls region, she selects which negotiation features are available using this style.
7. She allows suppliers to select the lines they reply to and to offer partial line quantities.
8. She allows suppliers to respond with alternative lines and to revise existing responses.
9. She allows suppliers to respond by spreadsheets using the Requirements and Lines and the Lines only spreadsheet options.
   - The Requirements and Lines spreadsheet is a hierarchical spreadsheet with the two options rich style spreadsheet format and light weight spreadsheet format. The Lines only spreadsheet is a non-hierarchical linear lines format.
10. She enables the collaboration team and requirements features.
11. Now she is finished so she saves her new negotiation style.

Negotiation Styles: Examples

You can create multiple negotiation styles that control the creation of your negotiation documents. Negotiation styles can specify the terminology used within the document and control which processing capabilities can be performed using the style. You can also create default content for certain sections of a negotiation document.
For example, you might create a slimmed down style that doesn’t include Instructions

- Instructions
- Autoextend settings
- Staggered closing
- Cost factors
- Contract terms

For some Sourcing capabilities, you must create a negotiation style that supports the capability. For example, to use the following capabilities:

- Two stage RFQ
- Project tasks
- Alternate responses

### Specifying Document Terminology

For each negotiation there is a pair of documents: negotiation document created by the category manager and a response document created by the supplier contact. Each of these documents has a label. Within the application, there are three types of negotiations: auction, RFI, or RFQ. Each type has its own document labels; however, you can change the labels used in the negotiation style.

The following table shows the predefined values for negotiation document and response document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negotiation Document</th>
<th>Supplier-side Response Document</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auction</td>
<td>Bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFI</td>
<td>Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFQ</td>
<td>Quote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When creating a negotiation style, you can create alternate labels for the category manager-side or supplier-side documents. Then any negotiation document created using that style replaces the default labels with the labels you created in the style. These replacements appear both in the online application and any printed versions of the document.

For example, you could use Tender or Offer for the supplier-side document, and you could use Solicitation for the buyer-side document.

### Selecting Processing Capabilities and Defaults

In addition to specifying alternate document labels, you can select which processing capabilities are available using a negotiation style. By default, all capabilities are available. To create a style without that capability, simply deselect the capability when creating the style. The controls used with a negotiation style are the same controls used when creating a normal negotiation.

Note the following controls:

- If you want to create two stage RFQs using this style, you must click the Two state RFQ check box.
- If you want to use this style to associate a negotiation to Oracle Projects project plan information, click the Project tasks check box.
If you want to allow the supplier to respond with different line information, click the Alternate response lines check box.

**Related Topics**

- Supplier Negotiations

**Negotiation Styles: Explained**

Negotiation styles control the definition of your negotiation documents. Negotiation styles can specify the terminology used within the document and control which processing capabilities can be performed using the style. For example, you can define a simple negotiation style and then use it to create very straightforward, streamlined negotiations. Alternately, you can create a negotiation style that takes advantage of many processing features. You can then use this style to create a complex negotiation.

Using negotiation styles, you can define default textual content for use in a negotiation document. Also, you can identify which negotiation capabilities are available when using this negotiation style.

**Header Information**

You enter header information to describe your negotiation style.

The following table shows the header level fields used in negotiation styles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negotiation Style</td>
<td>Name of the negotiation style you are creating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Optional text description of the style and its usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>A unique alphanumeric code to identify the style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Availability of the style for use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Identifying Document Types**

You can specify which document types category managers can create using this style. You can also change the terminology used to refer to different document types and related terms. For example, you might want to change the term *quote* to *offer*.

The following table shows the fields you can define for different document types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>If enable is checked, you can use this style when creating negotiations of that type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Type</td>
<td>Type of negotiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negotiation Display Name</td>
<td>Current display name used for this type of negotiation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Negotiation Controls

You can use a negotiation style to identify the negotiation features that are available using the style. You can enable or disable some controls, such as proxy bidding. Other controls are required, such as the negotiation close date. The negotiation controls that you can enable or disable are grouped according to the page they appear on. To enable a particular product feature for this negotiation style, select its check box.

Features include:

- Two-stage RFQ
- Integration with Oracle Fusion Project Management project plans.
- Abstracts.
- Team Scoring.

Related Topics

- Supplier Negotiations
- Negotiation Controls: Examples
- Associate a Negotiation with an Oracle Fusion Project Management Project Plan
- Using a Two-Stage RFQ: Explained

Manage Attribute Lists

Line Attribute Properties and Their Acceptable Values

Line attributes identify additional information about an item or service requested by the category manager. Use the following properties to describe your line attribute when defining it.

You use a line attribute’s properties to control its behavior and how the supplier should respond.

Response

You can control the supplier’s interaction with the attribute by specifying the response type. Optional responses do not require a supplier to offer a response. Suppliers must however provide a value for a required response. Suppliers can view attributes which are display only, but they cannot respond to them.
Value Type

Value type specifies the data type for the attribute value. There are four value types available. A text value accepts characters and numbers. A number value accepts only numbers and the decimal point. Date values accept dates that you select using the calendar picker. A URL value type accepts a URL in the format http://url.name.here. URLs also accept https:

Target

For each attribute, you can define a target value. This is the value which is most desirable for this attribute. You can also display the value to the supplier or keep it hidden.

Acceptable Values

For text values, you can specify a list of values from which the supplier can select. Any value not defined to the list is not accepted. For number and date values, you can define value ranges in terms of From Value and To Value. If you omit a From Value, that range includes everything up to the To value. Likewise, if you omit a To value, the range includes all values starting at the From value and above. Ranges cannot overlap. You can specify a single number by defining it as both the From and To values. Dates are defined similar to numbers.

Line Attributes and Multi-Attribute Scoring Negotiations

In a multi-attribute scored negotiation, you can have the application include the response values from the supplier along with the price offered when calculating the rank of that supplier’s response. To perform this calculation, you give each possible response value a numeric score and then weight the attribute among the other attributes for the line. Note that while each value’s score can be between 0 and 100, the weights for all the attributes defined for a line must add up to 100.

Creating Attribute Lists: Worked Example

Attribute lists are collections of line attributes that are commonly used together. Procurement application administrators can create public attribute lists for use when creating negotiations. When a negotiation author associates an attribute list with a negotiation line, all the attributes on the list are associated with the line. Any attributes on the list that are not needed can be deleted, and additional line attributes can be created if necessary. Attribute lists are an efficient way to streamline the negotiation creation process. They can also be used to encourage standardization and best practices.

In this example, the procurement application administrator is going to create an attribute list.

Creating an Attribute List

1. From the Tasks panel, she clicks the Manage Attribute Lists link.
2. On the Manage Attribute Lists page, she clicks the Add icon.
3. On the Create Attribute List page, she enters name in the Attribute List field, optionally a description, and sets the Status to Active.
4. She clicks Add Attribute Group to define a new group, or she can click Add Predefined Group to add an existing group to the list.
5. Once the group has been added, she clicks Add Attribute and uses the Add Attribute page to define an attribute to the list.
6. She repeats the last step until she has added all the necessary attributes to the list.
Creating Line Attributes: Worked Example

Line attributes make your negotiation line more descriptive and can also be used to ensure that all responses submitted for the line include specific details not included elsewhere in the line information.

In this example, the category manager for a national used car seller is defining a negotiation to deal with suppliers of used cars. She defines the negotiation as a multiattribute scored auction and defines line attributes to describe vehicles.

Defining Line Attributes

1. After defining the negotiation line for the vehicle to buy, the category manager clicks the Edit icon at the end of the negotiation line for vehicle.
2. On the Lines: Edit Line page, she scrolls until the Attributes region appears. She clicks Add Group. On the new row, she clicks in the Attribute column and enters Vehicle Specifications for the group name. The other columns on the line are write-protected since they don't apply to the Group element.
3. From the Actions menu, she selects Add Attribute.
4. On the Add Attribute page, she enters Color as the Attribute. She accepts the defaults of Required for Response and Text for Value Type. She enters a weight of 20 for this attribute. She chooses to have no target value for this line attribute.
5. In the Acceptable Values region, she clicks the plus icon to add a row to the table. She proceeds to enter possible color values in the Response Value column and their numeric scores in the Score column. When finished, she clicks Save and Close to return to the Lines: Edit Line page.
6. She highlights the row for the Vehicle Specifications group and selects Add Attribute from the Actions menu to add another attribute to the negotiation line.
7. She names this attribute Mileage and this time selects Number as the Value Type. It has a weight of 80. She specifies a Target value of 5000 and displays this target to suppliers.

What's an attribute list?

A line attribute list is a collection of line attributes that you can apply to a negotiation line. When you apply an attribute list, all the line attributes on the list are associated with that line. Once applied to the line, you can modify the line attributes if necessary. You can also delete any attributes that are not appropriate to the line.

Manage Cost Factors

Cost Factors and Cost Factor Lists: Explained

Cost factors allow you to identify and negotiate on additional costs related to a line. They're

You can use cost factors to obtain a more realistic idea of the total cost of an item or service by factoring in any additional costs beyond just price. Such costs could include additional costs such as consulting or training. Cost factors can be added to a negotiation line, to lines in negotiation templates, or to collections of cost factors (called cost factor lists). A negotiation line can have more than one cost factor (of any type) defined to it. You can create three types of cost factors.
Fixed Amount Cost Factors
A fixed amount cost factor is a set value for the line, regardless of the quantity of units being asked for by the line.

Per-Unit Cost Factors
Per-unit cost factors are specified as a set value that is multiplied by the quantity of units being asked for by the line.

Percentage of Line Price Cost Factors
Percentage of line price cost factors are specified as a percentage. The percentage of line price is calculated by multiplying the unit price by the percentage of line price cost factor value.

Cost Factor Lists
Once you create cost factors for your additional costs, you can create lists of cost factors. Buyers can then apply these cost factor lists to negotiation lines to quickly identify the commonly occurring secondary costs that also must be negotiated. Buyers can create their own personal cost factor lists using cost factors that have been defined in the application.

Related Topics
- Cost Factors: How They’re Calculated
- Cost Factors in Awards: How They’re Calculated
- Creating Cost Factor Lists: Worked Example

Creating Cost Factors: Worked Example
Cost factors identify charges associated with a negotiation line in addition to price. For example, these could include charges for shipping and handling, retooling, or import duties.

Cost factors are calculated in one of three ways: fixed amount per line, fixed amount per unit of line, and percentage of line price. You can use these pricing bases to reflect the nature of the extra cost. The table shows a possible example cost factor for each type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cost Factor</th>
<th>Pricing Basis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shipping</td>
<td>Fixed amount per line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazardous materials charge</td>
<td>Flat amount per unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import tax</td>
<td>Percentage of line price</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vision Corporation is expanding into a new branch of its items and services. Negotiations dealing with this new area will need to negotiate new transportation-related costs with suppliers, specifically with the new Chicago office. The procurement application administrator is going to define several new cost factors. Once the cost factors are defined and enabled, they become available for buyers to use individually or as members of a cost factor list.

Creating Cost Factors
1. From the Task panel on the Negotiations work area, the category manager clicks the Manage Cost Factors link.
2. On the Manage Cost Factors page, the category manager reviews the existing cost factors to ensure there isn’t already a cost factor that would be appropriate for the list. Not seeing one, she clicks the icon to add a new cost factor.

3. When the new line appears, she enters Shipping as the name, General shipping charge as the description, and enters CHI_SHIP as the unique code. She selects Fixed-amount for the pricing basis lets the status default to active.

4. She clicks the plus icon to add additional rows and enter the information for Hazard materials charge and Import tax cost factors.

5. When finished, she clicks Save to save the new definitions.

Manage Cost Factor Lists

What is a cost factor list?

A cost factor list is a collection of cost factors that you can apply to a negotiation line. When you apply a cost factor list, all the cost factors on the list are associated with that line. You can delete any cost factors you do not need. Cost factor lists allow you to quickly associate a group of related or commonly used cost factors with a negotiation line. This speeds up the creation process.

Manage Negotiation Templates

Creating a Negotiation Template: Worked Example

If the majority of the negotiations you create contain the same features, for example, line attributes, terms and conditions, response controls; or negotiation data such as the value for the Location field, you may want to create a negotiation template that category managers can use each time they create a new negotiation.

Using a template saves time by streamlining the creation process. A negotiation template contains the features that are similar among the negotiations you commonly create. When you create new negotiations using templates, you can use the template as a shell for the negotiation, add to and edit details of the negotiation as necessary, and publish the negotiation.

In this example, Sue Parado, a category manager, will define a negotiation template to be used when negotiating for a list of incumbent supplies from Vision's inventory category 200.13 which contains printers.

Creating a Negotiation Template

1. On the Negotiations work area, from the Task Panel, Sue clicks Manage Negotiation Templates.

2. From the Manage Templates page, she clicks the Create icon.

3. When the pop-up window appears, she selects the procurement business unit, negotiation type, a negotiation style if appropriate, negotiation outcome, and negotiation currency. Procurement business unit, negotiation outcome and negotiation currency are required fields. She then clicks Create.

4. She uses the train stops displayed across the pages to create the negotiation template. This process is similar to the general negotiation creation process, but some fields and attributes are not available for use. For example, you cannot define a close date. The category manager will enter that date when she uses the template to create a negotiation.

5. She enters Printer Auctions as the template name, and on the Lines page, enters 200.13 for Category. On the Suppliers page, she enters the names of the suppliers with whom the company has purchased printers in the past.
6. When the procurement application administrator has completed the appropriate fields, she activates and saves the new template.

What's the difference between a negotiation style and a negotiation template?

You can use both negotiation styles and negotiation templates when creating negotiation documents. The purpose for each is different, however, they both help shorten the creation process. A negotiation style uses only the creation features necessary to create the target type of negotiation. Any features not required are not accessible using that negotiation style. For example, if line attributes are not appropriate to a particular type of negotiation, the procurement application administrator can create a negotiation style that omits line attributes. When that negotiation style is used to create a negotiation document, the application pages used to create line attributes do not appear. By focusing only on the features required by the type of negotiation, the creation process is shortened.

A negotiation template is a skeleton you apply to a new negotiation you are creating. Negotiation templates can provide default data for many of the negotiation document attributes, for example addresses or invited suppliers. You can modify some of these attributes when creating your new negotiation document.

Negotiation templates also let companies standardize practices on negotiation creation. For example, different templates can be used with different item categories. You must have access to the Procurement Business Unit under which the template was created to access and use it.

Abstracts

Implement Abstracts

Abstracts are negotiation summaries that you post on your external website so they can be displayed to suppliers. Then your suppliers can read information about your upcoming negotiations and decide if they are interested in participating without having to log in to the sourcing application to view information. Abstracts are used mainly in public sector entities such as state and local governments, EMEA and US federal negotiations.

To implement abstracts, you must do these tasks.

- Create a negotiation style that supports abstracts. See the topic on creating negotiation style in this chapter.
- Update the Configure Abstract Listing page.

Update the Configure Abstract Listing Page

You use Setup and Maintenance to update the Configure Abstract Listing page:

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Configure Procurement Business Function task:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Procurement Foundation
2. Select the Procurement business unit for which you want to configure the abstract listing page.
3. On the Configure Procurement Business Function page, go to the Sourcing section.
4. Click Configure Abstract Listing.
5. On the Configure Abstract Listing page, set the controls and formats as appropriate for abstracts for this Procurement business unit. Note that you can also create text to be included as header or footers.
6. When you are finished, click **Save and Close**.
22 Define Supplier Qualification Management

Define Questions, Qualification Areas, and Qualification Models

How Questions Are Used

Questions are the building blocks of your supplier qualifications tools. As you create a repository of individual questions, they are stored in the Question Library. You can later use questions in the Question Library to create the initiatives you use for qualifying your suppliers. The questions in your repository are reusable and available to other supplier qualification managers. Additionally, category managers can open and use questions in the Question Library as requirements in Sourcing negotiations. By using predefined questions, you can quickly build your initiatives without having to redefine commonly used questions.

Creating Questions

When you create your question, you must specify the question text, how the question is used and the type of response that is expected.

The following table shows the attributes for a question and explains each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question Attribute</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>The name you use when searching for this question to add to an initiative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Statuses include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Draft - the question is still being developed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Active - the question is available for use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Inactive - the question cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Archived - there is a newer version of the question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>The current version of this question. The question version is maintained automatically by the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The person responsible or point of contact for the question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Level</td>
<td>The level at which the question applies: supplier or supplier site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical question</td>
<td>Checked if this is a critical question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responder type</td>
<td>Whether the expected responder is a supplier or an internal employee, supplier questions are used to build the questionnaire sent to the supplier for responses. Internal questions are used to build the questionnaire sent to the internal responder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Question Attribute** | **Explanation**
--- | ---
If you select Automatic, then you can map questions to descriptive flexfields from the supplier profile. Also, the mapped questions are excluded from the questionnaire.
If supplier is selected and mapped to a supplier profile attribute, then the question is mapped to an attribute in the supplier’s profile.

**Required Response** | Checked if a response is required to the question

**Mapped to supplier attribute** | When suppliers register with the application, they provide information that is stored in a profile for that supplier.
You can map your question to an attribute of the supplier profile. This lets the information the supplier provides in the response be added to the supplier profile.
If the question level is supplier site, then you link to site level attributes.
Also, depending on which attribute you map to, values for Question Type and Response Type default cannot be changed.

**Supplier Profile Attribute** | Search and add a descriptive flexfield. To search for an active descriptive flexfield, select category as Additional Information.

**Question Type** | The type of response for this question:
- A simple text string
- A single selection from a defined list of allowable values
- Multiple selections from a defined list of allowable values

**Response Type (for Question Type = text)** | The format for the response
- Single line of text
- Multiple lines of text.
- Number
- Date
- Date and Time
- URL

**Accepts comments from the responder** | Lets the responder to enter comments along with the response

**Response Attachments (for Question Type = text)** | Whether the supplier can include attachments in the response

**Preferred Response (for Question Type = text)** | Your preferred response to the question and whether it should be visible to the supplier.

**Scoring** | Once a supplier has completed responding to an initiative, and you accept the response, you can view the supplier’s responses to the initiative questions and assign the response a numeric value based on how desirable that response value is. This is called scoring the response. There are three types of scoring methods you can choose:
- None - the question responses cannot be scored.
- Manual - when evaluating the question response, you must score the responses manually.
### Define Supplier Qualification Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question Attribute</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Automatic - you can define scoring criteria and have the application perform the scoring automatically.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can have both scored and non-scored questions in a qualification area, but if you have scoring enabled for a qualification area, you must have at least one scored question in that qualification area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attachments</th>
<th>Click to add attachments to the question. If you use Setup Migrator to migrate Supplier Qualification objects to a new environment, attachments are not carried over.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question Text</th>
<th>The text of the question. The text the supplier sees on the questionnaire. You can use rich text formatting as needed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Identifying Acceptable Response Values

You can create a question that restricts the supplier to values from a list of acceptable values. When you create the question, you also specify the values you accept for the question. You can specify a preferred value and optionally display the preferred value to the responder. When the supplier answers the question, she must choose a value from the list you provide. You can let the supplier choose only a single value or multiple values from the list. You use a supplier profile attribute that has a set of possible values defined in the supplier profile. Then, those values become the allowable response values for your question. You cannot change these values, for each response, you can also indicate whether the supplier can include attachments in the response.

### Using Supplier Profile Attributes in Questions

The Supplier Profile is a standardized collection of attributes that is used by the application to define a supplier. Some examples include information such as corporate or tax information about the supplier. You can reference these attributes as question fields. When a supplier provides information for the field, and the qualification manager accepts the response, the value is used to update the supplier’s profile.

Categories of business classifications are also used to describe the supplier, and a hierarchy of products and services that identify a supplier’s products or services. Depending on which attribute you map to, values for Question Type and Response Type default cannot be changed. If there are multiple possible values defined for the attribute in the supplier profile, those values include the acceptable values for the question. You cannot add or delete values to this list.

For example, one of the supplier profile attributes is Payment Terms, and there may be several different types of payment terms available. If you use Payment Terms in a question, your responder must select an answer from the list of values.

### Map Questions to Supplier Descriptive Flexfields

You can map questions to descriptive flexfields from a supplier profile; Descriptive flexfield attributes are used to store additional information about the supplier, which is useful for business. You can leverage this additional information during the supplier qualification process.

You can leverage supplier descriptive flexfield values in the supplier qualification process by mapping a qualification question to a descriptive flexfield attribute on the supplier profile. You can populate supplier descriptive flexfield’s multiple choice single selection attribute for question mapping where both text type and multiple choice with single selection descriptive flexfields are supported.

When questionnaires are sent to suppliers and internal responders, questions configured with responder type as automatic are excluded from these questionnaires. You can use this extended supplier information in the qualification activity that may not originate directly from a supplier or internal responder.
For supplier responder type, information is gathered from suppliers using a questionnaire and for automatic responder type, responses are gathered from supplier profile automatically. Qualification managers can view all the question responses (this includes responses for automatic responder type questions too), during qualification evaluation process and award a qualification outcome for the respective supplier.

For the supplier responder type where the question is mapped to an attribute from the supplier profile, if the supplier responds with an updated value then after approval, this new value is updated in the supplier profile attribute and in the response repository. You can score supplier descriptive flexfield’s multiple choice single selection attribute values.

For the supplier registration process, if the supplier registration form and questionnaire share similar descriptive flexfields (that is, the descriptive flexfields are mapped to the questions), then the values in these descriptive flexfields are synchronized with the questionnaire responses.

Using Question Branching

In addition to providing the supplier with a choice of allowable values for a single question, you can also use the supplier’s response to an initial question to determine whether additional questions should be asked. This is called question branching. In essence, if you select a particular value for a question, you may be prompted to answer an additional question. You can do question branching for acceptable responses of supplier descriptive flexfield’s multiple choice single selection based questions.

Modifying Questions

Modifying certain fields such as question text, acceptable responses, question type creates a revision of that question. Other fields, such as attachments that do not create a new revision of the question). If you modify an existing question, the application assigns a new version number. Any existing responses continue to be associated with the previous version. To synchronize your qualifications and assessments with the new initiative version, you must create a new initiative and include the new revision of the question using a revised qualification area.

Using Questions in Sourcing Negotiations

Category Managers use the Negotiations work area to conduct negotiations with suppliers to determine the best provider for goods and services. Such negotiations include information about the negotiated items, but may also solicit company, licensing, performance history and other information from the suppliers participating in the negotiation. Category Managers identify such information by adding questions (called requirements) to the negotiations they then conduct with suppliers. Since this can be the same information you can obtain by using Supplier Qualification questions, Category Managers can use questions from the question library as requirements.

How to Use Question Branching

Question branching is a tool you can use to expand your qualification possibilities when soliciting information from responders. Branching lets you selectively pose additional questions depending on a supplier’s answer to a prior question. For example, your initial question could ask a supplier to identify any industry trade organizations to which the supplier belongs. Then depending on which organization the supplier chooses, you might follow up with additional questions.

When creating a branching question, you create the lower-level questions first. Once your lower-level questions are created, you can then create your initial question. As you are creating your initial question and its allowable answers, you can use the follow-up question you defined previously.

For example, using the preceding scenario, you would define questions in the following order

1. First you would create your follow-up questions. You could define these in any order.

   a. “Have you received any awards from this organization? If so attach documentation.”
b. "How long have you been a member of this organization?"

c. "Has a representative of your company been on the governing board of this organization within the last five years?"

2. Once you have defined your follow-up questions, you can define your primary question, for example: "To which of the following organizations does your company belong?"

3. As you specify the list of allowable answers to your primary question (in this case, the names of organizations), for the appropriate organizations, you would link the follow-up questions to that answer.

Note that:

- A single answer may branch to one or more questions.
- Questions exist independently of which initiatives they are used in. A question can be a primary question in one initiative but a follow-up question in a different initiative.

Examples of Question Branching

These two scenarios show how to use question branching in simple questions. In each example, the supplier qualification manager creates a primary question and one or more follow-up questions. These questions are displayed depending on the answer to the primary question.

Scenario

Tim Jones is creating a question for use in later qualification initiatives. This question asks the supplier to identify whether the company is public or private. It accepts a single answer. If the answer to the question is "public," the supplier must answer an additional question. This question asks the supplier to specify the date the company went public. If the answer to the question is "private," the supplier does not supply any additional information.

Scenario

Carmen SantAngelo is creating a question to use when soliciting certification information for suppliers. The primary question includes a list of several possible certifications for the type of supplier. The supplier chooses all the certifications from the list that apply to the supplier company. Depending on which certification the supplier chooses, an additional question is displayed which prompts the supplier for the latest certification date.

Create a Question

You create and save questions to use later in initiatives. By creating the questions separately, you can build a repository of frequently used questions for reuse. Therefore, you do not have to recreate the questions every time you want to create a new initiative.

In this scenario, Clare Furey, the supplier qualification manager, is creating questions for later use in an initiative.

Creating a Simple Text Question

1. Clare begins by navigating to the Manage Questions page.

2. She clicks the Add icon.

3. She enters her question on the Create Question page, as displayed in the following table. (If no information is specified, she accepts the defaults.)
4. Once Clare enters all the information in the preceding table, she is finished defining the question. She clicks **Activate** and then **Save and Close**. She returns to the Manage Questions page.

**Creating a Question with a List of Acceptable Responses**

1. She clicks the **Add** icon.

2. She enters her question on the Create Question page, as displayed in the following table. (If no information is specified, she accepts the defaults.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question name</td>
<td>Corporate Functional Currency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>She checks the default is Clare Furey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Level</td>
<td>Supplier site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responder Type</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Type</td>
<td>Text entry box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Text</td>
<td>Select your preferred currency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Supplier Profile Attribute field displays. Clare checks the check box.

The Search and Select: Supplier Profile Attribute dialog box displays. She chooses Corporate Profile from the Category menu and clicks Search.

The attributes for the Corporate Profile category appear. She highlights the Preferred Functional Currency attribute and clicks OK.

| Question Text                      | Select your preferred currency.                 |
3. She enters all the information in the preceding table and finishes defining the question. She clicks **Activate** and then **Save and Close**. She returns to the Manage Questions page.

### Creating a Question with Question Branching.

1. She clicks the **Add** icon.
2. She enters her question on the Create Question page. (If no information is specified, she accepts the defaults.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question name</td>
<td>Company Age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Level</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responder Type</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Type</td>
<td>Multiple choice with single selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Text</td>
<td>Enter your company’s age.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. This question’s final answer varies depending on whether the company is less than one year old. If the company is older than one year, the resulting question prompts for an age value. If the company is not yet a year old, the resulting question prompts for a list of key investors. To define this question branching, Clare must define the test question first, so she clicks the **Add** icon for Acceptable Values. She must add an entry for each of the possible values.

4. For the first allowable value, she enters "Less than one year." She then clicks the icon to edit the question branching.

5. On the Edit Question Branching dialog box, she clicks the **Search and Add** icon.

6. Searches for a question called Identify Investors. This question has been previously defined and is regularly used in many initiatives. When she sees the question in the search results, she highlights the question in the table and clicks **Apply**. Then she clicks **OK** to close the Search and Add dialog box. She clicks **OK** again to close the Edit Question Branching dialog box.

7. Now that the first test condition has been taken care of, Clare defines the remaining condition.

8. She adds another allowable value called "More than a year old." She edits the question branching for this value and identifies an existing question called More Than One Year. This question is a simple text box that prompts the supplier to enter a number.

9. Now that she has finished defining the parent question, she clicks **Activate** and then **Save and Close**.

10. She has completed defining her questions at this point, so she leaves the Manage Question page.

### Creating a Scored Question

1. She clicks the Add icon.
2. She enters her information on the Create Question page. (If no information is specified, she accepts the defaults.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Number of employees?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>She checks the default, Clare Furey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Level</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attribute | Value
--- | ---
Responder Type | Supplier
Question Type | Multiple choice with single selection
Question Text | How many employees do you have?
Scoring | Automatic

3. In the Acceptable Responses, Clair must specify the acceptable responses, so she clicks the plus sign. She enters the values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Employees</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 100</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 500</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. After specifying the response values and their scores, she is done defining the question, so she clicks Save and then Activate.

Qualification Areas

Qualification areas are containers for your questions. You use a qualification area and its questions to evaluate a particular aspect of a supplier. You add one or more qualification areas to an initiative and use the questions in the qualification areas to create a questionnaire. You then send the questionnaire to the supplier and any internal responders for a response. Once all the responders have submitted replies, you and any other evaluators review the answers. If all evaluators approve the responses, a qualification for the supplier is created for that qualification area.

If you try to use a qualification area whose questions have been updated, the questions are displayed with an alert icon. You can revise the qualification area definition by using the **Uptake Latest Revision**. If you do not update the qualification area definition, it uses the previous version of the question.

The following table shows the attributes for a qualification area and explanations for each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qualification Area</td>
<td>The name of the qualification area you are creating. This name is used as the name of the qualification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>The number of the current version of this qualification area definition. As changes are made to the qualification area definition, the Revision number is incremented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Optional description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The owner of the qualification area definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default qualification owner</td>
<td>Select to set the owner as the default qualification owner when this qualification area is included in a qualification initiative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information only</td>
<td>Select this check box if you do not want this qualification area to affect any outcomes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expiration Reminder</td>
<td>Sets a future point in time before the qualification expires when the application starts sending alerts to the qualification manager. The value you set here is the default that is used for any qualification created using this qualification area. The owner of the qualification can override the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments</td>
<td>You can browse to existing files and add as attachments on the qualification area. You can browse to and attach files, enter free form text, or enter a URL in the format <a href="https://some.name.com">https://some.name.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Qualification area definitions can be in one of four statuses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Draft - the initial definition has not been activated for use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Active - the definition is available for use in initiatives and qualification models.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Inactive - the definition is disabled and cannot be used. It can be reactivated for use when necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Archived - this definition has been superseded by a more recent revision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification Area Level</td>
<td>Whether qualifications generated using this model apply only at the supplier site level or at both the supplier and the supplier site level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
<td>The procurement business unit that owns this definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global check box and Procurement BU Access menu</td>
<td>These values control who can use this qualification area. The default is the procurement business unit of the creator. If you check Global, the qualification area can be used by all procurement business units in the application. Otherwise, you choose the procurement business unit which can use this qualification area. Note that you can choose multiple values from the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share Qualification with Supplier</td>
<td>You can expose qualification evaluation decisions to suppliers by selecting the Summary option for the Share Qualification with Supplier attribute. By selecting this option, you can control the level of information that is shared with the supplier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification Duration (only if automatically evaluating qualifications)</td>
<td>If you choose to have qualifications automatically evaluated, this is value is used to derive the qualification end date. The application uses the date the evaluation is performed for the qualification start date. The qualification duration is added to the qualification start date to derive the qualification end date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically populate response</td>
<td>If there are existing responses from a supplier’s previous response to questions in this qualification area, you can choose to have the application use the existing responses when it generates a new questionnaire. This sets the default for any initiatives that use this qualification area, although a qualification manager can override the setting when defining the initiative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically populating the questionnaire with previous responses relieves the supplier of having to always answer all the questions. Alternatively, you may want to force the supplier to answer all the questions every time (for example, you are using the questionnaire as a poll, so you want updated responses every time).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically accept responses</td>
<td>If you choose, you can automatically accept responses to questionnaires. This allows the responses to enter the application without needing an evaluator to manually view and accept them first. If you enable automatic response acceptance here, this sets the default for any initiatives that use this qualification area, although a qualification manager can override the setting when defining the initiative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable scoring</td>
<td>If you enable scoring for this qualification area, it must contain at least one question with scoring defined. You must also set a weight for the question. The weight reflects the importance of that question among the other scored questions in this area. Weights are required for scored questions and the weight values must add up to 100. You can also set a knockout score which all response scores must surpass if they are to be used in further processing. Setting knockout scores is optional. Additionally, you define the area outcomes in terms of total scores. An area’s total score is the sum of the scores of all the questions in the area. Typically, for each outcome, you specify a beginning and ending score range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic initiative with single qualification</td>
<td>Select to automatically create an initiative with a single qualification where subject matter experts as initiative owners can review and accept responses independently for complex qualifications with quicker turn around for responses. Qualification owner can then evaluate each qualification quickly, without having to wait for other qualification responses when multiple qualifications are present in the initiative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically evaluate qualification (only if scoring is enabled)</td>
<td>You can also choose to have qualifications automatically evaluated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Requalification on qualification expiration</td>
<td>Select to automatically requalify a supplier for certain qualification areas when the current qualification has expired or is within the expiration reminder period so that the supplier always has an active qualification. If you enable automatic requalification on qualification expiration here, all the qualifications created based on this qualification area will have automatic requalification on expiration enabled by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Requalification on new response</td>
<td>Select to automatically requalify a supplier for certain qualification areas when a new response is available so that the active qualification is always based on the latest information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information only</td>
<td>An information-only area does not have any outcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add icon (Question section)</td>
<td>Using the add icon opens up a dialog window where you can choose questions and add them to your qualification area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions and Outcomes icon</td>
<td>Use the Questions and Outcomes icon to display the Create Qualification Area: Questions and Outcomes page where you can choose the qualification questions and add them to your qualification area. You also specify the possible question outcomes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Name of Qualification Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name/Question text (Search and Add dialog box)</td>
<td>Enter the name of a question or the beginning text of a question you want to locate. You choose the appropriate questions from the search results. When you are returned to the Create Qualification Area, the questions you chose are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>You can set different weights for the questions in this qualification area. The weight for a question indicates the importance of that question relative to the other questions in the area. The higher the weight, the more important the question. The sum of the weights for all scored questions in this area must equal 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knockout score</td>
<td>You can set a minimum score that all supplier responses must beat to be considered an acceptable response to this question. If any of the required question responses fail to pass the knockout score, the application assigns the qualification an unacceptable outcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add icon (Qualification Outcomes section)</td>
<td>Use the icon to define a possible evaluation outcome for this area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as Knockout (only if scoring is enabled)</td>
<td>When defining an area outcome, clicking this button identifies this outcome and the one to use for any responses that do not beat the knockout score.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outcome</td>
<td>The name of a possible qualification outcome. For example, you might define three possible outcomes, Best, Acceptable, and Unacceptable. You assign one of these outcomes later when you are evaluating a supplier’s response, or if you are using automatic evaluation, the application assigns the outcome based on the sum of scores for all the questions. If you have scored questions in this area, then you define the possible outcomes in terms of total score values (the sum of all the scores of all the questions) using the From Score and To Score fields. You must define one outcome to use when at least one of the required question responses doesn’t pass the knock out score.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Score/To Score (only if scoring is enabled)</td>
<td>If scoring is enabled this qualification area, for each possible outcome, you must identify a From Score and a To Score. When the responses to scored questions are evaluated, their scores are added together to give a total score. This total score value you use here. Effectively, this assigns responses with different total scores to different area outcomes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify (Only if automatic evaluation is enabled)</td>
<td>For each outcome you define, you can optionally choose to send a notification to the owner of the qualification area a notification whenever a response was automatically evaluated and assigned to this outcome.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The process for creating a qualification area includes the following steps:

1. Define the qualification area header values, such as name, business unit access, and expiration notification values. If you intend to use this qualification area with scored questions, decide whether you want to process this area automatically (automatic acceptance and automatic evaluation), and set the attributes appropriately. If you intend to share qualification decisions with your suppliers, set the sharing attributes as needed.
2. Click the Questions and Outcomes icon to display the **Create Qualification Area: Questions and Outcomes** page.
3. Search for and add all the questions that are appropriate for the aspect of the supplier that you want to qualify. If you add a question that uses scoring, enter a weight for that question (the sum of all the question weights must equal 100).
4. Define all the possible outcomes to use later when you are evaluating a supplier’s response. If you add a question that uses scoring, enter a weight for that question (the sum of all the question weights must equal 100).
5. Define any additional classification values as appropriate.
6. Once you have completed defining the qualification area, use Activate to make the qualification area available for use.

If any changes are made to the questions contained in a qualification area, you can synchronize the latest question version with the qualification area by choosing Uptake Latest Revision. Existing qualification areas remain linked to the version of the question used when the area was created.

If you are planning changes to a qualification area, and you want to see which qualification models use the area, you can view the area definition and then choose the View Qualification Area Usage.

Using Qualification Areas in Oracle Fusion Sourcing

Category Managers use Oracle Fusion Sourcing to conduct negotiations with suppliers to determine the best provider for goods and services. Negotiations include details on the negotiated items, but may also solicit company, licensing, performance history and other information from the suppliers participating in the negotiation. Category Managers identify such information by adding questions (called requirements) to the negotiations they then conduct with suppliers. Since this can be the same information you can obtain by using qualification areas in initiatives, Supplier Qualification Management lets Category Managers copy existing qualification areas as requirement sections in their negotiations. Any qualification areas used in the negotiations must also be defined for the same procurement BU or defined as global.

Related Topics

- Automatically Requalify Qualifications: Explained
- How Qualifications Are Evaluated

Create a Qualification Area

You use qualification areas to contain and organize your qualification questions. Once you have your questions added to your qualification area, you can then use your qualification areas in qualification models for use with assessment initiatives, or you can add one or more qualification areas directly to qualification initiatives.

Newton Consulting is branching into a new area of services. Clare Furey, the supplier qualification manager, is creating a new qualification area to use with future initiatives to qualify prospective suppliers.

Creating a Qualification Area

1. Clare navigates to the Create Qualification Area: Overview page.
2. She enters Financial Viability as the qualification area name.
3. She accepts the default, Vision Operations, as the Procurement BU which owns this qualification area, and notes that she is assigned as the qualification manager who owns the area.
4. She enters a description of area containing questions relating to various financial details.
5. If she wants to assign herself as the default qualification owner for this qualification area, then she selects the Default qualification owner check box.
6. When this qualification area is included in a qualification initiative, she will be defaulted as the qualification owner.
7. Since she later selects which Procurement BUs can use this area, she leaves the Global box unchecked.
8. Since Clare did not check the Global check box, she must specify which procurement BUs can use this qualification area, so she clicks the Procurement BU add icon. When the Procurement BU dialog box displays, she scrolls through the list adding the names of the BUs that can use this area for qualifying suppliers. When she is finished listing the BUs, she clicks OK.
9. Since Clare wants to reuse this qualification area every year to keep her supplier information current, she chooses to not reuse responses. This way suppliers will need to complete the initiative questionnaire every year with new, updated response values.
9. The questions in this qualification area solicit general information about the suppliers’ financial organization and history. None of the questions are required, and many are open-ended, so there is no need for her to view the responses and possibly reject any of them. Since she does not need to view the responses, she enables the Automatically accept responses attribute.

10. In this qualification area, Clare uses several questions that allow scoring. If a question is scored, evaluators can assign a numeric value to the supplier response value. These response scores help you and other evaluators to compare and grade responses between different suppliers. To allow the scoreable questions to be used in this qualification area, Clare selects the check box named Enable scoring.

11. If she wants to automatically create an initiative with a single qualification, then she selects the Automatic initiative with single qualification check box.

12. She sets the default expiration reminder value to 30 days. Therefore, for any qualification created using this area, (unless the qualification owner changes the value), expiration reminders start going out 30 days before the qualification expires.

13. If she wants to automatically requalify qualifications on expiration, then she can select the Automatic Requalification on expiration check box.

14. If she wants to automatically requalify qualifications whenever there is a new response, then she can select the Automatic Requalification on new response check box.

15. Now Clare must add her questions, so she clicks the Add icon in the Questions region. When the Search and Add dialog box appears, she finds and adds a question called Annual Revenue. This question has been defined earlier and is typically used by all her basic supplier qualification initiatives.

16. When she has selected the question, she clicks Apply to add it to the area, and then clicks OK to close the dialog box. The attributes for the question such as revision number, responder type, and whether a response is required appear in the question table, once the question is added.

17. Clare continues adding questions. She could create a new question at this point by clicking Create and Add, but all the questions she needs for this area have already been defined.

18. She defines three possible outcomes that can result from qualifications performed using the area: Good, Satisfactory, and Unsatisfactory.

19. Once Clare is finished creating her new qualification area, she clicks Save and then Activate.

How You Use Qualification Models

Qualification models are containers for qualification areas. You use a qualification model and its qualification areas to perform a comprehensive evaluation of a supplier known as an assessment. When creating an assessment initiative, you specify a single qualification model containing one or more qualification areas. The questions contained in the model’s qualification areas are used to create the questionnaire that is sent to your suppliers and any internal responders. The application creates draft qualifications and assessments when you launch the initiative.

If you try to use a qualification model whose qualification areas have been updated, an alert icon displays. You are prompted to revise the qualification model definition, by using Uptake Latest Revision. If you do not update the qualification model definition, it uses the previous version of the qualification area definition.

Once all the responders have submitted replies, you review each of the responses and either accept it or return it back to responders. The responders can update their responses and resubmit. Once you view and accept a supplier’s responses as well as any internal responses associated with the supplier, all qualifications for that supplier are in Ready for Evaluation. During the evaluation step, the designated reviewers view the supplier responses and assign an outcome value. (You define the possible outcome values that are available when you define the qualification model,)When all qualifications are evaluated and finalized, corresponding assessment becomes active.

The following table displays qualification model attributes and explains the attribute values.
### Define Supplier Qualification Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Question Model</strong></td>
<td>The name of the qualification model you are creating. This name is used as the name of the assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Revision</strong></td>
<td>The number of the current version of this qualification model definition. As changes are made to the qualification model definition, the Revision number is incremented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owner</strong></td>
<td>The owner of the qualification model definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default assessment owner</strong></td>
<td>Select to set the owner as the default assessment owner when this qualification model is included in an assessment initiative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Procurement BU</strong></td>
<td>The procurement business that owns this definition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Status**                  | Qualification model definitions can be in one of four statuses:  
|                             | • Draft - the initial definition has not yet been activated for use.  
|                             | • Active - the definition is available for use in initiatives.  
|                             | • Inactive - the definition is disabled and cannot be used. It can be reactivated for use when necessary.  
|                             | • Archived - this definition has been superseded by a more recent revision.                                                              |
| **Global check box and Procurement BU** | These values control who can use this qualification model. The default is for the model to be available to the procurement business unit of the creator. If you check Global, the qualification model can be used by all procurement business units in the application. Otherwise, you choose the procurement business unit which can use this qualification model. Note that you can choose multiple values from the menu. |
| **Share Assessment with Supplier** | You can expose assessment evaluation decisions to suppliers if you select the Summary option for the Share Assessment with Supplier attribute. If you select this option, any assessment created using the areas in this model can be communicated to a supplier when you finalize the assessments. You can choose to share:  
|                             | • Summary (outcome, start date, and end date)  
|                             | • Qualifications (qualification information included in the assessment)  
|                             | • Note to supplier - You can also add a note that the supplier can see when viewing the assessment.                                          |
| **Qualification Model Level** | Whether assessments generated using this model apply only at the supplier site level or at both the supplier and the supplier site level. |
| **Enable scoring**          | If you enable scoring for this qualification model, it must contain at least one qualification area with scoring defined, and the qualification area must contain at least one question with scoring defined.  
<p>|                             | Additionally, you define the model outcomes in terms of total scores. A model’s total score is the sum of the scores of all the areas in the model. Typically, for each outcome, you specify a beginning and ending score range. |
| <strong>Automatically evaluate assessment (only available if scoring is enabled)</strong> | You can also choose to have assessments automatically evaluated. The application uses the scoring information defined for the model’s outcomes to evaluate the assessment. |
| <strong>Expiration Reminder</strong>     | Sets a future point in time before the qualification expires when the application starts sending alerts to the qualification manager. The value you set here is the default that is used for any assessment created using this qualification model. The owner of the assessment can override the value. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Name</strong></th>
<th><strong>Explanation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Owner</td>
<td>The owner of the qualification model definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas and Outcomes icon</td>
<td>Use the Areas and Outcomes icon, to display the <a href="#">Create Qualification Model: Areas and Outcomes</a> page where you can choose the qualification areas and add them to your qualification model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add icon (Qualification Area section)</td>
<td>Use the add icon to open a window where you can choose the qualification areas and add them to your qualification model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement BU/ Qualification Area (Search and Add dialog box)</td>
<td>Enter the name of a qualification model for which you want to search. You choose the appropriate questions from the search results. When you are returned to the Create Qualification Model, the qualification areas you chose are displayed. Note that you can update the question branching for questions in this area if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Sequence and Outcome</td>
<td>You can define possible outcomes for your qualification model. Then when evaluators are viewing a supplier’s response, they can assign the response a particular outcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Score/To Score (only available if Enable scoring is selected)</td>
<td>For each outcome, you specify the range of values that include that outcome. Additionally, you identify one outcome to be used as the knockout outcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knockout Outcome</td>
<td>Indicates which outcome is the knockout outcome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify (only available if Automatically Evaluate Assessment is selected)</td>
<td>If you choose to have assessment automatically evaluated, for each outcome, you can choose to have the application send a notification to the assessment owner whenever an assessment that evaluates to that outcome is received.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The process for creating a qualification model includes the following steps.

- Use the [Create Qualification Model](#) page to define the qualification model header values, such as name, business unit access, and expiration reminder values
- Click the Areas and Outcomes icon to display the [Create Qualification Model: Areas and Outcomes](#) page.
- Search for and add the qualification areas that are appropriate for the supplier that you want to qualify.
- Specify any additional classification values appropriate for this qualification model.
- Once you have completed defining the qualification model, use Activate to make the qualification model available for use.

Create a Qualification Model

Qualification models contain and organize qualification areas. You use qualification models when performing a supplier assessment. An assessment initiative contains a single qualification model which itself contains one or more qualification areas. After you accept the response and review and approve the supplier’s response, an assessment is created for that supplier as well as a qualification for each qualification area.

Newton Consulting is branching into a new area of services. Clare Furey, the supplier qualification manager, is creating a qualification model for future assessment initiatives she uses to assess suppliers for the new service area.
Creating a Qualification Model

1. Clare navigates to the Create Qualification Model page.
2. She enters Corporate Assessment as the qualification model name. The model name also the name of the resulting assessment.
3. She accepts the default, Vision Operations, as the Procurement BU which owns this qualification model. She notes that she is assigned as the qualification manager who owns the model.
4. She enters a description of "Model containing qualification areas relating to various details of the corporation."
5. If she wants to assign herself as the default assessment owner for this qualification model, then she selects the Default assessment owner check box. When this qualification model is included in an assessment initiative, she will be defaulted as the assessment owner.
6. Since she chooses which Procurement BUs can use this area, when she creates the initiative, she leaves the Global box unchecked. Also, she notes that the Qualification Model Level value indicates the model is available for both supplier and supplier site level areas.
7. Since Clare did not check the Global check box, she must specify which procurement BUs can use this qualification model. She clicks the Procurement BU add icon. When the Procurement BU dialog box displays, she adds the names of the BUs that can use this model for qualifying suppliers. When she is finished listing the BUs, she clicks OK.
8. She sets the default expiration reminder value to 30 days. Therefore, for any assessment created using this model, expiration reminders start going out 30 days before the assessment expires. The assessment owner can change this value.
9. Now Clare must add her qualification areas to her model, so she clicks the Add icon in the Areas region. When the Search and Add dialog box appears, she finds and adds an area called Financial Viability. This area has been defined earlier and is typically used by all supplier qualification initiatives.
10. When she has chosen the area, she clicks Apply to add it to the model, and then clicks OK to close the dialog box.
11. Clare continues adding areas. She could create and add a new area at this point, but all the areas she needs for this model have already been defined so she does not create any new ones.
12. Once Clare is finished creating her new qualification model, she clicks Save and then Activate.

Using Rule Sets

Supplier Qualification Rule Sets

Oracle Fusion Procurement provides a functionality that you can use to solicit information from your suppliers at various points in the supplier’s life cycle. You control the content and timing of the questionnaire by defining rule sets.

A rule set consists of one or more qualification areas. The questions defined to these qualification areas are used to generate a questionnaire and send it to a supplier. After the supplier receives and answers the questionnaire, you can use the supplier’s response information to update the supplier profile information. You can:

- Use existing qualification areas.
- Create qualification areas in Supplier Qualification Management and then use them in your rule set.

If you have to create a qualification area, note that:

- The questions must be at the supplier level.
- The questions must not include internal responders.
- The questions are active.
When one of the triggering events occurs for which you have defined a rule set, the application creates a questionnaire consisting of the qualification areas that you identified in your rule set. This questionnaire is what the supplier sees. When you receive the supplier’s response, you use the supplier’s basic registration information and questionnaire responses to evaluate the supplier information with regards to the triggering event.

When a supplier is approved as a prospective or spend authorized supplier, his responses are stored in the Supplier Qualification Response Repository. Once the supplier’s responses are in the Response Repository, you can use those responses to create qualifications for the supplier.

Create Registration Rule Sets

When a supplier registers, the application creates a questionnaire consisting of questions from the qualification areas that you identified in your rule set and then presents that questionnaire to the supplier. The questionnaire responses by the supplier are used to automatically create qualifications for the supplier if the rule set is configured to do that.

Use the following procedure to create a registration rule set.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets task and then go to the Create Rule Set page:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Supplier Qualification

   The application initially selects registration rule set. If you are creating a different type of rule set, click the link for the rule set type. On the Create Rule Set page, enter rule set header information:
   - Rule Set to specify the set name and optionally enter a description for the set.
   - Select a Procurement BU.
   - Whether to allow branching.
   - Whether to automatically create questionnaires.

   If you select this option, qualifications are automatically created on the areas that were a part of the registration questionnaire and the responses provided by the supplier are mapped to the qualification to make it ready for evaluation.

2. Click Add Condition. On the Add Condition dialog window enter
   - Condition Type - you have two options:
     - Always displayed - the questions are always used in the questionnaire.
     - Response dependent - the questions are added to the questionnaire only if the supplier response matches the condition. If you select response dependent, you use the Create Condition dialog window to define the condition that the response must match.
       - Supplier Profile Attribute - you select this from the list of profile attributes. You can use this field and the following two fields to create a condition based on a supplier profile attribute. When a response entered by the supplier matches the condition, the qualification area for this condition are used to generate the questionnaire.
       - Operator - a relationship operator (=, <, > )
       - Value - a value appropriate to the supplier profile attribute

3. When you are finished defining the condition, click OK.
4. When you return to the Create Rule Set page, highlight a condition and click Add Qualification Areas. Here you specify which qualification areas are used when the condition you specified is met:

   o Procurement BU or a qualification area name - A search on Procurement BU returns a list of qualification areas owned by the BU. A search by qualification area name returns any qualification area (multiple areas if you use a partial search value). Either way, from the search results, highlight the qualification area and click Apply.

   o Business Relationship - Prospective or Spend Authorized. You can restrict the use of this condition to the appropriate business relationship value.

   o When you are finished adding qualification areas to the condition, click OK.

5. When you are have entered all the information for your rule set, click Save and Activate.

Use Rule Sets for Approved Registration Requests

Use the following instructions to create a rule set to use when registration requests are approved.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets task:

   o Offering: Procurement
   o Functional Area: Supplier Qualification
   o Task: Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets

   In the Manage Rule Sets page, go to Create Rule Set page. The application defaults to a registration rule set, so click the link for the registration approval rule set type. On the Create Rule Set page, enter rule set header information: Rule Set to specify the set name and optionally enter a description for the set. Select a Procurement BU.

2. Click Add Condition. On the Add Condition dialog menu appears, enter Condition Type. You have two options:

   o Always displayed - if you choose this option the questions are always included in the questionnaire created by the application.

   o Response dependent. - If you choose a response dependent condition, you continue on the Create Condition pop up and enter:

     • Supplier Profile Attribute - you select this from the list of attributes. You can use this field and the following two fields to create a condition based on a supplier profile attribute.

     • Operator - a logical operator (=, <, >)

     • Value - a value appropriate to the supplier attribute. You choose a value from the list of values. The values you can choose from depend on which attribute you selected.

     • Registration Source - you can choose to have the condition apply selectively based on the source of the registration request:

       o External - an external registration originates when a supplier self-registers using your registration web page.

       o Internal - an internal registration request originates when

         • A category manager submits a supplier registration request while defining a sourcing negotiation.

         • A requester submits a supplier registration request from Oracle Self Service Procurement.

         • A buyer submits a supplier registration request.

3. When you are finished defining the condition, click OK.
4. Once you have defined the condition, highlight it and click Add Qualification Areas. Here you specify which qualification areas are used when the condition you specified is met.

You can search by Procurement BU or a qualification area name. A search on Procurement BU returns a list of qualification areas owned by the BU. A search by qualification area name returns any qualification area (multiple areas if you use a partial search value).

5. When the search results display, select the row for the qualification area you want to use and click Apply. Note that you can select multiple qualification areas if needed.

If an icon appears in the Question Branching column for a particular qualification area, it indicates that there is at least one question in the area that has branching. If you click the icon and follow the navigation, on the Question Branching page, you can expand the question to see the branching information.

6. When you have finished selecting your qualification areas, click OK.

7. When you have entered the qualification area information for your registration approval rule set you are creating, click Save and Activate.

Supplier Promotion Rule Sets

Use this procedure to create a rule set to use when a supplier is promoted from prospective business to spend authorized business relationship.

1. In the **Setup and Maintenance** work area, use the **Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets** task:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Supplier Qualification
   - Task: Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets

   In the Manage Rule Sets page go to Create Rule Set page. The application defaults to a registration rule set, so click the link for the registration approval rule set type. On the Create Rule Set page, enter rule set header information: Rule Set to specify the set name and optionally, a description for the set.

2. Select a Procurement BU.

3. Click Add Condition. On the Add Condition dialog menu, enter
   - Condition Type. You have two options:
     - Always displayed - if you choose this option the questions are always included in the questionnaire created by the application.
     - Response dependent - If you choose a response dependent condition, you continue on the Create Condition pop up and enter:
       - Supplier Profile Attribute - you select this from the list of attributes. You can use this field and these two fields to create a condition based on a supplier profile attribute. When responses entered by the supplier match the condition, the qualification areas under this condition are added to the questionnaire.
       - Operator - a logical operator (\(=\), \(<\), \(>\))
       - Value - choose a value appropriate to the supplier attribute from the list of values. The values you can choose from depend on which attribute you selected.

4. When you are finished defining the condition, click OK.

5. When you return to the Create Rule Set page, highlight your condition and click Add Qualification Areas. Here you specify which qualification areas are used when the condition you specified is met.
6. You can search by Procurement BU or qualification area name. A search on Procurement BU returns a list of qualification areas owned by the BU. A search by qualification area name returns any qualification area, or multiple areas if you use a partial search value.

7. When the search results display, select the row for the qualification area you want to use and click Apply. Note that you can select multiple qualification areas if needed.

8. When you have finished selecting your qualification areas, click OK. You return to the Create Rule Set page.

   Question Branching - If an icon appears in the Question Branching column for a particular area, there is at least one question in the area that has branching. If you click the icon and follow the navigation, on the Question Branching page, you can expand the question to see the branching information.

9. After you have entered the qualification area information, click Save and Activate.

Create Default information Rule Sets

You can define information to be used by default by the application when generating a questionnaire, specifically instruction text on how to use the questionnaire. You can define a different set of instructions for each event:

- Registration request submission.
- Registration request approval
- Business relationship upgrade

Use the following procedure to create a default information rule set.

1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area use the Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets task:
   - Offering: Procurement
   - Functional Area: Supplier Qualification
   - Task: Manage Supplier Qualification Rule Sets

   In the Manage Rule Sets page go to Create Rule Set page.

2. Give your new rule set a name. You can optionally give your rule set a description.

3. Associate your rule set with a Procurement BU. Note that you can associate your rule set with more than one BU.

4. In Assignment Rules, click the add icon (the plus sign). You use assignment rules to specify the default owner (mandatory) and internal responder (optional) for every BU and event combination.

5. Select the event to which this rule set applies. You can associate a rule set with an event: registration request submission, registration approval, business relationship upgrade, or requalification.

6. You can optionally identify an owner for the for the qualifications and initiatives generated by this rule set when the specified event occurs for the BU. Your name appears by default in the select list, but you can search and assign the rule set to a different owner.

7. You can identify a responder to respond to internal questionnaires that will be sent by the automatic initiative creation process.

8. You can define all the questionnaire introduction text for the different questionnaires.

9. You can share attachments at the questionnaire level regarding introductory information pertaining to registrations, suppliers, or internal responders, and then click Save.
Define Procurement Contracts Configuration

Define Contract Terms Library Configuration

How Contract Terms Library Setups Work Together

This topic provides a brief overview of setups for the Contract Terms Library.

The following figure outlines the main setups for the Contract Terms Library which are described in the sections of this topic.

The setups on the left are accomplished using tasks from the Setup and Maintenance work area. To set up most of the
Contract Terms Library features, including clauses and contract terms templates, you must navigate to the Terms Library work area. Dashed boxes highlight features that are available only in procurement contracts.

**Setups in Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager**

Different Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager tasks enable or affect Contract Terms Library features. These setups include:

- Setting Up Contract Types to Work with the Contract Terms Library

  Contract types specify properties of different contracts including the type of permitted contract lines, party roles, contract validation checks, and the contract acceptance and signature requirements. For the Contract Terms Library, you can use the **Manage Contract Types** task to:

  - Enable contract terms authoring

  You must enable contract terms authoring for a contract type to use any of the library features for contracts of that type.
• Specify the Oracle BI Publisher layout template that will be used to format the printed contract terms for contracts of this type.

• Defining Clause Types

If you want to categorize the clauses in the library, select the Manage Contract Clause Types task to set up clause types.

• Configuring Business Units for Contracts

The use of most of the Contract Terms Library content is restricted to the business unit where you create it. This includes clauses, contract terms templates, and Contract Expert business rules. Using either the Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties or the Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties tasks, you can:

○ Enable content adoption between business units and automatic approvals for content

○ Specify the Contract Terms Library administrator, the employee who will receive approvals and other notifications regarding library content.

○ Enable the Contract Expert feature for the business unit.

• Creating Contract Layout Templates

Using Oracle BI Publisher, you can set up layout templates that determine the formatting of clauses, contract terms template previews, the contract deviations report, and the contract itself.

Download the sample layout templates provided with your application from the Oracle BI Publisher library. You can copy and edit the sample layout templates and upload them.

**Note:** For an example on how to use XML to build your own layouts, see the topic Setting Up Enterprise Contracts - Part 2.

• Creating Contract Terms Value Sets

Select the Manage Contract Terms Value Sets task to set up value sets for use in contract terms variables and Contract Expert questions.

• Specifying the Location of the File Used for Clause Import

You can import legacy clauses into the Contract Terms Library, either from a file or from an interface table using Oracle Fusion Enterprise Scheduler processes.

If you are importing clauses from a file, then you must specify the location of the file by setting the profile option Specify Contract Clause Import XML File Location by selecting the Manage Clause and Template Management Profiles task.

**Contract Terms Library Work Area Setups**

The Contract Terms Library is built using the tasks within the Terms Library work area:

• Creating Clauses

Create standard clauses for use during contract terms authoring, including alternate clauses, clauses included by reference, and provision clauses. By specifying different clause properties, you can modify clause behavior. For example, you can make clauses mandatory in contracts or protect them from editing by contract authors.

• Creating Variables
You can use variables in the Contract Terms Library to represent information within individual clauses and for use within Contract Expert rule conditions. Your application comes with predefined variables, called system variables. You can create additional variables, called user variables, with or without programming.

- **Creating Numbering Schemes**
  You can set up additional clause and section numbering for contract terms. You can select which numbering scheme you want to use with each contract terms template.

- **Creating Contract Terms Templates**
  Create contract terms templates to insert boilerplate terms and conditions into contracts during contract authoring. Contract authors can apply the templates manually, or the application can apply the templates automatically using default rules you set up.

- **Creating Contract Expert Business Rules**
  Set up business rules that ensure compliance of contracts with corporate standards.

  Contract Expert helps you to set up business rules that can:

  - Apply the appropriate contract terms template to a contract
    
    For example, apply the contract terms template Software License and Service Agreement if the contract is authored in the North America Operations business unit and the contract amount exceeds one million dollars.
  
  - Insert additional clauses into specific predetermined locations in the contract
    
    For example, add an audit clause if an audit is required.
  
  - Report contract deviations from corporate policies
    
    For example, report a contract worth one million dollars or more that includes payment terms greater than 90 days.

You can base Contract Expert rule conditions on the values of variables in the contract, the presence of other clauses, or you can set up questions that contract authors must answer during authoring.

For example, you can ask authors a series of questions about the nature of the materials being shipped to customers and insert additional liability clauses based on their answers.

If you are setting up business rules with numeric conditions (for instance, insert a special payment terms clause if the contract amount exceeds $1 million) then you must set up constants to hold the numeric values. You cannot enter the numeric values directly.

- **Contract Deliverables**
  Contract deliverables track both contractual and non-contractual commitments that must be completed as part of negotiations, purchasing, and enterprise contracts between businesses and suppliers or customers based on contract intent. These deliverables can be used in purchasing and sourcing documents that include contract terms and in enterprise contracts.

- **Importing Clauses**
  You can import clauses from legacy applications by running Oracle Fusion Enterprise Scheduler (ESS) processes from the Terms Library work area by selecting the **Import Clauses** task or from the Setup Manager by selecting the **Manage Processes** task.

- **Setting Up and Maintaining the Index for Clause Text Searches Using the Keyword Field**
By selecting the **Manage Processes** task in the Terms Library work area, you can also run the ESS processes required to set up and maintain the text index required for searches of clauses and contract terms templates using the Keyword field.

**Related Topics**

- How Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library
- Variables

**Contract Terms Library Clauses**

You can create different types of clauses for different uses and use clause properties to specify if a clause is protected from edits by contract authors, if it is mandatory, and if it is related to or incompatible with other clauses. A clause you create in the Contract Terms Library is available for use within the business unit where you create it after it is approved.

The types of clauses you can create include:

- Standard clauses
- Clauses included by reference
- Provision clauses for contracts with a buy intent

Using different clause properties you can:

- Make a clause mandatory in a contract.
- Protect it from edits by contract authors.
- Specify that a clause can be selected by contract authors as an alternate of another clause.
- Specify that the clause cannot be in the same document as another clause.
- Make a clause created in a global business unit available for use in other business units.

**Creating Standard Clauses**

Any clause you create in the library becomes a standard clause that can be used in the business unit where you create it after it is approved. Unless you specify that the clause is protected, contract authors can edit the clause in a specific contract. Any edits they make are highlighted in a clause deviations report when the contract is approved. Similarly, contract authors can delete the clause from a contract, unless you specify the clause is mandatory.

**Including Clauses by Reference**

For clauses, such as Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), you can print the clause reference in the contract instead of the clause text itself. During contract creation, you enter the reference on the Instructions tab of the clause edit page and select the **Include by Reference** option.

**Creating Provision Clauses for Contracts with a Buy Intent**

For contracts with a buy intent, you can create provision clauses, clauses that are included in contract negotiations but are removed after the contract is signed. Provision clauses are used primarily in Federal Government contracting.
Altering Clause Behavior with Clause Properties

Using different clause properties, you can alter the behavior of a clause. You can:

- Make a clause mandatory.

  A mandatory clause is highlighted by a special icon during contract terms authoring and cannot be deleted by contract authors without a special privilege. You can make a clause mandatory for a particular contract terms template by selecting the Make Mandatory action after you have added the clause to the template. A clause is also become mandatory if it is added by a Contract Expert rule and you have selected the Expert Clauses Mandatory option in the template.

- Protect it from edits by contract authors.

  A protected clause is highlighted by a special icon during contract terms authoring and cannot be edited by contract authors without a special privilege. You can protect any clause by selecting the protected option during clause creation or editing.

- Specify that a clause can be selected by contract authors as an alternate of another clause.

  You can specify clauses to be alternates of each other on the Relationships tab of the create and edit clause pages. When editing contract terms, contract authors are alerted by an icon that a particular clause includes alternates and can select an alternate to replace the original clause.

- Specify that the clause cannot be in the same document as another clause

  You can use the Relationship tab to specify a clause you are creating is incompatible with another clause in the library. The application highlights incompatible clauses added by contract authors in the contract deviations report and during contract validation.

- Make a clause available for use in other business units.

  Clauses you create in the library are normally available only within the same business unit where you create them. If you create the clause in the business unit that is specified as global during business unit setup, then you can make the clause available for adoption in other business units by selecting the Global option during clause creation or edit. This option appears only in the one business unit specified as global.

How Contract Terms Templates Work

You can create contract terms templates in the Contract Terms Library to insert appropriate terms and conditions into contracts during contract authoring. You can apply the templates manually while authoring contracts or the application can apply the templates automatically using defaulting rules you set up.

Contract terms templates:

- Contain sections and clauses from the Contract Terms Library.
- Are created in the Contract Terms Library separately. You cannot create them directly from an existing contract.
- Are specific to one business unit.
- Apply to enterprise contracts of the contract types you specify in the template.
- Are specific to either sell-intent or buy-intent contracts.
• Can default contract terms directly on purchase orders and sourcing documents, and on enterprise contracts. For these documents, contact terms templates can also include contract deliverables which can be used to track the completion of contractual tasks in the contract.

In addition, for a contract terms template you can:

• Set up Contract Expert rules to recommend additional clauses for contracts that use the template and insert these clauses in specified locations in the contract if marked as conditional.
• Associate a layout template for previewing the template.
• Specify a contract terms numbering scheme for the template.
• Set up template selection rules to default the template into a contract automatically.
The following figure illustrates the different aspects of contract terms templates, such as section and clauses, contract terms deliverables, layout template, numbering scheme and so on.

Adding Sections
You can add sections that you have created in the library or create sections that are specific to the template itself.

Adding Clauses
You can add clauses in one of two ways:

- Add a clause from the Contract Terms Library directly into a section in the template.
You can create the clause in the library from the template if the library does not have what you need.

- Create Contract Expert rules to add clauses to the contract terms in a contract depending on the specifics of the contract.

For example, you may want to add a boilerplate jurisdiction clause directly into the template, but use a Contract Expert rule to insert the appropriate liability clause. This way a contract that calls for the shipment of hazardous materials will get a liability clause that’s different from a contract that does not include any, for example.

The properties that you set up in the clause apply automatically. If you set up a clause as mandatory, you will not be able to delete the clause after it is inserted by the template unless you have the special Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege. If you set up a clause with alternates, then you can substitute any of the alternate clauses in the contract.

**Note:** You are not required to add any sections or clauses to a template directly. You can use Contract Expert rules exclusively, if appropriate.

---

### Enabling Contract Expert on the Template

To use Contract Expert in a contract where the template is applied, select the *Enable* option in the Contract Expert region of the Create Terms Template or Edit Terms Template pages. When Contract Expert rules enabled for the template suggest additional clauses, these additional clauses are presented for your review before they are inserted in the default section specified in each clause. Depending on privileges, you can choose which clauses to insert and which to omit. If you make Contract Expert suggestions mandatory for the template, then you can reject the recommendations only if you have the special Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege.

You can also place recommended clauses for insertion in their predetermined locations, if the clauses are marked as conditional clauses and their locations are defined in the terms template associated with the contract.

---

### Adding Contract Deliverables to Purchase Orders, Sourcing Documents, and Enterprise Contracts

For Oracle Fusion Purchasing purchase orders, Oracle Fusion Sourcing documents, and enterprise contracts, you can track compliance of tasks that the contract parties have agreed to execute as part of the agreement by adding contract deliverables.

You can use deliverables to record the status of the tasks, keep everyone notified of past and future deadlines, and as a repository of the deliverable documents themselves. For example, vendors agreeing to supply a monthly report can log in to their sourcing portal and attach the report or ask for an extension. If they fail to respond by the specified deadline, the deliverable can trigger an automatic notification that the deliverable is overdue.

---

### Assigning a Layout Template for Previewing the Contract Terms Template

You must assign a layout template for the contract terms template so you can preview the template content, when you need to make a template selection, for example. The layout template, which you select on the General tab while editing the contract terms template, specifies what is displayed in the preview, including the fields displayed, graphics such as a company logo, page numbering, headers and footers, and boilerplate text. This layout template is not used for printing the contract.

If you marked Contract Expert recommended clauses as conditional on the terms template, then these are displayed in gray font in the print preview to distinguish them from regular clauses.
The layout template is an RTF file stored in the Enterprise Contracts folder in the Business Intelligence Presentation Catalog. A sample layout template is provided with your application. You can copy the sample template and edit it to create your own as described in a related topic.

Specifying a Numbering Scheme

You can associate a numbering scheme to the template that will automatically number sections and clauses in the contract. Several predefined numbering schemes are available with your application, and you can create additional numbering schemes of your own.

Making the Template the Contract Default

You can have a contract terms template apply automatically in all contracts based on:

- Contract type
- Contract Expert rules that select the template based on the specific information in the contract itself

If you enabled the feature Enable Contract Terms in Oracle Fusion Procurement for Procurement Contracts during implementation, then you can also apply templates to procurement documents based on document type.

The following document types become available:

- Auction
- Bid
- Blanket Purchase Agreement
- Contract Purchase Agreement
- Standard Purchase Order
- RFI
- RFI Response
- RFQ
- Sourcing Quote

While editing the contract terms template, you specify a template to be the default for a contract type or document type in the Document Types region. You can set up only one template as the default for each contract type or document type. You set up the Contract Expert template selection rules separately as described in a related topic. You can have multiple rules recommend the same template.

Here is how the default values you enter in the Document Types region and the Contract Expert template selection rules interact to select and apply a template during contract authoring:

- Contract Expert template selection rules always take priority. If the rules specify a single template for a contract, then it is applied regardless of the default you entered in the Document Type region.
- If the Contract Expert rules recommend different templates, then the application uses the default from the Document Type region as a tiebreaker.
- If no Contract Expert selection rule applies and you specified a default, then the application uses the default.
- If you did not set up any rule or default for a contact type or document type, then you must select the template from a list while authoring.

Related Topics

- How You Activate and Revise Contract Terms Templates
How Contract Expert Rules Work

You can set up Contract Expert rules to apply contract terms templates automatically to contracts, to suggest additional clauses for insertion during contract terms authoring, and to identify any contract deviations from company policy.

Each rule comprises conditions that must be met and the rule results. You can base rule conditions on:

- The presence of another clause already in the contract
- The value of a system variable or a user variable
- Questions that the contract author must answer

Different Contract Expert rule types support different condition types, as illustrated in the following figure.

- Clause selection rules, which can default individual clauses and sections into a contract, can be based on clauses, questions, and variables.
- Template selection rules, which identify the default contract terms template for the contract, can be based on variables only.
- Policy deviation rules, which identify contract deviations from company policies, use questions and variables only.
The following figure illustrates the Clause Selection, Template Selection, and Policy Deviation Contract Expert rules.

Key rule properties include:

- All rules can use multiple conditions linked together with either the AND or OR logical operators.
- All rules: clause selection, policy deviation, or template selection cannot start with a numeric prefix.
- The values of non-numeric conditions are supplied by value sets.
- The values for numeric conditions are supplied by constants.
- Rule types that permit the inclusion of questions can trigger follow-up questions, permitting you to chain rules together.
- Rules are restricted to the specific business unit and the contract intent where you create them.
- Rules do not get copied when you copy a global contract terms template to another business unit.
- Conditions support both logical and numeric operators:
  - IS
Clause Selection Rules

Clause selection rules permit you to insert one or more clauses and sections into a contract.

The following table describes the rule properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule Property</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule outcomes</td>
<td>The rule can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Recommend one or more clauses for insertion into the contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contract authors can review the Contract Expert recommendations before the clauses get inserted into the contract. By setting the <strong>Expert Clauses Mandatory</strong> option when creating a contract terms template, you can specify if you want the clause insertion to be mandatory or if the authors can ignore the recommendations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you make the insertion mandatory, then only contract authors with the Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege, a special privilege that allows deleting mandatory clauses from the contract, can reject the recommendations. Similarly, if the recommended clauses are standard clauses, then the authors must have the Author Additional Standard Contract Terms and Conditions privilege to reject the recommendations. This privilege allows the deletion of standard clauses from the contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you marked recommended clauses as conditional and specified the location of these clauses in the terms template, then Contract Expert inserts the clause in the contract in the location that you specified. If the location of an Expert suggested clause isn’t specified in the terms template, Contract Expert inserts each clause in the section specified as the default for the clause in the Contract Terms Library. If no default section is specified in the clause, then Contract Expert inserts the clause into the default section specified in the contract terms template. Contract Expert automatically inserts the default section if it doesn’t already exist in the contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Ask follow-up questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can ask follow-up questions by adding them in the Additional Questions region of the Results tab. Any additional question that you add must be part of another rule. Adding the follow-up question chains the rules together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When the rule is evaluated</td>
<td>The rule is evaluated every time that a user runs Contract Expert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Users receive a warning message during contract validation if they fail to run Contract Expert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Conditions can be based on:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rule Property | Details
---|---
You can use both predefined system variables and user variables. Both types of user variables are supported: those that require entry by contract authors and those where the values are supplied by a Java procedure.

Where it applies
The rule applies only within the business unit and for the intent that you specify. You can have the rule apply to one of the following:
- Specific contract terms templates
- All contract terms templates for the business unit

Contract Terms Template Selection Rules
Contract terms template selection rules permit you to automatically apply a contract terms template to a contract.

The following table describes the rule properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule Property</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule outcomes</td>
<td>The application automatically applies a contract terms template to a contract. Or, if the author removed the contract terms using the Actions menu, the template displays the template name as the default when applying a new template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the rule is evaluated
The application evaluates the rule whenever the author navigates to the Contract Terms tab as long as no contract terms template is applied. If a contract terms template is applied to the contract, the template selection rules are not executed again, even if changes to the contract would result in a different rule outcome.

The rule is also evaluated to determine if the contract contains the recommended template whenever the contract author:
- Runs the clause deviations report
- Validates the contract terms or the contract

In both cases, the rule generates a warning if the author applied a different template from that recommended by the rule.

Conditions
Variables only
You can use predefined system variables and those user-defined variables where the values are supplied by a Java procedure.

Where it applies
The rule applies only within the business unit and for the intent specified in the rule.

Contract Expert doesn’t apply a contract terms template if the contract terms template default rules you set up recommend multiple terms templates for a single contract. Instead, Contract Expert applies the contract terms template specified as the default for the business document type during contract terms template setup. If no document type default is specified, then the application displays the Add Contract Terms button and permits authors to select a template of their own choice. The choices are restricted to the templates specified for the contract type.
The following figure describes choosing a contract terms template for application to a contract.

Policy Deviation Rules

Policy deviation rules identify deviations from company policies on the contract deviations report. This report is run by the contract author before submitting a contract for approval.

The following table lists the rule properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule Property</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule results</td>
<td>The rule displays a deviation in the contract deviations report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The rule name becomes the deviation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can build rule conditions out of both questions and variables. In the contract deviation report, your entry in the Rule Name field becomes the deviation name and your entry in the rule Description field becomes the deviation description.

The following figure illustrates the policy deviation rule setup.

![Policy Deviation Rule Diagram](image)

Policy deviation rules list policy deviations in the contract deviations report, along with any clause deviations that are identified automatically by the application. Contract authors can run the report before submitting the contract for approval and enter...
comments to explain the deviation to the approver. The report is rerun automatically when the author submits the contract for approval and a copy of the report is attached to the approval notification.

Activating and Validating Rules

After you set up a rule, you must activate it using the Activate Rule action. Rules do not require approval before activation, but the contract terms templates that they apply to do.

₁ Note:  To activate a rule, you must assign it to at least one contract terms template. The template doesn’t have to be approved at the time that you make the assignment, but it does have to be approved before the rule can be used.

Activating a rule triggers an automatic validation process. You must correct all errors before the rule gets activated.

Related Topics

- Examples of Contract Expert Clause Selection Rules and Follow-up Questions
- Contract Expert Rule Statuses and Available Actions
- How Contract Expert Works
- How can I predefine locations of Contract Expert clauses in the contract
- How does Contract Expert identify where to insert clauses into contracts
24 External Integration

Web Services

Overview of Web Services

Use web services to integrate web-based applications into your Oracle Applications Cloud. Web services expose business objects and processes to other applications through the use of open standards-based technologies.

The web services support development environments and clients that comply with the following open standards:

- Extensible Markup Language (XML)
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)
- Business Process Execution Language (BPEL)
- Web Services Description Language (WSDL)
- XML schema definitions (XSD)

Oracle Applications Cloud includes two types of web services:

- Application Development Framework (ADF) services
- Composite services

The following table describes the two types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Web Service Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADF services</td>
<td>ADF services usually represent business objects, such as employees or purchase orders. ADF services typically expose standard operations, such as create, update, and delete. However, for locally-persisted objects, ADF services are not limited to these operations. Examples of ADF services include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Worker.changeHireDate - a service that updates the hire date of the worker business object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ProjectTask.createTask - a service that adds a task to the project task business object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite services</td>
<td>Composite services usually represent end-to-end business process flows that act on business events produced by the ADF services. Composite services orchestrate multiple object-based services, rules services, and human workflows. Examples of composite services include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ProjectStatusChangeApproval.process - a service that accepts the change in project status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ScheduleOrchestrationOrderFulfillmentLineService.scheduleOrders - a service that schedules resources used to fulfill an order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about web services, see the SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services.
Developer Connect

Overview of Developer Connect

The Developer Connect portal provides information about the web services deployed to your Oracle Applications Cloud instance. You can use this information to integrate with or extend Oracle Applications Cloud and develop solutions to suit your business requirements.

To use the Developer Connect portal, your job role must have the `FND_INTEGRATION_SPECIALIST_JOB`, `FND_APPLICATION_DEVELOPER_JOB`, or `ZCA_CUSTOMER_RELATIONSHIP_MANAGEMENT_APPLICATION_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB` privilege. Alternately, you can grant the `ATK_WEB_SERVICE_INFO_ACCESS_PRIV` entitlement to your custom role, and then grant the custom role to users who require access. For more information, see the security guide for the appropriate cloud service at Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com).

To open the Developer Connect portal, from the Navigator menu, select Tools - Developer Connect. This portal displays dynamic information of the web services, and the modifications done to web services to integrate with Oracle Applications Cloud. You can synchronize the Developer Connect portal with your cloud instance to retrieve the latest web service information such as service attributes, operations, business objects, security policies, and WSDL files.

Use the Developer Connect portal to:

- View the summary of the web service information such as the business object that the service defines, life cycle status, and security policy.
- Discover the operations available for the selected web service, and the request and response payloads for each operation.
- View the hierarchy of the service data objects and know information such as the data type and whether it's a required field for user-defined attributes.
- Review the sample payload XMLs for the operations of the web service. You can add or edit sample payloads, and also delete user-defined sample payloads.

Web Service Life Cycle

A web service goes through three phases in a life cycle:

- Active: A service is active when it’s delivered the first time, until it’s deprecated.
- Deprecated: A service is deprecated when it’s superseded by a newer version, or if there is a planned obsolescence in a future release. A service in this state is still supported and becomes obsolete in a later release.

  **Note:** You must use the active version of the service. If you were previously using a service that has been deprecated, then migrate to the new, active version.

- Obsolete: A service is obsolete when it’s no longer shipped or supported.

Manage Web Service Sample Payloads

This example demonstrates how to add and edit a sample payload XML for a web service operation. It also describes how to delete a user-defined sample payload XML.
Adding a Sample Payload XML

Follow these steps to add a sample payload XML for the `getEntityList` operation of Help Topic Abstract Service:

1. From the Navigator menu, select Tools - Developer Connect.
2. On the Web Service overview page, search for Help Topic Abstract Service, and click the service display name.
3. On the Summary page, click the Sample Payloads tab, and then click Add Sample Payload.
4. Select `getEntityList` operation from the list, and enter a brief description.
5. Enter the payload XML, and click OK.

Editing a Sample Payload XML

The Developer Connect portal displays predefined and user-defined payloads of the web services. You can edit only the user-defined payloads. Follow these steps to edit a user-defined sample payload of the `getEntityList` operation of Help Topic Abstract Service:

2. On the Summary page of the web service, click the Sample Payloads tab and select `getEntityList` operation.
3. In the Edit Sample Payload dialog box, edit the payload XML and click OK.

Deleting a Sample Payload XML

You can delete only user-defined payloads, and not predefined payloads. Follow these steps to delete a user-defined sample payload of the `getEntityList` operation of Help Topic Abstract Service:

2. On the Summary page of the web service, click the Sample Payloads tab and select `getEntityList` operation.
3. Click the delete icon for the selected operation and click OK.

Import Value Set Values to Oracle Applications Cloud

This example demonstrates how to use the information in the Developer Connect portal to import value set values to Oracle Applications Cloud.

Suppose a fictional partner application wants to extend it with certain functionality available in another application. Instead of creating the required business objects and attributes in this application, you can import them using a web service. Before you proceed with the import process, enable the access permissions for the web service and review the information in the Developer Connect portal:

- Synchronize the web services information
- Review the web service details
- Update the request payload

Synchronizing Web Services Information

You must synchronize the Developer Connect portal with your Oracle Applications Cloud instance to get the latest web service information. Follow these steps:

1. From the Navigator menu, select Tools > Developer Connect.
2. Click Synchronize.

   Note: The Last Refreshed date indicates when the Developer Connect portal was last synchronized with your cloud instance.
Searching And Reviewing Web Service Information

On the Web Services overview page, you can enter Manage File Import and Export in the Find field. You can also use Advanced Search option to find web service names that contain import, and select the relevant service from the search results.

To review the information:

1. On the Web Services overview page, select Manage File Import and Export Service. The Summary panel shows information such as the display name, business object that the service defines, life cycle status, QName, security policy used, and a brief overview of the service.
2. Click the Operations tab to view the operations supported by the web service.
3. Click the uploadFiletoUCM operation and review the result parameter in the response payload. This parameter holds the file ID in the WebCenter Content repository from which the value set values are imported.
4. Click the valueSetValuesDataLoader operation and review the fileIdAtRepository parameter in the request payload. This parameter holds the file ID in the WebCenter Content repository.
5. Click WSDL File link of the service to download the web service information.

Updating Request Payload

To add a sample payload to import the value set values:

1. Click the Sample Payloads tab and then click Add Sample Payload.
2. Select uploadFiletoUCM from the operation name list.
3. Enter a brief description of the payload in the description text box.
4. Add the payload to get the file ID from the WebCenter Content repository:

```xml
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <soap:Body>
    <ns1:uploadFiletoUCM xmlns:ns1="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/types/"
                         xmlns:ns2="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/
                         xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
      <ns2:document xsi:type="ns2:DocumentDetails">
        <ns2:fileName>VS123.txt</ns2:fileName>
        <ns2:contentType>plain/text</ns2:contentType>
        <ns2:content>
          VmFsdWVTXRDvb2RlfEluZGV1c29sdGVyOiBZb2VudFZvcmV0IG9mIHRoZSBhbiB0aGlzIG1heXMgdW5kZWZvcmQgaXMgd2F5IGJhbmRlc2NyaXZlLg==
        </ns2:content>
        <ns2:documentAccount>fin$/tax$/import$</ns2:documentAccount>
        <ns2:documentTitle>VS</ns2:documentTitle>
      </ns2:document>
    </ns1:uploadFiletoUCM>
  </soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
```
5. Click OK.
6. Select valueSetValuesDataLoader from the operation name list.
7. Enter a brief description of the payload in the description text box.
8. Add the payload to read the contents from the file and import the value set values:

```xml
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <soap:Body>
    <ns1:valueSetValuesDataLoader xmlns:ns1="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/types/"
                                   xmlns:ns2="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/
                                   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
      <ns2:fileIdAtRepository>
        VS123.txt
      </ns2:fileIdAtRepository>
    </ns1:valueSetValuesDataLoader>
  </soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
```
Message Patterns

All operations exposed on a business object service have both synchronous and asynchronous message patterns defined. For conciseness, the service documentation includes the definition for the synchronous message pattern only. Both synchronous and asynchronous operations have the same functional behavior, and request and response payloads. Custom object services don’t have corresponding asynchronous operations.

Naming Conventions and Examples

The naming convention for the asynchronous operation is:

- Operation name: Synchronous operation name appended with `Async`
- Callback name: Synchronous operation name appended with `AsyncResponse`

Using Help Topic Abstract Service as an example, if the name of the synchronous operation is `getEntityList`, the asynchronous operation name and callback name would be `getEntityListAsync` and `getEntityListAsyncResponse`.

About CORS

Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) enables secure cross domain communication from a browser. You can configure CORS headers to enable a client application running in one domain to retrieve resources from another domain, using HTTP requests. By default, browser-based programming languages, such as JavaScript, can access content only from the same domain. CORS provides a mechanism to overcome this limitation and access resources from different domains.

To enable CORS in Oracle Applications Cloud, you must set profile option values for the CORS headers in the Setup and Maintenance work area. This table lists the supported CORS headers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORS Header</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Origin</td>
<td>Contains a comma-separated list of trusted origins that a client application can access resources from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Max-Age</td>
<td>Specifies the duration of storing the results of a request in the preflight result cache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Methods</td>
<td>Contains a comma-separated list of permitted HTTP methods in a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Headers</td>
<td>Contains a comma-separated list of permitted HTTP headers in a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Credentials</td>
<td>Specifies whether a client application can send user credentials with a request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

A client application retrieves resource X from server A, which runs the application logic. The client application then makes an HTTP request to retrieve resource Y from server B. To allow this cross-server request from the client application, you must configure the `Access-Control-Allow-Origin` header in server B. Otherwise, the request fails and displays an error message.

Related Topics
- Profile Option Values for CORS Headers
- Set Profile Option Values

Profile Option Values for CORS Headers

You can set profile option values for the CORS headers using the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

CORS Headers

This table lists the CORS headers that you can set profile option values for.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORS Header</th>
<th>Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)</th>
<th>Profile Option Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Origin</td>
<td>Allowed Domains (ORACLE. ADF. VIEW. ALLOWEDORIGINS)</td>
<td>Valid values for allowed origins:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• URL of the specific origin, for example, <a href="http://www.exampledomain.com">http://www.exampledomain.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comma-separated list of origins, for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Empty (no value set) to prevent access to resources from any origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note: You must set a value for this header to enable CORS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Max-Age</td>
<td>CORS: Access-Control-Max-Age (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_MAX_AGE)</td>
<td>Default value for caching preflight request is 3600 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Methods</td>
<td>CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Methods (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_ALLOW_METHODS)</td>
<td>Default values for allowed methods are OPTIONS, HEAD, GET, POST, PUT, PATCH, and DELETE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access-Control-Allow-Headers</td>
<td>CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Headers (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_ALLOW_HEADERS)</td>
<td>Default values for allowed headers are Accept, Accept-Encoding, Authorization, Cache-Control, Content-Encoding, Content-MD5, Content-Type, Effective-Of, If-Match, If-None-Match, Metadata-Context, Origin, Prefer, REST-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Related Topics
- Set Profile Option Values

### View Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes

To use web services to run predefined scheduled processes, you require details about the processes. View job definitions that the processes are based on, for example to get information about parameters. You might also need to find security requirements for running the scheduled process.

#### Job Definitions

A job definition contains the metadata that determines how a scheduled process works and what options are available during submission.

To view job definitions:

1. Go to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
2. From the Application Extensions functional area, open any of these tasks as appropriate:
   - Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Financial, Supply Chain Management, and Related Applications
   - Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Human Capital Management and Related Applications
   - Manage Enterprise Scheduler Job Definitions and Job Sets for Customer Relationship Management and Related Applications
3. In the Manage Job Definitions tab, select your job definition and click **Edit**.

**Note:** Predefined job definitions are marked with an asterisk.

4. Cancel after you get the information you need.

#### Security

Privileges provide the access required to run specific scheduled processes. Privileges are granted to duty roles, which are granted to job roles. To see which job roles inherit the required privileges, use the Security Console or the security reference manuals for the appropriate product family.
Files for Import and Export

Overview of Files for Import and Export

You can import data into or export data out of the applications. A repository stores the content and the import and export processes handle the data movement into and out of the repository. Integration specialists stage data for import and export. Application administrators run processes to import data in repositories of content to application transaction tables, or retrieve data exported from applications.

Aspects of managing files for import and export involve the following:

- Using the File Import and Export page
- Interacting with content management
- Uploading to facilitate import
- Downloading to facilitate export
- Determining the file size

The File Import and Export Page

Use the File Import and Export page to upload content to or download content from the document repository of Oracle WebCenter Content. Search criteria on the page are limited to the minimum metadata of content management records needed for file import and export. To open the page, from the Navigator in the global header, select Tools > File Import and Export.

Contact the WebCenter Content Administrator for the following additional requirements:

- Information or assistance regarding general access to content management (including all metadata)
- Creating and managing accounts
- Programmatically uploading and downloading content

Interacting with Content Management

Each user with access to the File Import and Export page is assigned to one or more accounts in Oracle WebCenter Content. Accounts organize and secure access to the content items.

Uploading to Facilitate Import

Uploading a file creates a record in Oracle WebCenter Content. When you upload a file, you must also specify an account to which you upload the file. The account you specify determines which import process picks up that file to import it. You can upload any compatible file format, such as MIME, which the content repository can parse. However, the uploaded format must conform to the requirements of the import process. For example, the comma-separated values (CSV) file for the Load Interface File for Import process.

Downloading to Facilitate Export

Records in the search results table of the File Import and Export page provide download links to the files.

File Size

Upload and download don’t apply the following by default:

- Data compression
• File splitting

The `UPLOAD_MAX_DISK_SPACE` parameter in the `web.xml` file determines the maximum allowable file size in content management. The default maximum size is 10240000 (10MB).

## Guidelines for File Import and Export

Interaction between the File Import and Export page and Oracle WebCenter Content requires securing content in an account. You can use the predefined accounts that are available in Oracle WebCenter Content.

Areas of file import and export involve the following:

- Defining security
- Searching records
- Accessing content in a new account
- Naming the account
- Deleting files

### Defining Security

You require the File Import and Export Management duty role for accessing the File Import and Export page. This duty role is included in the predefined role hierarchy for integration specialist roles and product family administrator roles. Files in Oracle WebCenter Content are associated with an account so that only users having access to that account can work with those files. Account names are unique and each account is treated as discrete by access control. You can only upload and download files to and from content repositories that are linked to the accounts you can access. The underlying integrated content management handles security tasks such as virus scanning.

### Searching Records

A record in Oracle WebCenter Content contains the metadata used for accessing the file. When a scheduled process is run on a file, the record for the file is assigned a process ID.

### Accessing Content in a New Account

After you create a new account in Oracle WebCenter Content, restart the content server. Otherwise, when you use the File Import and Export page to access content in the new account, you may experience a delay. The policy store is being updated with the new account information, which causes the delay.

### Naming the Account

If you create accounts for importing or exporting data, use the following conventions for naming the account:

- Don’t include a slash (/) at the beginning or end.
- End the name with a dollar sign ($) to avoid partial string matching.
- Use dollar sign and slash ($/) as a separator in the hierarchical structure.

For example: `fin$/journal$/import$` The File Import and Export page transforms account names by removing the dollar sign ($) separators. For example `fin$/journal$/import$` appears as `fin/journal/import`. The Remote Intradoc Client (RIDC) HTTP command-line interface (CLI) transforms the account name you specify without the dollar sign ($) to one that includes the sign. For example, `fin/journal/import` becomes `fin$/journal$/import$` in WebCenter Content.
Deleting Files
You can delete one file at a time when you use the File Import and Export page. To delete multiple files simultaneously from the content repository, use the standard service page in Oracle WebCenter Content.

Related Topics
- Document Transfer Utility: Explained

External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud

External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud: Overview
Use External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud to load data into Oracle Fusion Applications from external sources, such as legacy systems and third-party applications.

External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud include the following components:
- Templates to structure, format, and generate the data file according to the requirements of the target application tables.
- File-based load process to load the data files into the interface tables.
- Application-specific data import processes to transfer data from interface tables to the application tables in your Oracle Fusion Applications.
The following flow diagram outlines the steps involved in loading data from external sources.

For further information, see Using External Data Integration Services for Oracle ERP Cloud (2102800.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

**Related Topics**
- Using External Data Integration Services for Oracle ERP Cloud

**Locating File Import Templates: Explained**

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (http://docs.oracle.com) include integration templates to help you prepare external data for loading and importing. Each template includes table-specific instructions, guidelines, formatted spreadsheets, and best practices for preparing the data file for upload. Use the templates to ensure that your data conforms to the structure and format of the target application tables.

Preparing external data using templates involve the following tasks:
- Downloading templates
- Preparing data using the XLS template
Downloading Templates

To download the templates:

1. Open the File Based Data Import guide for your cloud service.
2. Locate the import process.
3. View the list of files.
   - Control files describe the logical flow of the data load process.
   - XLSM templates include the worksheets and macros for structuring, formatting, and generating your data file.

   Note: You can use XML templates to import data into Oracle Data Integrator.

4. Click the template link in the File Links table to download the file. For example, click `JournalImportTemplate.xlsm` in the Journal Import topic.

Preparing Data Using the XLS Template

To prepare your data in a spreadsheet format:

1. Open the XLS template. The first worksheet in each file provides instructions for using the template.

   Note: If you don’t follow the instructions, you get data load errors and data import failures.

2. Save the file.
3. Click the Generate CSV File button.

   The macro generates a comma-separated values (CSV) file and compresses the file into a ZIP file. You must transfer the ZIP file to the content management server.

Opening the XML Template

To prepare your data in Oracle Data Integrator, download the XML templates using the following steps:

1. Import the family-level template as a model folder.
2. Import the product-level template as a model folder within the family-level model folder.
3. Import the product template as a model within the product-level model folder.
4. Create the integration project.
5. Create the package.
6. Add and configure these elements:
   - Integration projects
   - Content management document transfer utility
7. Execute the package. The package generates the CSV file and compresses it into a ZIP file.

Related Topics

- Document Transfer Utility: Explained
Using Excel Integration Templates to Generate Data Files: Points to Consider

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (http://docs.oracle.com) include integration templates to help you prepare external data for loading and importing. Each template includes table-specific instructions, guidelines, formatted spreadsheets, and best practices for preparing the data file for upload. Use the templates to ensure that your data conforms to the structure and format of the target application tables.

Template Structure

The integration templates include the following characteristics:

- Each interface table is represented by a separate worksheet.
- Each interface table field is represented by a worksheet column with a header in the first row.
- Each column header contains bubble text or comments that include details about the column, such as the expected data type, length, and, in some cases, other instructional text.
- Columns are formatted, where applicable, to match the target field data type to eliminate data entry errors.

The worksheet columns appear in the order that the control file processes the data file.

For more information on the template structure, see the Instructions and CSV Generation worksheet in the template.

Template Requirements

To minimize the risks of an unsuccessful data load, ensure the following:

- Unused columns can be hidden, but not reordered or deleted.

⚠️ Caution: Deleting or reordering columns causes the load process to fail and results in an unsuccessful data load.

- External data must conform to the data type accepted by the control file and process for the associated database column.
- Date column values must appear in the YYYY/MM/DD format.
- Amount column values can’t have separators other than a period (.) as the decimal separator.
- Negative values must be preceded by the minus (-) sign.
- Column values that require whole numbers include data validation to allow whole numbers only.
- For columns that require internal ID values, refer to the bubble text for additional guidance about finding these values.

After you finish preparing the data in the sheet, click the Generate CSV File button to generate a ZIP file containing one or more CSV files.
Using XML Integration Templates to Generate Data Files: Points to Consider

Use XML templates in Oracle Data Integrator to prepare your external data for the load and import process.

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com) include three types of XML templates that you import as target models in your Oracle Data Integrator repository:

- Family level
- Product level
- Product

**Family-Level XML Files**

A family-level XML file is common to a group of product-level model folders and product models.

Consider the following points when you use family-level XML files:

- Use the family-level XML file to support assets in the family, for example, Oracle Fusion Financials or Human Capital Management.
- Import the family-level XML file into your Oracle Data Integrator repository prior to importing the other XML files.
- Import one family-level XML file as a model folder for each family of products.
- Import each family-level XML file as a high-level model folder.
- Import the family-level XML file one time; it supports all subsumed product-level model folders.
- Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.

**Product-Level XML Files**

A product-level XML file is common to a group of product models.

Consider the following points when you use product-level XML files:

- Use the product-level XML file to support assets in the product line, for example, Fixed Assets, General Ledger, or Payables.
- Import one product-level XML file as a model folder for each line of products.
- Import the product-level XML file as a model folder into your Oracle Data Integrator repository.
- Import the family-level XML file before you import product XML files.
- Import each product-level XML file as a mid-level model folder within the appropriate family-level model folder.
- Import the product-level XML file one time; it supports all subsumed product models.
- Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.

**Product XML Files**

A product XML file represents a specific interface table asset.

Consider the following points when you use product XML files:

- Import one product XML file as a model for each interface table or set of tables, for example, Mass Additions.
- Import the product XML file as a model into your Oracle Data Integrator repository after you import the product-level XML file.
• Import each product XML file as a model within the appropriate product-level model folder.
• Import each product XML file one time. The model is based on File technology.
• Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.
• After you import the product model, connect the model to the correct logical schema.

**Related Topics**
- Using XML Templates to Generate Data Files for Integration: Explained
- Document Transfer Utility: Explained

### Transferring Data Files to Oracle WebCenter Content Using Manual Flow: Explained

After you generate the ZIP file that contains the CSV data import file, transfer the ZIP file to the content repository.

Use any of the following methods to transfer file:
- File Import and Export page in Oracle Fusion Applications: Manual flow
- Oracle Fusion ERP Integration web service: Automated flow

Aspects of transferring data files to content management involve the following:
- Target accounts
- Accessing transferred content

### Predefined Target UCM Accounts

You can transfer data files to predefined accounts in the Universal Content Management server that correspond to the interface table or assets.

To find the UCM account:

1. Open the File Based Data Import guide for your cloud service.
2. Locate your respective import process. For example, Journal Import.
3. View the UCM account in the Details section.

For more information, see the following guides in the Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com):
- SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services
- File Based Data Import guide for your cloud services

**Related Topics**
- Document Transfer Utility: Explained

### Load Interface File for Import Process

Use to load external setup or transaction data from a data file in the content repository to interface tables. The process prepares the data for import into application tables.

You run this process from the Scheduled Processes page. You can run it on a recurring basis.
Before running this process, you must:

1. Prepare your data file.
2. Transfer the data file to the content repository.

Parameters

Import Process

Select the target import process.

Data file

Enter the relative path and the file name of the *.zip data file in the content repository.

Related Topics

- Document Transfer Utility: Explained

Importing Data into Application Tables: Procedure

The final destination for your external data is the application data tables of your Oracle Fusion application. Importing data into application tables involves the following:

- Loading data into interface tables
- Finding and submitting the import process

Loading Data into Interface Tables

Interface tables are intermediary tables that store your data temporarily while the application validates format and structure. Run the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process to load data from the data file into the interface table that corresponds to the template that you use to prepare the data.

To load your data into interface tables, submit the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process using the following steps:

1. From the Navigator, click Tools.
2. Click Scheduled Processes.
3. Click the Schedule New Process button.
4. Search and select the Load Interface File for Import job.
5. On the Process Details page:
   a. Select the target import process.
   b. Enter the data file name.
6. Submit the process.

If the process is successful, the status is SUCCEEDED and the process populates the interface tables. If the process isn’t successful, the status is ERROR.

Note: The data file remains in the content repository after the process ends.

Finding and Submitting the Import Process

Run the appropriate import process to import the data into the interface tables of your Oracle Fusion application.
To import your data into the application tables:

1. From the Navigator, click **Tools**.
2. Click **Scheduled Processes**.
3. Click the **Schedule New Process** button.
4. Search and select the import process for the target application tables.
5. On the Process Details page, select the process that corresponds to the data that you're importing. For example, **Journal Import**.
   - If you prepared your data using the spreadsheet template, select the process shown in the Overview section of the spreadsheet.
6. Submit the process.

If the process is successful, the status is SUCCEEDED. The data in the interface tables is validated and the successful records are imported into the Oracle Fusion application tables. If the process isn't successful, the status is ERROR.

**Note:** For more information on the process used for data prepared using the spreadsheet template, see the Instructions and CSV Generation tab of the spreadsheet template.

**Related Topics**
- **Document Transfer Utility: Explained**

**Correcting Import Load Process Errors: Explained**

The Load Interface File for Import process ends in error if the load of the data file fails on any row. The Load File to Interface child process ends as an error or warning. All rows that were loaded by the process are deleted and the entire batch of records is rejected.

**Correcting Data Upload Errors**

To correct errors:

1. Review the error logs.
2. Change any structural or formatting anomalies in the data.
3. Generate the ZIP file containing the CSV files using the template.
4. Upload the file to the UCM server and resubmit the Load Interface File for Import process.
5. Repeat these steps until the process successfully loads all the data.

**Correcting Import Process Errors**

If the import process fails with errors:

1. Review the errors in the import log.
2. Correct the error records using the ADFdi correction spreadsheets.
Import Purchasing Documents

You can import purchasing documents from external applications into Oracle Fusion Purchasing.

How to Import Purchasing Documents

Run the purchasing document import tasks from the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Orders work areas to import purchasing documents. Use the following purchasing tasks to import purchasing documents:

- Import Orders
- Import Blanket Agreements
- Import Contract Agreements

Run the import process to import purchase orders, blanket agreements, or contract agreements into the application for further processing.

You can query, modify and validate successfully imported documents. During import, records that have insufficient or invalid data are rejected. You can use an automatically produced report to review the documents that could not be imported. You can resubmit the import task after making corrections to rejected documents.

Import Extended Item Attributes and Translations into Blanket Agreements

You can import rich catalog content data such as thumbnail images, image URLs, manufacturer availability and lead time information, and other extended item attributes into blanket agreements using file-based data import. You can also import extended item attribute translations such as Description, Manufacturer, Comments and so on. Use the PO_ATTR_VALUES_INTERFACE and PO_ATTR_VALUES_TLP_INTERFACE sheets to specify these attributes in your import file. You can get complete details on the data supported by the import templates in the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Procurement Cloud guide on the Oracle Help Center.

Prerequisite

Before you can run the import process, you must first have loaded the relevant information into the appropriate interface tables.

Note: You can load data to interface tables using predefined templates and the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process. Both are part of the External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud. For other implementations, optionally use this feature only if you have SFTP configured for it.

For more information refer to the File-Based Data Import for Oracle Procurement Cloud guide on the Oracle Help Center.

Limitations

File-based data import does not support the creation or update of purchasing documents with more than 10,000 lines. Exceeding 10,000 lines can cause performance issues and could lead to failures.
Import Process

To run the process to import purchase orders, blanket agreements, or contract agreements into the application, follow these steps:

1. From the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Orders work area, open the appropriate task you want to use:
   - Import Orders
   - Import Blanket Agreements
   - Import Contract Agreements

2. Depending on the purchase document import task you are using, you can set one or more selection parameters before running the process. The following table lists some of the possible selection parameters and their descriptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Procurement BU</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Procurement business unit that these documents should be imported into.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Buyer</td>
<td>Specify the name of the buyer to be used when one is not included in the import data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create or Update Item</td>
<td>Select &quot;Yes&quot; to create an item that does not exist or update an existing item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval Action</td>
<td>Select one of the following actions:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Do Not Approve: Imports the document in Incomplete status requiring manual interaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Submit for Approval: Imports the document and submits it to the approval process after the document is imported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Bypass Approval: Imports the document in Open (approved) status without going through the approval process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch ID</td>
<td>Enter the value for your import data from the file-based data import template, to select the interface table data to be processed in the current run. For example: Batch ID = 123. Use it in conjunction with Import Source to identify the documents to be loaded to the application tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Source</td>
<td>Enter the value for your import data from the file-based data import template, to select the interface table data to be processed in the current run. For example: Import Source = External Contracts. Use it in conjunction with Batch ID to identify the documents to be loaded to the application tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Requisitioning BU</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Requisitioning business unit to be used when one is not included in the import data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communicate Orders, or Communicate Agreements</td>
<td>Select Yes to have imported purchasing documents communicated to the supplier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select No to not have imported purchasing documents communicated to the supplier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. When the processes are complete, view the output report in PDF format. The report details the status of the records that were imported. If a record could not be imported, then the Status is set to Rejected with a reason for the rejection.

4. Fix the problems that are identified in the report and then resubmit the import task.
Viewing the Import Process Results

The results for each import process are compiled in a PDF output report which you can view online or print. The validation error details are accessible from the Purchasing Document Import Errors report. To see the report click the Output icon in the Scheduled Processes region of the import page.

Project Information in Imported Procurement Transactions: Explained

You can include sponsored project information when importing requisition and purchase order transactions, using these methodologies:

- The document is created in an external application, and sent to the requisition or purchasing application through a web service.
- You import the document using a cloud import template.
- You import the document using open interface.

Attributes you can use in the imports include:

- Project Number
- Task Number
- Expenditure Item Date
- Expenditure Type
- Expenditure Organization
- Contract Number
- Funding Source

Deep Links

You can use deep links to open pages without navigating through the menu structure. Deep links come in handy if you have corporate internal portals and you want to enable direct navigation from the portals into the Oracle Fusion Applications. For example, you can enable direct navigation to the My Team page. Use the Deep Links work area to view a complete list of the available deep links.

You can simply copy a URL from the Deep Links page and paste it in your external portals as is. You don’t even need to know the URL format.

Login and Security

Users with the View Administration Link (FND_VIEW_ADMIN_LINK_PRIV) privilege can view the Deep Link menu item in the Navigator. If you click a deep link URL from an external application and have not yet signed in, you’re automatically redirected to the Sign In page.
25 Importing and Exporting Setup Data

Exporting and Importing Setup Data: Overview

Any implementation of Oracle Applications Cloud usually requires migrating setup data from one environment to another at various points in the subscription lifecycle. For example, a subscribed offering is typically set up in the test environment first, and is moved to the production environment only after proper testing and verification. Setup export and import processes help you migrate setup data from test to production.

Two distinct methods are available for migrating setup data:

- Export and import an entire offering or any of its functional areas. In this method, setup data of the business objects associated with the offering or the selected functional area is migrated.
- Export and import an implementation project. In this method, setup data of the business objects associated with the implementation project is migrated.

**Note:** You cannot combine the export and import processes of these different methods. When an offering or functional area is exported, that setup data can only be imported using the same offering or functional area. Similarly, when an implementation project is exported, that setup data can only be imported using implementation project-based import.

Offering Based Export and Import: Explained

Oracle recommends that you use this method for data export and import to ensure migration of all relevant setup data to the offering or functional area. This method is especially useful when doing your initial implementation or moving your implementation or configuration across instances for the first time.

Oracle recommends that you export the setup data for the entire offering at least once before exporting setup data for individual functional areas. This ensures that all the basic implementation setup data is migrated.

This method is advantageous over others because you do not need to choose the tasks or understand data relationships to ensure only setup data relevant to the selected offering or functional area is exported. At the same time, it gives you flexibility to filter the setup data for the offering or functional area, where applicable.

Export and import offering setup data processes are initiated from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Export

During export, appropriate setup data is identified as follows:

- When you export setup data for an offering, the export definition includes setup data for all enabled functional areas and relevant features in the offering.
- When you export setup data for a single functional area within an offering, the export definition only includes setup data for that functional area and relevant features.
Import
During import, a configuration package created by the export process is uploaded. All setup data contained in the configuration package is imported into the environment you initiate the setup data import from.

Similarly to the export process, you can import setup data for an entire offering or a specific functional area. The offering and functional area must already be enabled for implementation before you can import setup data for it. However, the feature selection may or may not be selected. To ensure enabling of all the same functionality that existed in the environment where the setup data was exported from for the corresponding offering or functional area, use the option to Import the Feature Selection at the time of importing the setup data. You must use a configuration package file that contains the setup data for the appropriate offering or functional area. You also have the option to compare the setup data prior to import to identify what setup data modifications happen if the setup data is imported. You can also compare the setup data after it has been imported (rather than prior to import) to ensure that no differences exist. Once you initiate the import process, you can monitor its progress and check its status from the Export Offering page. Once the process is complete you can review the reports. Similarly, use the Import Offering Setup Data page to upload and import previously exported setup data.

Implementation Project Based Export and Import: Explained

Export and import setup data for an implementation projects using the Setup and Maintenance work area.

You must explicitly create a configuration package from the Setup and Maintenance work area to export setup data for an implementation project. You generate the setup export and import definition by selecting an implementation project and creating a configuration package. The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected implementation project define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. Depending on your needs, when you create a configuration package based on an implementation project, you can also modify some additional aspects, as explained here.

- Exclude some of the business objects from the configuration you selected to export setup data for.
  If you limit this action to setup data already available in the target instance, no data dependencies occur.
- Change the default import sequence of the business objects
  Oracle recommends that you limit using this option when you must correct a data dependency issue and you fully understand the data relationships between the business objects of your configuration.
- Filter the setup data to export
  Oracle recommends that you migrate the implementation using the Offering based export and import functionality. Limit the use of implementation projects as the source for exporting setup when you are required to modify the list of tasks or of objects you want export setup data for.

Export
During export, appropriate setup data is identified based on the tasks in the implementation project used as source for the configuration package. The setup data in the configuration package is a snapshot of the data in the source application instance at the time of export. Once export completes, you can download the configuration package file as a zipped archive of multiple XML files, move it to the target application instance, and upload and import it. After exporting the setup data you may continue entering new or modifying existing setup data for your configuration. Since the configuration package is a snapshot of the setup data taken at the time export is initiated, you may need to take another snapshot of the same configuration or set of data later. Although you can always create a different configuration package, Functional Setup
Manager provides you the ability to take another snapshot of the setup data using the same modified export and import definition by exporting the configuration package multiple times and creating multiple versions. While the export definition remains the same in each version, the setup data can be different if you modified the data in the time period between the different runs of the export process. Since each version of the configuration package has a snapshot of the data in the source instance, you can compare and analyze various versions of the configuration package to see how the setup data changed.

Import

During import, you first upload a configuration package created by the export process and then import the setup data. All setup data contained in the configuration package is imported into the environment you initiate the setup data import from. In the target application instance, the setup import process inserts all new data from the source configuration package that does not already exist, and update any existing data with changes from the source. Setup data that exists in the target instance but not in source remains unchanged.

Configuration Packages: Explained

A configuration package contains the setup import and export definition. The setup import and export definition is the list of setup tasks and their associated business objects that identifies the setup data for export as well as the data itself. When you create a configuration package only the setup export and import definition exists. Once you submit export, a snapshot of the appropriate setup data is added to the configuration package using the definition. You can continue making modifications to the setup data in the environment and create a new configuration package any time you need it.

You can generate the setup export and import definition implicitly or explicitly:

- A configuration package is created implicitly when you export setup data for an entire offering or any functional area.
- A configuration package is created explicitly when you export setup data based on an implementation project. This method enables further modification of the configuration packages.

You generate the setup export and import definition by selecting an implementation project and creating a configuration package. The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected implementation project define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. In addition, the sequence of the tasks in the implementation project determines the export and import sequence.

The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected configuration (offering, functional area or implementation project) define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. In addition, the sequence of the tasks in the implementation project determines the export and import sequence.

Once a configuration package is exported, the setup export and import definition is locked and cannot be changed. You cannot add or remove tasks and their associated business objects, change their export and import sequence, or change the scope value selection. However, you can create a new configuration package with such modifications at any time.

Moving Common Reference Objects

Overview of Moving Common Reference Objects

The common reference objects are used by several setup tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area. The common reference objects become a part of the configuration package that is created for an implementation project. While moving the
application content, for example, moving from test to the production phase of an implementation, attend to the nuances of these common reference objects.

Parameters
The common reference objects are represented as business objects. A single object can be referenced in multiple setup tasks with different parameters. In the configuration package created for the implementation project, parameters passed to a setup task are also passed to the business objects being moved. As a result, the scope of the setup tasks is maintained intact during the movement.

Dependencies
Common reference objects may have internal references or dependencies among other common reference objects. Therefore, you must note all the dependencies before moving the objects so that there are no broken references among them.

Related Topics
- Exporting and Importing Setup Data by Offering or Functional Area: Explained

Business Objects for Moving Common Reference Objects
Common reference objects in Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager are used to move application setup content from one environment to another. For example, from a test environment to a production environment.

Choice of Parameters
The following table lists the business objects, the movement details, and the effect of the setup task parameter on the scope of the movement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Object Name</th>
<th>Moved Functional Item</th>
<th>Effect on the Scope of Movement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application Message</td>
<td>Messages and associated tokens</td>
<td>No parameters: All messages are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only messages belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter messageName/ applicationId Only the specified message is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Taxonomy</td>
<td>Application taxonomy modules and components</td>
<td>No parameters: All taxonomy modules and components are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Attachment Entity</td>
<td>Attachment entities</td>
<td>No parameters: All attachment entities are moved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
- You can move only the translations in the current user language.
- You can move the Oracle Social Network business objects and the changes to the Navigator using the configuration sets on the Configuration Set Migration page.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Object Name</th>
<th>Moved Functional Item</th>
<th>Effect on the Scope of Movement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application Attachment Category</td>
<td>Attachment categories and category-to-entity mappings</td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only attachment entities belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Document Sequence Category</td>
<td>Document sequence categories</td>
<td>No parameters: All categories are moved. Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only categories belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved. Parameter code/ applicationId Only the specified document sequence category code is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Document Sequence</td>
<td>Document sequences and their assignments</td>
<td>No parameters: All sequences are moved. Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only document sequences belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved. Parameter name: Only the specified document sequence is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Descriptive Flexfield</td>
<td>Descriptive flexfield registration data and setup data</td>
<td>No parameters: All descriptive flexfields are moved. Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only descriptive flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved. Parameter descriptiveFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified descriptive flexfield is moved. Importing the metadata of a flexfield can change its deployment status. Therefore, you must redeploy if there are any affected flexfields. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment. Also only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Object Name</td>
<td>Moved Functional Item</td>
<td>Effect on the Scope of Movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Extensible Flexfield</td>
<td>Extensible flexfield registration data and setup data, including categories</td>
<td>No parameters: All extensible flexfields are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only extensible flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter extensibleFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified extensible flexfield is moved. Importing the metadata of a flexfield can change its deployment status and therefore, the affected flexfields must be redeployed. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment. Also, only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Key Flexfield</td>
<td>Key flexfield registration data and setup data</td>
<td>No parameters: All key flexfields are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only key flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter keyFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified key flexfield is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Importing the metadata of a flexfield can change its deployment status and therefore, the affected flexfields must be redeployed. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment. Only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Flexfield Value Set</td>
<td>Value set setup data</td>
<td>No parameters: All value sets are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only value sets belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter valueSetCode: Only the specified value set is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Importing the metadata of a value set can change the deployment status of flexfields that use the value set. Therefore, you must redeploy if there are any affected flexfields. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Currency</td>
<td>Currency data</td>
<td>No parameters: All currencies are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference ISO Language</td>
<td>ISO language data</td>
<td>No parameters: All ISO languages are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Object Name</td>
<td>Moved Functional Item</td>
<td>Effect on the Scope of Movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Industry</td>
<td>Industry data including industries in territories data</td>
<td>No parameters: All industries are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Language</td>
<td>Language data</td>
<td>No parameters: All languages are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Natural Language</td>
<td>Natural language data</td>
<td>No parameters: All natural languages are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Territory</td>
<td>Territory data</td>
<td>No parameters: All territories are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Time zone</td>
<td>Time zone data</td>
<td>No parameters: All time zones are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Standard Lookup</td>
<td>Standard lookup types and their lookup codes</td>
<td>No parameters: All standard lookups are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only standard lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter lookupType: Only the specified common lookup is moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Common Lookup</td>
<td>Common lookup types and their lookup codes</td>
<td>No parameters: All common lookups are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only common lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter lookupType: Only the specified common lookup is moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Set-Enabled Lookup</td>
<td>Set-enabled lookup types and their lookup codes</td>
<td>No parameters: All set-enabled lookups are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only set-enabled lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter lookupType: Only the specified set-enabled lookup is moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Profile Category</td>
<td>Profile categories</td>
<td>No parameters: All profile categories are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only categories belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Object Name</td>
<td>Moved Functional Item</td>
<td>Effect on the Scope of Movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moved Functional Item</td>
<td>name/applicationId Only the specified category is moved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Profile Option</td>
<td>Profile options and their values</td>
<td>No parameters: All profile options and their values are moved. Parameter moduleType/moduleKey Only profile options and their values belonging to the specified module are moved. Parameter profileOptionName: Only the specified profile option and its values are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Profile Value</td>
<td>Profile options and their values</td>
<td>No parameters: All profiles and their values are moved. Parameter moduleType/moduleKey Only profiles and their values belonging to the specified module are moved. Parameter categoryName/categoryApplicationId Only profiles and their values belonging to the specified category are moved. Parameter profileOptionName: Only the specified profile and its values are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Data Set</td>
<td>Reference data sets</td>
<td>No parameters: All sets are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Reference Data Set Assignment</td>
<td>Reference data set assignments</td>
<td>Parameter determinantType: Only assignments for the specified determinant type are moved. Parameter determinantType/determinantGroup/ referenceGroupName Only assignments for the specified determinant type and reference group are moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Tree Structure</td>
<td>Tree structures and any labels assigned to the tree structure</td>
<td>No parameters: All tree structures (and their labels) are moved. Parameter moduleType/moduleKey Only tree structures (and their labels) belonging to the specified module are moved. Parameter treeStructureCode: Only the specified tree structure (with its labels) is moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Tree</td>
<td>Tree codes and versions</td>
<td>No parameters: All trees are moved. Parameter moduleType/moduleKey Only trees belonging to the specified module are moved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Guidelines for Moving Related Common Reference Objects

Certain common reference objects may use other common reference objects creating dependencies among the objects. During the movement of common reference objects, ensure that these dependencies or references aren't broken or lost.

#### Dependencies

The dependencies among the common reference objects may be caused by any of the following conditions.

- Flexfield segments use value sets
- Value sets may make use of standard, common, or set-enabled lookups
- Key flexfields may have an associated tree structure and key flexfield segments may have an associated tree code
- Tree codes and versions may be defined over values of a value set
• Data security policies may be defined for value sets that have been enabled for data security.

You may decide to move one, some, or all of the business objects by including the ones you want to move in your configuration package. For example, you may decide to move only value sets, or move both value sets and their lookups as part of the same package. Whatever be the combination, Oracle recommends that during the movement of objects, you follow an order that maintains the dependencies among the objects.

While moving the business objects, adhere to the following order:

1. Move created taxonomy modules before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields, lookups, profiles, messages, and so on.
2. Move created currencies before moving any objects that reference them, such as territories.
3. Move created territories before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages and natural languages.
4. Move created ISO languages before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages, natural languages, and industries.
5. Move created tree structures before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees or tree labels.
6. Move created profile options before moving any objects that reference them, such as profile categories or profile values.
7. Move created attachment entities before moving any objects that reference them, such as attachment categories that reference them.

**Note:** In scenarios where there may be dependencies on other objects, you must move the dependencies before moving the referencing object. For example, if data security policies have dependencies on newly created security roles, you must move the security roles before moving the security policies.

**Guidelines for Moving Common Reference Objects Using the Seed Data Framework**

To move the common reference objects, you can use the Seed Data Framework. You can also use the command line interface of the Seed Data Framework to move the object setup data. For more information about seed data loaders including common reference object loaders, see Oracle Fusion Applications Developer’s Guide.

**Movement Dependencies**

The seed data interface moves only the setup metadata. For example, if you use Seed Data Framework to import flexfield metadata, the flexfield setup metadata is imported into your database. However, you must initiate the flexfield deployment process separately after seed data import to regenerate the runtime flexfield artifacts in the target environment. Similarly, if you use Seed Data Framework to import data security metadata, you must first move any new referenced roles and then manually run the GUID reconciliation where required.

To ensure that the reference data is not lost during the movement, certain guidelines are prescribed. It is recommended that you perform the movement of object data exactly in the following order:

**Note:** Only the translation in the current user language is moved.

1. Move created taxonomy modules before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields, lookups, profiles, attachments, reference data sets, document sequences, messages, and data security.
2. Move created currencies before moving any objects that reference them, such as territories.
3. Move created territories before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages and natural languages.
4. Move created ISO languages before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages, natural languages, and industries.
5. Move created tree structures before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees or tree labels.
6. Move created profile options before moving any objects that reference them, such as profile categories or profile values.
7. Move created attachment entities before moving any objects that reference them, such as attachment categories that reference them.
8. Move created reference data sets before moving any objects that reference them, such as reference data set assignments and set-enabled lookups.
9. Move created document sequence categories before moving any objects that reference them, such as document sequences.
10. Move created tree labels before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees.
11. Move created data security objects and policies before moving any objects that reference them, such as value sets.
12. Move created value sets before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields.
13. Move created trees before moving any objects that reference them, such as key flexfields.
Set Up Manufacturing

Before you can process procurement transactions for contract manufacturing service items, you must perform setup tasks for suppliers and agreements.

Perform the following procurement-related setup to support transactions for contract manufacturing items:

- Define the contract manufacturer as a supplier and supplier site.
- Set up a blanket purchase agreement for the contract manufacturer and item.

Define Supplier and Site

Set up suppliers and sites using the Manage Suppliers task in the Suppliers work area.

- Define the contract manufacturer as a supplier.
- Set the supplier type to Supplier.
- Define each of their manufacturing locations as a supplier site.
- Assign requisitioning business units to each site.

Set up Blanket Purchase Agreement

Set up blanket purchase agreements for contract manufacturing service items using the Manage Agreements task. You can find the task in Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Purchase Agreements and Purchase Orders functional areas.

- In the Order Creation Controls section, optionally select the check boxes to automatically create purchase orders from requisitions.
  - Automatically generate orders
  - Automatically submit for approval
- Attach the work definition document to the agreement line for the item, using the To Supplier category.

For more information about contract manufacturing, see the Oracle SCM Cloud Implementing Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management guide.

Related Topics

- Contract Manufacturing Integration in Procurement: Explained
- Setting Up Supplier for Contract Manufacturing: Explained
- Accessing Tasks to Update Existing Setup Data: Procedure
Set Up Back-to-Back Order Fulfillment

Before you can process procurement transactions for back-to-back items, you must perform setup tasks for the procurement offering, suppliers and agreements.

Perform the following procurement-specific setup to support transactions for back-to-back items:

- Enable the Customer Sales Order Fulfillment feature.
- Set up suppliers and supplier sites for your back-to-back items.
- Set up blanket purchase agreements for your back-to-back items.

Enable Customer Sales Order Fulfillment

In the Offerings work area, enable the Customer Sales Order Fulfillment feature in the Procurement offering, in the Procurement functional area.

Set up Supplier and Supplier Site

You must set up suppliers and supplier sites for your back-to-back items. Do this in the Suppliers work area, Manage Suppliers task.

- Use the Sites tab to create each supplier site within the context of the procurement business unit which provides procurement services for the site.
- Each site must have the Purchasing check box selected, to specify the site fulfills the purchasing function for the client (requisitioning) business units.
- For each site, use the Site Assignment tab to assign each client (requisitioning) business unit for which the site fulfills the purchasing function.

Set up Blanket Purchase Agreement

You must set up blanket purchase agreements for your back-to-back sales order items. Do this using the Create Agreements task, in the Purchase Agreements and Purchase Orders work areas.

- In the agreement line, Item field, enter the back-to-back item.
- Optionally, you can select the following check boxes to support the automatic creation of purchase orders (POs) from requisitions. Do this on the Controls tab, in the Order Creation Options region.
  - Automatically generate orders
  - Automatically submit for approval
- Also in the Order Creation Options region, select the following check boxes. This enables the grouping of requisition lines with the same sales order number, to be placed on a single PO.
  - Group requisitions
  - Use customer sales order

For more information about setting up back-to-back order fulfillment, see the SCM Cloud Implementing Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management guide.
Set up Drop Shipment Order Fulfillment

Before you can process procurement transactions for drop shipment (drop ship) items, you must perform setup tasks for the procurement offering, suppliers and agreements.

Perform the following procurement-specific setup to support transactions for drop ship items:

- Enable the Customer Sales Order Fulfillment feature.
- Set up suppliers and supplier sites for your drop ship items.
- Set up blanket purchase agreements for your drop ship items.

Enable Customer Sales Order Fulfillment

In the Offerings work area, enable the Customer Sales Order Fulfillment feature in the Procurement offering, in the Procurement functional area.

Set up Supplier and Supplier Site

You must set up suppliers and supplier sites for your drop ship items. Do this in the Suppliers work area, Manage Suppliers task.

- Use the Sites tab to create each supplier site within the context of the procurement business unit which provides procurement services for the site.
- Each site must have the Purchasing check box selected, to specify the site fulfills the purchasing function for the client (requisitioning) business units.
- For each site, use the Site Assignment tab to assign each client (requisitioning) business unit for which the site fulfills the purchasing function.

Set up Blanket Purchase Agreement

You must set up blanket purchase agreements for your drop ship items. Do this using the Create Agreements task, in the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Orders work areas.

- In the agreement line, Item field, enter the drop ship item.
- Optionally, you can select the following check boxes to support the automatic creation of purchase orders (PO's) from requisitions. Do this on the Controls tab, in the Order Creation Options region.
  - Automatically generate orders
  - Automatically submit for approval

Related Topics

- Back-to-Back Order Fulfillment Integration in Procurement: Explained
- Enabling Procurement to Support Back-to-Back Fulfillment: Explained
- Automating Purchase Order Creation for Back-to-Back Items: Explained
- Configuring Offerings: Procedure
• Also in the Order Creation Controls region, select the following check boxes. This enables the grouping of requisition lines with the same sales order number, to be placed on a single PO.
  
  ◦ Group requisitions
  ◦ Use customer sales order

For more information about setting up drop ship order fulfillment, see the Oracle Supply ChainAs a procurement manager, you can define buyer assignment rules that direct automatic routing of requisition lines to the most appropriate buyer for processing. The application uses the rules to assign buyers to requisition lines, when requisitions you create online or import are submitted for approval.

Define buyer assignment rules using the Manage Buyer Assignment Rules task, in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in Purchasing Foundation functional area.

Management Cloud Implementing Order Management guide.

Related Topics

• Drop Shipment Order Fulfillment Integration in Procurement: Explained
• Set Up Drop Ship in Order Management
• Configuring Offerings: Procedure

Set Up Configured Item Order Fulfillment

Before you can process procurement transactions for configured item orders, you must perform setup tasks for document style and blanket purchase agreements.

Perform the following procurement-specific setup to support transactions for configured item orders:

• Set up a document style for procured configurations.
• Set up a blanket purchase agreement for a procured configuration.

Set up a Document Style

You must use a document style for procured configurations. A default document style is delivered for use with procured configurations. This document style is automatically applied when you import a blanket purchase agreement for procuring configurations, and when requisitions are automatically converted to purchase orders (POs). Two key points about the document style are:

• The Goods check box is selected.
• The Configuration Ordering Enabled option is set to Yes.

Optionally, you can define your own document style for use with procured configurations using the Manage Document styles task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the Procurement Foundation functional area. If you define your own document style for procured configurations, ensure the Goods check box is selected, and the Configuration Ordering Enabled option is set to Yes.
Set up a Blanket Purchase Agreement

You can set up a blanket purchase agreement to automatically price the base model and options for a configured item. Do this using the Create Agreements task, in the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Order work areas. Key points about creating the blanket purchase agreement are:

- Select a document style enabled for configuration ordering. You can use the delivered Configure to Order Blanket Purchase Agreement style, or one you have created.
- Set the line type for each item to Goods. The configured item and the items that make up the configuration must be goods-based.
- Include an image associated with the base model so it can be seen on the PO.
- Create agreement lines to list the prices for the base model and options used in the procured configuration.
- Enter these line-level fields for the base model and options:
  - Item and Description.
  - Parent Item.
  - Top Model.
  - Price.
- Pricing for options can be negative, to reflect discounts.
- Pricing for options can also be dependent upon the parent item or top model.
- Retroactive pricing is not supported on blanket purchase agreements for configurations.
- Set the Order Creation Options to enable automatic PO creation and approval.
- Do not enable the Order Creation Options for grouping requisition lines.

Be sure to complete other applicable, procurement-related setups for back-to-back or drop shipment orders.

Related Topics

- Configured Item Order Fulfillment Integration in Procurement: Explained

Externally and Internally Managed Requisitions: Explained

Purchase requisitions you work with in Oracle Procurement Cloud are either externally or internally managed.

Externally managed requisitions are third-party requisitions created through the purchase request web service, or requisition import. Integrating applications can request changes to these requisitions through the web service. Important points to consider about externally managed requisitions are:

- They are created with an approval status of approved.
- They are not accessible in the Purchase Requisitions work area.
- For those requiring manual processing into a purchase order, you can manage them using the Process Requisitions and View Requisitions Lines tasks. You can find the tasks in the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Agreements work areas.
Important points to consider about internally managed requisitions are:

- They can be created using the Purchase Requisitions work area, by the purchase request web service, or by requisition import.
- They can be created with an approval status of approved, or incomplete.
- They are accessible in the Purchase Requisitions work area.
- For those requiring manual processing into a purchase order, you can manage them using the Process Requisitions and View Requisitions tasks. You can find the tasks in the Purchase Agreements or Purchase Orders work areas.

Internally and externally managed requisitions can also be created using File Based Data Import. However, not all externally managed requisitions can be created using file import. Only the contract manufacturing and shipping method are available in file import.

Purchase Request Web Service in Procurement

The Purchase Request Service (web service) is used to manage Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud integrations with Oracle Procurement Cloud.

The web service performs these functions:

- Eliminates the need for these applications to determine which procurement object, requisition or purchase order, is to be processed.
- Determines if action is needed on a requisition or purchase order.
- Supports updates to the requisition and purchase order documents using a requisition reference.

Supported Functional Flows

The web service supports these functional flows:

- Drop shipment
- Back to back
- Inventory replenishment
- Planned order
- Contract manufacturing
- Configure to order

Supported Operations

The web service supports third party to Oracle Fusion applications integration, and Oracle Fusion to Oracle Fusion applications integration. It provides the ability for external applications to send requests to Oracle Procurement Cloud in the form of create, change, control and get operations. Oracle Procurement Cloud publishes the following web service operations and actions:

- Create Purchase Request (Create, Populate, and Submit actions)
• Change Purchase Request (Change, Cancel, and Split actions)
• Control Purchase Request (Hold and Freeze, Release Hold and Unfreeze, and Firm actions)
• Get Purchase Request

Additional Information

For more information about the Purchase Request Service, see the SOAP Web Services for Oracle Procurement Cloud guide in the Oracle Help Center.

Related Topics

• SOAP Web Services for Oracle Procurement Cloud

Set Up Internal Material Transfer

Before you can use internal material transfers, you must perform setup tasks for the Procurement offering.

Perform the following setup steps to support internal material transfers:

• Configure Other Offerings
• Configure Self Service Procurement

Configure Other Offerings

Additional setup tasks outside of Self Service Procurement are required to enable internal material transfers. For example, there are both required and optional setup tasks in Supply Chain Financial Orchestration, Supply Chain Managerial Accounting, and Manufacturing Supply Chain Materials Management. See the Implementing Internal Material Transfers chapter in the Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud Implementing Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management guide.

Configuring Self Service Procurement

Enable internal material transfers to allow Self Service procurement users to order internally sourced items. In the Offerings work area, enable the Internal Material Transfers feature in the Procurement offering, in the Self Service procurement functional area.

Related Topics

• Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud Implementing Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management
• Configuring Offerings: Procedure
Glossary

**account rule**
The rule that processing uses to derive complete accounts or segment values on a subledger journal entry. Conditions can be defined within the rule to derive a different account based on specific attributes of the transaction.

**accounting event class**
Categories that classify transaction types and group event types for accounting rules.

**accounting flexfield**
The structure that determines the chart of accounts, including the number and order of the individual segments, as well as assigning the value sets to the segments.

**accounting method**
A set of journal entry rules which determine how a subledger journal entry is created for each event class or event type.

**action**
The kind of access, such as view or edit, named in a security policy.

**ADF**
Application Developer Framework. A set of programming principles and rules for developing software applications.

**analytics**
Business intelligence objects such as analyses and dashboards that provide meaningful data to help with decision making.

**application feature**
A standardized functionality that is available to implemented.

**application partner**
A B2B trading partner defined in Oracle Applications Cloud that engages in the collaboration messaging activity. For example, a supplier site, or a customer account.

**assignment**
A set of information, including job, position, pay, compensation, managers, working hours, and work location, that defines a worker's or nonworker's role in a legal employer.

**automatic assignment catalog**
A non-hierarchical catalog to which categories that match the catalog's Catalog Structure value are automatically added. Add categories and share categories actions are disabled for this catalog configuration.
balancing segment
A chart of accounts segment used to automatically balance all journal entries for each value of this segment.

browsing category
Parent or intermediate category that is associated with other categories in the catalog hierarchy, but has no assigned items.

business function
A business process or an activity that can be performed by people working within a business unit. Describes how a business unit is used.

business intelligence catalog
The repository where all business intelligence objects, including analyses, reports, briefing books, and agents, are stored. The catalog contains separate folders for personal, shared, and modified objects.

business object
A resource in an enterprise database, such as an invoice or purchase order.

business unit
A unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy.

calendar event
A period that signifies an event, such as a public holiday or a training course, that impacts worker availability.

catalog category
The association between a catalog and category or a category and category is called the catalog category. This association includes the start date and end dates.

category
Catalog component that is associated to a catalog to classify items.

chart of accounts
The account structure your organization uses to record transactions and maintain account balances.

clause adoption
Reusing a clause from the global business unit in local business units either by adopting the clause without change or by localizing it.
clause localization
A type of clause adoption where the adopted clause is edited to suit the local business unit needs.

clause numbering level
Specifies the determinant type of the document sequence for automatic clause numbering

condition
The part of a data security policy that specifies what portions of a database resource are secured.

constant
Holds the numeric value used to evaluate numeric conditions in Contract Expert rules. A constant permits you to reset the conditions of many rules with just one edit.

context
A grouping of flexfield segments to store related information.

context segment
The flexfield segment used to store the context value. Each context value can be associated with a different set of context-sensitive segments.

context-sensitive segment
A flexfield segment that may or may not appear depending upon a context. Context-sensitive segments are attributes that apply to certain entity rows based on the value of the context segment.

contract deliverable
A task that needs to be performed as part of the execution of a contract or business document, and that is tracked as part of the contract terms and conditions.

contract deviations
Differences between the contract terms in a contract and those in the contract terms template applied to that contract and any deviations from company policies as determined by Contract Expert feature rules.

Contract Expert
A feature that lets you create and evaluate business rules in the terms library such that the contract terms meet your business standards, by suggesting contract changes or additional clauses.

Contract Expert
A feature of the application that permits you to create business rules in the Contract Terms Library to enforce corporate policies and standards for contracts.
**Oracle Procurement Cloud**

**Implementing Procurement**

**Glossary**

---

**Contract Terms Library**

A repository of standard clauses, contract terms templates, and business rules built using Contract Expert.

**Contract Terms Library**

A repository of standard clauses, contract terms templates, and business rules maintained by your organization.

**contract terms template**

A template of standard clauses set up in the Contract Terms Library applied during contract authoring either automatically by the application or manually by contract authors.

**contract type**

A setup that specifies enterprise contract content, including the presence of contract terms and contract lines.

**corporate rate type**

Rate you define to standardize rates used in conversion of one currency to another over a period of time. This rate is generally a standard market rate determined by senior financial management for use throughout the organization.

**CORS**

Acronym for Cross-Origin Resource Sharing. A web service standard to enable a client application running in one domain to retrieve resources from another domain, using HTTP requests.

**cost center**

A unit of activity or a group of employees used to assign costs for accounting purposes.

**Cost Factor**

Cost factors allow a buyer to identify and control for additional costs associated with a negotiation line. Cost factors can be calculated as either a per-unit cost, a percentage of the line price, or a fixed amount for the line.

**cost organization**

A grouping of inventory organizations that indicates legal and financial ownership of inventory, and which establishes common costing and accounting policies.

**country holding company**

A legal entity that acts on behalf of several divisions within an enterprise, and is the legal employer in a country.

**dashboard**

A page that provides quick access to key tasks and summary information for various objects within a functional area of interest.
data model
The metadata that determines where data for a report comes from and how that data is retrieved.

data security
The control of access and action a user can take against which data.

data security policy
A grant of entitlement to a role on an object or attribute group for a given condition.

database resource
An applications data object at the instance, instance set, or global level, which is secured by data security policies.

department
A division of a business enterprise dealing with a particular area of activity.

descriptive flexfield
Expandable fields used for capturing additional descriptive information or attributes about an entity, such as a customer case. You may configure information collection and storage based on the context.

determinant
A value that specifies the use of a reference data set in a particular business context.

determinant type
The value that affects sharing of reference data in a transaction across organizations, such as a business unit or a cost organization.

determinant type
An optional value that affects document sequencing in a transaction. The available determinant types are Business Unit, Ledger, Legal Entity, and Tax Registration.

determinant value
A value specific to the selected determinant type of a document sequence. If Ledger is the determinant type for a document sequence, the determinant value is the specific ledger number whose documents are numbered by the document sequence. It is relevant in a document sequence assignment only if the document sequence has a determinant type.

division
A business-oriented subdivision within an enterprise. Each division is organized to deliver products and services or address different markets.
**document sequence**
A unique number that is automatically or manually assigned to a created and saved document.

**document type**
A categorization of contracts, including auction, blanket purchase agreement, contract purchase agreement, RFI, RFQ, standard purchase order, and enterprise contract.

**enterprise**
An organization with one or more legal entities under common control.

**enterprise contract**
A contract created in the Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts application.

**entitlement**
Grant of access to functions and data. Oracle Fusion Middleware term for privilege.

**extensible flexfield**
Expandable fields that you can use to capture multiple sets of information in a context or in multiple contexts. Some extensible flexfields let you group contexts into categories.

**feature**
Business practices or methods applicable to the functional areas that enable the fine-tuning of business functionality.

**filmstrip**
The single strip of icons that you can use to open other pages. The strip appears between the global header and the page title.

**fixed rate type**
Rate you set between two currencies that remains constant. For example, a rate set between the euro currency and each Economic and Monetary Union (EMU) currency during the conversion to the euro currency.

**flexfield**
A flexible data field that you can configure such that it contains one or more segments or stores additional information. Each segment has a value and a meaning.

**flexfield segment**
An extensible data field that represents an attribute and captures a value corresponding to a predefined, single extension column in the database. A segment appears globally or based on a context of other captured information.

**global business unit**
A business unit, designated as global during business unit setup, that can make its clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption by local business units.
**global header**
The uppermost region in the user interface that remains the same no matter which page you’re on.

**grade**
A component of the employment model that defines the level of compensation for a worker.

**import**
In the context of data integration, the transfer of data from interface tables to **application tables**, where the data is available to application users.

**infolet**
A small, interactive widget on the home page that provides key information and actions for a specific area, for example social networking or your personal profile. Each infolet can have multiple views.

**intent**
Specifies if an object in the Contract Terms Library is used for procurement contracts or for sales contracts.

**interface table**
A database table that stores data during data transfer between applications or between databases that reside inside and outside of an Oracle Fusion application.

**inventory organization**
A logical or physical entity in the enterprise that tracks inventory transactions and balances, stores definitions of items, and manufactures or distributes products.

**invoice business unit**
Business unit with the Payables Invoicing business function that is responsible for processing invoice transactions.

**item categories**
Term used to refer to the categories maintained in Product Information Management (PIM) under the purchasing catalog. Within procurement, this category is referred to as a purchasing category. Item categories are used to group items for various reports and programs. For Procurement, every item must belong to an item category.

**item master**
A collection of data that describes items and their attributes recorded in a database file.

**item organization**
Item definition where inventory balances are not stored and movement of inventory is not tracked in the applications. Item attributes that carry financial and accounting information are hidden.
item subinventory
An association of an item with a subinventory that is created when you add an item to a subinventory.

job
A generic role that is independent of any single department or location. For example, the jobs Manager and Consultant can occur in many departments.

job definition
The metadata that determines what a job does and what options are available to users when they submit the scheduled process. A job is the executable for a scheduled process.

job role
A role, such as an accounts payable manager or application implementation consultant, that usually identifies and aggregates the duties or responsibilities that make up the job.

journal line rule
A rule that includes options to convert transactional data into a subledger journal line. Conditions can be defined within the rule so it’s only used based on specific attributes of a transaction.

key flexfield
Configurable flexfield comprising multiple parts or segments, each of which has a meaning either individually or in combination with other segments. Examples of key flexfields are part numbers, asset category, and accounts in the chart of accounts.

key flexfield segment instance
A single occurrence of a key flexfield segment in a key flexfield structure instance.

key flexfield structure
The arrangement of segments in a key flexfield. In some cases, you can define multiple structures for a single key flexfield.

key flexfield structure instance
An occurrence of a key flexfield structure that shares the same order of segments as other instances of the key flexfield structure. However, each instance uses different value sets to validate the segments.

legal authority
A government or legal body that is charged with powers such as the power to make laws, levy and collect fees and taxes, and remit financial appropriations for a given jurisdiction.
**legal employer**

A legal entity that employs people.

**legal entity**

An entity identified and given rights and responsibilities by commercial law through the registration with country’s appropriate authority.

**legal jurisdiction**

A physical territory, such as a group of countries, single country, state, county, parish, or city, which comes in the purview of a legal authority.

**legal reporting unit**

The lowest level component of a legal structure that requires registrations. Used to group workers for the purpose of tax and social insurance reporting or represent a part of your enterprise with a specific statutory or tax reporting obligation.

**legislative data group**

A means of partitioning payroll and related data. At least one legislative data group is required for each country where the enterprise operates. Each legislative data group is associated with one or more payroll statutory units.

**Line Attribute**

A unique specification for a negotiation line and the details that a supplier should provide when responding to that negotiation line. Line attributes can be used to ensure that all responses submitted for the line include important details beyond just the price offered for the line.

**line of business**

Set of one or more highly related products which service a particular customer transaction or business need. Refers to an internal corporate business unit.

**load**

In the context of data integration, the transfer of external data from data files to the receiving **interface tables** in preparation for an import into application tables.

**lookup code**

An option available within a lookup type, such as the lookup code BLUE within the lookup type COLORS.

**lookup type**

The label for a static list that has lookup codes as its values.

**mainline metadata**

The primary branch of metadata that a sandbox is published to. Once published, changes made in the sandbox become available to all users.
**manufacturing facilities**
Employed in the making of goods for sale such as a factory or plant.

**mapping set**
Maps a combination of input source values to specific output values. The output value of a mapping set is used to derive accounts or segments in account rules.

**model profile**
A collection of the work requirements and required skills and qualifications of a workforce structure, such as a job or position.

**native catalog**
A catalog that a user is managing.

**natural account**
Categorizes account segment values by account type, asset, liability, expense, revenue, or equity, and sets posting, budgeting, and other options.

**natural account segment**
A chart of accounts segment used to categorize your accounting transactions by account type: asset, liability, owner’s equity, revenue, or expense.

**Navigator**
The menu in the global header that you can use to open the work areas and dashboards that you have access to.

**noncatalog request**
A request to purchase goods or services not available from the catalog.

**numbering scheme**
The style of numbering used for the sections and clauses in contract terms.

**offering**
A comprehensive grouping of business functions, such as Sales or Product Management, that is delivered as a unit to support one or more business processes.

**party fiscal classification**
A classification used by a tax authority to categorize a party for a tax.

**payroll statutory unit**
A legal entity registered to report payroll tax and social insurance. A legal employer can also be a payroll statutory unit, but a payroll statutory unit can represent multiple legal employers.
**position**
A specific occurrence of one job that is fixed within one department. It is also often restricted to one location. For example, the position Finance Manager is an instance of the job Manager in the Finance Department.

**primary balancing segment value**
A segment value used to represent a legal entity in the chart of accounts and automatically balance all intercompany and intracompany transactions and journal entries.

**primary ledger**
Main record-keeping ledger.

**privilege**
A grant of access to functions and data; a single, real world action on a single business object.

**procurement category hierarchy**
A hierarchy of groupings of purchasing categories which maps how spend is categorized. Use them to set up buyer assignments and procurement approvals, derive spend accounts, and create reports.

**products and services category hierarchy**
A hierarchy identifying the products and services categories that suppliers and prospective suppliers provide. Use as part of a supplier profile, in supplier registration and approval, and to identify suppliers to invite to sourcing negotiations.

**profile option**
User preferences and system configuration options that users can configure to control application behavior at different levels of an enterprise.

**profile option level**
The category or layer that defines a profile option. Site, Product, and User are the predefined levels.

**profile option value**
The setting mapped to the level of a profile option. A profile option may have multiple values set at different levels, such as Site or User.

**project expenditure organization**
An organization that can incur expenditures and hold financial plans for projects.

**provision clause**
A clause that is used only in negotiations and is dropped when the negotiation is converted to a contract.

**purchasing category**
Code used to group purchased items with similar characteristics such as plastics, paints, hard drives, or bolts. For procurement, every item must belong to a purchasing category. Also referred to as an item category.
Query By Example
The icon for filtering data in a table.

reference data
Data in application tables that is not transactional or high-volume, which an enterprise can share across multiple organizations. For example, sales methods, transaction types, or payment terms.

reference data set
Contains reference data that can be shared across a number of business units or other determinant types. A set supports common administration of that reference data.

reference group
A logical collection of reference data sets that correspond to logical entities, such as payment terms defined across multiple tables or views. Based on the common partitioning requirements across entities, the reference data sets are grouped to facilitate data sharing among them.

referenced category
A category within the native catalog that is shared from a designated source catalog. A reference category is not editable.

registration
The record of a party’s identity related details with the appropriate government or legal authorities for the purpose of claiming and ensuring legal and or commercial rights and responsibilities.

report
An output of select data in a predefined format that’s optimized for printing.

role
Controls access to application functions and data.

sandbox
A testing environment that isolates untested code changes from the mainline environment so that these changes don’t affect the mainline metadata or other sandboxes.

scheduled process
A program that you run to process data and, in some cases, generate output as a report.

segment
A segment is a single field within a flexfield and maps to a single table column in your database. When configuring a flexfield, you define the appearance and meaning of individual segments.
service provider
An intermediary that facilitates exchange of messages between Oracle Applications Cloud and trading partners.

service provider model
A business unit that provides specific business functions for another business unit.

set
Classified and grouped reference data that organizational entities share.

set enabled
A property that describes entities that an organization shares as reference data. For example, you can indicate a lookup, customer, location, or document attachment as set enabled.

shared category
A category within a source catalog that has been added to a native catalog as a referenced category. The category can be shared with one or more catalogs.

source
Contextual and reference information from subledger applications used in conjunction with accounting rules to create subledger journal entries.

spot rate type
Rate you enter to perform conversion based on this rate as of a specific date. This rate applies to the immediate delivery of a currency.

storage facilities
Commercial building for storage of goods such as a warehouse.

Style template
An .rtf template containing style information that’s applied to report layout templates to achieve a consistent look and feel across reports.

subledger journal entry line
An individual debit or credit line that is part of a subledger journal entry.

subledger journal entry rule set
A set of rules defining how to generate a complete journal entry for an accounting event.

Subtemplate
An .rtf or .xsl format that is defined once and used multiple times within a single report layout template or across multiple layout template files.
**system variable**
A predefined variable that gets its value from an attribute of the contract or other document.

**tax**
The classification of a charge imposed by a government through a fiscal or tax authority.

**tax jurisdiction**
A geographic area where a tax is levied by a specific tax authority.

**tax rate**
The rate specified for a tax status for an effective time period. A tax rate can be expressed as a percentage or a value per unit quantity.

**tax recovery**
The full or partial reclaim of taxes paid on the purchase or movement of a product.

**tax regime**
The set of tax rules that determines the treatment of one or more taxes administered by a tax authority.

**tax registration**
The registration of a party with a tax authority that confers tax rights and imposes certain tax obligations.

**tax rule**
A user-defined rule that looks for a result for a specific tax determination process, such as determining place of supply or tax registration, in relation to a tax on a transaction.

**tax status**
The taxable nature of a product in the context of a transaction for a tax.

**territory**
A legally distinct region used in the country field of an address.

**trading partner**
A B2B partner engaging in the collaboration messaging activity but defined outside Oracle Applications Cloud.

**transaction account definition**
Used to determine the types of accounts derived for a transaction, as well as which account rules are used for the derivation.

**transaction account type**
Used to determine the types of accounts derived for a transaction, as well as which sources that can be used for the derivation.
tree
Information or data organized into a hierarchy with one or more root nodes connected to branches of nodes. A tree must have a structure where each node corresponds to data from one or more data sources.

tree structure
A set of guidelines or a framework applied to create a tree, include data, version a tree, or access a tree.

tree version
An instance of a tree that includes life cycle elements such as start and end dates, and indicates whether the tree is active. If a tree is associated with a reference data set, all tree versions belong to one set.

user rate type
Rate you enter at journal entry time to convert foreign currency transactions to your ledger currency.

user variable
A variable that can be created by the Contract Terms Library administrator for use within clause text or in Contract Expert rules.

value set
A predefined set to validate the values that a user enters in the application. The set may be hierarchical.

value-added tax (VAT)
An indirect tax on consumer expenditures that is collected on business transactions and imported goods. Value-added tax (VAT) is added to products at each stage of their production. If customers are registered for VAT and use the supplies for taxable business purposes, then they typically receive credit for the VAT that is paid.

work area
A set of pages containing the tasks, searches, and other content you need to accomplish a business goal.

work relationship
An association between a person and a legal employer, where the worker type determines whether the relationship is a nonworker, contingent worker, or employee work relationship.

workflow
An automated process that passes a task from one user (or group of users) to another to view or act on. The task is routed in a logical sequence to achieve an end result.